SPWU001D

TMS380 Adapter Chipset User's Guide

Local Area Network Products

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS

TMS380 Adapter Chipset User's Guide

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Texas Instruments (TI) reserves the right to make changes in the devices or the device specifications identified in this publication without notice. TI advises its customers to obtain the latest version of device specifications to verify, before placing orders, that the information being relied upon by the customer is current.

TI warrants that the software content of the TMS38020 device is a faithful reproduction of the software developed by TI and IBM for this chipset.† This is the only warranty with regard to the software and all other warranties, whether express or implied and including any implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, are disclaimed. TI reserves the right to offer the TMS38020 or a derivative product with different software contained in the chip. TI has no responsibility to upgrade or replace products previously sold if different versions of the product and software are offered. TI shall not be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from the software or its use or modification.

In the absence of written agreement to the contrary, TI assumes no liability for TI applications assistance, customer's product design, or infringement of patents or copyrights of third parties by or arising from use of semiconductor devices described herein. Nor does TI warrant or represent that any license, either express or implied, is granted under any patent right, copyright, or other intellectual property right of TI covering or relating to any combination, machine, or process in which such semiconductor devices might be or are used.

iAPX 86 is a registered trademark of the Intel Corporation.

IBM, IBM PC, PC/XT, PC AT are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

MANUAL REVISION HISTORY
TMS380 ADAPTER CHIPSET USER'S GUIDE

Document Release	Date	Software Release
Original Issue User's Guide	September 1985	RC0114
Manual Update A	October 1985	RC0114
Manual Update B	January 1986	RC011B
Manual Update C	February 1986	RC011B
Revision D User's Guide	July 1986	RC011B

The Adapter software release number may be found in the first location of the code (mapped at LAN Adapter bus address >C000). This corresponds to the first word of the PH ROM or the first word of external EPROM, if used.

Adapter software release RC011B has been fully tested by IBM and TI and is compatible with IEEE 802.5 and the IBM Token-Ring Network Architecture Reference, part number 6165877, February 1986.

Contents

Section *Page*

Illustrations

Figure *Page*

Figure *Page*

Tables

Table *Page*

1. Introduction

1.1 Overview

The Texas Instruments TMS380 LAN adapter chipset was developed jointly with IBM and provides computer, peripheral, and telecommunication equipment manufacturers with a verified chipset for connecting to the IBM token ring local area network (LAN).

The TMS380 chipset uses a token-passing access technology compatible with the IEEE 802.5 standard. The chipset provides a 4-megabit per second data expressway using twisted-pair wire or fiber-optic media. The integrated LAN adapter architecture of the TMS380 ensures connectivity to the IBM token ring network by providing all the functions needed to connect an attaching product's host system bus to the physical media. High reliability of the network is provided via dedicated error checker circuits, on-chip diagnostic and error-monitoring software, and other network-management features.

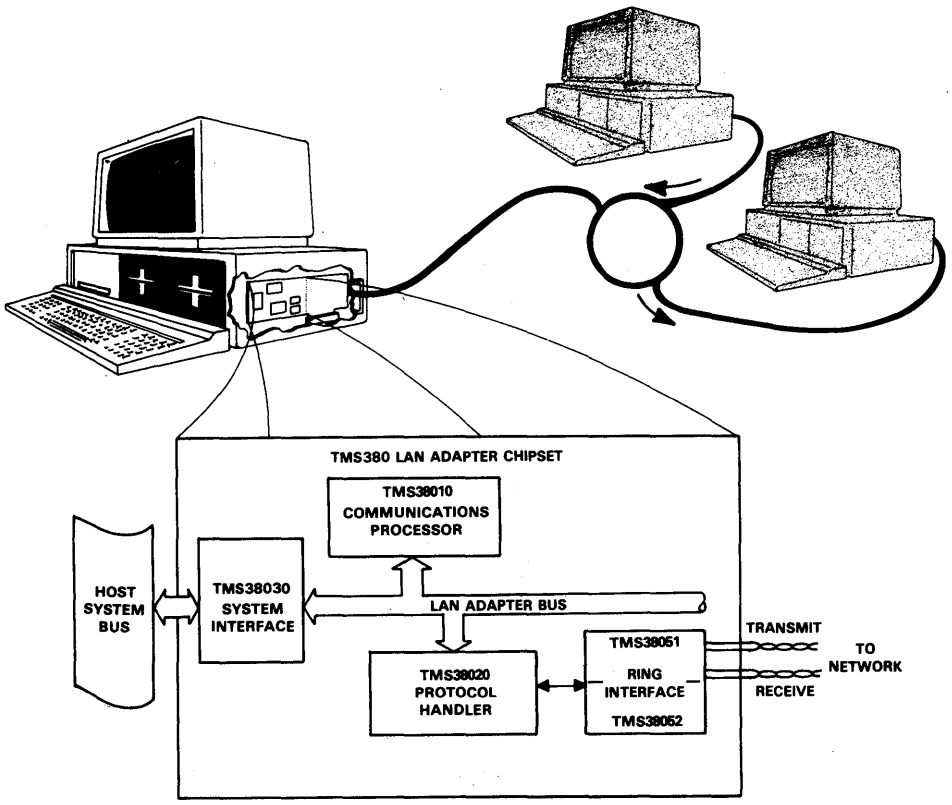


FIGURE 1-1. TMS380 LAN ADAPTER CHIPSET

The integrated architecture of the TMS380 chipset combines a high-speed DMA host-system bus interface, a 16-bit CPU with on-chip buffer RAM, a protocol handler with on-chip ROM for software, and a pair of chips for interfacing to the physical media. This approach eliminates incompatibilities that could arise with different LAN adapter cards, thus ensuring standardized LAN connectivity and multi-vendor interoperability on the IBM token ring network.

The 16K bytes of on-chip software supports highly reliable token ring operation, extensive LAN management services, and thorough self-test diagnostics. The TMS380 chipset meets the critical requirements of LAN connections for 16- and 32-bit desktop workstations by supplying a high performance LAN adapter with reduced chip count, low power dissipation, and minimal use of circuit card area. The TMS380 LAN adapter chipset has been rigorously verified by Texas Instruments and IBM to provide a compatible foundation for OEMs and end users to build long-term LAN solutions with confidence.

The TMS380 chipset is fully supported with development tools, applications information, documentation, and courses through Texas Instruments' Regional Technology Centers.

1.2 The OSI Reference Model

The Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model is a conceptual network structure defined by the International Organization for Standardization. The purpose of the OSI model is to promote the development of worldwide data-communications standardization.

Networks are partitioned into a series of layers to reduce their design complexity. These layers are hierarchical with each layer built upon its predecessor, thus shielding each layer from the details of how the services from the other layers are implemented. The OSI model is partitioned into seven layers. The bottom four layers of the model define the network and how it functions, and the top three layers define how the network is used. The seven-layer OSI model is shown below.

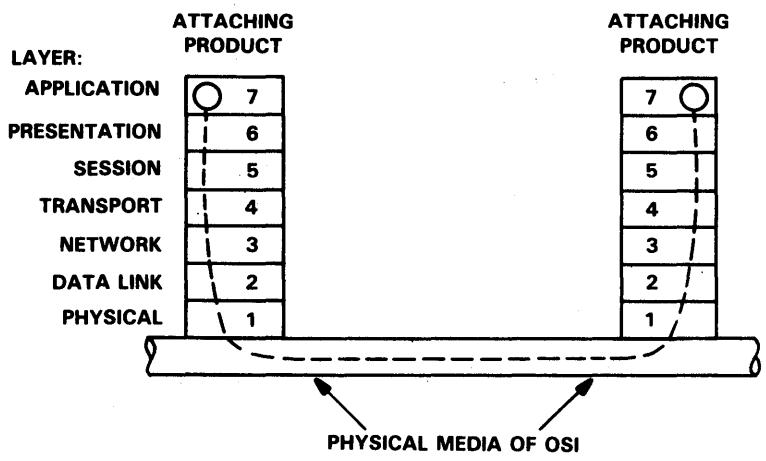


FIGURE 1-2. THE OSI REFERENCE MODEL

The illustration shows the relationship of the seven layers to one another and the path taken by communication between two attaching products.

The functions of the layers are described here in order, starting with the lowest.

- The **Physical** layer defines the mechanical and electrical connection.
- The **Data Link** layer defines the way data is formatted for transmission and how access to the network is controlled. This layer has been separated by the IEEE 802 standards committee into two sublayers: the Medium Access Control (MAC) sublayer and the Logical Link Control (LLC) sublayer. (The MAC sublayer is discussed in more detail in the next section.)

- The **Network** layer defines the routing and switching of data between networks.
- The **Transport** layer ensures that data is sent to and arrives at the destination correctly.
- The **Session** layer defines the end user's interface into the network and establishes and manages communication dialogs.
- The **Presentation** layer maps applications data structures to and from the session layer.
- The **Application** layer provides network-based services to an end user's application programs.

1.3 IEEE 802 LAN Standards

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) 802 committee has developed a set of local area network standards and protocols for the Physical and Data Link layers of the OSI model.

The Data Link layer has been divided by the IEEE 802 committee into two sublayers: the Medium Access Control (MAC) sublayer and the Logical Link Control (LLC) sublayer. To meet a variety of end-user requirements, the committee has defined three MAC technologies with associated physical media. The MAC technologies defined by IEEE 802 committee include:

- IEEE Standard 802.3, a bus topology using a Carrier Sense Multiple Access/Collision Detect (CSMA/CD) access method
- IEEE Standard 802.4, a bus topology using a token-passing access method
- IEEE Standard 802.5, a star-wired ring topology using a token-passing access method

In addition to the published standards listed above, the IEEE 802 committee has defined a Logical Link Control standard (802.2) and an internetworking and network management standard (802.1).

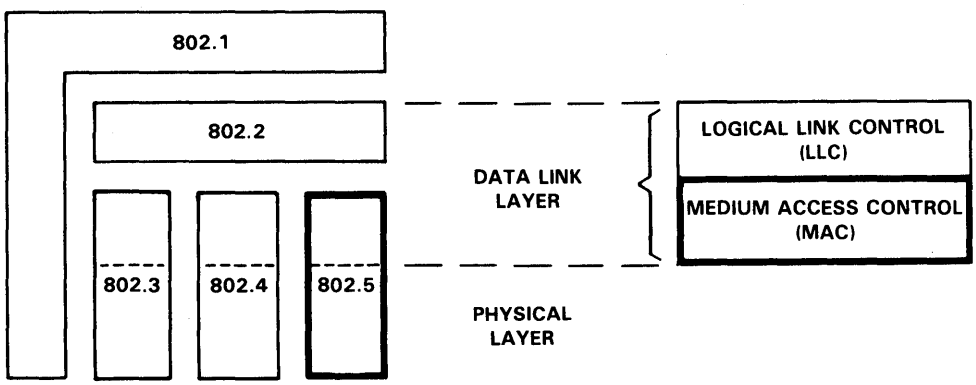


FIGURE 1-3. IEEE 802 LAN STANDARDS

1.4 The Token Ring LAN: IEEE 802.5

The IEEE 802.5 standard defines the MAC and physical sublayers for a star-wired topology. The TMS380 chipset, jointly developed by Texas Instruments and IBM, enables vendors to build LAN adapter cards that conform to the IEEE 802.5 standard.

The IEEE 802.5 standard defines a star-wired ring topology with a token-passing access method. A star-wired ring operates logically as a ring but physically resembles a star. This topology combines the point-to-point signaling advantages of a ring with the maintenance and reliability advantages of a centrally wired star.

An adapter card, based on the TMS380 chipset, is used to attach products to the network. The adapter card enables connection to the network through twisted wire-pairs, referred to as a **lobe.**

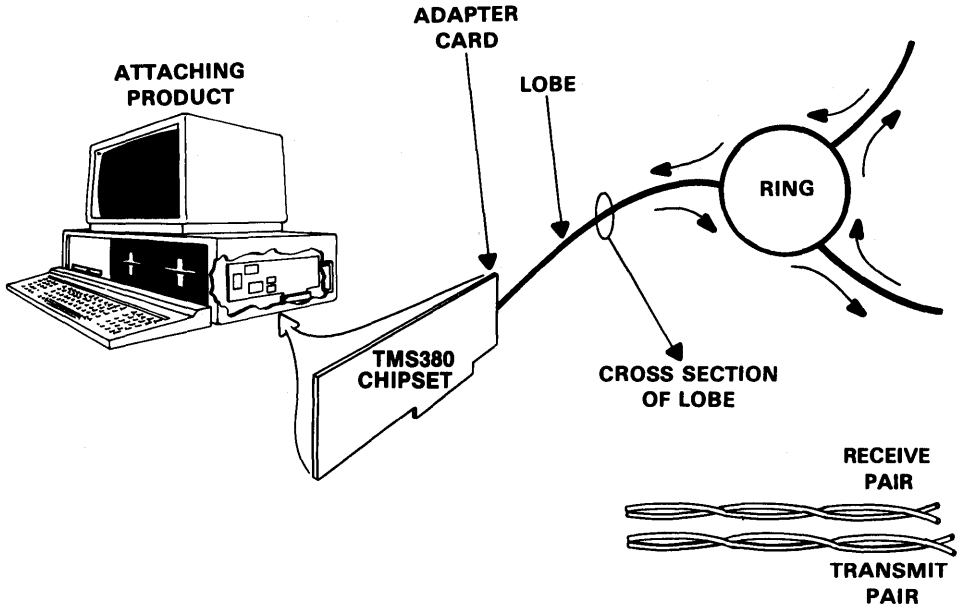


FIGURE 1-4. THE STAR-WIRED RING TOPOLOGY

The lobe connects to the ring through a wiring concentrator as shown in the illustration on the next page. In its basic form, a wiring concentrator consists of bypass relays that are normally closed, but which are switched on when an attaching product is inserted into the ring or switched off when an attaching product is de-inserted from the ring.

Each adapter card provides the insertion control to drive the relay for inserting into the ring. Products not powered on or lobes that have been damaged and cannot provide the insertion signal to the wiring concentrator are not inserted in the ring. This central concentration of the cable permits the star-wired ring LAN to be easily reconfigured, expanded, and diagnosed for problems.

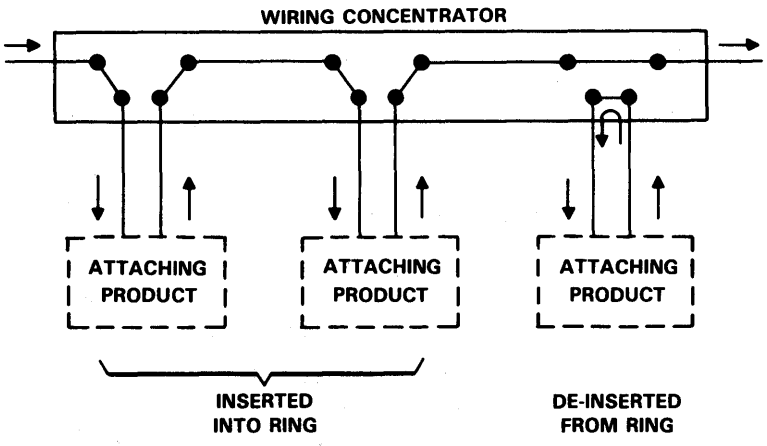


FIGURE 1-5. TOKEN RING WIRING CONCENTRATOR

Once a product is physically inserted into the ring, logical access to the ring is controlled with a token-passing protocol. A **token** is an access-granting message that circulates from node to node. Only one node can have control of the token at a time, thereby preventing data **collisions** (two or more nodes attempting to transmit at the same time).

A single token, 24 bits in length, circulates around the ring when no data is being transmitted. A node that needs to transmit data waits for a token, captures the token, and marks it "busy." The node then transmits a frame containing data onto the ring.

The destination node copies the data and acknowledges the receipt of the frame by setting the address-recognized and frame-copied bits in the frame. The node that originated the frame removes, or "strips," the frame when it circulates back. After the frame is stripped from the ring, the node releases a token. Thus, there is only one token on the ring at a time, and possession of this token gives the node exclusive use of the ring.

This deterministic approach insures orderly, collision-free access to the ring and loading-independent response times. Token-passing access also allows priority levels to be assigned to tokens, thus providing support for time-critical and synchronous traffic. The format of a token and a frame are shown below.

TOKEN FORMAT:

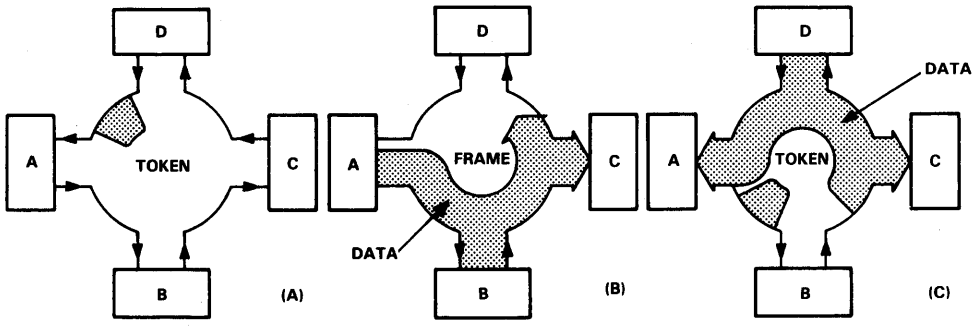
STARTING DELIMITER 1 BYTE	ACCESS CONTROL 1 BYTE	ENDING DELIMITER 1 BYTE

FRAME FORMAT:

STARTING DELIMITER 1 BYTE	ACCESS CONTROL 1 BYTE	FRAME CONTROL 1 BYTE	DESTINATION ADDRESS 6 BYTES	SOURCE ADDRESS 6 BYTES	INFORMATION FIELD	FRAME CHECK SEQUENCE 4 BYTES	ENDING DELIMITER 1 BYTE	FRAME STATUS 1 BYTE

FIGURE 1-6. FREE TOKEN FORMAT AND FRAME FORMAT

A token-passing example is shown below.



SENDER (NODE A) LOOKS FOR TOKEN.

CHANGES TOKEN TO A FRAME AND APPENDS DATA.

RECEIVER (NODE C) COPIES DATA ADDRESSED TO IT.

SENDER GENERATES TOKEN UPON RECEIPT OF PHYSICAL HEADER AND COMPLETION OF TRANSMISSION.

CONTINUES TO REMOVE DATA UNTIL RECEIPT OF PHYSICAL TRAILER.

FIGURE 1-7. TOKEN-PASSING EXAMPLE

1.5 LAN Adapter Architectures

As LANs evolved from the laboratory to the marketplace, designers recognized the importance of minimizing a LAN's overhead burden on the host system. To achieve this goal, autonomous adapter architectures were designed by adding a dedicated central processing unit (CPU), memory, and support circuits to the LAN attachment card.

Autonomous adapter architectures, as opposed to controller-based architectures with no CPU on the adapter card, are the dominant LAN design approach used today. However, because early LSI chips were targeted at LAN controller-based architectures, card designers were forced to use more chips and expend extra design effort to build an adapter card. Typical adapter cards designed around LAN controllers require a general-purpose microprocessor, RAM for buffering data, ROM for the protocol software and diagnostics, interface circuits for connecting to the media, an interface for connecting to the host system bus, and various glue circuits, as illustrated below.

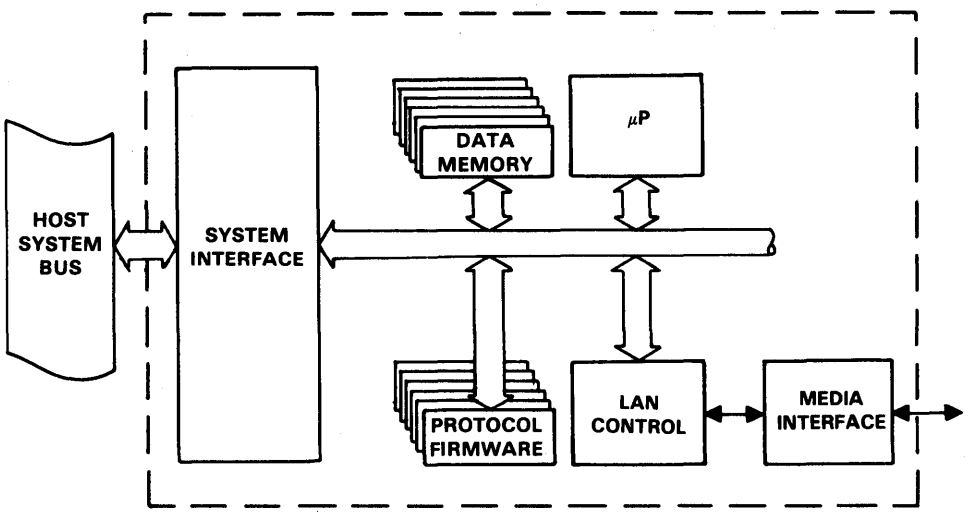


FIGURE 1-8. LAN CONTROLLER-BASED ADAPTER CARD ARCHITECTURE

The LAN controller-based approach to adapter card design suffers from high part count, high power dissipation, and wasteful use of printed circuit board area. More important, a fundamental drawback of the controller-based approach is that different adapter card designs, even those using the same LAN controller chip, do not necessarily work together on the same network. This places the burden of verifying compatibility with each card manufacturer, and eventually on the end user.

Host-independent operation of the LAN and the requirement for verified silicon standards mandated an "integrated LAN adapter architecture" for the TMS380. Through the use of advanced VLSI NMOS and bipolar processes, Texas Instruments reduced the essential building blocks needed on a LAN adapter card into the five-piece chipset shown below.

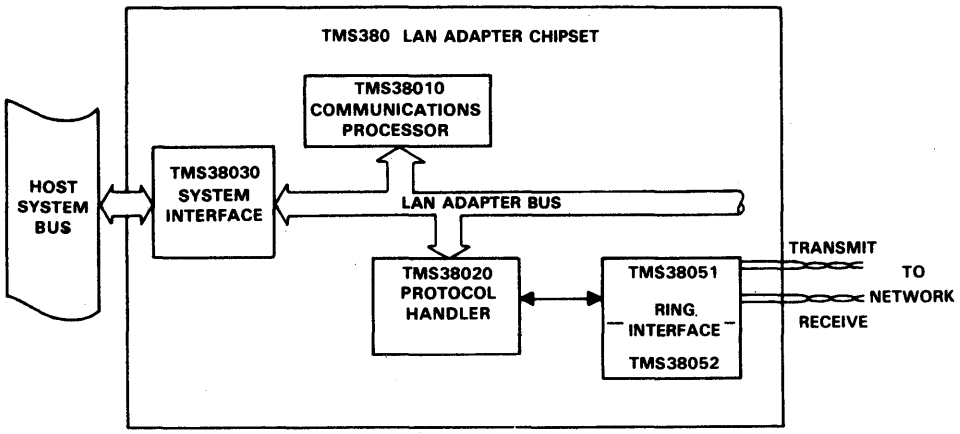


FIGURE 1-9. INTEGRATED ADAPTER ARCHITECTURE

The integrated architecture of the TMS380 chipset provides LAN designers with a total LAN adapter solution, from a flexible direct memory access (DMA) interface for the host system bus to the circuits providing the physical attachment to the LAN. The result is high-performance, low-cost LAN adapter cards with low power dissipation.

1.6 Overview of the TMS380

The TMS380 architecture integrates the functions of a LAN adapter into a five-chip set. The components of the chipset are the TMS38030 System Interface chip, the TMS38010 Communications Processor chip, the TMS38020 Protocol Handler chip, and the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface chip pair.

1.6.1 The System Interface

The TMS38030 System Interface (SIF) chip provides up to 40 megabits per second of data to the host system via DMA bus master transfers. The host system bus interface is selectable for two types of memory organization and control signals:

- 8-, 16-, and 32-bit members of the iAPX86 and Series 32000 microprocesor families
- 16- and 32-bit members of the 68000 microprocesor family

The System Interface is controlled through command blocks with a high-level command structure; for example, commands include TRANSMIT, RECEIVE, and READ ERROR LOG. (Additional details on SIF commands are provided with the examples in "Transmitting and Receiving a Frame.") The System Interface has a 24-bit address reach into the host system and a "scatter write-gather read" DMA feature that allows discontiguous memory blocks to be transferred and received via linked lists. Programmable burst transfers or cycle-steal operation and optional parity protection allow system designers to customize the TMS38030 to their particular bus.

1.6.2 The Communications Processor

The TMS38010 Communications Processor (CP) contains dedicated 16-bit CPU with 2.75K bytes of on-chip RAM. The Communications Processor executes the adapter software contained within the TMS38020. The on-chip RAM buffers the frames being transmitted and received. This high-performance CPU provides single-cycle arbitration of the 3 MHz LAN adapter bus for maximum adapter throughput. Up to 42K of expansion memory can be added to the LAN adapter bus. All on-chip RAM and expansion memory is parity protected.

1.6.3 The Protocol Handler

The TMS38020 Protocol Handler (PH) performs hardware-based protocol functions for a 4-megabit per second token ring LAN compatible with the IEEE 802.5 standard. An on-chip ROM contains 16K bytes of adapter software executed by the Communications Processor. This software supports reliable ring operation, LAN management services, and thorough diagnostic coverage of the adapter chipset.

The Protocol Handler implements differential Manchester encoding and decoding and frame-address recognition (group, specific, and functional). The Protocol Handler also contains state machines that capture tokens, transmit and receive frames, manage the adapter chipset buffer RAM, and provide token-priority controls.

Four DMA channels, two for transmit and two for receive, ensure high-speed frame transfer between the ring and the adapter's buffer RAM. Integrity of transmitted and received data is assured by cyclic redundancy checks (CRC), detection of differential Manchester code violations, and parity on internal data paths. All data paths and registers are parity-protected to assure functional integrity.

1.6.4 The Ring Interface

The TMS38051 and TMS38052, collectively the Ring Interface, are the Ring Interface Transceiver and Ring Interface Controller. These chips contain the digital and analog circuitry to connect the adapter chipset to a 4-megabit per second token ring LAN through separate receive and transmit channels.

The Ring Interface provides the clock for the ring when in active monitor mode and contains a phase lock loop for clock recovery, data detection, and phase alignment. The Ring Interface also provides the phantom drive signal to a wiring concentrator, a loop-back path for diagnostic testing, and error detection of wire faults.

1.7 Network Reliability

Day-to-day LAN operation requires a high degree of reliability. The TMS380 chipset meets this requirement with self-test diagnostics that exercise each adapter card before permitting the card to insert into the ring, and by ensuring that all adapters on the network work together to isolate and recover from problems automatically.

The TMS380 adapter chipset has designed-in hardware and software features to insure a reliable LAN. Prior to inserting into the LAN, the TMS380 adapter chipset performs a self-test by running diagnostics and a lobe media test. The software to perform these tests is contained within the Protocol Handler's ROM.

The diagnostic software, in conjunction with parity protection, address path checkers, and loop-back testing, verifies operation of the adapter chipset. The lobe media test checks the CRC circuitry and tests the entire lobe from the adapter to the wiring concentrator. This ensures that a faulty adapter card or an attaching product with a bad lobe will not be allowed to insert into the LAN and disrupt its operation. The illustration below shows how the attaching product performs self-testing of its adapter prior to insertion onto the LAN.

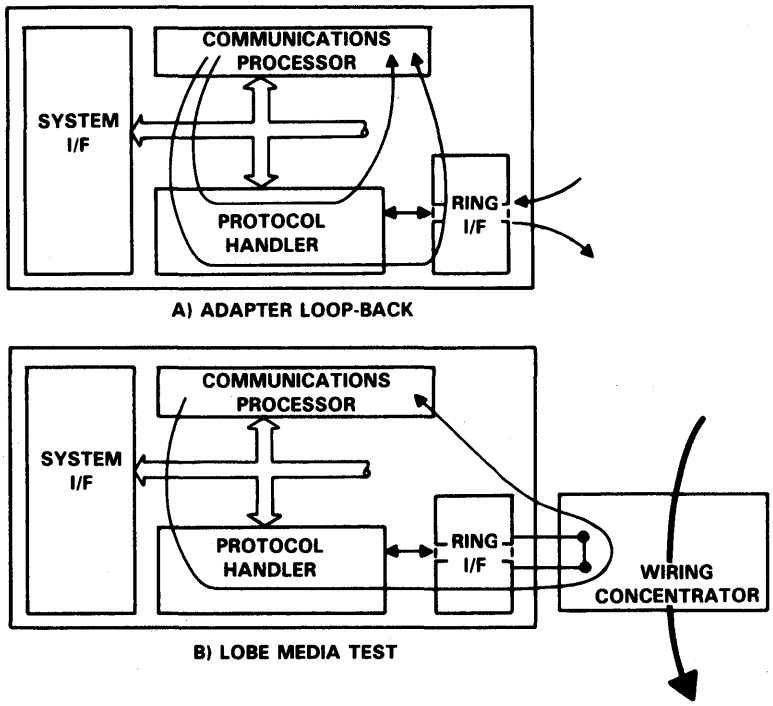


FIGURE 1-10. ADAPTER SELF-TEST

If the adapter chipset detects an error after inserting into the LAN, the adapter chipset immediately de-inserts, allowing the LAN to continue reliable operation. The adapter chipset that detects the error reruns the self-test diagnostics, re-inserts if the test passes, or stays de-inserted and signals the host system if the error condition persists.

The TMS380 adapter chipset also has the capability to allow the LAN to recover from soft errors and hard errors with minimal disruption to service. Soft errors, such as corrupted or lost tokens, are automatically handled by the adapter chipsets on the LAN. The adapter chipset that detects the error logs the condition and the LAN automatically recovers. The error condition and location is then reported to the host system and a network manager. Hard errors, such as a wire fault on the lobe or a bad receiver/transmitter on the adapter card, are also automatically isolated and resolved by the adapters on the LAN. These isolation and recovery processes are performed by the adapter chipset independent of the host system.

1.8 LAN Management Services

The TMS380 adapter chipset contains a wealth of LAN management services to build and manage reliable networks. These services are embedded in the chipset and operate independently of the attaching product.

The availability of a standard set of services enables vendors to build network management products that will operate with products independently developed by other manufacturers. Because these services are embedded in the adapter chipset, end users can confidently expand the network as requirements grow, without affecting the installed products.

The TMS380 LAN management services are provided by MAC frames that are exchanged between adapters on the ring. MAC frames are special frames that are used to control the operation of the ring; they do not transfer data.

The IEEE 802.5 standard defines six MAC frames that are used for basic ring operation. In addition to these six basic MAC frames, the TMS380 also contains MAC frames that are used with specified functional addresses on the LAN. There are over 20 MAC frames used to collect error reports automatically generated by adapter chipsets, monitor and modify the configuration of the LAN, and assign operating parameters to attached products.

The MAC frames processed by the TMS380 adapter chipset are listed below.

Response
Beacon
Ring Purge
Standby Monitor Present
Lobe Media Test
Change Parameters
Request Station Adress
Request Station Attachment
Request Initialization
Report Station State
Report Station Attachment
Report SUA Change
Report Monitor Error
Claim Token
Active Monitor Present
Duplicate Address Test
Transmit Forward
Remove Ring Station
Initialize Ring Station
Request Station State
Report Transmit Forward
Report Station Address
Report New Monitor
Report Ring Poll Failure
Report Error

1.9 Performance Features

LAN performance, as measured in user response time, is dependent on three factors: the physical data transfer rate and delays caused by the access protocols, the movement of data from the physical medium to the host system, and the efficiency of the host-based protocol software. The TMS380 adapter chipset provides features in all three of these areas.

The token-passing access protocol, operating at a 4-megabit per second data rate, results in a high-speed LAN that remains efficient and stable even during periods of high demand. The deterministic nature of a token-passing ring, whereby each node transmits only when it has the token, eliminates the performance uncertainties of collision-based LANs. The TMS380 chipset maximizes efficient use of the 4-megabit per second data rate by minimizing the delay a node imposes on the circulating token or frame. The TMS380 imposes a mere 2.5 bit time delay per node.

The adapter presents a full-duplex interface to the host system with separate receive and transmit channels between the adapter and the LAN. The adapter hardware has been designed to handle reception of back-to-back frames on the LAN and to allow simultaneous reception and tansmission of data at the full ring data rate.

The adapter chipset has separate receive and transmit lines to the LAN, two separate pairs of DMA channels in the TMS38020 Protocol Handler for both receive and transmit, and a 48-megabit per second LAN adapter bus with single-cycle arbitration for internal adapter transfers. A 40-megabit per second DMA controller connects the LAN adapter bus to the host system bus.

Host system protocol efficiency is improved with the TMS380 LAN adapter chipset. The chipset offers the designer configurable options such as cycle-steal programmable-burst mode operation, a linked-list interface controlled by high-level commands, polled or interrupt operation, and list-suspension capability to allow the host system to interrogate portions of an incoming frame. The adapter chipset can also "scatter write-gather read" to and from discontiguous memory locations in the host during DMA transfers. Up to three high-level commands (such as TRANSMIT, RECEIVE, and READ ERROR LOG) can be queued simultaneously on the adapter chipset at any time.

The flow of data between host system, the LAN adapter chipset, and the ring is shown below.

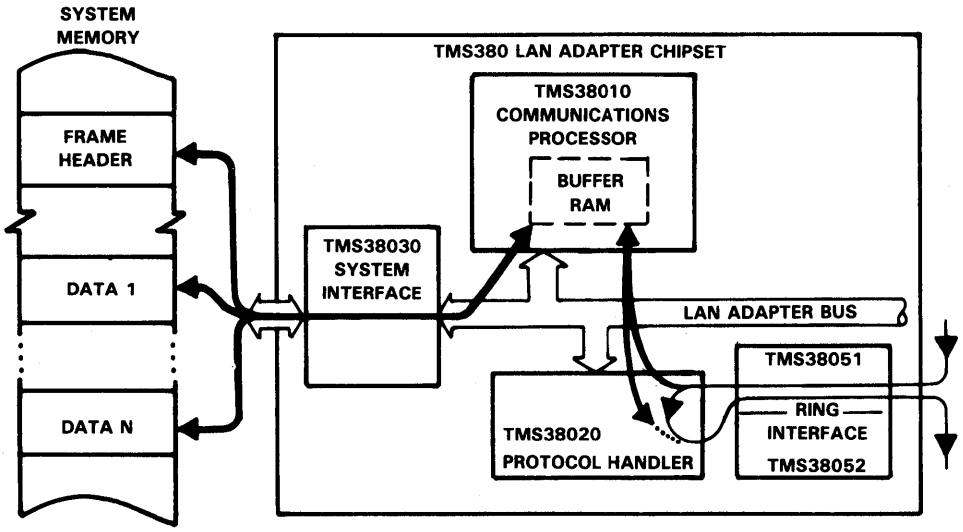


FIGURE 1-11. ADAPTER DATA FLOW

1.10 Transmitting and Receiving a Frame

The TMS380 chipset presents a linked-list interface to the host system bus that is controlled by high-level commands.

During adapter chipset initialization, a host system configures the adapter interface. The adapter chipset can be initialized to match specific host system bus requirements. Examples of the initialization parameters include: interrupt conditions and frequency, buffer sizes and allocation of these buffers to either transmit or receive channels, expansion memory, and the setting of addresses. Command and status information is passed between the adapter and host system via two control blocks:

- System Command Block (SCB)
- System Status Block (SSB)

To transmit a frame, the host system first interrupts the adapter chipset. The adapter then DMA reads the System Command Block. The SCB contains the transmit command and the starting address of the transmit list that resides in host system memory. The adapter chipset then transfers the transmit list from the host system to the adapter's buffer RAM using DMA. Next, the adapter transfers the entire frame to the adapter RAM, and the adapter chipset captures a token and transmits the frame onto the LAN. The frame will circulate to the destination address, which copies the data and returns the frame to circulate on the LAN. When the frame returns to the originating adapter chipset, it is stripped and a token is released. The System Status Block is updated by the adapter and transferred to the host system.

This procedure is illustrated on the following page.

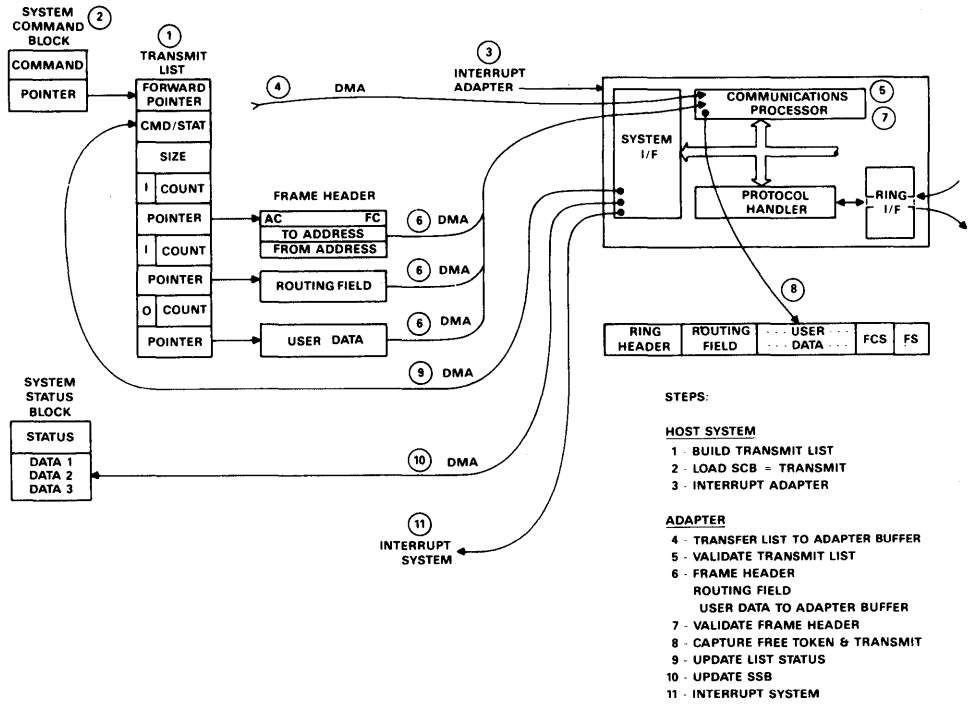


FIGURE 1-12. TRANSMITTING A FRAME

A frame is received in a manner similar to the way it is transmitted. An SCB is issued to the adapter pointing to the receive list in host system memory. Upon reception of a frame, the adapter will transfer the receive list from the host system to the adapter RAM and then transfer the received data to the appropriate location in host system memory. The SSB is then updated.

1.11 Package Type and Power Dissipation

The package type and power dissipation of the five chips are shown below.

DEVICE	PACKAGE TYPE	POWER DISSIPATION
TMS38010 Communications Processor	48-pin DIP	750 mW
TMS38020 Protocol Handler	48-pin DIP	550 mW
TMS38030 System Interface	100-pin PGA	950 mW
TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver	22-pin DIP	350 mW
TMS38052 Ring Interface Controller	20-pin DIP	250 mW

1.12 TMS380 User's Guide Organization

This User's Guide provides information about the TMS380 LAN adapter chipset for hardware and software engineers, network planners and architects. The hardware engineer will find the Application Examples in section 2, portions of Adapter Design in section 4, and the Data Sheets in Appendix A particularly useful. Software engineers should focus on Communications Services in section 3, portions of Adapter Design in section 4, and the Appendices. The network planner and architects should review portions of the entire User's Guide.

Section 2. Application Examples: This section contains examples of adapter card designs using the TMS380 adapter chipset. Design examples include an adapter card for IBM PC family (8 bit), a PC AT card, and 680XX-family interface example.

Section 3. Communications Services: This section describes the architecture, operation and services provided by the TMS380 adapter chipset as it relates to the Physical and Medium Access Control (MAC) layers, network management and security services, and error reporting.

Section 4. Adapter Design: This section describes the hardware and software interface as viewed from the host system, the ring interface, and the LAN adapter bus.

Section 5. Appendices: Appendix A contains data sheets on all the chips. Appendix B.1 contains a summary of the Medium Access Control (MAC) frames. Appendix B.2 illustrates a technique for implementing a 'burned in' address. Appendix B.3 contains ordering information and package mechanical data, followed by a Glossary of Terms in Appendix B.4.

2. APPLICATION EXAMPLES

2.1 Introduction

This section provides application examples that demonstrate how the TMS380 LAN Adapter chipset attaches to different host system buses with various data movement methods. The TMS380 Adapter chipset attaches to a host system bus through the TMS38030 System Interface chip (SIF). The TMS38030 provides the designer with a high performance, user configurable interface that minimizes logic between the TMS380 Adapter chipset and the host system bus.

This section includes four application examples that show the TMS380 interface to both iAPX-86 and 68000-style buses. In both interfaces, the TMS38030 automatically comprehends the different memory orientations and reduces byte swapping overhead on the attaching product. These examples describe data movement methods including input/output register moves under host processor control, a shared memory interface, and direct memory access whereby the TMS380 is a powerful DMA controller that provides up to a 40 megabit-per-second data transfer rate to the attaching product. Additional details on the TMS38030, the hardware interface, and the software interface can be found in Section 4, Adapter Design, and in the TMS38030 data sheet.

The four application examples are:

2.2. An interface to the 8-bit PC bus that uses data moves through the I/O space of the PC.

2.3. An interface to the 8-bit PC bus that uses string moves through a memory mapped register.

2.4. An interface to the 16-bit PC AT bus that uses DMA data moves from the TMS38030.

2.5. An interface to a 16-bit 68000-style microprocessor that uses DMA data moves from the TMS38030.

2.2 PC Family LAN Adapter Card: I/O Mapped Design Example

This example describes a TMS380-based LAN adapter card that interfaces to the 8-bit expansion slot of the IBM PC family and compatibles. This example demonstrates an interface design that allows a PC-executed software loop to transfer data to and from the LAN adapter card via the PC's I/O address space. The average data rate across this interface is 496k bits-per-second for the PC and PC/XT and 1.184 megabits-per-second for the PC AT.

2.2.1 Theory of Operation

Since the TMS38030 System Interface (SIF) requires control of the host system bus for data transfers (DMA operation), this application uses an external register block containing data and address registers, address decode, and control logic to connect the PC I/O channel to the TMS38030. This block diagram is shown in Figure 2-1.

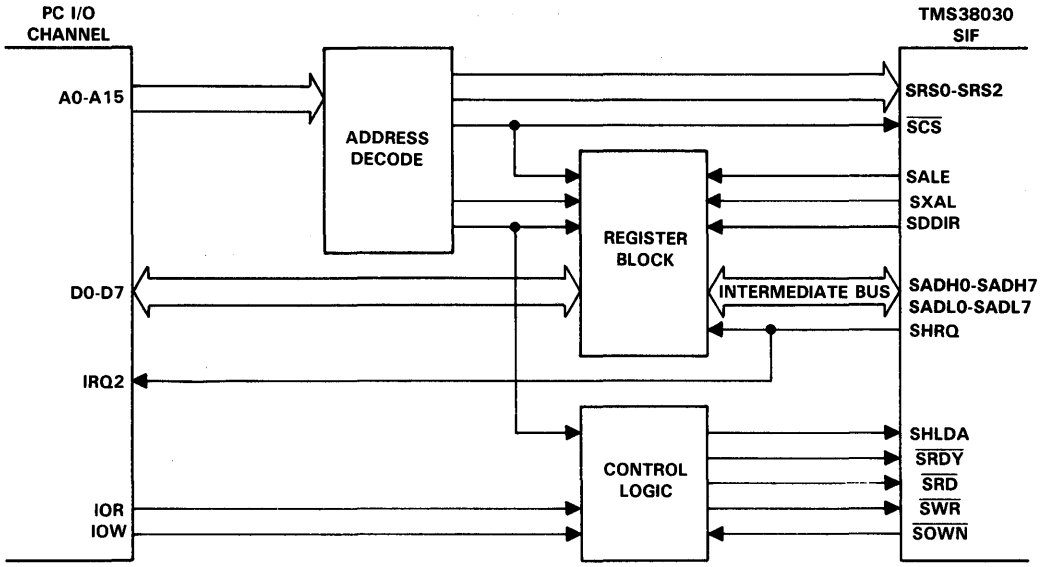


FIGURE 2-1. I/O MAPPED DESIGN BLOCK DIAGRAM

Data transfer between the PC and the LAN adapter card is a two-step process. The first step involves the transfer of a data byte to an external data register. During a data transfer from the Adapter to the PC, the TMS38030 writes data to this external register. During a data transfer from the PC to the Adapter, the PC writes data to the external register.

The second step involves reading the external data register by either the PC or the Adapter, depending on the direction of the transfer.

This two-step approach allows the PC to control its system bus while the TMS38030 controls an intermediate bus connected to the register block.

2.2.1.1 Register Block

The register block provides five external registers accessible to the PC: a data register (DATABUF), a status register (STATBUF), and three registers for holding the 24-bit direct memory access (DMA) address as output by the TMS38030; the extended address byte (HADRBUF), the address middle byte (MADRBUF), and the address low byte (LADRBUF).

The data register (DATABUF) is the external holding register used for PC-to-Adapter and Adapter-to-PC data transfers. This register may be read or written by either the TMS38030 or the PC.

The Status Register (STATBUF), when read by the PC, provides the logic state of the TMS38030's SDDIR (data direction), SHRQ (hold request), and SINTR (interrupt request) output pins. SDDIR is used by the PC to determine the direction of the data transfer. SHRQ is used by the PC to determine when a data transfer is completed.

The Address Registers are latched with DMA address information during DMA operations by the TMS38030's SXAL (extended address latch) and SALE (address latch enable) signals. These registers allow the PC to acquire the starting address for the data transfer to or from the PC memory space. Since TMS38030 DMA operations are always to sequential system memory locations, these registers need only to be read once by the PC for every DMA event initiated.

2.2.1.2 Address Decode Block

The decode block in Figure 2-1 decodes the I/O address from the PC I/O channel and determines whether an external register is addressed or whether an internal TMS38030 DIO register is addressed. If a register within the register block is addressed, the appropriate enable signal is activated. The output of the address decode block is also presented to the control logic block, as shown in Figure 2-1.

2.2.1.3 Control Logic Block

When the TMS38030 begins a DMA transfer, the TMS38030 first takes signal SHRQ (hold request) active. This signal is fed into the PC's IRQ2 (interrupt request) input. This causes the PC to be interrupted, and execution of an interrupt service routine begins. A flow chart of the interrupt service routine is shown in Figure 2-2.

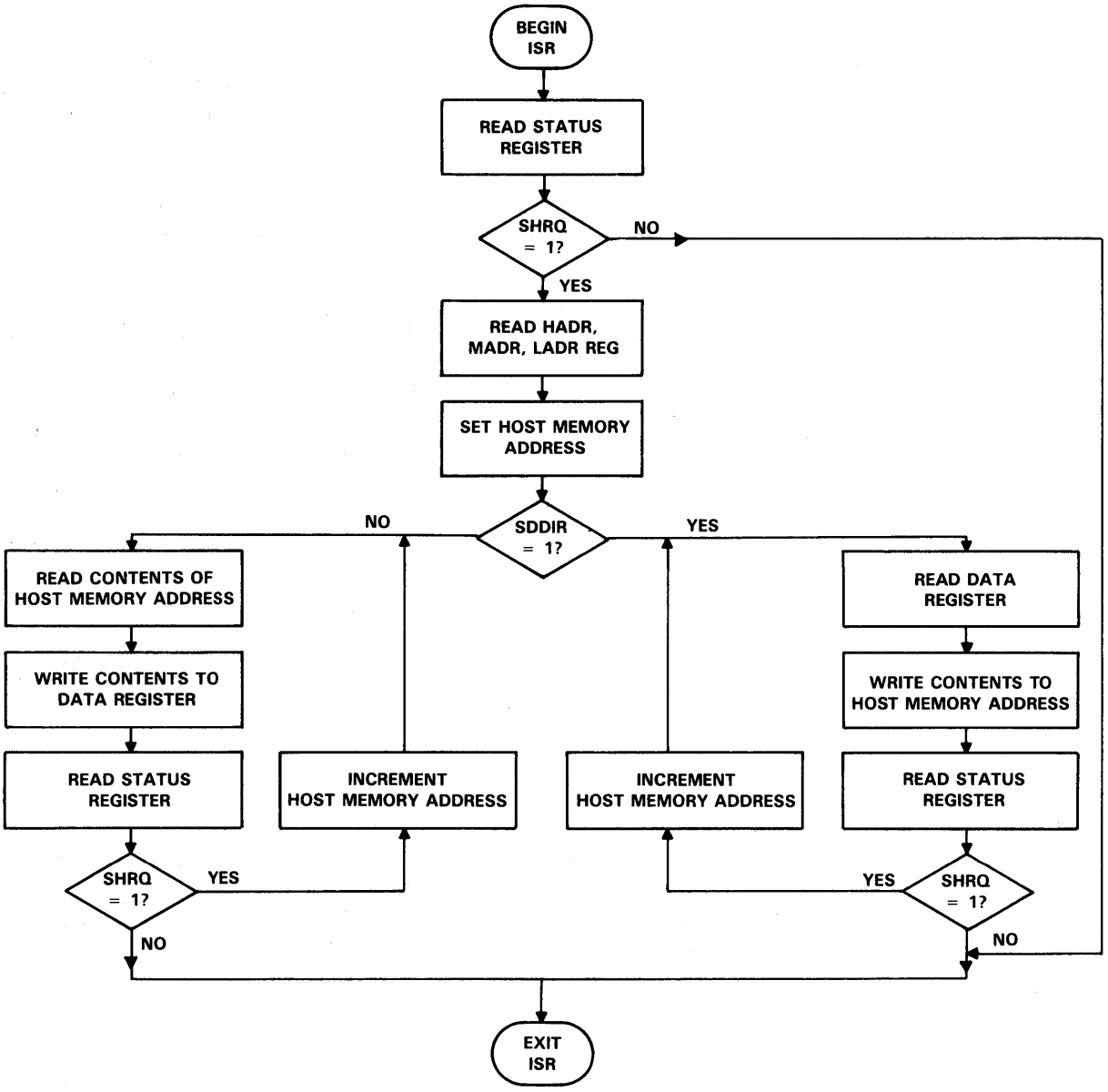


FIGURE 2-2. INTERRUPT SERVICE ROUTINE FLOWCHART — I/O MAPPED EXAMPLE

The PC first reads the contents of STATBUF to determine the direction of transfer and the status of the SHRQ signal. If SHRQ is not high, the interrupt service routine is terminated. By reading STATBUF when SHRQ is active, the PC causes the control logic to assert SHLDA (hold acknowledge) and deassert $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ (ready). The TMS38030 will take control of the intermediate bus and latch the 24-bit DMA address into the three address registers. However, since $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ is deasserted, the TMS38030 will remain in a wait state until the PC completes a read or write operation on an external register.

At this point, the PC reads the three address registers and initializes the software loop with the starting address of the transfer.

The direction of the transfer is determined by the state of the SDDIR signal read from STATBUF. If SDDIR is zero, a DMA read operation (PC-to-Adapter) is denoted. If SDDIR is one, a DMA write operation (Adapter-to-PC) is denoted.

After determining the direction of transfer, the PC either moves the data byte from DATABUF to system memory (DMA write) or moves the next byte from system memory to DATABUF (DMA read).

The PC must examine SHRQ in STATBUF following each transfer to determine if the data transfer is complete. If SHRQ is found to be inactive, the data transfer is complete and the interrupt service routine is terminated; otherwise, the address pointer, which points to the next location to be read or written, is incremented and the software loop continues.

The $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ signal to the TMS38030 is used to control the TMS38030's access to the intermediate bus. In this way the TMS38030 is "throttled": data flow to and from the TMS38030 is controlled by the PC's software loop within the Interrupt Service Routine. For DIO access to the internal registers of the TMS38030, the control logic block (shown in Figure 2-1) is responsible for control of $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ as well as the TMS38030's SHLDA and $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ (read enable) and $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ (write enable) signals.

2.3 PC Family LAN Adapter Card: Memory-Mapped Example

This example of a TMS380-based LAN adapter card for the IBM PC family is similar in design approach to the example in Section 2.2. However, this example features a register mapped into the memory map of the PC allowing the string move instruction of the PC CPU to be used in lieu of the input/output instructions. The efficiency gained in using the string move instruction within the interrupt service routine allows the average data rate through the PC I/O channel to be increased to 2.8 megabits-per-second for the PC and PC/XT and 6 megabits-per-second for the PC AT.

2.3.1 Theory of Operation

To use the string move instruction of the PC CPU, it is necessary to know the length of the string to be moved. In this example, the string length is equal to the length of the direct memory access (DMA) as requested by the TMS38030. Information regarding the length of a DMA transfer is not available from the host bus side of the TMS38030 System Interface but is available on the LAN Adapter bus. Thus, additional hardware can provide the PC CPU the length of a DMA operation when the TMS38030 first requests a DMA transfer (when the TMS38030 takes SHRQ active-high).

2.3.1.1 DMA Length Register

The length of DMA transfers is provided to the host bus by mapping the TMS38030's SDMALEN (System DMA Length) register, on the LAN Adapter bus, to a read-only register accessible to the PC CPU. This register is shown in the block diagram in Figure 2-3.

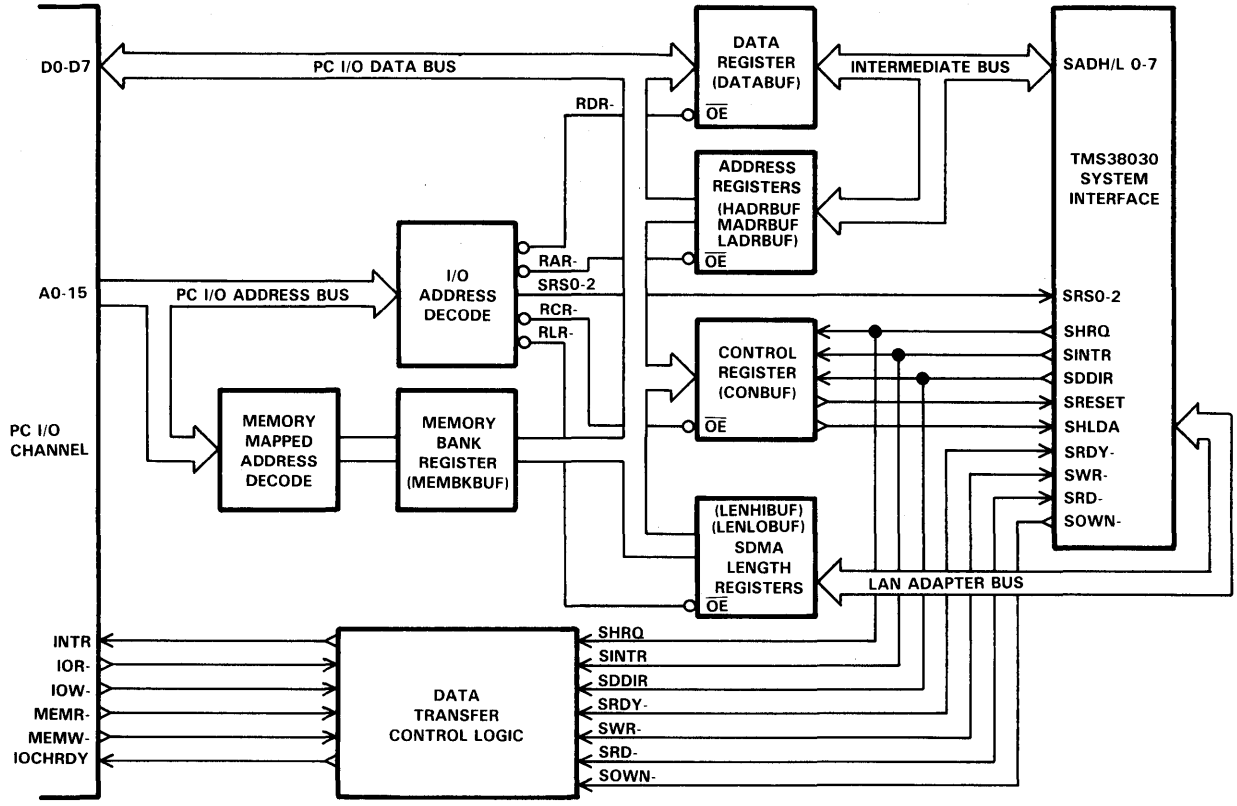


FIGURE 2-3. MEMORY MAPPED DESIGN BLOCK DIAGRAM

When the TMS38030 is initialized for a DMA transfer by the TMS38010 Communications Processor, the SDMALEN register will be loaded with the length of the transfer. This action, the TMS38010 writing to the SDMALEN register, will result in the read-only host bus register also being loaded. Thus, the PC CPU may read the length of the transfer for use by the string move instruction.

2.3.1.2 Memory Mapped Data Register

Like the I/O mapped example provided in Section 2.2, data transfer between the PC and the LAN adapter card is a two-step process. The first step involves the transfer of a data byte to an external data register. During a data transfer from the Adapter to the PC, the TMS38030 writes data to this external register. During a data transfer from the PC to the Adapter, the PC writes data to the external register.

The second step involves reading the external data register by either the PC or the Adapter, depending on the direction of the transfer.

This data register is mapped into the memory map of the PC so that a string move instruction may be used. This differs from the I/O mapped design example which described the data register residing in the I/O map of the PC. Using a string move instruction in lieu of input and output instructions reduces the number of bus cycles required to move a block of data thus increasing the overall bus throughput. This memory-mapped register is shown in Figure 2-3.

2.3.1.3 Other I/O Mapped Registers

The register block mapped into the I/O space of the PC contains eight 8-bit registers including the read-only DMA length registers (LENLOWBUF and LENHIBUF) as previously described. The additional registers include a status/control register (CONBUF/STATBUF), an I/O mapped equivalent to the memory mapped data register (DATABUF), and three registers for holding the 24-bit direct memory access (DMA) address as output by the TMS38030: the extended address byte (HADRBUF), the address middle byte (MADRBUF), and the address low byte (LADRBUF).

The I/O mapped data register (DATABUF) provides the equivalent of the memory mapped data register mapped into the I/O space of the PC. DATABUF would only be used if memory space was not available for the memory mapped data register. In this event, data transfer would use the I/O instructions of the 8088 as shown in Section 2.2.

The control/status register (CONBUF/STATBUF), when read by the PC, provides the logic state of the TMS38030's SDDIR (data direction), SHRQ (hold request), and SINTR (interrupt request) output pins. SDDIR is used by the PC to determine the direction of the data transfer.

The control/status register (CONBUF/STATBUF) is written by the PC to control the state of SHLDA (hold acknowledge) to the TMS38030. This allows the PC to initiate TMS38030 data transfer to and from the data registers (both I/O and memory mapped). The CONBUF/STATBUF register may also be used to control other functions of the Adapter card like enabling interrupts, controlling address decode circuitry or providing a software reset. The implementation of these functions is not discussed in this example.

2.3.1.4 Address Decode

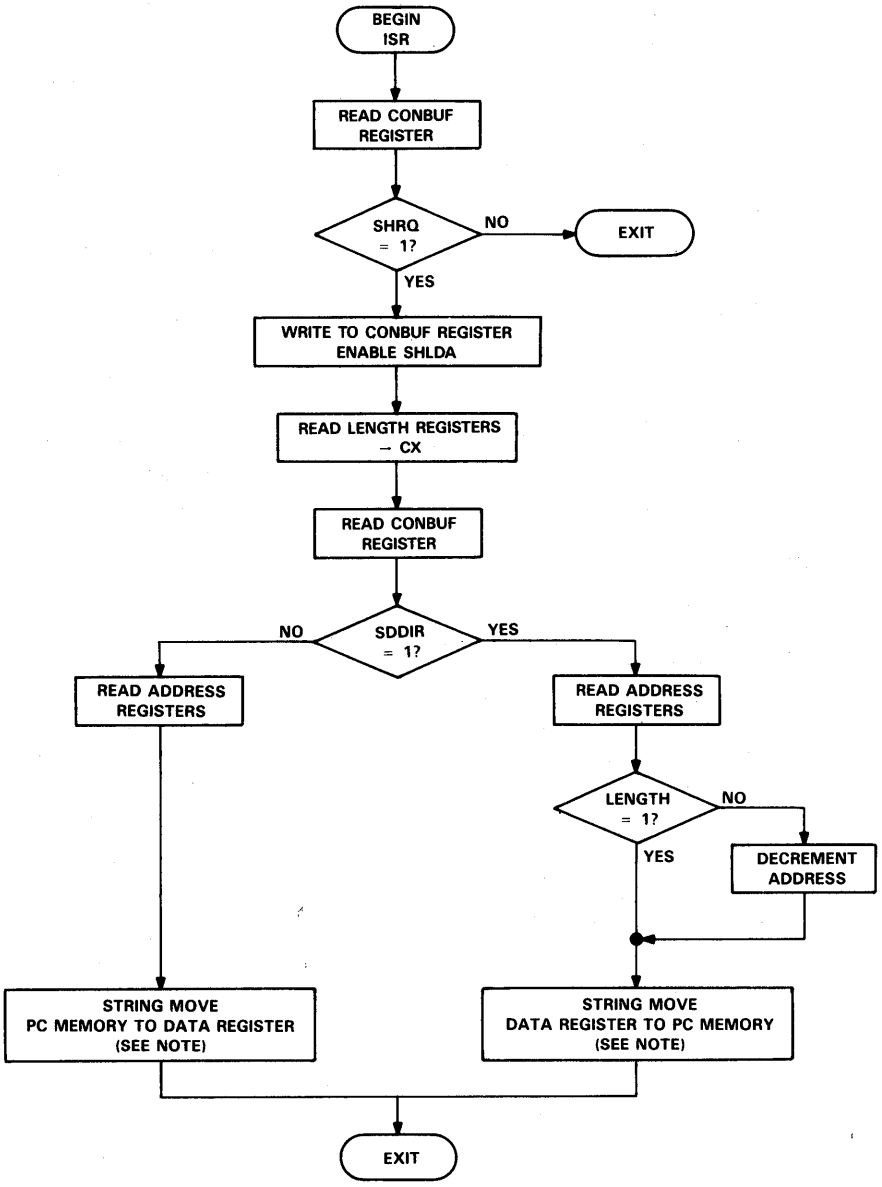
Address decoding (both I/O and memory) must be done to select the appropriate I/O mapped register or the memory mapped data register. Because the memory mapped data register is accessed using the string move instruction, this register must respond to the number of addresses corresponding to the length of the string. The length of the string corresponds to the length of the DMA operation as contained in the read-only DMA length register. Thus, the memory mapped data register actually occupies more memory locations in the PC than its physical size.

For simplicity, the address decode for the memory mapped data register may be designed to map the data register within an 8K byte boundary in the PC's memory address space. Thus, string moves up through 8K bytes may be used, however, the actual length of string moves can be much smaller.

Care must be exercised to assure that the memory mapped data register occupies a unique 8K byte window in the PC's memory map to avoid PC I/O channel bus conflicts.

2.3.1.5 Interrupt Service Routine

When the TMS38030 begins a DMA transfer, the TMS38030 first takes SHRQ (hold request) active. This signal is fed into one of the PC's IRQ (interrupt request) signals. This causes the PC to be interrupted, and execution of an interrupt service routine is started. A flowchart of this interrupt service routine is shown in Figure 2-4.



NOTE: The string move instruction automatically increments the source and destination addresses for each byte until the CX register is decremented to zero.

FIGURE 2-4. INTERRUPT SERVICE ROUTINE FLOWCHART — MEMORY MAPPED EXAMPLE

2.4 PC AT LAN Adapter Card Example

This example describes a TMS380-based LAN adapter card for the IBM PC AT. This design differs from the previous two examples in that the DMA interface of the TMS38030 System Interface is connected directly to the 16-bit system bus of the PC AT. Thus a simpler and higher performance interface is achieved. The average data rate across this interface is 24 megabits-per-second based upon a 6-megahertz PC AT system bus clock.

2.4.1 Theory of Operation

2.4.1.1 Bus Demultiplexing

Because the PC AT system bus allows bus mastership to be obtained by expansion cards in the chassis, the TMS38030 can transfer network data directly to and from PC memory. However, since the PC AT system bus is a non-multiplexed bus having separate data and address lines, the TMS38030 bus interface must be demultiplexed. As shown in Figure 2-5, the 74ALS373 address latches and the 74ALS245 data bus transceivers demultiplex the TMS38030 bus interface. Address latching is facilitated by the TMS38030 signals SXAL (extended address latch) and SALE (address latch enable). The TMS38030 signals $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ (system bus owned), SDDIR (bus direction), and $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ (bus enable) provide output control and data buffer control with a minimum of external logic.

2.4.1.2 Direct Input/Output

The TMS38030 contains four 16-bit registers for Adapter initialization and interrupt control. These registers are mapped into the I/O address space of the PC AT's iAPX286 processor and are accessed under programmed direct I/O (DIO) control. The DIO cycle begins when the host iAPX86 processor provides a proper address on lines SA15-SA0 and an Address Enable (AEN). Addresses SA15 through SA3, as well as AEN, are decoded in U8, the Decode PAL, producing $\overline{\text{CS}}$. Addresses SA0-SA2 are tied to SRS2, SRS1, and SRS0, respectively, selecting the desired TMS38030 register. $\overline{\text{CS}}$ is gated with $\overline{\text{IOR}}$ and $\overline{\text{IOW}}$, the read and write controls of the host processor, generating $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ to the TMS38030. $\overline{\text{IOR}}$ and $\overline{\text{IOW}}$ are routed through U5 to $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ or $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ distinguishing between a DIO read and a DIO write. Generated in the interface logic is $\overline{\text{IOCS16}}$, which signals the host system bus that a 16-bit data transfer is in progress. Once the TMS38030 recognizes a DIO cycle, it asserts both $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ and SDDIR which configure the tri-state data transceivers, U2 and U3. The TMS38030 then asserts $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ low to indicate that the data transfer is complete. $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ high keeps the host system bus "not ready" by holding IOCHRDY low. $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ falling low allows IOCHRDY to go high indicating "ready". At this point, the DIO cycle is complete and the host processor may remove its control signals.

2.4.1.3 Direct Memory Access

A DMA operation requires that the TMS38030 acquire control of the host system bus. The TMS38030 requests bus control by asserting SHRQ high, which corresponds to DRQ6 asserted on the host system bus. The host processor acknowledges the request by asserting $\overline{\text{DACK6}}$ which is inverted in U9, the GLUE PAL, and presented to SHLDA of the TMS38030. Upon receiving SHLDA, the TMS38030 responds by asserting $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ low, indicating bus ownership. $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ acts to turn on the address transceivers U4, U6, and U7, and asserts $\overline{\text{MASTER}}$, indicating to the host processor that the TMS38030 has control of the host system bus. $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ also properly configures U5 for DMA signal directions. Upon gaining bus control, the TMS38030 drives SDDIR to provide proper direction of the data transceivers U3 and U4. On the first DMA cycle, the TMS38030 drives 24 bits of address with the highest byte latched by SXAL into U4. The middle and lower bytes are latched by SALE into U6 and U7, respectively. The TMS38030 asserts $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ or $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ depending upon whether a read or write transfer is in progress; these signals map to $\overline{\text{MEMR}}$ and $\overline{\text{MEMW}}$ through U5. The TMS38030 then asserts $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ to enable data transceivers U2 and U3. The cycle completes normally, unless wait states are inserted into the cycle by some system slave device deasserting IOCHRDY low. Ensuing cycles continue in the same manner; however, the highest address byte is not changed unless an address carry occurs from the low-order byte into the middle byte. The 74ALS161A synchronous 4-bit counter (U11) provides a hardware-based mechanism to limit DMA burst size to 15. This is necessary to allow periodic PC AT RAM refresh to occur. The counter will count 15 SALE transitions before asserting $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$. When $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ is asserted, the TMS38030 will relinquish control of the PC bus and will take $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ inactive high. When $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ goes high, the counter will be reset. The TMS38030 will immediately re-request the PC bus (assert SHRQ) following release of the bus. This hardware-based burst-size control offers a performance advantage over software-based burst size parameters passed during Adapter initialization. See Section 2.6 for a discussion of these performance issues.

To relinquish the host system bus, the TMS38030 deasserts SHRQ, tri-states its driven I/O signals and deasserts $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$. This deasserts DRQ6 and $\overline{\text{MASTER}}$ of the host system bus, indicating that the bus is free.

2.4.1.4 Interrupt and Reset

The TMS38030 requests an interrupt by asserting SINTR high, which drives IRQ6 high indicating an interrupt request to the host system processor. The host processor clears the interrupt by writing a zero to the ninth most-significant-bit of the Interrupt Register.

The Adapter can be reset when the host processor asserts RESET DRV, which activates $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ of the TMS38030.

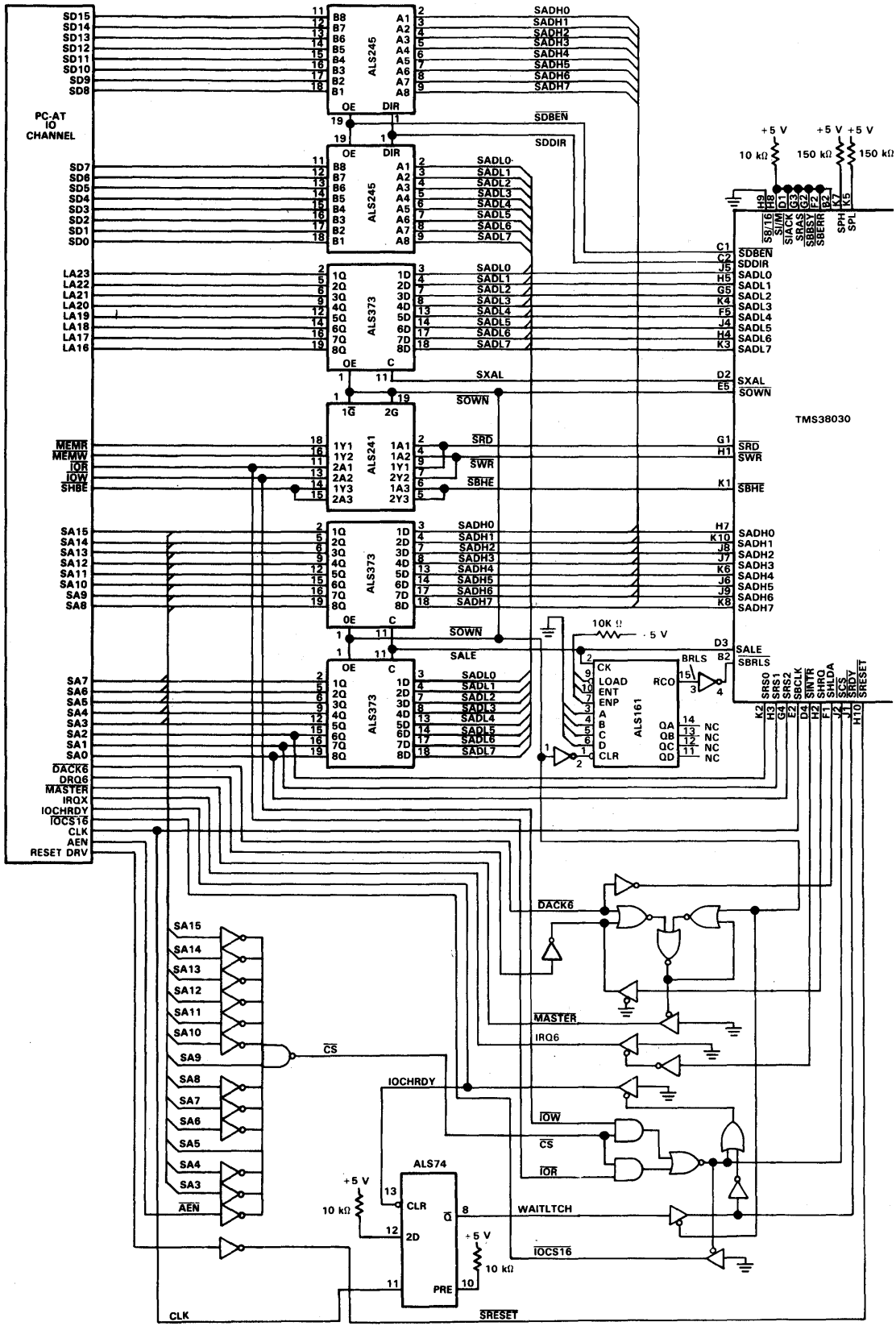


FIGURE 2-5. TMS380 INTERFACE TO IBM PC AT SYSTEM BUS

2.5 68000 Bus Interface Example

This example illustrates an interface between the TMS38030 System Interface and a 68000-style bus. Because the TMS38030 provides a pin-strap selectible 680XX-type bus mode, this interface is implemented with a minimum of interface components. The performance of this interface is dependent upon the system bus throughput capability, but can approach 40 megabits-per-second from the Adapter to host memory. Because the 68000 does not have a multiplexed address/data bus, the address and data bus from the TMS38030 are de-multiplexed prior to presentation to the 68000 system bus. This example illustrates address/data bus demultiplexing using the bus control signals provided by the TMS38030 System Interface (SIF).

2.5.1 Theory of Operation

2.5.1.1 SIF Configuration

The TMS38030 is configured in 680XX mode by applying logic low to pin SI/$\overline{M}$. In this mode, the TMS38030 provides a 16-bit data path and 24 bits of address capable of addressing up to 16 megabytes of memory.

2.5.1.2 Bus Control

During DMA, addresses and data are multiplexed over the SAD lines of the TMS38030 requiring three 8-bit latches (74ALS373) and two transceivers (74ALS245) to demultiplex the address and data, as shown in Figure 2-6. The transceivers' direction is controlled by SDDIR which is low during Direct Input/Output (DIO) writes and Direct Memory Access (DMA) reads and high during DIO reads and DMA writes. The transceiver's output enables are driven by System Data Bus Enable ($\overline{SDBEN}$). The output enables in the address latches are driven by System Bus Owned ($\overline{SOWN}$) during DMA cycles. System Extended Address Latch (SXAL) of the SIF is used to latch the extended address bits. System Address Latch Enable (SALE) is used to latch the low address bits. In this example, the parity lines SPL and SPH are not used, and are pulled up by external resistors.

Another transceiver is used to control the bus signals between the TMS38030 and the host system. $\overline{SOWN}$ controls this transceiver's direction. When $\overline{SOWN}$ is active-low, the control lines are driven from the TMS38030. When $\overline{SOWN}$ is inactive-high, the control lines are driven from the system bus.

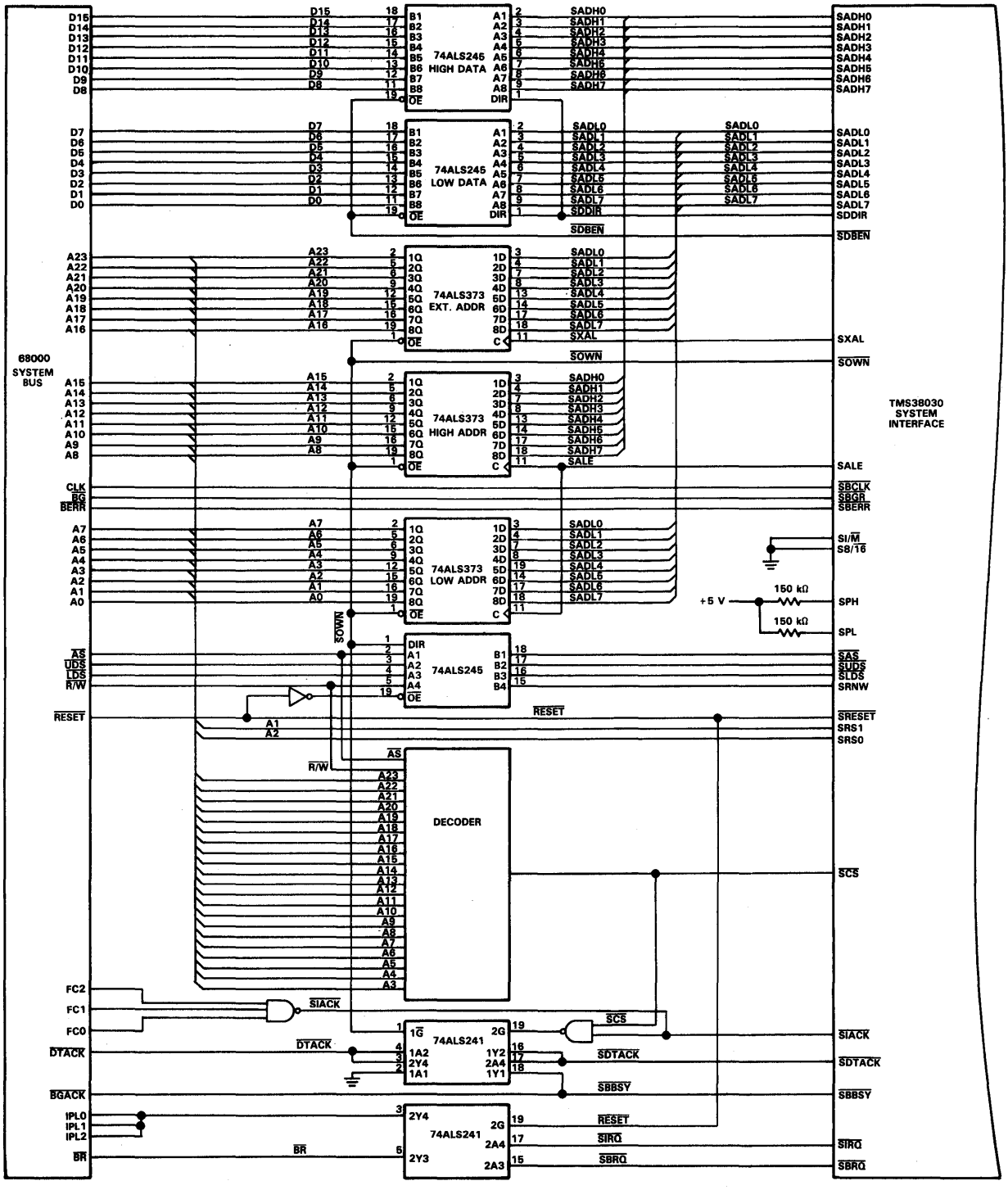


FIGURE 2-6. TMS380 INTERFACE TO A 68000-STYLE BUS

Addresses A3 through A23, as well as $\overline{AS}$ and R/$\overline{W}$, are decoded to drive $\overline{SCS}$ low during DIO cycles. Since the address mapping of the Adapter registers is system dependent, decoding is indicated by a block termed "decode". The least significant address lines, A1 and A2, are tied to SRS0 and SRS1, respectively, to select the TMS38030 registers.

In Figure 2-6, the interrupt request is set to the highest priority level (level 7) through a line driver (74ALS241). The system's Function Codes (FC0-2) are monitored to drive System Interrupt Acknowledge ($\overline{SIACK}$) when appropriate.

Note that the system must provide a pullup resistor on the $\overline{UDS}$ (upper data strobe), $\overline{LDS}$ (lower data strobe), R/$\overline{W}$ (read/write enable), $\overline{AS}$ (address strobe), $\overline{BGACK}$ (bus acknowledge), and $\overline{DTACK}$ (data transfer acknowledge) signals.

2.6 PC AT LAN Adapter Card: Performance Analysis

This section discusses parameter selections which determine the performance attained by a TMS380-based LAN adapter card for the IBM PC AT.

2.6.1 Test Environment

The results presented below are based on measurements of throughput rates (information field bits/second) when one TMS380 adapter is continuously transmitting on the token-ring under the following conditions.

1. The host system is an IBM PC AT with a 6 MHz system clock.
2. One TRANSMIT COMMAND is issued by the host.
3. Seven TRANSMIT PARAMETER LISTS are circularly chained.
4. Each TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST contains one DATA COUNT FIELD which is used to transmit one frame.
5. Host software polls the VALID bit in the TRANSMIT COMMAND/STATUS field of the current TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST to detect completion of frame transmission.
6. Upon detection of frame completion, host software sets the VALID bit (i.e., prepares the frame for retransmission, issues a TRANMIT VALID interrupt request, and begins polling the VALID bit of the next TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST in the chain.

2.6.2 Performance Results

Although several parameters affect performance to some extent, the most significant factors are:

1. Internal Adapter Buffer Size
2. Number of Allocated Internal Adapter Buffers
3. Host/Adapter DMA Interface
4. Host Transmit List Management Technique

2.6.2.1 Internal Adapter Buffer Size

The internal adapter buffer size restricts the maximum DMA burst size by placing an upper bound on the amount of data that can be transferred between the host and the adapter without incurring the overhead associated with execution of the adapter software that manages internal adapter buffers. Thus, performance is typically enhanced when fewer buffers are required to hold a frame. Figure 2-7 illustrates this point by plotting transmit throughput as a function of frame size for 128, 256, 512, and 1K byte buffers. Note the performance deviations when more than one buffer is required to contain a frame. The differences are quite visible for buffer sizes of 128 and 256 bytes. However, the variation is quite small for 512 byte buffers. This occurs because larger frames take longer to transmit, and therefore, more of the software overhead for managing internal adapter buffers can be overlapped with frame transmission. Also note that the effect of buffer size is less significant at the upper end of the frame size spectrum.

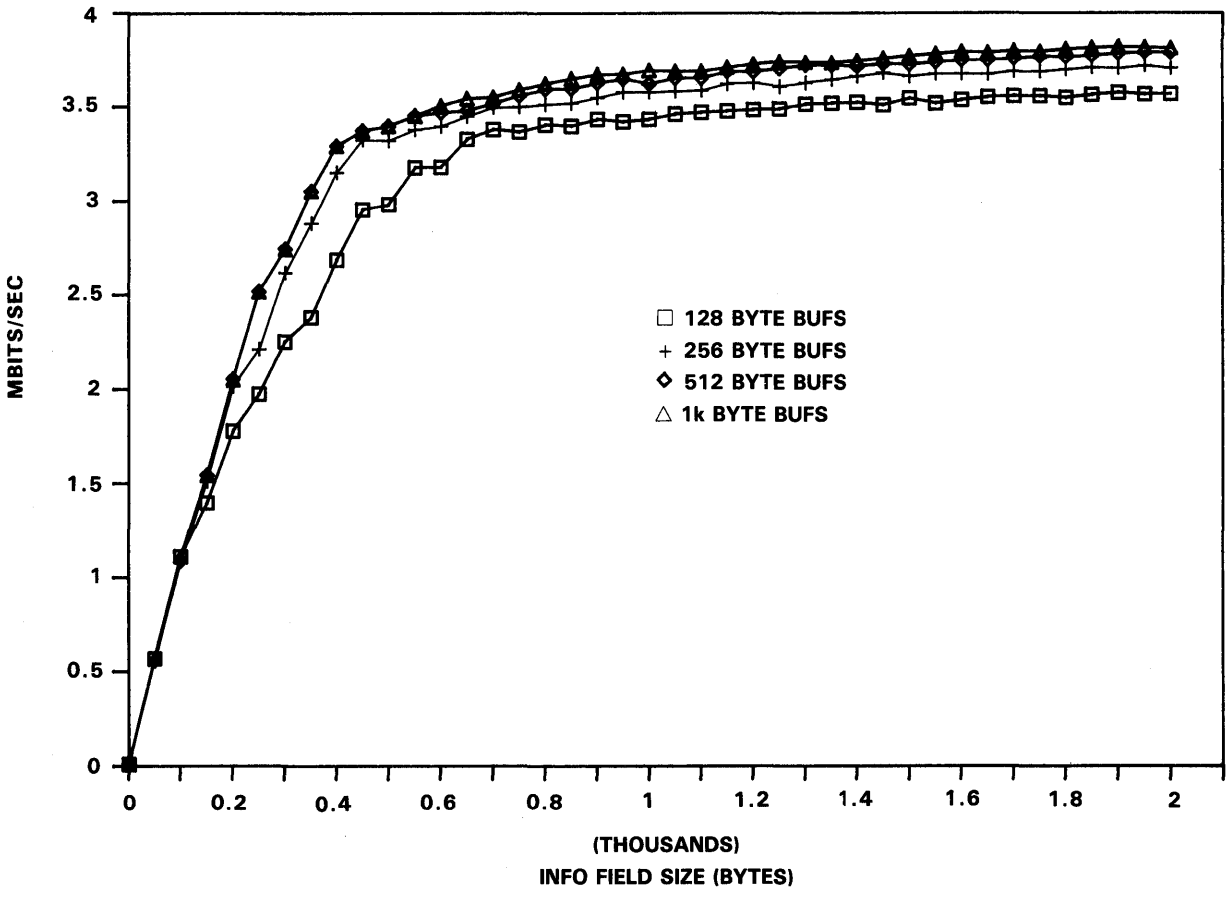


FIGURE 2-7. TRANSMIT THROUGHPUT — PC AT ADAPTER: INTERNAL BUFFER SIZE COMPARISON

2.6.2.2 Number of Allocated Internal Adapter Buffers

Adapter performance is enhanced when the data for frame i + 1 is transfered from the host to the adapter while frame i is being transmitted onto the token ring. For this pipelining to occur, enough internal adapter buffers must be allocated to hold two frames. Figure 2-8 graphically depicts the implications of internal buffer count by plotting transmit throughput as a function of frame size when 28, 8, and 4 internal buffers of 512 bytes each are allocated. Note the degradation that takes place when the frame size becomes large enough that four 512 byte buffers cannot hold two frames (the second dip in the curve occurs when all four buffers are required to hold one frame).

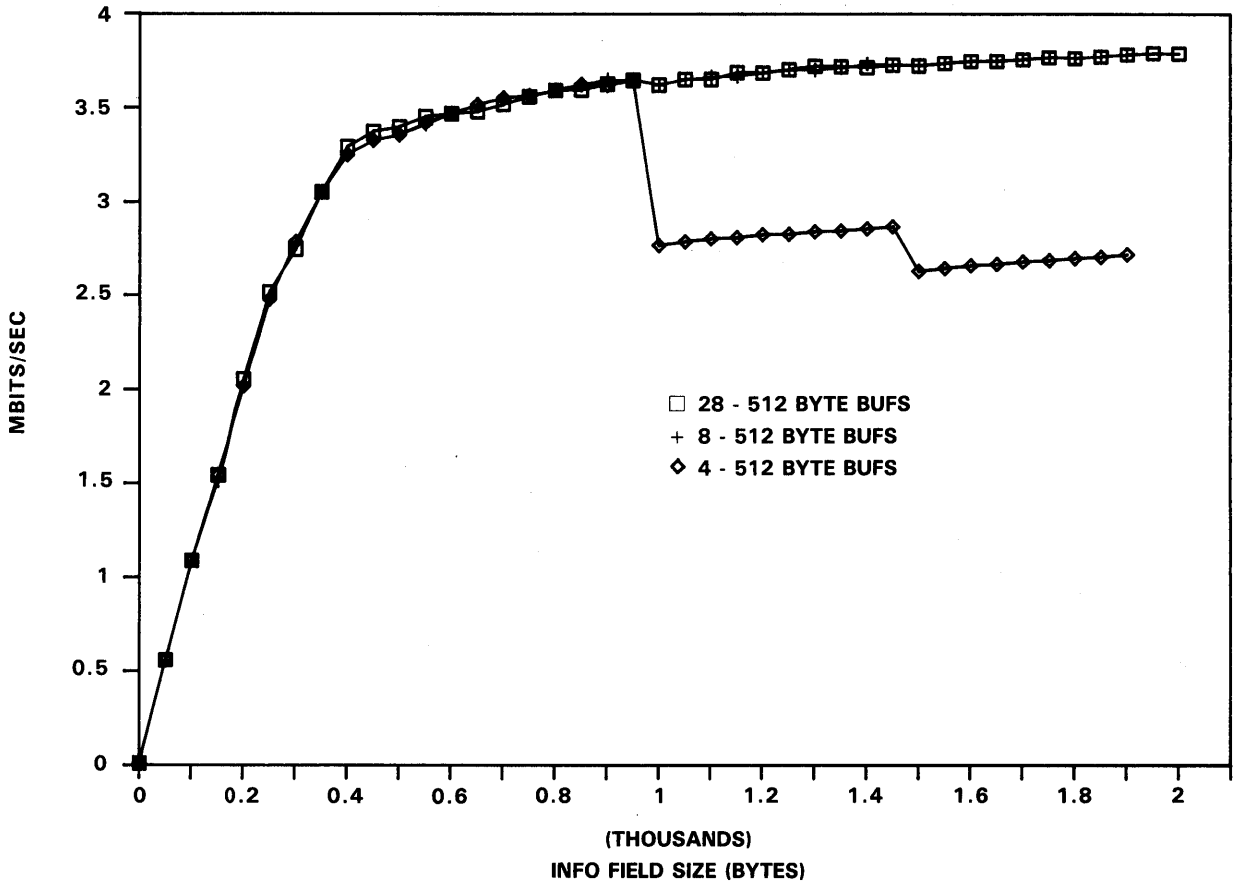


FIGURE 2-8. TRANSMIT THROUGHPUT — PC AT ADAPTER: INTERNAL BUFFER COUNT COMPARISON

2.6.2.3 Host/Adapter DMA Interface

The adapter offers two modes of host DMA operation: Burst and Cycle-Steal. During a burst-mode block DMA transfer, the adapter typically arbitrates for and obtains control of the host system's memory bus and then retains control until the entire block transfer is completed. In cycle-steal mode, the adapter contends for the system bus on each individual DMA transfer, releasing the bus when the transfer is complete. Burst-mode operation results in less time being required to transfer a block to or from the adapter, but increases the latency of other devices trying to obtain bus cycles.

Some host systems require that the memory bus be released periodically so that memory refresh operations can be performed. The IBM PC AT is one example of such a system and it requests a memory refresh operation every 15.5 microseconds. In this type of system, the burst size must be limited.

One solution is to simply store the desired burst size in the TRANSMIT BURST SIZE field of the INITIALIZATION BLOCK. Unfortunately, throughput is substantially affected when this approach is used with small burst sizes (because adapter software must manage the DMA of each burst). A much better solution is to clear the TRANSMIT BURST SIZE field in the INITIALIZATION BLOCK (the adapter will set the burst size equal to the amount of data to be transferred) and rely on an external hardware counter to limit the effective burst size via the adapter's bus release input.

While the adapter is performing a burst-mode DMA block transfer, an external device can cause the adapter to release the system bus momentarily, with the DMA transfers resuming normally after the external device relinquishes the bus. An external device requests that the adapter release the bus by asserting an active-low signal to the adapter's $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ (bus release) input. The requesting device should hold $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ active low until the adapter indicates the system bus has been released by deasserting $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ high. Figure 2-9 provides a schematic that shows how this technique can be implemented to achieve a burst size of 18 bytes.

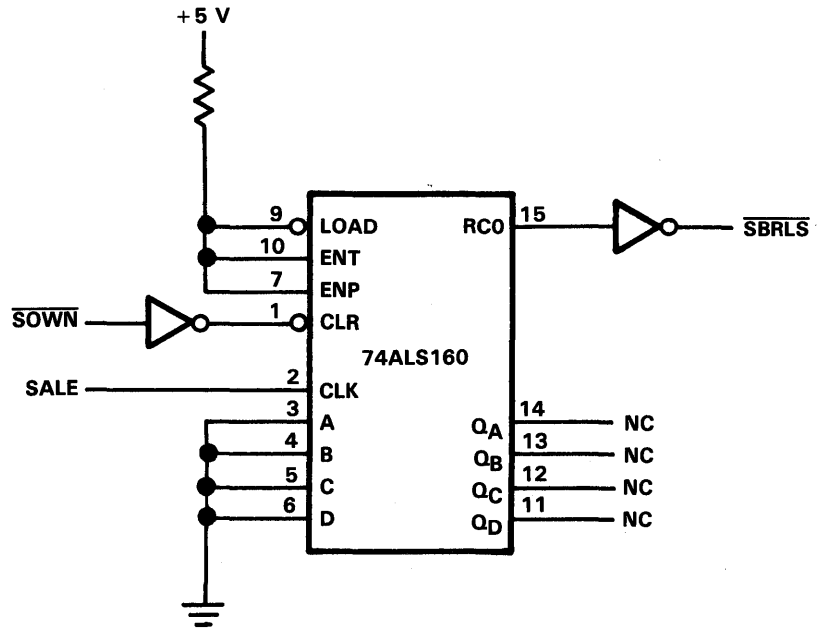


FIGURE 2-9. EXTERNAL HARDWARE COUNTER FOR LIMITING EFFECTIVE BURST SIZE

Figure 2-10 plots transmit throughput as a function of frame size for the following DMA modes: Burst Size of 512 bytes; Burst Size of 512 bytes with an external hardware counter limiting the effective burst size to 18 bytes; Burst Size of 18 bytes; and Cycle-Steal. Note that when small burst sizes are required, performance is substantially improved by using an external hardware counter to limit the effective burst size.

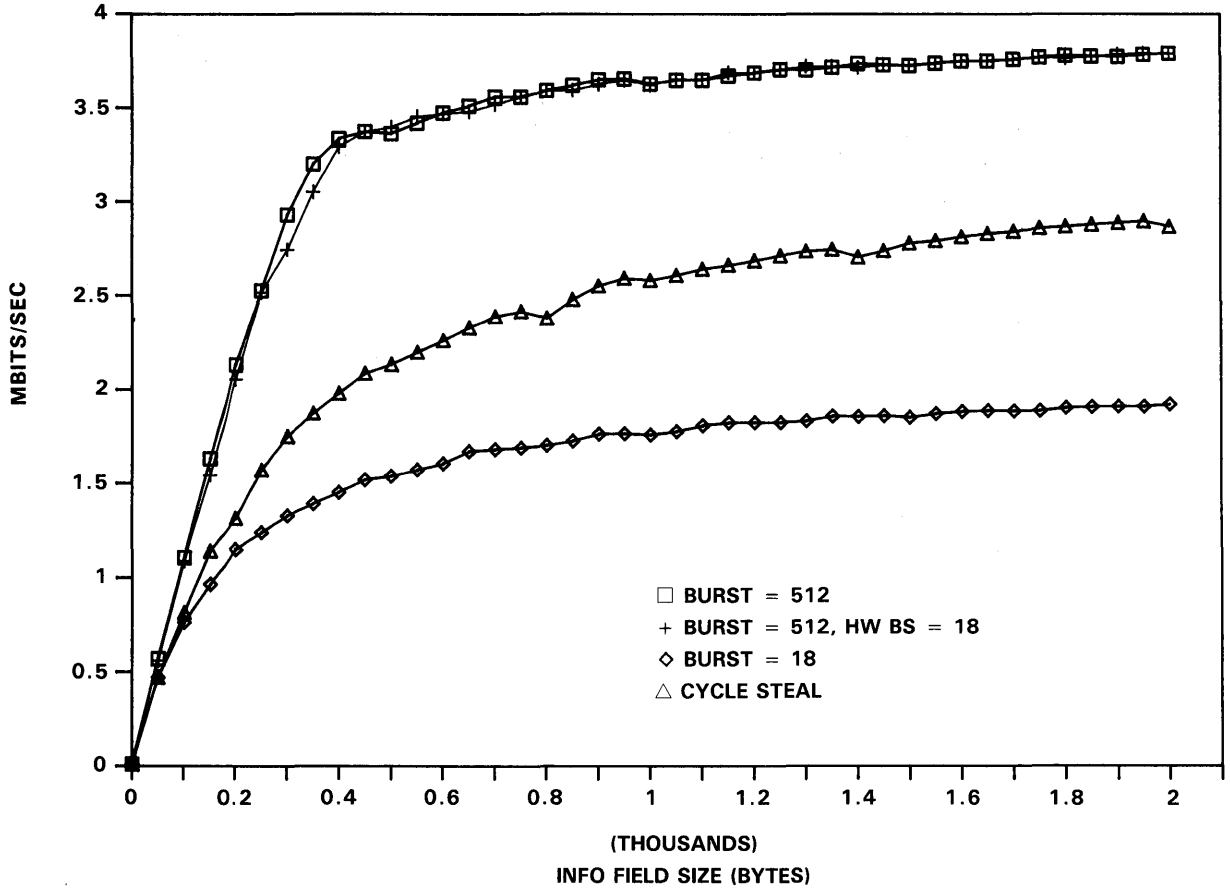


FIGURE 2-10. TRANSMIT THROUGHPUT — PC AT ADAPTER: DMA MODE COMPARISON — 512 BYTE BUFFERS

2.6.2.4 Host Transmit List Management Technique

Up to now, we have assumed that the host software issues a single TRANSMIT COMMAND and makes use of the linked list nature of the TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST interface. With this approach, frames are added to the end of the list and a TRANSMIT VALID interrupt request is issued. Figure 2-11 compares the transmit throughput attained when one TRANSMIT COMMAND is issued (as described above), when one TRANSMIT COMMAND is issued for every 7 frames, and when one TRANSMIT COMMAND is issued for every frame. The point to be emphasized is that performance is optimized when the linked list interface is fully utilized and the pipelined process of frame transmission is not interrupted.

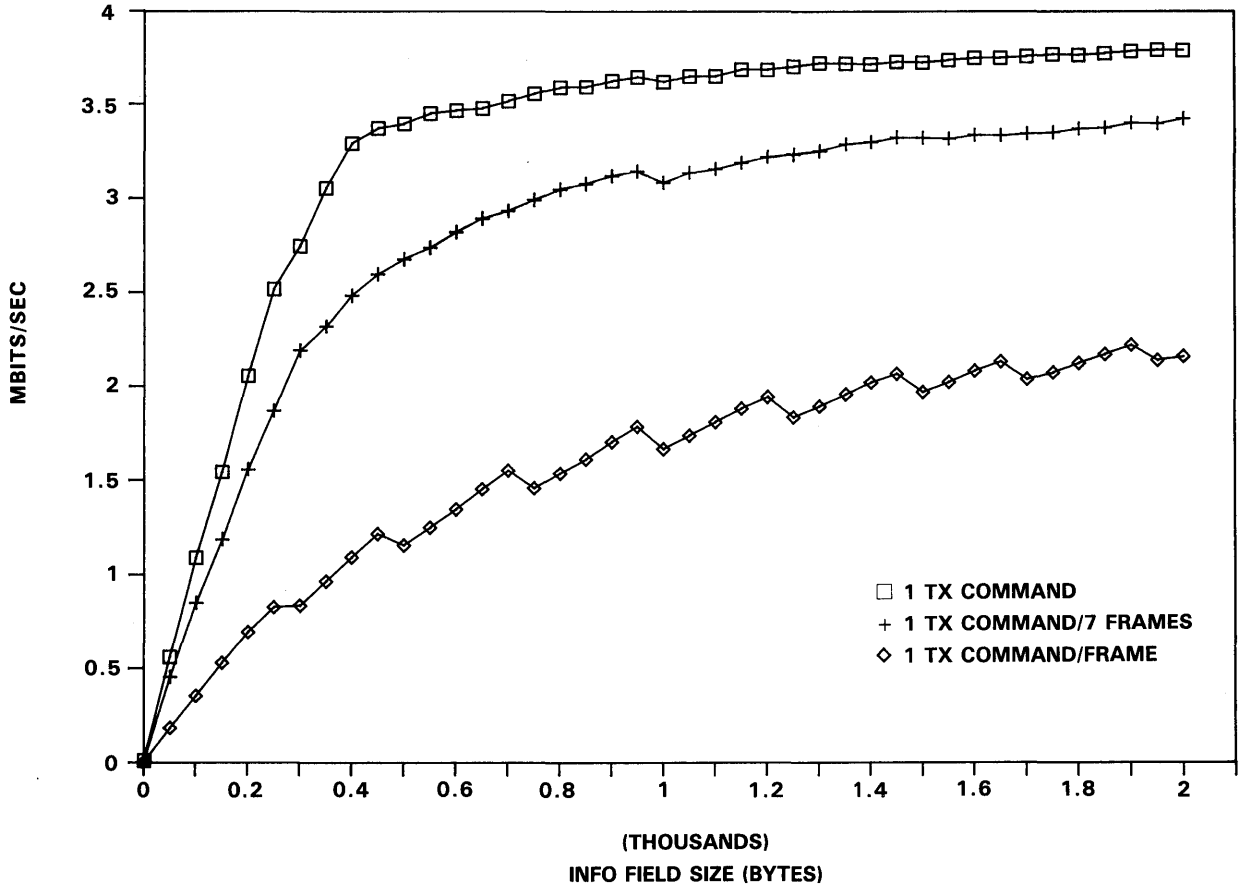


FIGURE 2-11. TRANSMIT THROUGHPUT — PC AT ADAPTER: TX COMMAND COMPARISON — 512 BYTE BUFFERS

3. Adapter Communications Services

3.1 Introduction

This section provides a description of the system architecture and the communications services provided by the Texas Instruments Token Ring TMS380 LAN Adapter chip set. Its intent is to provide a detailed understanding of these capabilities and services to both the network planner and the software engineer designing network services software. This section also provides excellent background information for the designer incorporating the Adapter chip set into his attaching product.

The discussion of communications services focuses on those services provided at the Physical layer and Medium Access Control sublayer of the ISO Open System Interconnect (OSI) Reference Model for local area networks.

3.1.1 Scope

The section is organized to provide a logical progression from the basic concepts to the detailed processes. There are six general topics covered within this section:

1. NETWORK MANAGEMENT CONSIDERATIONS. This section provides a discussion of the network management services provided by the Adapter.
2. PHYSICAL SIGNALING. This discussion includes a description of Differential Manchester Code and clock generation and recovery techniques employed by the Adapter.
3. FRAMES. The physical frame formats and the addressing scheme employed by the network are discussed.
4. MEDIUM ACCESS CONTROL. Medium Access Control (MAC) protocols and processes, including a definition of MAC frames, are discussed in detail.
5. TOKEN PROTOCOLS. The protocols used for token capture including the priority (fairness) protocol are described.
6. ERROR REPORTING. The mechanisms provided for error counting and error reporting are provided.

3.1.2 Conventions

3.1.2.1 Bit/Byte/Word Numbering

Bit, byte, and word numbering throughout this section is based upon bit 0, byte 0, or word 0 occupying the most significant position. Thus, if a 16-bit word is being referenced, bit 0 is the most significant bit position and bit 15 is the least significant bit position.

3.1.2.2 Hexadecimal Numbers

All hexadecimal numbers are shown with an ">" symbol preceding the number.

3.2 Network Management Considerations

As a network grows in size and complexity, it becomes necessary to be able to determine the state of the network and to perform problem determination, isolation, and correction. A network management product is a LAN entity which specifies, watches, and modifies network configuration, and determines the state of, tests, and can remove (if faulty) individual stations. It collects error reports, logs errors, and can perform fault isolation and correction based on the sum of these reports. A network management product can use all of its collected data to measure, analyze, and improve the network's reliability, efficiency, and throughput.

The TMS380 LAN Adapter, in addition to providing Physical layer and Medium Access Control layer services compatible with the IEEE Std 802.5 specification, provides a number of services which support the existence of a management product in the network. These services are referred to as the network management "agent" within the Adapter. Since these services are embedded within the Adapter's functionality, networks can be expanded while preserving earlier investments in attaching product hardware and software.

The TMS380 Adapter supports a network management product in two ways:

1. First, the Adapter in the attaching station which implements the network management function provides connectivity to the LAN. It recognizes information destined for, and passes the data to, the network management product.
2. Secondly, Adapters within attaching stations contain a logical agent for network management. Errors are automatically logged and reported; configuration changes are reported to the network manager; and the Adapter will respond to various requests from network management. All of this is performed transparent to the attached station. Thus, the burden of participating in network management is removed from the attaching product. Standardizing these network management services in silicon greatly reduces compatibility problems between different OEMs, and allows end users to expand their networks and add network management without changing their installed base of equipment.

A network management product can be divided into three logical entities: a Ring Error Monitor, a Network Manager, and a Ring Parameter Server.

Communications between these logical entities and the Adapter is via a special class of frames called Medium Access Control (MAC) frames. Since these functions need a "well known" address, a special type of address called a functional address is used to transmit the MAC frames to these functions. Table 3-1 illustrates the functional addresses assigned to the network management logical entities.

TABLE 3-1. NETWORK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONAL ADDRESSES

ADDRESS	FUNCTION
>01	Active Monitor
>02	Ring Parameter Server
>08	Ring Error Monitor
>10	Network Manager
>100	Bridge

The MAC frames that are transmitted to and received from network management functions, as well as exchanged between Adapters themselves, contain an embedded "class" designator as part of the basic syntax of the MAC frame. Each MAC frame contains one source class designator and one destination class designator. Each designator is four bits in length providing for up to sixteen class designations. The class designators, as defined by the network management agent within the TMS380 Adapter, are shown in Table 3-2.

TABLE 3-2. MAC FRAME CLASS DESIGNATORS

CLASS DESIGNATOR	DEFINITION
>0	Ring Station Class
>1	LLC Manager Class
>4	Network Manager Class
>5	Ring Parameter Server Class
>6	Ring Error Monitor Class

These class designators can be thought of as an embedded address which allows the network management product to route a received MAC frame to the appropriate software task which implements the function.

The Ring Station source class (>0) is used in MAC frames transmitted by the Adapter's software. The MAC frame transmission may be destined for a network management function such as the Ring Error Monitor or may be destined for another Adapter to carry out ring protocols (e.g. Ring Poll).

The Ring Station destination class (>0) is used in MAC frames transmitted to an Adapter for processing by the Adapter. The attached product will not be notified, in most cases, of the receipt of these frames. MAC frames received with a destination class of >0 include MAC frames from network management functions requesting a specific action or report and MAC frames exchanged between Adapters which support normal ring protocols.

MAC class >1 (Logical Link Control Manager) is a special case of MAC class which is not associated with basic network management.

Table 3-3 summarizes the combinations of source and destination class designators and their applications.

TABLE 3-3. SOURCE AND DESTINATION CLASS APPLICATIONS

SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION CLASS	APPLICATION
>0	>0	Exchange of frames between Adapters for basic ring protocols. — Ring Poll — Ring Purge — Monitor Contention
>4	>0	Frames sent by the Network Manager to request specific action or request certain parameters from the Adapter.
>0	>4	Frames sent to the Network Manager in response to request frames being received or to report configuation changes in the ring (new station or new Active Monitor).
>0	>6	Error reporting MAC frames sent to a Ring Error Monitor.
>0	>5	A special MAC frame which requests initialization parameters from a Ring Parameter Server function.
>5	>0	MAC frames sent from the Ring Parameter Server to the Adapter, solicited or unsolicited by the Adapter.

3.2.1 Ring Error Monitor

A Ring Error Monitor (REM) serves as a collection point of error reports for network management. The network management agent in the Adapter supports a REM function with the following:

1. Adapters within the attached stations will count soft errors by the type of soft error which occurred (e.g. CRC errors, frame copied errors, etc.), and automatically report these errors to the REM (via its functional address). The Adapter does not care whether or not a REM is present on the network.
2. The Adapter that is the Active Monitor reports failure of the Ring Poll process to the REM.
3. Errors in the Active Monitor which are detected by the Active Monitor or a Standby Monitor are reported to the REM.

By using the information provided to the Ring Error Monitor, conditions which degrade the performance of the network may be efficiently detected, diagnosed, and corrected.

3.2.2 Network Manager

The Network Manager (NM) function of the network management product monitors and modifies the state of individual stations and that of the LAN as a whole. The Network Manager function is referred to as the Configuration Report Server by the IEEE 802.5.

The network management agent of the Adapter provides NM support with the following functions:

CONFIGURATION CHANGES	Whenever a new Active Monitor is chosen via the Monitor Contention Process or whenever a station inserts or de-inserts from the ring, the event is reported to the network manager function. This allows the network management function to maintain the configuration of the ring, including an ordered list of stations inserted at any moment.
REPORTING SERVICES	The Adapter recognizes three requests for information from the NM and automatically reports the requested information in response.
PARAMETER CONTROL	The Adapter recognizes and responds to a command from the NM to modify internal operating parameters. This allows the NM to keep all Adapters in step with network configuration changes, transparently to the attached product.
RECONFIGURATION CONTROL	The Adapter recognizes a remove command from the NM and will physically de-insert when it receives the command.

A Network Manager can make use of this support to perform its tracking and modification duties to maximize the LAN's reliability, efficiency, and overall performance.

3.2.3 Ring Parameter Server

A Ring Parameter Server (RPS) is a logical function which can assign operating parameters of individual stations and of the LAN during the time the Adapter is inserting into the ring. The TI Adapter communicates with the RPS at the time of insertion by:

1. Requesting parameters in Phase 4 of the Insertion Process.
2. Setting these parameters on a response from the RPS.

3.3 Physical Signaling

3.3.1 Differential Manchester Code

The Token Ring Protocol calls for a ring signaling format called Differential Manchester Code. This signaling scheme follows these rules:

1. A signal transition always occurs in the center of the bit time.
2. A zero bit has a transition at the beginning of the bit time. A one bit has no transition during this time.

Figure 3-1 illustrates this coding scheme. The signaling transitions are symmetric around the zero volt level, thus providing an average zero volt DC level. This facilitates transformer coupling of the Adapter's transmitter and receiver to the ring.

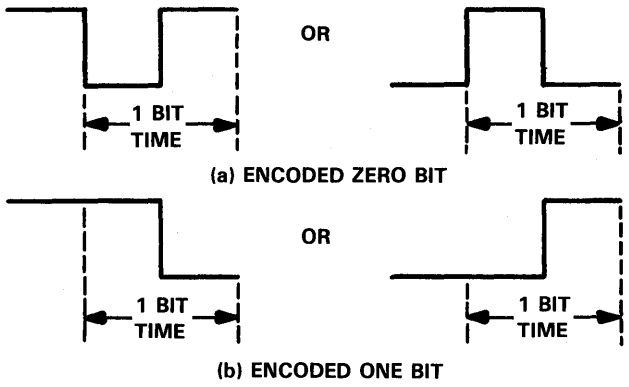


FIGURE 3-1. DIFFERENTIAL MANCHESTER CODE

Another advantage of Differential Manchester Code is that a violation of the coding rules may be easily detected for error detection purposes as well as for providing a convenient method of synchronizing bit streams. The Token Ring Adapter is designed to detect such violations. Figure 3-2 illustrates four possible violation patterns. These are designated V0 for the zero bit violation and V1 for the one bit violation. These patterns are used within starting delimiters and ending delimiters for frame and token boundary synchronization. They will be referenced later in this manual.

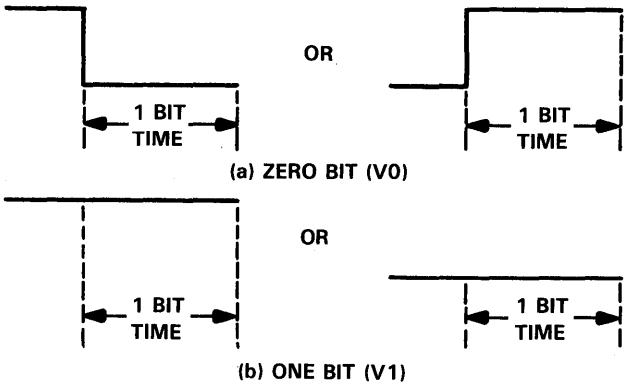


FIGURE 3-2. CODE VIOLATIONS

3.3.2 Ring Clocking

An Adapter, randomly designated via a contention process, provides master clocking to the ring by deriving its timebase from a crystal oscillator. This Adapter, as will be shown later, is called the Active Monitor. Any Adapter on the ring may assume the role of Active Monitor.

The remaining ring stations on the ring derive their timebase by phase synchronizing a voltage controlled oscillator to the incoming bit stream. This Phase Locked Loop (PLL) derived clock provides the necessary timebase from which the bit stream is received and transmitted by the Adapter.

3.3.3 Elastic Buffer

The Active Monitor clocks all transmissions with its crystal controlled clock. This can present a problem when the Active Monitor receives the incoming bit stream because the bit stream is no longer phase aligned to the crystal controlled clock. This loss of phase alignment can be incurred due to phase delays of the repeating stations on the ring. This misalignment is termed jitter.

To compensate for jitter, the Active Monitor Adapter clocks the receive data with its PLL generated clock. It clocks receive data into a first-in-first-out (FIFO) buffer, called the elastic buffer with the PLL generated clock, and clocks transmit data out of the buffer using its crystal generated clock. This buffer holds twelve half-bits (bauds) which will compensate for the anticipated worst-case jitter of repeating Adapters.

Other Adapters use the elastic buffer to monitor the ring for frequency errors. If the Active Monitor's clocking frequency differs significantly from the crystal-controlled clock of another Adapter, the elastic buffer will overflow or underflow on that Adapter, indicating a frequency error.

3.4 Frames

3.4.1 Frame Types

A message is passed through the network in a format referred to as a "frame". The physical frame format is strictly defined by the Token Ring Architecture. The information carried by frames may be one of two types:

1. Medium Access Control (MAC) information.
2. Non-medium Access Control information (e.g. Protocol Data Units destined for the Logical Link Control sublayer).

3.4.1.1 MAC Frames

The services provided by the Adapter provide a comprehensive set of problem determination, resolution, and reporting functions, so that ring communication problems are rapidly diagnosed and automatically corrected. These functions are carried out through exchange of Medium Access Control (MAC) frames.

Exchange of MAC frames is usually transparent to the attached system. These frames are originated by the Adapter software in response to internal timeouts, error conditions on the ring, or in response to MAC frames originated by network server functions. MAC frames are transmitted without indication to the attached system. Furthermore, most MAC frames received are handled by the Adapter itself, rather than reported to the attached system. Normally, an attached system will never need to send or receive a MAC frame. Processing the MAC layer protocol entirely within the Adapter results in a lower workload on the attached system and an increase in system performance.

3.4.1.2 Higher-Layer Protocol Frames

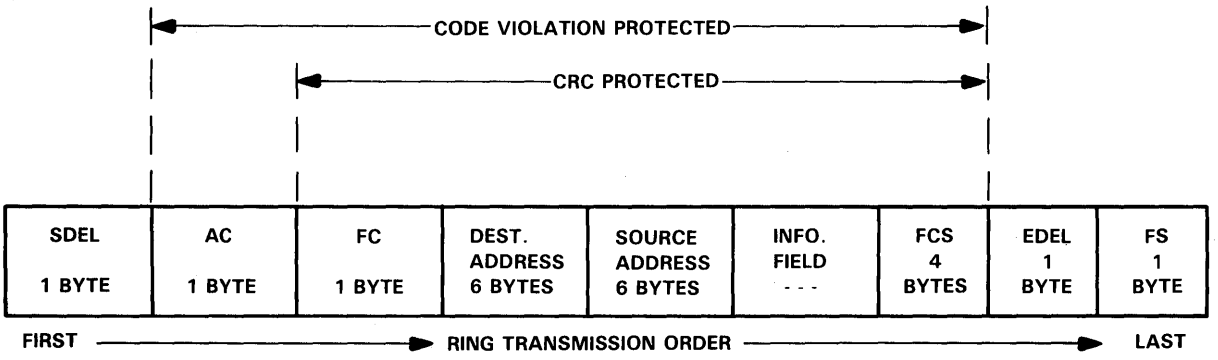
Frames normally passed to and from the network by the attached product are used to implement the next layer of the communications protocol. By IEEE 802 conventions, the next layer would be the Logical Link Control (LLC). The LLC implemented by the attached product and the MAC layer implemented by the Adapter provide the Data Link Control layer of the ISO Open Systems Interconnection reference model for a local area network communications system.

3.4.2 Frame Format

The physical frame format is strictly defined by the Token Ring Architecture and consists of the following fields within the frame's bit stream:

1. Starting Delimiter Field (SDEL)
2. Physical Control Fields (PCF) consisting of the Access Control (AC) and Frame Control (FC) fields
3. Source and Destination Address Fields (SA/DA)
4. Information Field (data)
5. Frame Check Sequence Field (FCS)
6. Ending Delimiter (EDEL)
7. Frame Status Field (FS)

This frame format is shown in Figure 3-3. Note that this format is for frames in which the TOKEN INDICATOR bit is set to one. If a TOKEN INDICATOR bit is set to zero, indicating a token, the token format illustrated is circulated on the ring. In this manual, the terminology "frame" refers to a data stream as illustrated in Figure 3-3, with the TOKEN INDICATOR bit set to one.



TOKEN FORMAT:

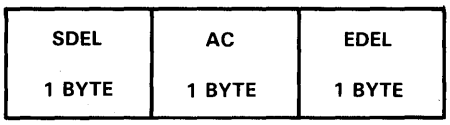


FIGURE 3-3. ADAPTER FRAME FORMAT

3.4.3 Starting Delimiter

The starting delimiter is eight bits wide and employs a unique Manchester Code violation which indicates the start of the frame. Figure 3-4 defines the bits within the starting delimiter field. The figure is followed by a detailed description of these bits.

BIT 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
V1	V0	"0"	V1	V0	"0"	"0"	"0"

FIGURE 3-4. STARTING DELIMITER BIT ASSIGNMENTS

BITS 0-7 DELIMITER PATTERN. These bits contain a delimiting pattern for the start of frames. It is through this pattern that the Adapter synchronizes to the bit stream of the frame.

3.4.4 Physical Control Fields - PCF

The physical control fields consist of two fields, each eight bits. These fields are the Access Control (AC) and the Frame Control (FC) fields and they are used to manage the physical layer protocol.

3.4.4.1 Access Control Field - AC

The bit assignments and bit definitions of the Access Control (AC) field byte are shown in Figure 3-5.

BIT 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
PRIORITY 0	PRIORITY 1	PRIORITY 2	TOKEN INDICATOR	MONITOR COUNT	PRIORITY RES. 0	PRIORITY RES. 1	PRIORITY RES. 2

FIGURE 3-5. AC BIT ASSIGNMENTS

BITS 0-2 TOKEN/FRAME PRIORITY. These three bits indicate the priority of the token or frame on the ring.

BIT 3 TOKEN INDICATOR. This bit is set to zero for tokens or set to one for frames.

BIT 4 MONITOR COUNT. This bit is set by the Active Monitor when it repeats a frame or a token with a priority greater than zero. If the Monitor receives an incoming AC with the bit already set, it assumes that the frame or token was not properly stripped and it purges the ring.

BITS 5-7 PRIORITY RESERVATION. These bits indicate the priority reservation of the token and will be controlled by the Adapter. These bits are used by the priority control of the Adapter.

3.4.4.2 Frame Control Field - FC

The bit assignments and bit definitions of the Frame Control (FC) field byte are provided in Figure 3-6 below:

BIT 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
FRAME TYPE 0	FRAME TYPE 1	"0"	"0"	PCF ATTEN. 0	PCF ATTEN. 1	PCF ATTEN. 2	PCF ATTEN. 3

FIGURE 3-6. FC FIELD

BITS 0,1 FRAME TYPE BITS. These two bits indicate the frame type. Currently, the following frame types are defined:

00 MAC Control Frame

01 Non-MAC Control Frame

10 Reserved

11 Reserved

BITS 2,3 RESERVED. Bits 2 and 3 are always set to zero.

BITS 4-7 PCF ATTENTION CODE. These bits indicate those frames which are copied into a special internal buffer called the 'express buffer' upon reception. The values of the PCF Attention Code recognized by the Adapter are listed below. The PCF Attention code is examined for MAC frames only.

0001-Express Buffer

0010-Beacon

0011-Claim Token

0100-Ring Purge

0101-Active Monitor Present

0110-Standby Monitor Present

3.4.5 Source and Destination Address Fields

The addressing for ring frames is contained within the source and destination fields of the frame. The source and destination address fields are each six bytes in length. These conform to the general address format described in Section 3.5.

3.4.6 Information Field

The information field is a multi-byte field in which the data to be transported between ring stations is carried. The information field must be at least one byte in length. The maximum length of this field is on the order of 4027 bytes.

3.4.7 Frame Check Sequence

Following the information field, a 32-bit cyclic redundancy code (CRC) is appended to the frame to protect the frame control field, source and destination addresses, and the information field. The CRC field is generated from a polynomial and is accumulated serially as a frame is transmitted or received. When a frame is being repeated or copied by an Adapter, the received CRC field is compared to the calculated value to verify that the frame was copied without error. On transmit, the CRC field is appended to the transmitted

frame so that a likewise comparison may be performed at the receiving station. Note that CRC generation and checking is done within the Adapter; the attached product does not perform this function. Following power-on, the Adapter's internal diagnostics check the CRC circuitry to insure proper operation.

3.4.8 Ending Delimiter Field

The ending delimiter defines the end of the frame sequence. Like the starting delimiter, it contains a code violation pattern to facilitate Adapter synchronization to the bit stream. The bit assignments and bit functions are shown in Figure 3-7.

BIT 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
V1	V0	"1"	V1	V0	"1"	INTER-MEDIATE FRAME	ERROR DETECTED INDICATOR

FIGURE 3-7. ENDING DELIMITER BIT ASSIGNMENTS

BITS 0-5 Ending Delimiting Violation Pattern.

BIT 6 Intermediate Frame. The PH always sets this bit to zero upon transmission. However, this bit may be a zero or one for reception.

BIT 7 ERROR DETECTED INDICATOR. This bit is transmitted as a zero. If received back as a zero, no errors were detected by other repeating Adapters on the ring. If received back as a one, a CRC or code violation was detected by another Adapter.

3.4.9 Frame Status Field - FS

The Frame Status field is provided to indicate, to the station which originated the frame, the results of the frame's circulation around the ring. This status information includes whether the frame's destination address was recognized, and whether the frame was copied by the station addressed in the destination address. Since this field is not error checked by the CRC or code violation detection mechanism, these bits are duplicated. The bit assignments and bit functions of the FS are shown in Figure 3-8. If an Adapter transmits a frame to itself, neither the ARI or FCI bits will be set when the received frame is passed to the attached system.

BIT 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
ADDRESS RECOGNIZED INDICATOR	FRAME COPIED INDICATOR	"0"	"0"	ADDRESS RECOGNIZED INDICATOR	FRAME COPIED INDICATOR	"0"	"0"

FIGURE 3-8. FS BIT ASSIGNMENTS

BITS 0,4 ADDRESS RECOGNIZED INDICATOR. This bit is initially transmitted as a zero. If it is received back as a zero, the frame destination address was not recognized or a code violation or CRC error was detected by an adapter on the ring. If it is received back as a one, the destination address was recognized properly.

BITS 1,5 FRAME COPIED INDICATOR. This bit is initially transmitted as a zero. If it is received back as a zero, the frame was not copied by the adapter addressed by the destination address. If it is received back as one, the frame was copied by the destination adapter.

BITS 2,3, 6,7 RESERVED. These bits are set to zero on transmission.

3.5 Ring Addressing

This section describes the format of media access level source and destination address fields and source routing concepts using routing information fields.

The addressing for ring frames is contained within the source and destination fields of the frame. The destination and source address fields are each six bytes in length and conform to the general address format shown in Figures 3-9 and 3-10 respectively.

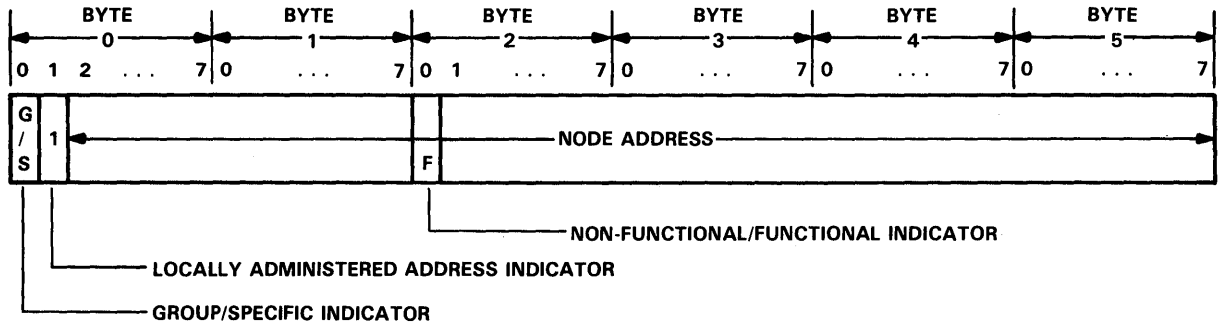


FIGURE 3-9. DESTINATION ADDRESS FORMAT

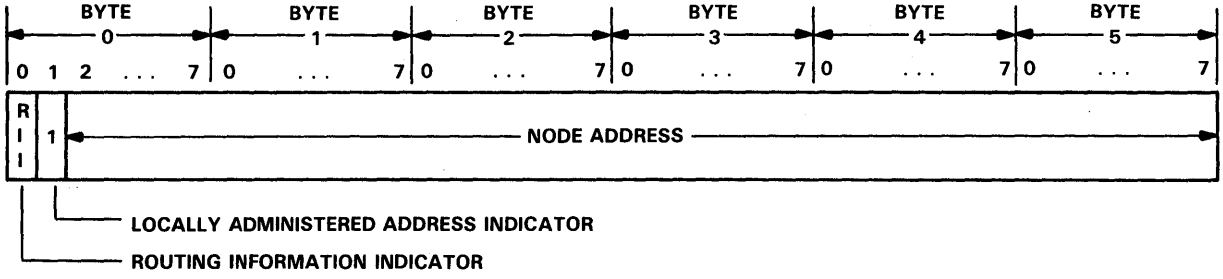


FIGURE 3-10. SOURCE ADDRESS FORMAT

The source and destination address differ in use of indicator bits within the frame format. The Group/Specific and Functional/Non-functional indicators are used for destination addresses only. All source addresses will be ring station specific addresses. Since all source addresses of transmitted frames will be the ring station specific address of the transmitting node, the most significant bit position of the source address is used to indicate the presence of a routing information field. The routing information field is a field of up to 18 bytes which follows the source address and precedes the information field of a frame.

3.5.1 Address Types

All addresses in the network are either locally administered addresses (byte 0, bit 1 set to one) or universally administered addresses (byte 0, bit 1 set to zero). Whether an address is locally or universally administered depends on whether address assignment is

done locally (within an establishment) or administered by a standards organization for all establishments. Although the Adapter may send a frame to any address it may not be assigned a universally administered address.

A destination address includes two major types, Group and Ring Station addresses.

1. Group Node Addresses - A group node address can be recognized by more than one station on a ring. A group address is signified by setting bit 0 of byte 0 to one. The high-order two bytes of group addresses are assumed to be >C000 except for group broadcast address. There are three types of group node addresses:

   a. Broadcast - >FFFF FFFF FFFF or >C000 FFFF FFFF are both all stations broadcast addresses. A broadcast address is shown in Figure 3.11.

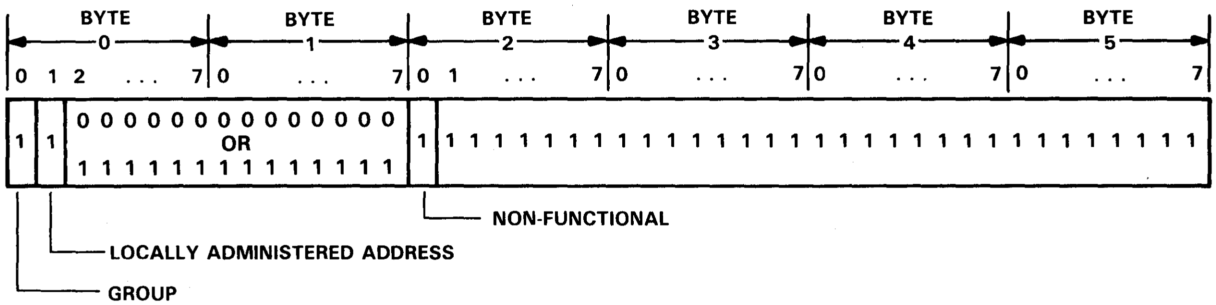


FIGURE 3-11 . BROADCAST GROUP ADDRESS

   b. Functional - A functional group address is indicated by setting bit 0 of byte 2 to zero. Bit significant decoding allows a node to recognize any or all of 31 addresses assigned by the Token Ring Architecture to functions in the network which need a 'well-known' address. A functional address recognized by a node may be assigned by the attached system using the OPEN command or the SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS Command. These commands are discussed in detail in Section 4.

   Several functional addresses have been defined by the IBM token ring architecture as follows:

   >0001 Active Monitor
   >0002 Ring Parameter Server
   >0008 Ring Error Monitor
   >0010 Network Manager
   >0100 Bridge

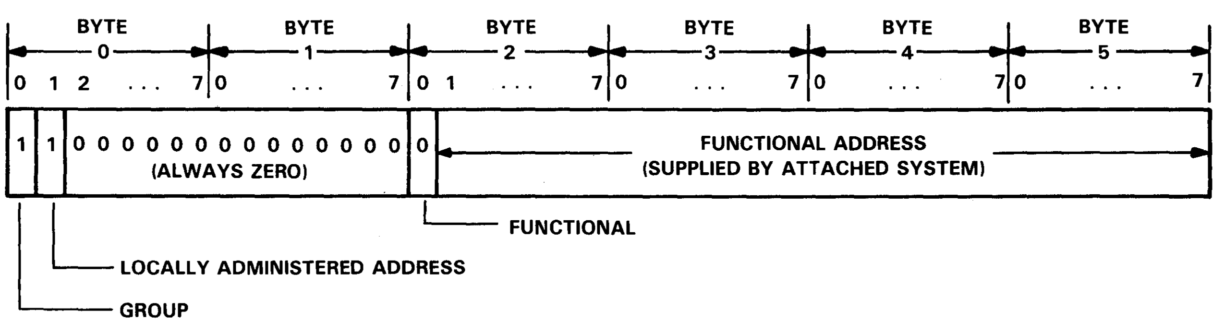


FIGURE 3-12. FUNCTIONAL GROUP ADDRESS

c. Group - A group address is indicated by setting bit 0 of byte 2 to one. This type of Group Address is assigned at the discretion of the attached system. The address may be passed as one of the OPEN parameters.

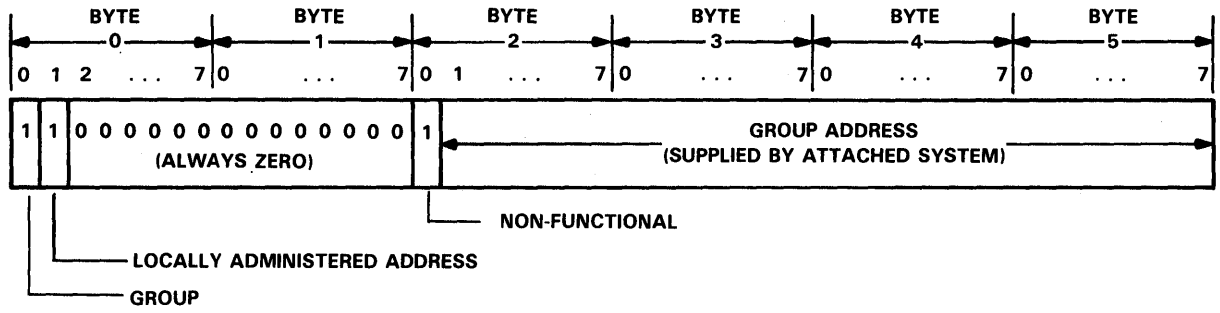


FIGURE 3-13. GROUP ADDRESS

2. Ring Station Specific Address - The primary address recognized by the Adapter. It is the address associated with the Physical Transmission Layer function. This address may be passed to the Adapter by the attached system during the OPEN command, or the Ring Station Address may be read from an attached ROM containing a burned-in address. (This is described in Appendix B.) If the attached system passes an all zeros ring station specific (or node) address during the OPEN command, the Adapter will use the burned-in address (BIA) supplied. This burned-in address allows address assignments to be integrated on the Adapter's card in a non-volatile (ROM) manner.

A ring station address assigned by the attached system or contained in BIA ROM must conform to the following format. Note that bits 0,1 of byte 0 must be set to 0,1 respectively. Violating these rules causes the Adapter to reject the address assignment with a node address error.

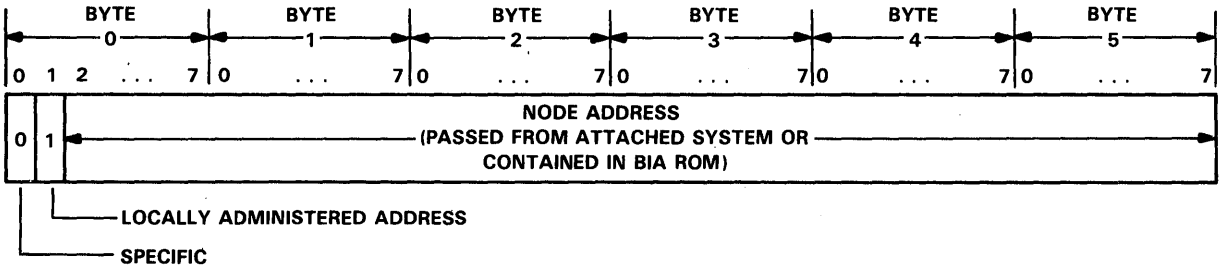


FIGURE 3-14. RING STATION ADDRESS FORMAT

3.5.2 Source Routing

Token Ring Local Area Networks may consist of more than one ring interconnected by bridges which route frames from one ring to another. The destination address of a frame contains only enough information to route a frame to a node on the same physical ring as the source node. Additional information, used by bridges to decide which frames to transport across ring boundaries, is contained in a field called the routing information field. When this additional information is supplied by the orginator of the frame, the routing control is termed 'source routing'. This source routing information is contained within the routing information field of a frame.

The routing information field is variable, up to 18 bytes in length, and its presence is indicated by the most significant bit of the source address of a frame. If this MSB is set to one, a routing information field may be found immediately following the source address field and prior to the information field. The format of the routing information field is shown in Figure 3-15.

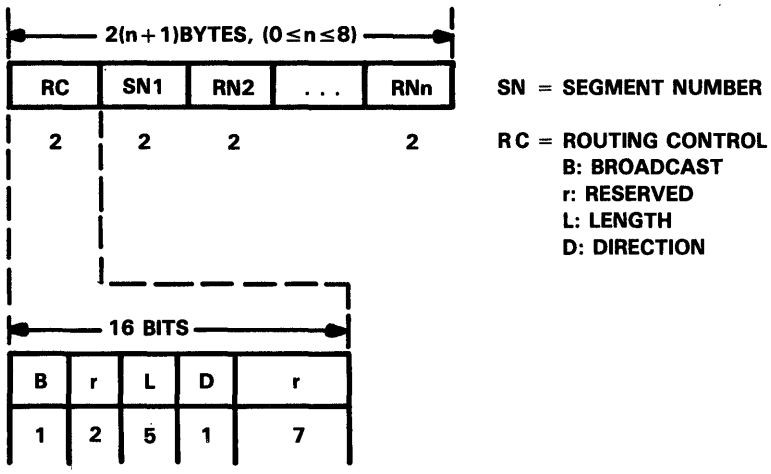


FIGURE 3-15. ROUTING INFORMATION FIELD FORMAT

B Broadcast. This bit, when set to one, indicates that the frame is destined for all rings. It does not imply that the frame is destined for all stations on all rings.

r Reserved. These bits are reserved and set to zero for transmission and ignored on reception.

L Length. This field indicates the length of the routing information field in bytes including the control field.

D Direction. This indicates to a bridge whether a frame is traveling from the originating station to the target or the other way around. This bit allows the ring number segments to appear in the same order regardless of the direction of transmission.

SNx Segment Numbers. These 16-bit fields indicate the path between nodes on different physical rings.

Refer to the *IBM Token-Ring Network Architecture Reference* for additional information on source routing and the format of the routing information field.

3.6 Medium Access Control

3.6.1 Concept

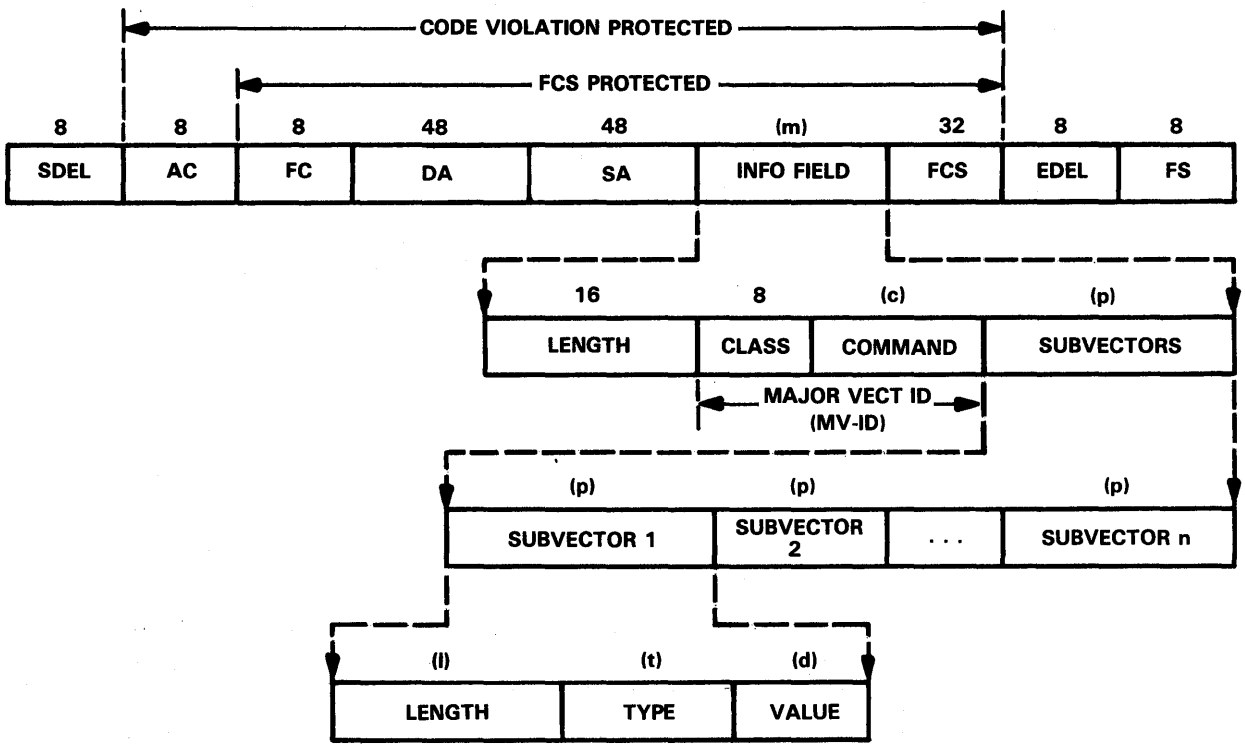
The Token Ring Local Area Network calls for a comprehensive set of problem determination, resolution, and reporting functions, so that ring communication problems are rapidly diagnosed and automaticaliy corrected. As was introducted in Section 2, the MAC layer services provided by the Adapter allow compatible connectivity to the token ring LAN.

Operation of the MAC protocol is completely transparent to the host system attached to the Adapter. A special class of frames, known as MAC frames, are sent between Adapters to insure proper ring operation, to recover the ring from violations of normal protocols, and to report information to network management. These frames are originated by the Adapter software in response to internal timeouts, error conditions on the ring, or MAC frames received from a network manager or another ring station. MAC frames are transmitted without indication to the attached system. Furthermore, MAC frames that are received are acted upon by the Adapter itself, rather than being reported to the attached system, unless the passing of MAC frames from the Adapter to the attached system is explicitly requested by the attached system. Normally, an attached system will never need to send or receive a MAC frame. Processing of the MAC layer protocol entirely within the Adapter results in a lower workload on the attaching system and an increase in system performance.

The Adapter's MAC protocol is implemented with a number of independent software processes. These processes can be considered to be running concurrently. Each process will be described in detail in Section 3.8.

3.6.2 MAC Frame Format

The format of frames used as MAC frames is shown in Figure 3-16.



NOTES: 1. Numeric length notations are in bits.
2. Maximum length of (m) is restricted by the Adapter.
3. Entries labeled (m), (p), and (d) contain an integral number of bytes.
4. The entries labeled (c), (l), and (t) are 8 bits each. If their value is equal to >FF, they are extended by two bytes.

FIGURE 3-16. GENERAL MAC FRAME FORMAT

3.6.3 MAC Frame FC

The FC field on MAC frames has the MAC bit (bit 1) set to zero to indicate the frame is a MAC frame. Bits 4-7 of FC comprise the PCF attention code. A binary value greater than "0001" in any frame that the Adapter copies or repeats causes an attention interrupt to the Communications Processor. These bits are assigned as follows:

0010	Beacon
0011	Claim Token
0100	Ring Purge
0101	Active Monitor Present
0110	Standby Monitor Present

3.6.4 MAC Frame Source Address

The source address field always contains the ring station specific address of the originator of the frame.

3.6.5 MAC Frame Major Vectors

The Information Field in MAC frames handled by the Adapter consists of one Major Vector (MV). The Major Vector may contain one or more subvectors. When the Adapter constructs a MAC frame for transmission, the subvectors are placed in the frame, in order shown in the tables in Appendix B.1.

The Major Vector is made up of the following fields within the MAC frame information field:

MV LENGTH — The length in bytes of the entire Major Vector, including the length field.

MV CLASS — Defines the origin and destination class of the MV. The high-order four bits are the destination class and the low-order four bits are the source class.

The source class types are as follows:

>0 - Ring Station

>1 - LLC Manager

>4 - Network Manager

>5 - Ring Parameter Server

>6 - Ring Error Monitor

The destination class will always be Ring Station, >0, for MAC frames which are processed directly by the Adapter. Other destination classes will be passed on to the attached system if copied.

MV COMMAND — The Major Vector Command defines the function that the receiver is to perform. A list of Major Vector commands is shown in Table 3-4.

SUBVECTORS — Each Major Vector contains one or more subvectors. A subvector contains the following fields:

- SV LENGTH — The length of the subvector in bytes including the length field.
- SV TYPE — The type byte identifies the information found in the subvector value. The SV types recognized by the Adapter are shown in Table 3-5.
- SV VALUE — The information used to process the subvector.

TABLE 3-4. MAJOR VECTOR COMMANDS

CMD	DESCRIPTION	CMD	DESCRIPTION
>00	Response	>03	Claim Token
>02	Beacon	>05	Active Monitor Present
>04	Ring Purge	>07	Duplicate Address Test
>06	Standby Monitor Present	>09	Transmit Forward
>08	Lobe Media Test	>0B	Remove Ring Station
>0C	Change Parameters	>0D	Initialize Ring Station
>0E	Request Station Address	>0F	Request Station State
>10	Request Station Attachment	>2A	Report Transmit Forward
>20	Request Initialization	>22	Report Station Address
>23	Report Station State	>25	Report New Monitor
>24	Report Station Attachment	>27	Report Ring Poll Failure
>26	Report SUA Change	>29	Report Error
>28	Report Monitor Error		

TABLE 3-5. SUBVECTOR TYPES

TYPE	DESCRIPTION	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
>01	Beacon Type	>02	Upstream Neighbor's Address
>03	Local Ring Number	>04	Assign Physical Drop Number
>05	Soft Error Report Timer	>06	Enabled Function Classes
>07	Allowed Access Priority	>0A	Address of last ring poll
>20	Response Code	>21	Reserved
>22	Product Instance ID	>23	Adapter Software Level
>26	Wrap Data	>0B	Physical Drop Number
>29	Adapter Status Word	>27	Frame Forward
>2B	Group Address	>09	Correlator
>2D	Isolation Error Counts	>2C	Functional Address
>2F	Function Request ID	>2E	Non-isolating Error Counts
>08	Authorized Environment	>30	Error code
		>2A	Transmit Status Code

The Major Vector Class and Major Vector Command together are termed the Major Vector ID , MV-ID. A complete list of Major Vector commands and Subvectors may be found in Appendix B.1.

3.6.6 MAC Frames Processed by the Adapter

Many MAC frames are processed automatically by the Adapter. Other MAC frames are passed to the attached system for processing by higher-level protocols. MAC frames processed automatically by the Adapter are those received with a destination class of Ring Station. If a response to a ring station class MAC frame is required, the MAC frame response is transmitted with a source class of Ring Station.

Some frames processed by the Adapter are also passed to the attached system. Three options specified during the open process allow MAC frames to be passed to the attached system after the Adapter has been inserted onto the ring:

- Pass Attention MAC frames. MAC frames that have an attention code (bits 4-7 of FC) greater than one are processed normally by the Adapter and then given to the attached system when one of the following conditions occur:
  - When the attention code is different from the last attention code greater than one.
  - When the source address in the MAC frame is different from the last source address received.
  - If it is a Beacon MAC frame, when the Beacon type subvector value is different from the Beacon type subvector value in the last Beacon MAC frame.
- Pass Adapter MAC frames. MAC frames are passed which have a Major Vector type not recognized by the Adapter. These will be passed to the attached system if this option is enabled. Otherwise, the Adapter responds by transmitting a negative response MAC frame.
- Pass Beacon MAC frames. If a Beacon MAC frame is received by the Adapter, it is passed to the attached system if the source address or Beacon Type Subvector is different from the last Beacon MAC frame received.

Table 3-6 describes briefly the MAC frames processed directly by the Adapter. These MAC frames will be introduced in more detail during the discussion in Section 3.8.

TABLE 3-6. MAC FRAMES PROCESSED BY THE ADAPTER

MAC FRAME	DESCRIPTION
BEACON	This frame is used by the Adapter in the Beacon Process.
LOBE MEDIA TEST	This frame is used by the Adapter in Phase 0 of the Insertion Process to test the continuity of the wire in a loop back path. This occurs prior to physical insertion in the ring. It also occurs in the Auto Remove Procedures in the Beacon Process, which use the Insertion Phase 0 process. This frame is ignored by the Adapter when it is received.
CLAIM TOKEN	This frame is used by the Adapter in the Monitor Contention Process.
REMOVE RING STATION	This frame is sent by the Network Manager to request the Adapter to de-insert itself from the ring. This frame is valid any time after Phase 0 of the Insertion Process. If the Adapter is inserted, the Adapter de-inserts from the Ring and indicates Remove Received in the Ring Status reported to the attached system. If this frame is received in the Insertion Process, the Adapter removes itself from the ring and terminates the OPEN command with an error condition, indicating that a Remove MAC frame was received.
REPORT STATION STATE	This frame is sent by the Adapter in response to the Request Station State MAC frame (sent to the Adapter by the Network Manager).
REPORT MONITOR ERROR	This frame is used to report a problem with the Active Monitor or the possibility of a duplicate address of stations contending for Active Monitor. This frame is sent to the functional address of the Ring Error Monitor (REM).
REPORT SUA CHANGE	This frame is used in the Ring Poll process to report a change in the stored upstream address (SUA) of the station upstream from the Adapter generating the Report SUA Change MAC frame. This frame is sent to the functional address of the Network Manager.
REPORT NEW MONITOR	This frame is sent by the Active Monitor Adapter, after winning contention, to report to the Network Manager that the Adapter is now the new Active Monitor.
REPORT STATION ATTACHMENT	This frame is sent by the Adapter in response to the Request Station Attachment MAC frame. The Request Station Attachment MAC frame is sent by the Network Manager.

TABLE 3-6. MAC FRAMES PROCESSED BY THE ADAPTER (continued)

MAC FRAME	DESCRIPTION
REPORT RING POLL FAILURE	This frame is sent by the Active Monitor to the Ring Error Monitor to report a failure in the Ring Poll Process. This frame contains the address of the last station that responded in the Ring Poll Process before the Active Monitor detected the failure.
REPORT ERROR	This frame is used to report soft error events to the Ring Error Monitor.
REPORT STATION ADDRESS	This frame is sent by the Adapter in response to the Request Station Address MAC frame. The Request Station Address MAC frame is sent by the Network Manager.
REQUEST STATION STATE	This frame is sent by the Network Manager to request the Adapter to respond with a Report Station State MAC frame.
REQUEST INITIALIZATION	This frame is transmitted in Phase 4 of the Insertion Process to request operational parameters from the Ring Parameter Server.
REQUEST STATION ATTACHMENT	This frame is sent by the Network Manager to request the Adapter to respond with a Report Station Attachment MAC frame.
REQUEST STATION ADDRESS	This frame is sent by the Network Manager to request the Adapter to respond with a Report Station Address MAC frame.
REPORT TRANSMIT FORWARD	This frame is sent by the Adapter to the Network Manager functional address when a frame is forwarded and stripped by the Transmit Forward Process.
RESPONSE	This frame is used to send positive responses to frames that require acknowledgement, or to report errors in syntax in a MAC frame sent to the Adapter.
ACTIVE MONITOR PRESENT	This frame is transmitted by the Active Monitor when in the Ring Poll Process to request a Standby Monitor Present MAC frame from the nearest downstream neighbor from the Active Monitor.
STANDBY MONITOR PRESENT	This frame is used in the Ring Poll Process to respond to an Active Monitor Present or Standby Monitor Present MAC frame.
RING PURGE	This frame is used by the Active Monitor in the Ring Purge Process.

TABLE 3-6. MAC FRAMES PROCESSED BY THE ADAPTER (concluded)

MAC FRAME	DESCRIPTION
CHANGE PARAMETERS	Change Parameters MAC frame is sent by the Network Manager to change certain parameters in the Adapter. This frame will be accepted in response to a Request Initialization MAC frame transmitted by an Adapter in the Insertion Process. When received, this frame can set the following parameters: • Local Ring Number • Physical Drop Number • Error Report Timer Value • Authorized Transmit Function Classes • Authorized Access Priority
INITIALIZE RING STATION	Initialize Ring Station MAC frames are sent by the Ring Parameter Server to set parameters in the Adapter when the Adapter is in the Insertion Process and transmits a Request Initialization MAC frame. When received, this frame can set the following parameters within the Adapter: • Local Ring Number • Physical Drop Number • Error Report Timer Value
TRANSMIT FORWARD	This frame is used in the Transmit Forward Process.
DUPLICATE ADDRESS TEST	This frame is sent by the Adapter in Phase 2 of the Insertion Process. It verifies that the specific address to be used by the Adapter is unique to the ring in which the Adapter is inserted.

3.6.7 MAC Frame Receive and Transmit Processing

MAC frame receive syntax checking and transmit processing are described below.

3.6.7.1 MAC Frame Receive Processing

General MAC Frame Syntax Checking

The MAC frame syntax checking procedure requires that:

- There is only one Major Vector in the received frame,
- the Major Vector Length agrees with the received frame length,
- and no required subvectors are duplicated or missing in the frame.

Only the first occurrence of an optional subvector is processed by the Adapter software. Any optional subvector that has already been found in the frame is ignored. The following describes the MAC frame syntax checking procedure:

1. The Routing Information field is checked to determine if the length is longer than 18 bytes or odd. If the length is greater than 18 or odd, the frame is ignored.
2. The length of the frame is checked to determine if it can contain a Major Vector Length and ID. If the length of the frame is too short (less than 4 bytes), a negative response of MAC Frame Data Field Incomplete is sent. Note that the source class, destination class, and the Major Vector command will be invalid in the response since the received frame was too short to contain them.
3. If the destination class is not zero, the frame is passed to the attached system, with no further syntax checking.
4. The command byte is checked to see if it is a Transmit Forward. If it is, no further syntax checking is done by this syntax checking routine.
5. The Major Vector Length is checked to determine if it is in the range of the received frame. If the length in the Major Vector ID does not agree with the length of the frame, a negative response of Major Vector Length Invalid is sent.
6. The Command byte in the Major Vector ID is checked to determine if it is greater than >10, the highest Major Vector ID handled by the Adapter. If the Adapter has been opened without the open option to pass Adapter MAC frames, a negative response is sent with a code of Major Vector Command Not Supported. If the open option is selected, the frame is passed to the attached system without further syntax checking.
7. If the Source Class in the class byte in the Major Vector ID is not valid for the command in the Major Vector ID, a negative response of Inappropriate Source Class is sent.
8. The subvectors are checked as follows:
   - If a subvector length is zero, than a negative response of Subvector Length Error is transmitted to the sender.
   - All required subvectors must be present. A response of Required Subvector Missing is transmitted if this is not the case.
   - If a subvector in the frame is marked as 'required' and is not a required subvector or is duplicated, a response of Unknown Required Subvector is sent.
   - Optional subvectors are ignored.

3.6.7.2 MAC Frame Transmit Processing

The following is a description of the queueing process the Adapter uses for transmitting MAC frames.

All MAC frames make a token reservation at priority level 3 with the following exceptions:

1. Immediate MAC frames (those which don't wait to capture a token), set the priority bits to 0. These are as follows:

   a. Beacon
   b. Claim Token
   c. Ring Purge

2. The Active Monitor Present MAC frame makes a token reservation at level 7.
3. All 'Response Type' MAC frames are transmitted at priority level 0.

When a MAC frame is enqueued for transmission, the following sequence is followed:

1. Some MAC frames use a specially allocated transmit buffer. These frames are transmitted as soon as the buffer becomes available. These frames are:

   a. Report Error
   b. Report Monitor Error
   c. Report Ring Poll Failure
   d. Report New Monitor
   e. Active Monitor Present
   f. Duplicate Address Test
   g. Report SUA Change
   h. Standby Monitor Present
   i. Request Initialization

2. Response type MAC frames are built within the same buffer in which the associated request was received. Frames which transmit in this manner are as follows:

   a. Response
   b. Transmit Forward
   c. Report Transmit Forward
   d. Report Station Address
   e. Report Station State
   f. Report Station Attachment

Assured Delivery Process

The Assured Delivery Process is intended to fulfill the following requirements:

1. To significantly improve the probability of, but not guarantee, the delivery of selected MAC frames.
2. To provide a mechanism that has a high probability of preventing duplicate copies of frames delivered to the frame's destination address.

The MAC frames which use this process are the Report Error MAC frame and the Report SUA Change frame.

This procedure uses the Address Recognized Indicator bit (ARI) and the Frame Copied Indicator (FCI) bits of the Frame Status (FS) field of the frame. An internal status bit (LFED) is also used which indicates a frame error occurred during the stripping of a transmit frame from the ring. The frame errors which may occur to set this bit include code violations and Frame Check Sequence (FCS) errors.

The Assured Delivery Process is defined by the following steps:

1. When a MAC frame is queued for transmission, a counter called the "Transmit Retry Counter" is initialized to four.
2. After a frame is transmitted and stripped, internal status is checked to determine if a corrupted free token was detected. If this did occur, proceed to step 4. If any other transmit error is detected then the process is terminated. If the internal status indicates normal transmitter completion of the transmit operation, continue with step 3.
3. If a MAC frame must be transmitted under the assured delivery process, then the ARI, FCI and LFED bits are checked. The table below shows the three conditions which must result in order to continue to step 4. With any other combinations, the frame is not re-transmitted and the process terminates.

	LFED	ARI1	FCI1	ARI2	FCI2
1)	0	1	0	1	0
2)	1	0	0	0	0
3)	1	1	0	1	0

4. The "Transmit Retry Counter" is decremented and if the counter is not zero, the frame is retransmitted and the process continues at step 2. If the counter is zero, the frame is not transmitted and the process terminates.

3.6.8 Response MAC Frames

A Response MAC frame is used to acknowledge receipt of one of the following MAC frames:

1. Change Parameters
2. Initialize Ring Station

This frame is also used in negative responses to syntax errors detected in any Adapter Destination Class MAC frame. The Adapter will not generate negative responses to MAC frames that have a source class of >0.

A Response Code subvector within the Response MAC frame carries additional response information. This Response Code subvector is of the following format.

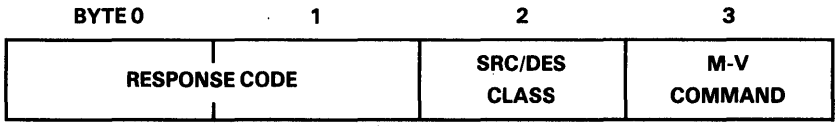


FIGURE 3-17. RESPONSE CODE SUBVECTOR

The source class, destination class, and the Major Vector Command are generated from the contents of the Major Vector in the received MAC frame that caused the Adapter to send the Response MAC frame.

The Response Codes are listed in the following table:

TABLE 3-7. RESPONSE CODE SUBVECTOR CODE VALUES

CODE	DESCRIPTION
>0001	Positive Response (ACK). Sent in response to MAC frames requiring positive acknowledgement of receipt.
>8001	MAC Frame Data Field Incomplete. The MAC frame was too short to contain the Major Vector Length and Major Vector ID (less than 4 bytes).
>8002	Major Vector Length Invalid. The Major Vector Length did not agree with the length of the frame or a subvector was found that did not fit within the Major Vector.
>8003	Major Vector Command Not Supported. The Major Vector ID was not recognized by the Adapter.
>8004	Inappropriate Source Class. The Source Class in the Major Vector ID is not valid for the Major Vector.
>8005	Subvector Length Invalid. The length of a recognized subvector is longer than the maximum allowed.
>8006	Transmit Forward Frame Error. An error is detected in the received Transmit Forward MAC frame. The frame is not forwarded.
>8007	Required Subvector Missing. A subvector required by the Adapter is not in the frame.
>8008	Required Subvector Unknown. A subvector received in the MAC frame that is marked required is not known by the Adapter. This response is also generated if a required subvector is duplicated in the Major Vector.
>8009	MAC frame Exceeds Maximum Length. The received frame is rejected because it did not fit in one buffer.
>800A	Function Disabled. The received MAC frame is not executed because the function requested is disabled.

3.7 Monitor Functions

An Adapter on the ring can be either an Active Monitor or a Stand-by Monitor. Only one Active Monitor is present on any ring; the remaining Adapters serve as Stand-by Monitors. The Active Monitor ensures normal token operation on the ring and provides the crystal-controlled master data clocking for data transmission. The Stand-by Monitors ensure that the Active Monitor is functioning properly and is still inserted on the Ring.

The Ring Purge Process is used by the Active Monitor to perform the recovery from a temporary error condition, to release a new token, and to return the ring to a known state.

The Ring Poll Process is initiated periodically by the Active Monitor to update the Upstream Neighbor's Address (UNA) in all adapters in the ring and to provide an indication to other stations in the ring that the Active Monitor is still active.

3.7.1 Active Monitor Functions

The role of the Active Monitor is to ensure normal token operation on the ring. An Adapter becomes the Active Monitor by active participation in the Monitor Contention Process. The Monitor contention process is discussed in Section 3.8.2. The Adapter that "wins" contention becomes the Active Monitor.

Upon successfully winning contention, the Active Monitor does the following:

1. Sets a bit in the TMS38020 Protocol Handler that:
   a. Provides master clocking for data transmission.
   b. Inserts a 30 bit time latency to guarantee a ring length which assures that a token can be circulated properly.
   c. Activates the circulating token removal hardware.
2. Executes the Ring Purge Process.
3. Starts the Ring Poll Process by activating an internal pacing times and queues an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame for transmission.
4. Transmits a free token of priority equal to the token reservation priority in the Ring Purge MAC frame last stripped by the Adapter.
5. Sets the Monitor Functional Address.
6. Activates a checking function that confirms that a good token is detected on the ring every 10 ms. This timer sets the maximum frame size on the order of 4048 bytes.
7. Queues a Report New Monitor MAC frame for transmission to the Network Manager.

The circulating token removal function operates as follows:

1. When tokens are released on the ring, bit 4 of the AC byte (the 'MC' bit) is transmitted as zero.
2. When an Adapter changes the token into a frame, it leaves the MC bit as zero. It indicates a frame by setting only bit 3 of AC (the 'TI' bit) to one.
3. When a frame or a token of priority greater than zero passes through the Active Monitor (which is in repeat mode), the monitor sets the MC bit.

4. The transmitting Adapter SHOULD strip its frame or token off the ring and release a free token with the MC bit equal to zero. If it does not, the frame or priority token passes into the Active Monitor for the second time.
5. When a frame or priority token comes into the monitor with its MC bit equal to one, the monitor hardware does NOT repeat it back onto the ring. The Active monitor then increments its "Token Error Counter" and purges the ring.

When an event occurs that requires an action by the Active Monitor, the Active Monitor does the following:

- When the Active Monitor detects a token error (either a circulating frame or priority token) or fails to detect a good token during a 10 ms period, the Active Monitor starts the Ring Purge Process to recover the ring back to normal token protocols.
- When an internal 7 second timer expires, the Active Monitor starts the Ring Poll Process.

3.7.1.1 Active Monitor Exception Conditions

The following exception conditions will cause the station to deactivate the Active Monitor function and take the corresponding action.

RECEIVE RING PURGE	The Adapter will reset the Active Monitor and queue a Report Monitor Error MAC frame for transmission with an error code subvector indicating that a duplicate monitor has been detected if it receives a Ring Purge MAC frame from an address not its own. The Adapter will start the Stand-by Monitor functions.
RECEIVE AMP	If the Active Monitor receives an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame which it did not transmit, the Adapter will reset the Active Monitor function and queue a Report Monitor Error MAC frame with an error code subvector value indicating that a duplicate monitor has been detected. The Adapter will start the Stand-by Monitor functions.
RECEIVE CLAIM TOKEN	The Adapter will queue a Report Monitor error MAC frame for transmission with an error code subvector indicating a Stand-by Monitor detected an error in the Active Monitor, and the Monitor Contention Process is entered in Contention Repeat mode. This Adapter will not actively participate in the Contention Process by entering Contention Repeat mode.
RECEIVE BEACON	If the Adapter is inserted, the Adapter will enter the Beacon Process in Beacon Repeat Mode. If the Adapter is in the insertion process, the OPEN command is terminated with an error.
SIGNAL LOSS	The Adapter will enter the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.
WIRE FAULT	If a wire fault condition is detected, the Adapter de-inserts from the ring and sets the Lobe Wire Fault bit in Ring Status.

3.7.2 Stand-by Monitor Functions

Any Adapter that is not the Active Monitor but has completed the Insertion Process will follow the procedures of the Stand-by Monitor. The function of the Stand-by Monitor is to monitor the events on the ring to determine if the Active Monitor is functioning properly.

The Stand-by Monitor Functions are disabled while the Adapter is in the Insertion, Beacon, or Monitor Contention Processes.

A station activates its Stand-by Monitor functions as follows:

- When the Adapter completes the Ring Insertion Process and did not "win contention" in Phase 1 of the Ring Insertion Process.
- When the Adapter receives a Ring Purge MAC frame while it is in Contention Repeat mode.
- When an inserted Active Monitor determines that another Adapter has assumed the functions of Active Monitor.

As a Stand-by Monitor, the station transmits on the ring using the clock derived from the incoming signal. It also deactivates the hardware mechanism for correcting circulating priority tokens and frames.

The following ring conditions are monitored by the Stand-by Monitor:

- GOOD TOKEN - The station verifies that a 'good' token is received at least once every 2.6 seconds. A 'good' token is defined as a token of priority zero, or a token of priority greater than zero followed by a frame with a priority field greater than zero.
- PERIODIC RING POLLS - The Adapter Receive Poll Timer detects the absence of Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frames. The Receive Poll timer is restarted when an AMP MAC frame is received. The absence of AMP MAC frames indicates there is no Active Monitor in the ring. If the Receive Poll Timer expires after 15 seconds, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in the Contention Transmit Mode.
- PROPER RING DATA FREQUENCY - The Adapter uses the 'Hardware Error Process' to check the frequency of the data on the ring. If a frequency error is detected by this process, it indicates that there is no Active Monitor or that the Active Monitor is not functioning properly. If a frequency error is detected, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit mode.

3.7.2.1 Stand-by Monitor Exception Conditions

The following exception conditions cause the Adapter to de-activate the Stand-by Monitor functions and take these actions.

ACTIVE MONITOR ERRORS	If the Adapter detects an error in the Active Monitor, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.
RECEIVE BEACON	The receiving station enters the Beacon Process in Beacon Repeat Mode.
CLAIM TOKEN FRAME	If the Adapter receives a Claim Token MAC Frame, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process.
SIGNAL LOSS	If a signal loss is detected by the Adapter, it enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.
WIRE FAULT	If a wire fault condition is detected by the Adapter, the Adapter de-inserts from the ring and sets the Lobe Wire Fault bit in Ring Status.

3.8 MAC Processes

The Token Ring Adapter Medium Access Control (MAC) protocols are implemented primarily by Adapter software. These protocol processes are described below:

TABLE 3-8. MAC PROTOCOL PROCESSES

MAC FRAME	PROCESS
MONITOR CONTENTION	The Monitor Contention process involves all Adapters attached on the ring. This process establishes a ring station as the Active Monitor. The Active Monitor ensures normal operation of the ring.
RING PURGE	The Ring Purge process, initiated by the Active Monitor, is used to put the ring into a normal condition, which allows frames to be transmitted using the token protocol.
RING POLL	The Ring Poll process enables any Adapter inserted into the ring to acquire the address of its upstream neighbor (UNA). The Ring Poll is initiated periodically by the Active Monitor to ascertain the ordered list of attached stations. It is also used to determine if a single station ring exists. This process is referred to as "Neighbor Notification" in IEEE Std 802.5.
BEACON	The Beacon process is used to recover the ring when any attaching ring station has sensed that the ring is inoperable due to a hard error. If necessary, the Adapter withdraws itself from the ring.
HARDWARE ERROR	The Hardware Error Process is used to detect when a wire fault, frequency error or ring signal loss has occurred.
RING INSERTION	The Ring Insertion process is performed by the Adapter to insert the Adapter into the ring. It is performed after bring-up diagnostics and initialization have been completed. The Ring Insertion process is initiated with an OPEN command to the Adapter, issued by the attached system.
SOFT ERROR COUNTING	This process logs and reports an error condition that temporarily degrades system performance, but can be tolerated by using error recovery procedures of higher protocols.
TRANSMIT FORWARD	The Transmit Forward process allows multiple layers of frames to be sent by network management to test a path between two attached ring stations.

3.8.1 Notes on Reading the MAC Frame Tables

When each process is discussed, the MAC frames which are exchanged by the execution of that process are also provided in tabular format. These tables contain the following columns:

M-V NAME — This is the name of the MAC frame. Also provided is the hexadecimal value of the Major Vector (M-V) command. Hexadecimal numbers are preceded by a ">" sign.

DEST CLASS — The destination class is the four bit destination class field of the MAC frame Major Vector ID as previously introduced.

SOURCE CLASS — The source class is the four bit source class field of the MAC frame Major Vector ID. The source class value ranges from 0 through F. The source classes referenced in these tables are as follows:

>0 ..... RS - Ring Station (Adapter)
>4 ..... NM - Network Manager
>5 ..... RPS - Ring Parameter Server
>6 ..... REM - Ring Error Monitor

DEST ADDRESS — This is the destination address field of the MAC frame. The terminology used in this field is described below:

- **all sta** — ALL STATIONS. This indicates a group broadcast address allowing all Adapters on the local ring to copy the frame.
- **F<fa>** — FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS. This indicates that a destination address is the functional address of "fa" function, i.e. Network Manager, Ring Parameter Server, etc. The functional addresses are as follows:

RPS - Ring Parameter Server	>0002
REM - Ring Error Monitor	>0008
NM - Network Manager	>0010

- **MA** — MY ADDRESS. This Adapter's specific address.
- **SA** — SOURCE ADDRESS.
- **TARGET** — A six byte destination address.

SUBVECTORS — The subvectors which are included in the MAC frame are listed in this column. The hexadecimal subvector type value is also provided. Two columns are used to indicate additional information:

XMT : This subcolumn contains a letter indicating whether a subvector is always transmitted by the sending Adapter or copied from another frame. This subcolumn is with respect to the sending Adapter.

RCV : This subcolumn contains a letter indicating whether a subvector is required, is optional, or is not syntax checked. A MAC frame received which has a required subvector missing will result in a negative response indicating "Required Subvector Missing".

3.8.2 Monitor Contention Process

The Monitor Contention Process involves all the Adapters in the Ring. The Monitor Contention Process is used to establish a ring station as an Active Monitor. This process is started when any station on the ring detects that no Active Monitor is in the ring or that the Active Monitor is not functioning properly. Other adapters enter the process when a Claim Token MAC frame is received.

The process starts when a station detects the need for Monitor Contention and transmits a Claim Token MAC frame. Other stations will join the process when they receive the Claim Token MAC frame. These stations join the process in an active or passive role by entering Contention Transmit or Contention Repeat Mode, respectively. The active station among those contenders with the highest ring station address will be established as the Active Monitor.

The stations that actively participate are:

- Those detecting the need for contention.
- Those configured to contend by the attached system's OPEN command that have not received a Claim Token MAC frame with a source address higher than their own ring station address, except an Adapter that is the Active Monitor at the time the Claim Token MAC frame is received.

All other stations on the ring enter Contention Repeat mode.

Stations that actively participate enter Contention Transmit Mode. These stations repeatedly transmit a Claim Token MAC frame to all stations on the local ring followed by ring idles without waiting for free tokens. The frame transmission is repeated at 20 millisecond intervals. The Claim Token MAC frame information field contains the transmitting station's upstream neighbor's (UNA) ring station address.

3.8.2.1 Applicable MAC Frames

Table 3-9 describes the MAC frames which are used in this process.

TABLE 3-9. MONITOR CONTENTION PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>03 Claim Token	>0	>0	all stations	A A	O R	>0B Physical Drop >02 UNA
>25 Report New Monitor	>4	>0	F(NM)	A A A		>0B Physical Drop >02 UNA >22 Product ID
>28 Report Monitor Error	>6	>0	F(REM)	A A A		>30 Error Code: >0001 Monitor Err >0002 Dup. Mon. >0003 Dup. Addr. >0B Physical Drop >02 UNA

NOTE: A = always transmitted, R = required, O = optional

3

3.8.2.2 Contention Transmit Mode

The following list describes the conditions that cause a station to enter Contention Transmit mode and begin the Monitor Contention Process.

TABLE 3-10. EVENTS TRIGGERING MONITOR CONTENTION

EVENT	DESCRIPTION
GOOD TOKEN NOT RECEIVED	If a Stand-by Monitor does not detect a good token within a 2.6 second period it causes the station to enter Contention Transmit mode.
RING POLL TIMEOUT	If a Stand-by Monitor does not detect an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame within a fifteen-second period, the station enters Contention Transmit Mode.
INSERTION TIMER TIMEOUT	If no Active Monitor Present/Standby Monitor Present or Ring Purge MAC frame is detected within 18 seconds of inserting onto the ring, the Adapter enters Contention Transmit Mode. When an Active Monitor is established, the Adapter returns to the Insertion process.
UNSUCCESSFUL PURGE	If the Active Monitor is unable to successfully purge the ring, the station enters Contention Transmit mode.
FREQUENCY ERROR	If a Stand-by Monitor detects a frequency error, it enters Contention Transmit mode.
BEACON TRANSMIT MODE	If a station in Beacon Transmit Mode receives its own beacon frame, it enters Contention Transmit mode.
BEACON REPEAT MODE	If a station in Beacon Repeat Mode detects a 'circulating' beacon frame, it enters Contention Transmit Mode.
BEACON ESCAPE TIMER	If an Adapter in Beacon Repeat Mode detects no beacon frames for 200 milliseconds, it enters Contention Transmit Mode.
SIGNAL LOSS	If a signal loss condition is detected by the Adapter, it enters Contention Transmit Mode.

When the Adapter enters Contention Transmit Mode, it starts the monitor contention timer and continually transmits a Claim Token MAC frame (followed by idles) every 20 milliseconds. Claim Token MAC frames are transmitted immediately without waiting for a free token. If the Adapter is in Beacon Repeat Mode and receives a Claim Token MAC frame, it will exit the Beacon Process. When a Claim Token MAC frame is received with a source address higher than the station's own address, the Adapter will re-transmit that frame, and when frame transmission has completed, enters Contention Repeat Mode. When the Adapter receives three successive Claim Token MAC frames with a source address equal to its own address and a UNA subvector equal to its saved UNA (i.e. receives its own frame) it 'wins contention'. This Adapter will become the new Active Monitor. This Adapter exits Contention Transmit Mode and performs the Ring Purge process. It then queues a Report New Monitor MAC frame for transmission to the Network Manager.

3.8.2.3 Contention Repeat Mode

When an Adapter enters Contention Repeat Mode, it starts its Monitor Contention Timer. The Monitor Contention Timer is a one second timer, which serves as a 'watchdog' timer during the contention process to prevent the process from continuing indefinitely if the contention condition cannot be resolved. If this timer expires, the Beacon Process is entered.

When an Adapter receives a Claim Token MAC frame, the frame is ignored. When an Adapter receives a Ring Purge MAC frame, it resets its Monitor Contention Timer and resumes normal operation, and starts the Stand-by Monitor functions.

3.8.2.4 Adapters not in Monitor Contention

An Adapter not in Contention Transmit Mode and not in Contention Repeat Mode takes the following action when it receives a Claim Token MAC frame.

- If the source address in the frame is less than this Adapter's specific address, the Adapter is inserted, and the Adapter was OPENed with the Contender option then the Adapter enters Contention Transmit Mode. Otherwise, it enters Contention Repeat Mode.
- If the source address in the frame is equal to this Adapter's specific address, the frame is ignored.

3.8.2.5 Exception Events

The following events cause an Adapter to queue an error reporting MAC frame and enter Contention Repeat Mode:

1. An Active Monitor ring station that receives a Claim Token MAC Frame (a) de-activates its Active Monitor functions, (b) enters Contention Repeat mode, and (c) queues the Report Monitor Error MAC frame with an Error Code subvector value equal to >0001. This indicates that a Stand-by Monitor detected an error in the Active Monitor. This frame is transmitted after contention is resolved.
2. A ring station in Contention Transmit Mode that receives a Claim Token MAC frame with a source address equal to its specific address and a UNA address NOT equal to its UNA (a) enters Contention Repeat Mode and, when contention is resolved, (b) queues the Report Monitor Error MAC frame with an Error Code subvector value equal to >0003, indicating a duplicate address was detected in Monitor Contention.

The following exceptions cause an Adapter in Contention Transmit or Repeat Mode to enter the Beacon Transmit mode in the Beacon Process or abnormally terminate an OPEN command from the attached system.

1. If the Monitor Contention Timer expires (one second) and the Adapter has not completed phase 2 of the Insertion Process, the OPEN command is terminated with an error to the attached system. The Adapter is de-inserted from the ring.
2. If the Monitor Contention timer expires and the Adapter is in phase 3 or 4 of the Insertion Process or is inserted, the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode.

If an Adapter is inserted and is in Contention Repeat or Transmit Mode, and receives a Beacon MAC frame, it enters the Beacon Process in Beacon Repeat Mode.

3.8.3 Ring Purge Process

The Ring Purge Process is used to put the ring into a normal condition that allows frames to be transmitted using the token protocol. The Ring Purge Process is started by the Active Monitor when one of the following conditions occur:

1. When a token error condition is detected by the Active Monitor.
2. When an Adapter becomes the Active Monitor in the Monitor Contention Process.

3.8.3.1 Applicable MAC Frames

Table 3-11 describes the Ring Purge MAC frame used in the Ring Purge Process.

TABLE 3-11. RING PURGE PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>04 Ring Purge	>0	>0	all stations	A	R	>02 UNA
				A	O	>0B Physical Drop

NOTE: A = always transmitted, R = required, O = optional

3.8.3.2 Ring Purge Procedure

When the Active Monitor enters the Ring Purge Process, a ring purge timer is started and the Active Monitor transmits a Ring Purge MAC frame. This transmission takes place without waiting for a free token and without releasing a free token upon completion. Following transmission of the Ring Purge frame, the Adapter sends continuous idles (zeros).

When the Active Monitor receives the transmission after the frame has circulated the ring, it checks for errors in the transmission. These errors could be code violation errors or frame check sequence (CRC) errors.

If an error is detected, the Adapter transmits another Ring Purge MAC frame until a frame is received error-free or until the ring purge timer expires.

The ring purge timer functions as a "watchdog timer" to limit the time the Adapter will continue to transmit Ring Purge MAC frames during the process. This one-second timer is reset when the Active Monitor has received one Ring Purge MAC frame which circulated the ring with no errors.

After an error-free frame is received, the Adapter transmits a free token of priority equal to the reservation priority in the last Ring Purge MAC frame that was stripped by the Adapter.

3.8.3.3 Ring Purge Receiver

The Adapter in Contention Repeat Mode which receives a Ring Purge MAC frame returns to normal operation and starts the Stand-by Monitor functions.

If a Stand-by Monitor that is not in Contention Repeat Mode receives a Ring Purge MAC frame, it resets auto-removal variables and discards the frame.

If an Active Monitor receives a Ring Purge MAC frame, it checks the source address of the frame to determine if it transmitted the frame. The reception of this frame by an Active Monitor which did not transmit the frame is an exception condition of the Active Monitor.

3.8.3.4 Exception Conditions

If the ring purge timer expires (one second), the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.

If the Adapter is in the Insertion Process when the ring purge timer expires, the Adapter is de-inserted and the OPEN command is terminated with an error message to the attached system.

3.8.4 Ring Poll Process

The Ring Poll Process enables each Adapter on the ring to acquire the six-byte specific address of its Upstream Neighbor Station. In this process each station transmits its specific address (6 bytes) and its physical drop number (4 bytes) to the next downstream station. Each station saves its UNA and if different from the previously saved UNA, queues for transmission a Report SUA Change MAC frame to the Network Manager.

This process allows an ordered list of stations on the network to be maintained by the Network Manager for network diagnostic purposes.

3.8.4.1 Applicable MAC Frames

Table 3-12 presents the MAC frames used by this process.

TABLE 3-12. RING POLL PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>05 Active Monitor Present (AMP)	>0	>0	all stations	A A	O R	>0B Physical Drop >02 UNA
>06 Standby Monitor Present (SMP)	>0	>0	all stations	A A	O R	>0B Physical Drop >02 UNA
>27 Report Ring Poll Failure	>6	>0	F(REM)	A		>0A SA of last AMP or SMP frame
>26 Report SUA Change	>4	>0	F(NM)	A A		>0B Physical Drop >02 UNA

NOTE: A = Always transmitted, R = Required, O = Optional

3.8.4.2 Ring Poll Procedure

The Active Monitor will transmit an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame whenever its poll timer expires (every 7 seconds) or at the end of the Ring Purge Process. The Active Monitor also resets an internal flag termed the 'poll complete flag'.

The following procedure is applied to every Active Monitor Present (AMP) or Standby Monitor Present (SMP) MAC frame received by the Adapter following Phase 3 of the Insertion Process.

- If an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame is received by an Active Monitor and the frame originated from the Active Monitor, the ARI and FCI bits of the FS field are examined to see if another station received the frame. If the ARI and FCI bits are all zero, the Active Monitor is the only station on the ring. The Adapter then sets the single station bit in the Ring Status Register if not previously set.
- If an AMP or SMP MAC frame is received by any Adapter, the ARI and FCI bits are examined to see if another station is in the ring. If these bits are not all zeros, the single station bit in the Ring Status Register (if it was set) is reset.
- If an AMP MAC frame is received by a Stand-by Monitor, it will restart the Receive Poll Timer.
- If an AMP MAC frame is received by any station, the Adapter will reset to zero an internal status flag called the "receive ARI/FCI flag".
- If an AMP or SMP MAC frame is received by the Active Monitor and an internal flag called the "poll complete flag" is set to one, the procedure terminates.
- If any station receives an AMP or SMP MAC frame and the ARI and FCI bits are not all zeros, then the station saves the source address of the frame as the latest poll address. This address is used by the Active Monitor in a Report Ring Poll Failure MAC frame if a failure is detected.
- If any station receives an AMP or SMP MAC frame and the ARI and FCI bits are all zeros (no other Adapter has copied the frame), the Adapter compares the source address of the frame to the Upstream Neighbor's Address (UNA) previously saved. If the source address does not equal the UNA address then the Adapter saves the source address as the Adapter's UNA and a Report SUA Change MAC frame is queued for transmission to the Network Manager. Next, the Adapter checks the internal "receive ARI/FCI flag". If this flag is set to one, the Adapter increments the ARI/FCI Error Counter (see Section 3.12) and will not queue an SMP MAC frame for transmission. If the flag was zero, it will be set to one.

NOTE

When the ARI/FCI Error Counter is incremented, it indicates that the Upstream Neighbor station is unable to set the ARI or FCI bits of received frames.

- If the Active Monitor receives an AMP or SMP MAC frame with the ARI and FCI bits all zeros, then it sets the internal 'poll complete flag',and the process terminates.
- If a Standby Monitor receives an AMP or SMP MAC frame with the ARI and FCI bits all zeros,the station starts the poll response timer (20 ms). At the expiration of this timer the station queues a SMP MAC frame for transmission. This frame propagates the Ring Poll to the next downstream station.

3.8.4.3 Active Monitor Exception Conditions

If a poll frame from the Monitor's upstream neighbor does not arrive before the Poll Timer expires (7 seconds), the monitor starts a new poll cycle. The Monitor queues a Report Ring Poll Failure MAC frame for transmission to the Ring Error Monitor (REM), sending to the REM the Latest Poll Address.

If the Active Monitor receives an AMP MAC frame from another Adapter, then two Adapters think they are the Active Monitor. The Active Monitor therefore resets its Active Monitor functions and queues for transmission a Report Monitor Error MAC frame to the REM with a subvector value indicating that a duplicate monitor was detected. The Adapter now responds to the received AMP MAC frame as a non-monitor station.

In order to detect streaming in the Adapter immediately upstream from the Active Monitor, the Active Monitor checks that it receives its own AMP MAC frame within 15 seconds of the last one. If it does not receive it, the Active Monitor will enter Monitor Contention in the Contention Transmit mode.

3.8.4.4 Standby Monitor Exception Conditions

In order to detect the failure of the Active Monitor, each Stand-by Monitor verifies that an AMP frame is received within fifteen seconds of the last one. If not, the Standby Monitor discards any frame(s) pending transmission and enters Monitor Contention in Contention Transmit Mode.

This fifteen second period is timed using the receive poll timer. This timer is only active in a Standby Monitor.

3.8.4.5 Exception Conditions-All Chapters

Insertion Phases 1 and 2

If the Ring Poll Procedure requires the transmission of a Report SUA Change or an SMP MAC frame, the transmission of these frames is delayed until Phase 3 of the Insertion Process.

Contention Transmit Mode or Beacon Transmit Mode.

Entry into either Contention Transmit Mode or Beacon Transmit Mode will cause the Adapter to purge any AMP or SMP MAC frames pending transmission.

Poll Frame Re-try

AMP or SMP MAC frames are not checked for successful transmission. An unsuccessful transmission will cause the poll cycle to terminate, but the Active Monitor will start a new poll cycle when the Poll Timer expires (7 seconds).

3.8.5 Beacon Process

The Beacon Process is used to recover the ring when a ring station has sensed that a hard error has occurred, rendering the ring inoperable. A station detecting a ring failure upstream transmits or "beacons" information in a MAC frame that isolates the error location.

The Beacon Process is started when an Adapter inserted in the ring detects that an Adapter's Monitor Contention Timer expired in the Monitor Contention Process, indicating that contention could not be resolved.

When a station beacons, all other stations on the ring enter either Beacon Transmit or Beacon Repeat Mode. In Beacon Transmit Mode, Beacon MAC frames are transmitted at 20 millisecond intervals, without waiting for a token. Idle zero bits are transmitted between frames. An Adapter not in the Beacon Process that receives a Beacon MAC frame enters Beacon Repeat mode. An Adapter in the Insertion Process will not enter the Beacon Process but will terminate the OPEN command with an error indicating that the ring is beaconing.

3.8.5.1 Applicable MAC Frames

The MAC frames used by this process are described in Table 3-13.

TABLE 3-13. BEACON PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>02 Beacon	>0	>0	all stations	A	R	>01 Beacon Type
				A	R	>02 UNA
				A	O	>0B Physical Drop

NOTE: A = Always transmitted, R = Required, O = Optional

3.8.5.2 Beacon Transmit Mode

When the Adapter transmits a Beacon MAC frame the content of the frame varies depending on the reason the Beacon Process was entered. All Beacon frames contain a Beacon Type subvector which identifies the reason the Adapter is transmitting Beacon MAC frames. This parameter ranks the priority of the Beacon MAC frame. The Beacon MAC frame with the lowest Beacon Type subvector is the highest priority type Beacon. The Beacon MAC frame types are as follows:

1. SET RECOVERY MODE (>0001 - highest priority): This type of Beacon MAC frame can only be originated by the process in an attached product acting as a Recovery Station with a function class zero authorization. (NOTE: This Adapter software will not originate this type of beacon frame.)
2. SIGNAL LOSS (>0002): This type of Beacon MAC frame is transmitted when a Monitor Contention timeout occurs and the Contention Transmit mode was entered because of a signal loss condition being detected. If a signal loss condition is detected while in Beacon Transmit type >0003 or >0004, the beacon type will change to >0002. If transmitting Beacon MAC frames with this Beacon Type Subvector a signal is detected; the Beacon Type Subvector will be changed to >0003.
3. BIT STREAMING (>0003): This type of Beacon MAC frame is transmitted when a Monitor Contention timeout occurs in an Adapter in Monitor Contention Transmit Mode, and no Claim Token MAC frames were received during the contention period.
4. CONTENTION STREAMING (>0004-lowest priority): This type of Beacon MAC frame is transmitted when a Monitor Contention timeout occurs in an Adapter in Monitor Contention (transmit or repeat), and one or more Claim Token MAC frame(s) were received during the contention period. This indicates that contention could not be resolved within one second.

When the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode, it sets to one the Hard Error and Beacon Transmit bits in the Ring Status register.

Beacon MAC frames are transmitted every 20 ms without waiting for a token and are followed by idles. In Beacon Transmit Mode, the Adapter transmits using its internal crystal oscillator, rather than the clock recovered from the incoming signal.

If the Adapter receives a Beacon MAC frame that was transmitted with a source address equal to this Adapter's specific address (i.e. a Beacon MAC frame transmitted by this Adapter), the Adapter discontinues beaconing, clears the Hard Error and Beacon Transmit Bits to zero and enters the Monitor Contention Process. When the beaconing Adapter receives its own Beacon frames, the ring hard error is recovered to the point where ring continuity is achieved, allowing for the next stage in ring recovery - the Monitor Contention Process.

If the Adapter receives a Beacon MAC frame that it did not transmit but has a Beacon Type subvector value of equal or higher priority than the Beacon Type subvector value being transmitted by this Adapter, the Adapter enters Beacon Repeat Mode and clears the Beacon Transmit Bit in the Ring Status Register.

If the Adapter receives a Claim Token MAC frame the frame is ignored.

If the Adapter does not proceed to Monitor Contention mode while in Beacon Transmit Mode within 26 seconds, the Adapter will execute the Beacon Transmit Auto Removal Test. This test is only executed once while in the Beacon Process. The Adapter must return to normal operation before the Beacon Transmit Auto Removal Test can be executed again.

3.8.5.3 Beacon Repeat Mode

When the Adapter enters Beacon Repeat Mode, it sets to one the hard error bit in the Ring Status register. The Adapter repeats the incoming signal using the recovered ring clock.

The Adapter verifies that Beacon frames continue to be received in Beacon Repeat Mode. If no Beacon MAC Frame is received for a period of 200 milliseconds, the Adapter assumes that the conditions causing the beacon have been corrected. In this case, the Adapter resets to zero the Hard Error Bit in Ring Status, exits the Beacon Process and enters the Monitor Contention Process.

When a Beacon MAC frame is received, it is inspected to determine if the frame was sent by the upstream neighbor (Source Address of the frame is equal to this Adapter's UNA) or by the nearest downstream station (UNA in the frame is equal to this Adapter's address).

When Beacon frames are received by any Adapter, the following actions are taken:

- If eight consecutive Beacon MAC frames are received from the nearest downstream station (the UNA ID subvector in the received Beacon MAC frame is equal to the Adapter's specific address) the Adapter executes the Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test. This test can only be executed once while the Adapter is in the Beacon Process. The Adapter must return to normal operation before the Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test can be executed again.
- If the Beacon frames are not from the nearest downstream station, the following two checks are made:
  - If two consecutive Beacon MAC frames are received from the nearest upstream station, the Adapter activates its functions for marking and removing circulating frames. This marking and removing process is described in Section 3.7.1. The Adapter will also prevent itself from executing the Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test. If a circulating beacon frame is detected, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.
  - If the Beacon MAC frame is not from the nearest upstream station, the Adapter disables its circulating frame removal functions.

If a Monitor Contention MAC frame is received, the Adapter resets the Hard Error Bit in Ring Status in the Protocol Handler, exits the Beacon Process and enters the Monitor Contention Process.

3.8.5.4 Beacon Transmit Auto Removal Test

The Beacon Transmit Auto Removal Test is a process for automatically withdrawing faulty stations from the ring. A station transmitting Beacon MAC frames has a fault somewhere in the path between its receiver input and the transmitter of the immediate upstream station. The fault could lie either in the upstream station's lobe (the wire connecting it to the wiring concentrator), in the beaconing station's lobe, the upstream neighbor's transmitter, this Adapter's receiver, or in the wiring concentrator itself. The Beacon Transmit Auto Removal Test process corrects a fault if the fault is in the beaconing Adapter's receiver or lobe.

If a station does not leave the Beacon Transmit mode within 26 seconds, it executes the Beacon Transmit Auto Removal test, as follows:

1. It physically removes itself from the ring by deactivating the phantom circuit drive current.
2. The Adapter performs the Lobe Media Test as used in Phase 0 of the Insertion Process. If this wrap test fails, the Adapter remains removed and sets the Auto Removal Error Bit in the Ring Status register.
3. If the wrap test successfully completes, the Adapter physically reinserts onto the ring. Its actions at that point depend on the type of beaconing it was performing prior to auto-removal, and the ring state it discovers upon reinserting.
   a. If any MAC frame is received, the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode, discards the received MAC frame, and cancels the Auto Removal Timer.
   b. If a signal loss is detected, the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode, resumes transmitting the same Beacon MAC frame, and cancels the Auto Removal Timer.
   c. If the Auto Removal Timer expires, the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode,transmitting the same type Beacon as before.

3.8.5.5 Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test

The Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test corrects ring faults in the lobe of the Adapter upstream of the beaconing Adapter. If a fault occurs in a station's transmit path, then its downstream neighbor will beacon, and the station with the faulty transmitter will receive its neighbor's beacon frames. As described under the Beacon Repeat Mode section above, when eight such frames are received consecutively, a station performs the Beacon Receive Auto Removal Test, as follows:

1. The Adapter physically withdraws from the ring. This wraps the transmit pair to the receive pair at the wiring concentrator.
2. The Adapter executes the Lobe Media Check phase of the Insertion Process. If this fails, the Adapter sets the Auto Removal Error bit in Ring Status and remains withdrawn from the ring.
3. If the wrap test succeeds, the Adapter re-inserts into the ring.
   a. If it receives any recognized MAC frame the Adapter cancels the Auto Removal Timer, discards the MAC frame, and enters the Monitor Contention Transmit mode.
   b. If the Auto Removal Timer expires (18 seconds), the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Transmit mode.

3.8.6 Hardware Error Process

The Hardware Error Process is used to detect the following error conditions:

- Wire Fault
- Frequency Error
- Ring Signal Loss

Two procedures are used to detect these error conditions, the Wire Fault Detection Procedure and the Ring Interface Error Detection Procedure. The Wire Fault Detection Procedure is used to detect Wire Fault conditions. The Ring Interface Error Detection Procedure is used to detect the Frequency Error condition and the Signal Loss condition.

3.8.6.1 Wire Fault Detection Procedure

A wire fault condition is indicated when the DC current on either wire of the transmit pair exceeds an abnormally high or low condition. This will be caused, for instance, if one of the lines is open or if any of them are shorted to ground. When a wire fault condition is verified to exist continuousiy for 5 seconds, the Lobe Wire Fault bit of the Ring Status register is set. The Adapter then physically de-inserts from the ring.

3.8.6.2 Frequency Error Detection Procedure

When the frequency of the incoming signal differs by more than 0.6% from the local crystal oscillator, a Frequency Error Condition is indicated. This is detected by an overflow or underflow condition of the elastic buffer.

3.8.6.3 Signal Error Detection Procedure

An incoming Ring Signal Loss is indicated when:

1. The incoming signal has insufficient signal energy (see Section 4.5.10); or
2. The incoming signal is grossly out of phase with the local phase-locked loop.

When conditions one or two are verified to be in effect for 200 milliseconds, the software indicates a Signal Loss Condition. If this occurs during the Ring Insertion Process (phases 1 and 2), the OPEN Command terminates with a Signal Loss error code. If the Adapter is in the Beacon Transmit Auto Removal process, the Adapter enters Beacon Transmit Mode. Otherwise, the Adapter enters Monitor Contention Transmit mode.

3.8.7 Ring Insertion Process

The Ring Insertion process is performed after Bring-Up Diagnostics and Initialization have been completed. An OPEN command, issued by the attached system, initiates the Ring Insertion Process. Before beginning Phase 0 of the Ring Insertion Process, the following defaults are set in the Adapter:

- The Physical Drop Number is set to zero.
- The Local Ring Number is set to zero.
- The Soft Error Report Timer Value is set to two seconds.
- The Enabled Function Classes Mask is set to permit all classes of MAC frames to be transmitted across the System Interface except for Ring Station (>0) and Ring Parameter Server (>5).
- The Allowed Access Priority is set to three (highest priority).
- All error counters are reset to zero.

The attached system will be "logically" inserted in the ring when the Adapter is connected into the ring and all phases of the Ring Insertion process have been completed successfully. Physical Insertion occurs when the Adapter has taken the necessary steps to establish the physical signal path from the ring through the Adapter and back to the ring. In addition, the lobe media, which connects the station to the physical ring through the wiring concentrator, is verified before physical insertion occurs. Switching of ring signal paths is performed by wiring concentrator hardware external to the Adapter.

The sequence of Adapter processes is divided into five phases. All five phases must be completed before the Adapter is successfully inserted into the ring. These phases are:

- Phase 0 - Lobe Media Check
- Phase 1 - Physical Insertion
- Phase 2 - Address Verification
- Phase 3 - Participation in Ring Poll
- Phase 4 - Request Initialization

3.8.7.1 Applicable MAC Frames

The Insertion Process uses the MAC frames described in Table 3-14.

TABLE 3-14. INSERTION PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		NAME
				XMT	RCV	
>07 Duplicate Address Test	>0	>0	target	A		none
>08 Lobe Media Test	>0	>0	all zero	A A	N	>26 Wrap Data
>20 Request Initialization	>5	>0	F(RPS)	A A A A		>23 Adapter Software level >02 UNA >22 Product ID >21 Reserved
>0C Change Parameters	>0	>4	target		O O O O O O	>09 Correlator >03 Local Ring No. >04 Assign Phys. Drop number >05 Soft Error Report Timer Value >06 Enabled Function Class >07 Allowed Access Priority
>0D Initialize Ring Station	>0	>5	target		O O O O	>09 Correlator >03 Local Ring No. >04 Assign Phys. Drop Number >05 Soft Error Report Time Value

NOTE: A = Always transmitted, N = Not syntax checked, O = Optional

3.8.7.2 Lobe Media Check: Phase 0

When the Adapter is not physically inserted into the ring, the relay at the wiring concentrator wraps the transmitter's signal from a station back to its receiver. In the Lobe Media Check phase, the Adapter verifies that this lobe wrap path is functioning. The Adapter transmits Lobe Media Test MAC frames with the destination address set with a zero node address. The Adapter will not copy this frame because of the destination address, but the checking of the frame for successful transmission is done when the frame is stripped. The Adapter inserts a 24 bit delay into the transmit path. The subvector in the MAC frame for wrap data will have a length of 1500 bytes. To complete Phase 0, the Adapter must successfully transmit 2047 frames and one Duplicate Address Test (DAT) MAC frame.

This procedure is also used during the Beacon Transmit and Beacon Receive Auto Removal tests. If this procedure detects an error when used with the Auto Removal tests, the Auto Removal Error bit is set in the Ring Status Register instead of posting the OPEN failure completion codes described below.

The Adapter constructs the Lobe Media Test MAC frame and transmits a token onto the lobe.

If the subsequent token capture and transmission of the Lobe Media Test frame does not complete within 40 milliseconds, the Adapter retries the transmission. After two unsuccessful attempts, the Adapter will terminate an OPEN command with an error code in the System Status Block (SSB).

After 2047 successful transmissions of the Lobe Media Test MAC frame, the Adapter sends a Duplicate Address Test (DAT) MAC frame to itself. This ensures that the receiver functions of the TMS38020 Protocol Handler are operational. If this frame is not received correctly, the Adapter will retry once. After successful reception of this frame, the Adapter proceeds to Phase 1 of the Insertion Process.

Phase 0 Exception Events.

Events that can occur asynchronously during Lobe Media check are as follows:

- If any MAC frame is received during this phase, the OPEN command terminates and the Adapter reports a function failure to the attached system. If the frame is received when the Adapter is in Beacon Auto Removal Test, the frame is ignored.
- If after two unsuccessful transmission attempts, the lobe check fails, the OPEN command terminates and the Adapter reports a function failure to the attached system.

3.8.7.3 Physical Insert: Phase 1

The Adapter physically inserts by impressing a DC current (phantom drive) on the transmit signal pair. This activates a relay in the wiring concentrator that connects the receive and transmit pairs into the physical ring.

After physically inserting, the Adapter waits for one of the following events to occur:

- Receipt of an Active Monitor Present (AMP) MAC frame.
- Receipt of a Standby Monitor Present (SMP) MAC frame.
- Receipt of a Ring Purge MAC frame.

Any of these indicate that an Active Monitor is present. If neither of these events occur within 18 seconds, the Adapter starts the Monitor Contention Process.

If no Active Monitor is detected, the Adapter software starts the Monitor Contention Process, and the Adapter that 'wins' contention becomes the Active Monitor. This phase completes successfully when the Adapter software determines that an Active Monitor is on the ring.

Upon completion of one of these events, Phase 1 is complete and the Adapter enters Phase 2, Address Verification. If the OPEN command is terminated because of an error condition during this phase, the Adapter is physically de-inserted from the ring.

Phase 1 Exception Events

Timeouts. If an Active Monitor is not detected within 18 seconds from the start of this process, the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.

If the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process and contention is not resolved within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If, after the Contention Process, the Adapter becomes the Active Monitor and performs the Ring Purge Process, and the Purge Process is not completed within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports a ring failure to the attached system.

Receive Frame. If the Adapter receives an AMP or SMP MAC Frame, it will follow the normal procedure for Ring Poll and will exit Phase 1 and enter Phase 2 (Address Verification) of the Insertion Process. If the transmission of a SMP or a Report SUA Change MAC frame is required, however, the Adapter will delay the transmission until Phase 3 of the Insertion Process.

If a Claim Token MAC Frame is received and the Adapter has not started the Monitor Contention Process, then the Adapter will begin Contention Repeat Mode.

If a Beacon MAC frame is received, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If a Remove Ring Station MAC frame is received, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports to the attached system that a remove was received.

All other MAC frames are processed normally.

3.8.7.4 Address Verification: Phase 2

Upon successful completion of Phase 1, the Address Verification phase is entered. The ring station address must be unique to this Adapter. This phase of the Insertion Process ensures that this address is not being used by another Adapter that is inserted in the ring.

The Duplicate Address Test MAC Frame is used for performing the address check. Note that the uniqueness check for all rings is not a function of the Adapter.

The Adapter sends a series of Duplicate Address Test MAC frames addressed to itself. If another station matches the local Adapter's address, then it will set to one the Address Recognized Indicator (ARI) bits of the frame. It may also set to one the Frame Copied Indicator (FCI) bits of the frame if the frame was copied. The Adapter will assume no other station matches its address when it receives two of its Duplicate Address Test MAC frames with both of the ARI and FCI bits set to zero.

If two frames are received with either the ARI or FCI bits set to one, the Adapter de-inserts itself from the ring and terminates the OPEN command with a Duplicate Node Address error code. Any other error condition will also cause the Adapter to de-insert from the ring.

After the station's address has been checked, the Adapter proceeds to Phase 3 (Participation in Ring Poll) of the Insertion Process.

Phase 2 Exception Events

Hardware Exceptions. If a signal loss is detected, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports a signal loss to the attached system.

If a frequency error is detected, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports a frequency error to the attached system.

Timeouts. If Phase 2 does not complete within 18 seconds, the Adapter terminates the OPEN command, de-inserts from the ring, and reports a timeout error to the attached system.

If the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process and contention is not resolved within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If, after the contention process, the Adapter becomes the Active Monitor and performs the Ring Purge Process and the Purge Process is not completed within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports a ring failure to the attached system.

Receive Frame. If the Adapter receives an AMP or SMP MAC Frame, it will follow the normal procedure for Ring Poll. However, if the transmission of a SMP or a Report SUA Change MAC frame is required, the Adapter will delay the transmission until Phase 3 of the Insertion Process.

If a Claim Token MAC Frame is received and the Adapter has not started the Monitor Contention Process, then the Adapter will go to Monitor Contention Repeat Mode. Following contention, the Adapter resumes the Phase 2 process.

If a Beacon MAC frame is received, the OPEN command is terminated, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If a Remove Adapter MAC frame is received, the OPEN command is terminated, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports to the attached system that a remove has been received.

All other MAC frames are processed normally.

3.8.7.5 Participation in Ring Poll: Phase 3

Upon completion of the Address Verification Phase, Phase 3, Participation in Ring Poll, will be entered. The purpose of this phase is to ensure that the Adapter has participated in the Ring Poll process. In this process, the Adapter acquires its Upstream Neighbor's Address (UNA) and allows the nearest downstream Adapter to acquire its address as that Adapter's UNA.

If an SMP or Report SUA Change MAC frame was required to be transmitted because of participation in the Ring Poll Process (in Phase 1 or Phase 2 of the Insertion Process) then these frames are transmitted at this time. The Adapter then exits Phase 3 and enters Phase 4 of the Insertion Process. If neither of the frames are pending transmission, the Adapter waits to participate in the Ring Poll Process. When the Report SUA Change and the SMP MAC frames are queued for transmission, the Adapter proceeds to Phase 4 of the Insertion Process. If no AMP or SMP MAC frame is received with ARI=FCI='00' within 18 seconds, the Open Command terminates with a 'Timeout' error code.

Phase 3 Exception Events

Hardware Exceptions. If a signal loss is detected, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports a signal loss to the attached system.

If a frequency error is detected, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter is de-inserted and it reports a frequency error to the attached system.

Timeouts. If no AMP or SMP MAC frame is received with ARI = FCI = '00' within 18 seconds, the Adapter terminates the OPEN command, de-inserts from the ring, and the Adapter reports a timeout error to the attached system.

If the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process and contention is not resolved within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If, after the contention process, the Adapter becomes the Active Monitor and performs the Ring Purge Process, and the Purge Process is not completed within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports a ring failure to the attached system.

Receive Frame. If a Claim Token MAC Frame is received and the Adapter has not started the Monitor Contention Process, then the Adapter will go to Monitor Contention Repeat Mode.

If a Beacon MAC frame is received, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

If a Remove Adapter MAC frame is received, the OPEN command terminates, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports to the attached system that a remove has been received.

All other MAC frames are processed normally as if the Adapter were inserted.

3.8.7.6 Request Initialization : Phase 4

Upon successful completion of Phase 3, the Adapter enters the final step of the Insertion Process. The purpose of Phase 4 is to request additional operational parameters. These parameters are associated with each station on the ring. The parameters received in this process replace the default parameters set at the start of the Ring Insertion Process.

The Adapter sends a series of Request Initialization MAC frames to the Ring Parameter Server Functional address. If one is returned with the ARI or FCI bits set, this indicates that a Ring Parameter Server is present on the ring. In this case, the Adapter waits for an Initialize Ring Station MAC frame from the Ring Parameter Server or a Change Parameters MAC frame from the Network Manager.

If a Ring Parameter Server is not present in the network, indicated by four request initialization frames whose ARI and FCI bits are all zeros, the Adapter leaves the parameters that could be set in this phase at the default values, and the OPEN command is completed successfully.

If an Initialize Ring Station or a Change Parameters MAC frame is received, the Adapter sets the parameters received in the frame and the OPEN command is completed successfully. The destination address of the Change Parameter or Initialize Ring Station MAC frames may not be broadcast: it must be the specific address of the Adapter.

If, after receiving its Request Initialization MAC frame with the ARI and FCI bits set, no response is received within 2.4 seconds, the Adapter retransmits the Request Initialization frame. After four such retries, the Adapter will terminate the OPEN command with a Request Initialization error code.

Phase 4 Exception Events

If a signal loss or frequency error condition is detected by the Hardware Error Process, the Adapter will behave as if insertion was completed.

Timeouts. If Phase 4 does not complete within 18 seconds, the Adapter terminates the OPEN command, de-inserts from the ring, and the Adapter reports a timeout error to the attached system.

If the Adapter enters the Monitor Contention Process and contention is not resolved within one second, the Beacon Process is entered in Beacon Transmit Mode.

If, after the contention process, the Adapter becomes the Active Monitor and performs the Ring Purge Process and the Purge Process is not completed within one second, the OPEN command is terminated and the Adapter reports a ring failure to the attached system.

Receive Frame. If a Claim Token MAC Frame is received and the Adapter has not started the Monitor Contention Process, then the Adapter will go to Monitor Contention Repeat Mode. Following contention, the Adapter resumes the Phase 4 process.

If a Beacon MAC frame is received, the OPEN command is terminated, the Adapter de-inserts, and the Adapter reports to the attached system that the ring is beaconing.

All other MAC frames are processed normally.

3.8.8 Transmit Forward Process

The Transmit Forward Process uses the Transmit Forward MAC frame to cause the Adapter to construct a frame for transmission from the data contained in the information field of the copied Transmit Forward MAC frame.

The Transmit Forward Process is initiated by receipt by an Adapter of a Transmit Forward MAC frame.

The Transmit Forward Process allows multiple layers of frames to be sent between Adapters to test a path between ring stations. The embedded frame to be forwarded must be a Transmit Forward MAC frame. Adapters which enter the Transmit Forward Process (through receipt of a Transmit Forward MAC frame) will transmit a Report Transmit Forward MAC frame to the Network Manager functional address upon stripping the forwarded frame from the ring.

3.8.8.1 Applicable MAC Frames

Table 3-15 describes the MAC frames which are used by the Transmit Forward Process.

TABLE 3-15. TRANSMIT FORWARD PROCESS — APPLICABLE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>09 Transmit Forward	>0	>4	target		R	>27 Frame Forward
>2A Report Transmit Forward	>4	>0	F(NM)	A		>2A Transmit Status Code

A = Always transmitted, R = Required

3.8.8.2 Transmit Forward MAC Frame Format

The Transmit Forward MAC frame is illustrated in Figure 3-18.

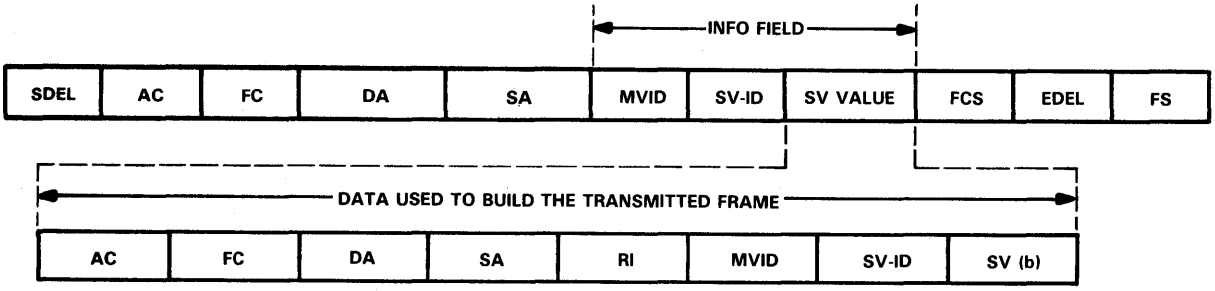


FIGURE 3-18. TRANSMIT FORWARD MAC FRAME

The subvector value (SV(b)) can have the same structure as the subvector value in the original frame. This data is transmitted as a frame by the ring station that receives this data.

The maximum length of a Frame Forward subvector is 254 bytes in a Transmit Forward MAC frame. The Adapter does not support length extension in this subvector.

3.8.8.3 Additional Syntax Checking

After the Adapter has checked the Major Vector length and the Major Vector Source Class, the following additional syntax checks are performed for Transmit Forward MAC frames:

- The first subvector in the received frame must be the Frame Forward subvector.
- In the frame to be forwarded, all bits in the AC and FC field must be zero.
- The Major Vector Type in the frame to be forwarded must be "Transmit Forward."

If the frame passes the syntax check, the remaining content of the frame after the Subvector ID (SV-ID) is queued for transmission. If the frame fails the syntax checking above, a negative response of Transmit Forward Frame Error is sent to the originator of the frame.

3.9 Miscellaneous MAC Frames

This section describes MAC frames processed by the Adapter which are used by network management functions on the ring. This service is intended to aid in the implementation of network management functions.

3.9.1 Remove Ring Station MAC Frame

The Remove Ring Station MAC frame is originated by the Network Manager to force an Adapter to de-insert from the ring. Upon receipt of a Remove Ring Station MAC frame the Adapter will de-insert from the ring and remain at the state following initialization (awaiting an OPEN command).

The Remove Ring Station Frame is defined in Table 3-16.

TABLE 3-16. REMOVE RING STATION MAC FRAME

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		
				XMT	RCV	NAME
>0B Remove Ring Station	>0	>4	target			none

3.9.2 Network Management MAC Frames

The following MAC frames are originated by the Network Manager to request specific information from a ring station. Each request MAC frame originated by the Network Manager elicits a response MAC frame from a Ring Station Adapter.

3.9.2.1 Network Management Request MAC Frames

The Request MAC frames are defined in Table 3-17.

TABLE 3-17. NETWORK MANAGEMENT REQUEST MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		NAME
				XMT	RCV	
>0E Request Station Address	>0	>4	target		O	>09 Correlator
>0F Request Station State	>0	>4	target		O	>09 Correlator
>10 Request Station Attachment	>0	>4	target		O	>09 Correlator

O = Optional

3.9.2.2 Network Management Response MAC Frames

The MAC frames originated by the Adapter in response to the request MAC frames shown in Table 3-17 are defined in Table 3-18.

TABLE 3-18. NETWORK MANAGEMENT RESPONSE MAC FRAMES

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		NAME
				XMT	RCV	
>22 Report Station Address	>4	>0	source address of received request frame	A A A A A A		>02 UNA >09 Correlator >0B Physical Drop >2B Group Address >2C Funct. Addr. >21 Reserved
>23 Report Station State	>4	>0	source address of received request frame	A A A		>09 Correlator >23 Adapter Software Level >29 Adapter Status Vector
>24 Report Station Attachment	>4	>0	source address of received request frame	A A A A A A		>09 Correlator >22 Product ID >2C Funct. Addr. >06 Enabled Funct. Classes >07 Allowed Access Priority >21 Reserved

A = Always transmitted

3.10 Token Transmit and Priority Control

When an attached system requests that a frame be sent to another ring station in the network, the Adapter must receive and capture a token before the frame can be transmitted.

3.10.1 The Model Access Control Field

When the attached system assembles a frame in system memory (called a logical frame), the system must specify a "model" Access Control field (AC) which is passed to the Adapter with the logical frame. This model AC is illustrated in Figure 3-20.

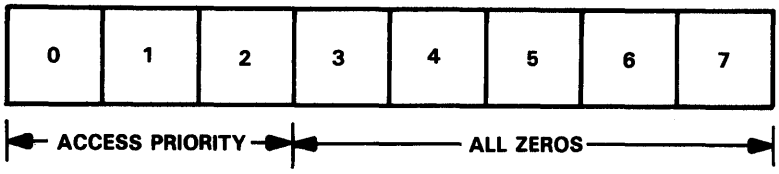


FIGURE 3-19. MODEL AC

The model AC consists of the following field:

ACCESS PRIORITY — The Access Priority field defines the token priority level to be used in the transmission of the frame. Only priority levels 0 through 3 may be requested.

3.10.2 Token Capture

The token capture control is executed within the Adapter by a state machine called the Transmit Token Control. A flowchart which depicts the algorithm executed by the state machine for capturing a token is shown in Figure 3-21.

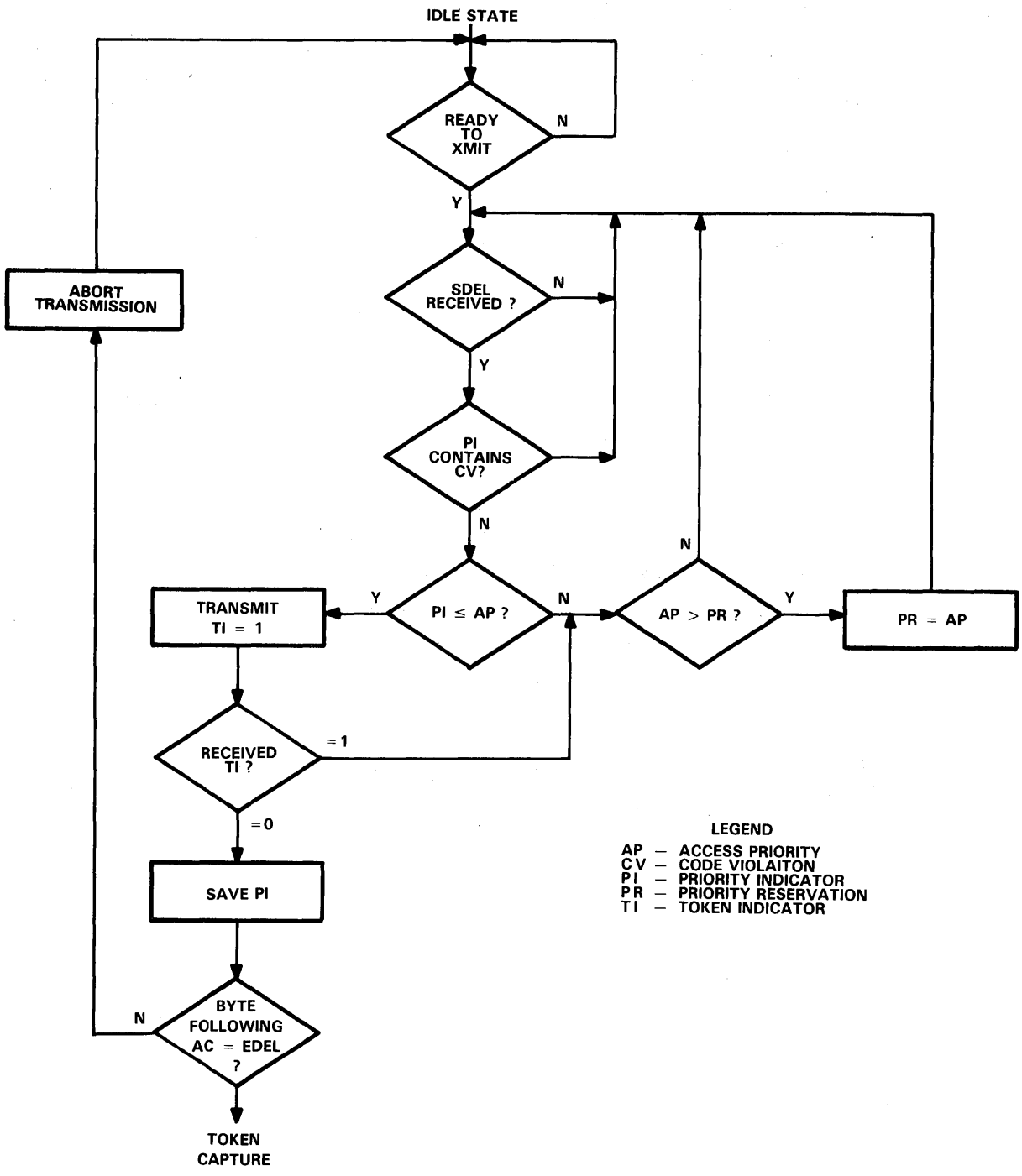


FIGURE 3-20 TOKEN CAPTURE FLOWCHART

Referring to Figure 3-21, when a frame is queued within the Adapter for transmission, the Adapter begins searching for receipt of a starting delimiter (SDEL) indicating receipt of a token or frame.

After detecting a starting delimiter, the Transmit Token Control makes one of the following three decisions:

1. If the Priority Indicator (PI) contains code violations, the Transmit Token Control ignores this token and goes back to wait for another SDEL.
2. If the Priority Indicator contains no code violations but is greater than the Access Priority, the Transmit Token Control executes an algorithm for changing the Priority Reservation of the received token prior to repeating the token or frame.
3. If the Priority Indicator contains no code violations and is equal to or less than the Access Priority, the Transmit Token Control transmits the Token Indicator of the received token as a one.

If the received Token Indicator (TI) is received as a one (indicating a frame), the Transmit Token Control executes the algorithm for changing the Priority Reservation of the received frame.

If the received Token Indicator is received as a zero (indicating a token), the Adapter transmits the Monitor Count (MC) bit as a zero, and beginning with the Priority Reservation field, starts transmitting the enqueued frame.

The Token Transmit Control must still make sure that the token meets the requirments of a token in that the byte following the AC field must be an Ending Delimiter (EDEL).

If the byte following the AC byte is not an Ending Delimiter, the Adapter has captured a "false free token". In this case, the Adapter will transmit an Abort Delimiter and terminate the transmission.

3.10.3 Priority Reservation Modification

The Priority Reservation of a received token or frame may be changed to the Access Priority of an enqueued frame only if the Access Priority is greater than the Priority Reservation of the received frame or token.

3.10.4 Token Priority Control Protocol

The token ring protocols provide a mechanism for prioritizing access on the ring. This is accomplished through eight priority levels; 0 is the lowest and 7 the highest priority. Each Adapter on a ring network contains an independent state machine for implementing the priority control protocol. This state machine is referred to as the Priority State Machine.

> **NOTE**
>
> Although there are eight priority levels, the current Adapter software limits the maximum authorized access priority to 3 for frames transferred across the System Interface for transmission.

Priority tokens may be released for transmission by the Priority State Machine when an Adapter has completed transmission of a frame, has stripped the frame, and subsequently releases a token. Since each ring station must have equal access to each token priority level, this state machine is responsible for assuring equal access, even in the event that access to a particular priority is interrupted by a higher priority. For this reason, this function is sometimes referred to as the "fairness" function.

To conceptually understand the priority control protocol, it is important to understand that the Adapter implements two independent but cooperating state machines: the Transmit Token Control State Machine (Section 3.10.2) and Priority Control state machine.

The Priority Control state machine utilizes the Priority Indicator (PI), Token Indicator (TI), and Priority Reservation (PR) fields of the the Access Control (AC) field AFTER the AC has been released from the Transmit Token Control state machine of the Adapter.

3.10.4.1 Priority State Machine

The Priority State Machine contains three major components:

1. Priority Control Delay.
2. The "new" last-in-first-out (LIFO) buffer.
3. The "old" last-in-first-out (LIFO) buffer.

The priority control delay is a nine bit delay introduced in the repeat path to allow the Priority State Machine to modify the Priority Indicator of the transmitted token, if a change is needed. This delay is only inserted when necessary to reduce this delay's effect on ring latency.

The "new" LIFO buffer is a four deep LIFO. Its last entry contains the priority to which the state machine last increased the token and from which the state machine has yet to decrease the token.

The "old" LIFO buffer also is a four deep LIFO. Its last entry contains the priority from which the state machine last increased the token and to which the state machine has yet to decrease the token.

With eight priority levels defined, the four entry limit on the LIFOs is sufficient. The Adapter can be responsible for up to four increases in the priority of the token.

The Priority State Machine is enabled when the Transmit Token Control issues a NEW token after stripping a transmitted frame from the ring. This state machine remains enabled until disabled, as described below.

Priority State Machine Functions

When the Priority State Machine has been enabled, it performs the following five functions:

PUSH — This occurs when the Priority Control receives a token and some Adapter wants the priority of the token to be greater than its present priority. The Priority Control pushes the the Priority Indicator field (PI) into its "old" LIFO, pushes the Priority Reservation (PR) into its "new" LIFO, substitutes the Priority Reservation field (PR) for the PI of the token, and clears the Monitor Count (MC) and the PR of the token.

POP — This occurs when the Priority Control receives a token which has circulated the ring with a priority equal to the last value pushed onto the "new" LIFO. The Priority Control substitutes the "old" LIFO for the PI of the token, leaves the PR of the token as is, clears the MC of the token, and pops both its "old" and "new" LIFOs.

REPLACE — This occurs when the Priority Control receives a token which has circulated the ring with the "new" priority, but the PR indicates that some station wants the priority of the token to be greater than the "old" priority. The Priority Control substitutes the PR for the PI of the token, substitutes the PR for the last value in the "new" LIFO, and clears the PR and MC of the token. The Priority Control does not push either of its LIFOs.

CLEAR — This occurs when the Priority Control receives a token or frame for which the PI is less than the last value pushed onto the "new" LIFO. This condition indicates an error has occurred. The Priority Control leaves the token as is and clears its "new" and "old" LIFO buffers.

REMOVE — This occurs when a token exits the functional area of the Priority Control and the LIFO buffers are empty. The Priority Control removes its delay from the repeat path and disables itself.

Priority State Machine Responses

The following table describes the operation of the Priority State Machine in response to stimuli conditions. The "Empty State" refers to the condition where the Priority Control is active but the LIFOs have no entries. This state is entered when the state machine is initially enabled or when the state machine performs the CLEAR function. The Priority Control is in the "Not Empty State" when the state machine has increased the priority level of a token and has not returned the token to its original "old" priority.

TABLE 3-19. PRIORITY CONTROL STIMULI

STIMULI				OPERATION (NOTE 1)			
				NOT EMPTY STATE		EMPTY STATE	
PI<PR	PI = "new"	PI<"new"	PR>"old"	TI = 0	TI = 1	TI = 0	TI = 1
0	0	0	0	Idle	Idle	REMOVE	Idle
0	0	0	1	Idle	Idle	REMOVE	Idle
0	0	1	0	CLEAR/REMOVE	CLEAR	**	**
0	0	1	1	CLEAR/REMOVE	CLEAR	**	**
0	1	0	0	POP/REMOVE	Idle	REMOVE	Idle
0	1	0	1	REPLACE	Idle	**	**
0	1	1	0	*	*	*	*
0	1	1	1	*	*	*	*
1	0	0	0	*	*	*	*
1	0	0	1	PUSH	Idle	PUSH	Idle
1	0	1	0	CLEAR/REMOVE	CLEAR	**	**
1	0	1	1	CLEAR/REMOVE	CLEAR	**	**
1	1	0	0	*	*	*	*
1	1	0	1	REPLACE	Idle	PUSH	Idle
1	1	1	0	*	*	*	*
1	1	1	1	*	*	*	*

Legend:
* — logically inconsistent
PI — Priority Indicator
TI — Token Indicator
"new" — last value pushed into "new" LIFO
"old" — last value pushed into "old" LIFO
Empty State — no entries on either the "new" or "old" LIFOs.
Not Empty State — entries on both the "new" and "old" LIFOs.
** — impossible because "new" = 0
PR — Priority Reservation

Note 1: If TI contains a code violation, the Priority Control remains idle

3.10.4.2 Priority Operation Example

This example assumes the existence of a three node ring with the following initial conditions.

1. Station A has a frame queued for transmission with an arbitrary Access Priority.
2. Station B has a frame queued for transmission with an Access Priority request of 4.
3. Station C has a frame queued for transmission with an Access Priority request of 6.
4. The initial location of the token is as shown in Figure 3-21. The token is priority-free and has no Priority Reservation specified.

This example uses a shorthand notation to represent the Priority Indicator (PI), Token Indicator (TI), and Priority Reservation (PR) of the circulating token or frame, as follows: PI/TI/PR. A zero in the TI position indicates a token, a one in this position indicates a frame. For Example:

4/0/0 - is a token of priority 4 with no reservation.
4/1/2 - is a frame of priority 4 with a reservation of 2.

A description will be provided for each figure below. Each figure illustrated provides a sequence of major events which occur in the overall Priority Control Protocol as implemented by the token ring.

NOTE

Although the Adapter will not allow access requests for priorities greater than three to be passed across the System Interface, this example shows access priorities greater than three for purposes of illustration only.

Example - Step 1.

Figure 3-21 illustrates the initial state of the three station ring. The token is at the position shown with the Priority Indicator (PI) equal to 0, the Token Indicator (TI) equal to zero, and the Priority Reservation (PR) equal to zero.

Note that the shaded block within each station represents an enqueued frame with the Access Priority shown. In addition, the contents of both the "old" and "new" stacks are shown for each station.

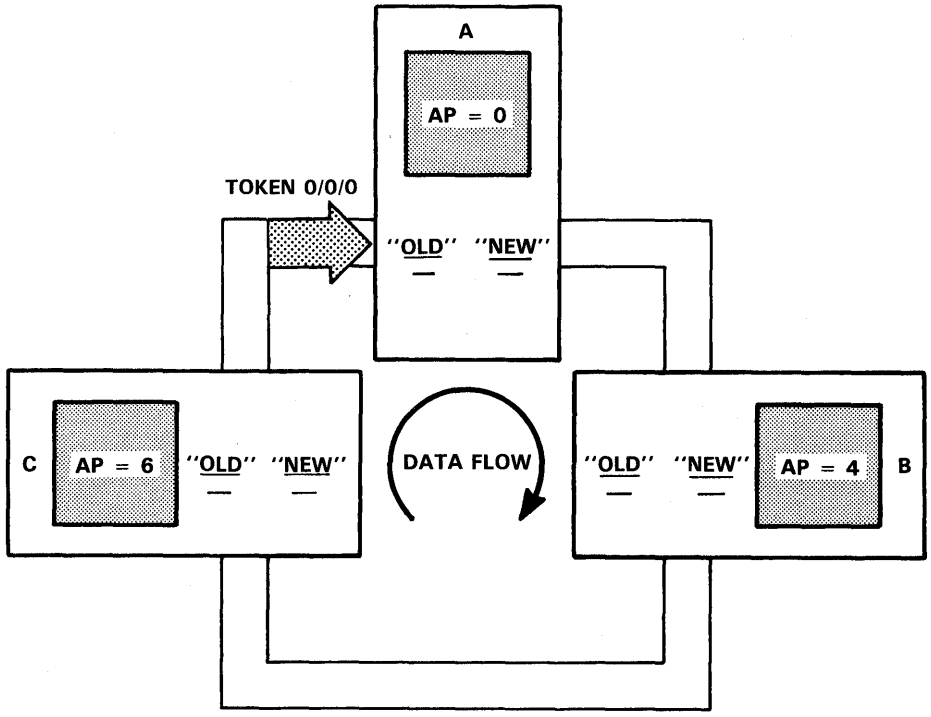


FIGURE 3-21. TOKEN IS AT POINT SHOWN

Example - Step 2.

Referring to Figure 3-22, once the token is received by station A, it is used to transmit the enqueued frame. The token was captured because the PI was zero. At the point shown in the figure, the PI of the frame is still 0, the TI has now been set to one (indicating a frame), and the PR was left at zero.

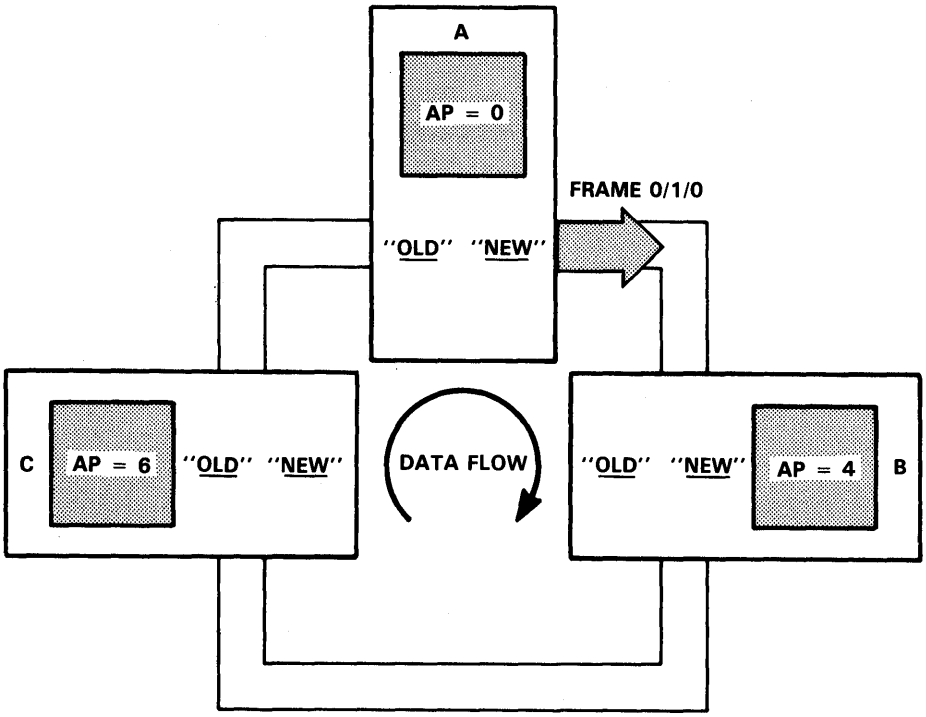


FIGURE 3-22. STATION A CAPTURES TOKEN AND BEGINS TRANSMISSION OF FRAME

Example - Step 3.

Referring to Figure 3-23, Station B has received Station A's frame. Because the TI is equal to one and Station B wants to increase the priority of a token to priority 4, Station B changes the Priority Reservation (PR) of the frame to 4 before repeating the frame on the ring.

Thus, at this point, the PI remains at 0, the TI is still 1, but the PR is now 4.

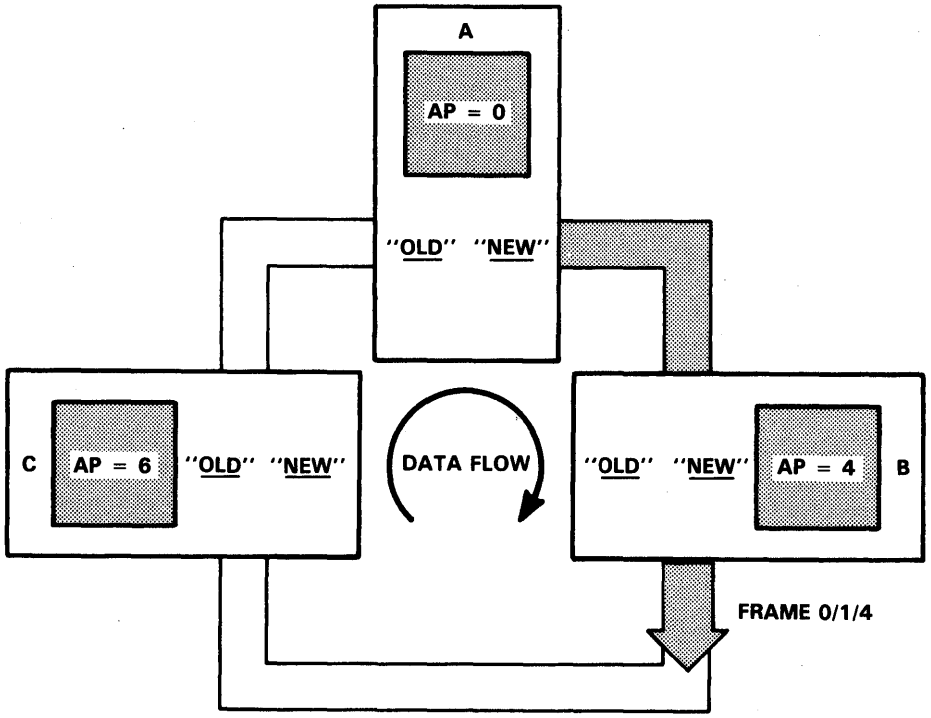


FIGURE 3-23. STATION B REPEATS FRAME AND CHANGES PR TO 4

Example - Step 4.

Referring to Figure 3-24, when station C receives the frame, it repeats the frame with a PR equal to 6. This is because Station C's enqueued frame has an access priority of 6 which is greater than the PR of the frame which was received. Thus, Station C also desires a priority token, but at a higher priority than Station B.

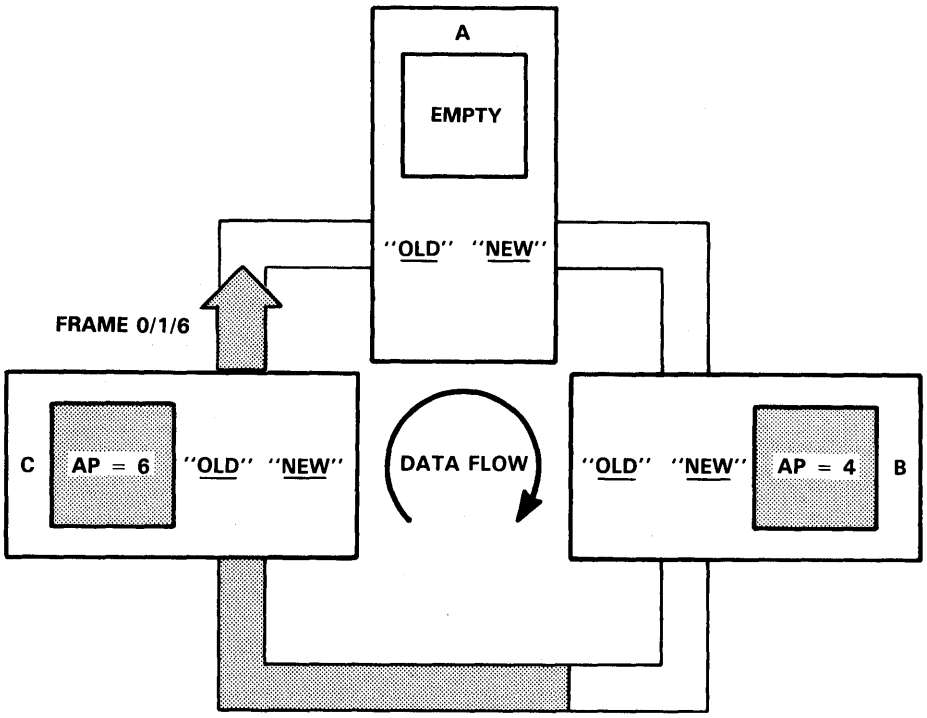


FIGURE 3-24. STATION C REPEATS FRAME AND CHANGES PR TO 6.

Example - Step 5.

Referring to Figure 3-25, when the frame originated by Station A is returned to Station A, it begins stripping the frame from the ring.

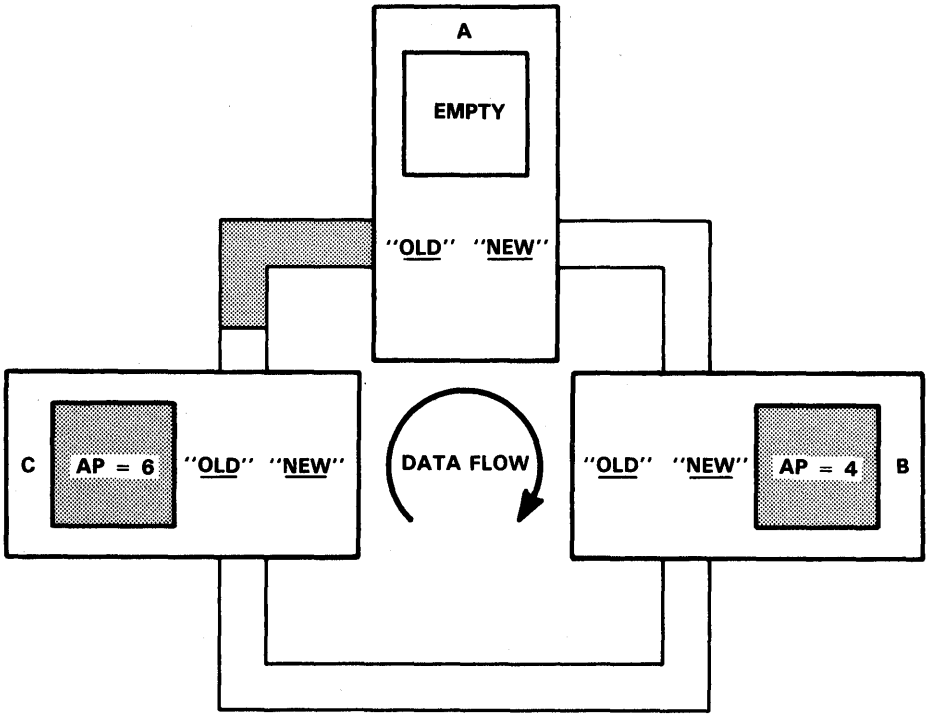


FIGURE 3-25. STATION A STRIPS FRAME FROM THE RING

Example - Step 6.

Referring to Figure 3-26, Station A, having now stripped its frame from the ring, activates its Priority State Machine and releases a new token to the state machine. The Priority State Machine examines the PR field of the token and performs a PUSH operation on its 'new' and 'old' LIFO stacks (as can be determined from Table 3-19).

This PUSH operation results in 6 (the "new" token priority level) and 0 (the "old" priority level) being pushed into the "new" and "old" stacks, respectively.

The token now transmitted has the PI equal to 6, the TI equal to 0, and the PR equal to 0.

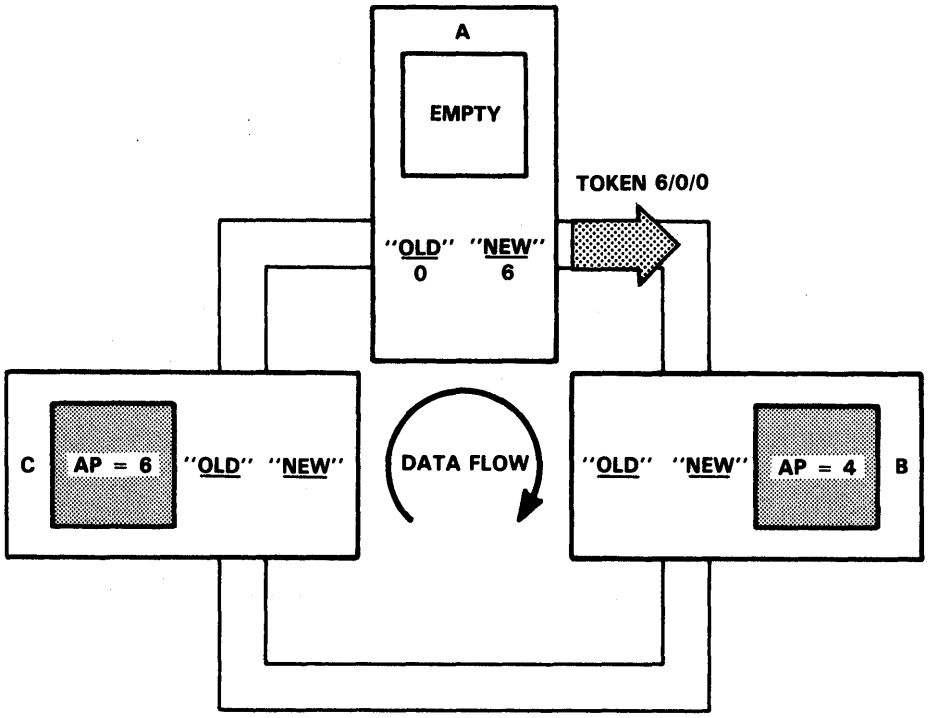


FIGURE 3-26. STATION A RELEASES A NEW TOKEN

Example - Step 7.

Referring to Figure 3-27, when Station B receives the priority 6 token transmitted by Station A, it cannot capture the token for transmission as its access priority is less than the PI of the token. Thus, Station B changes the PR of the field, requesting again that a token of priority 4 be issued.

At this point, the PI equals 6, the TI equals 0, and the PR is 4.

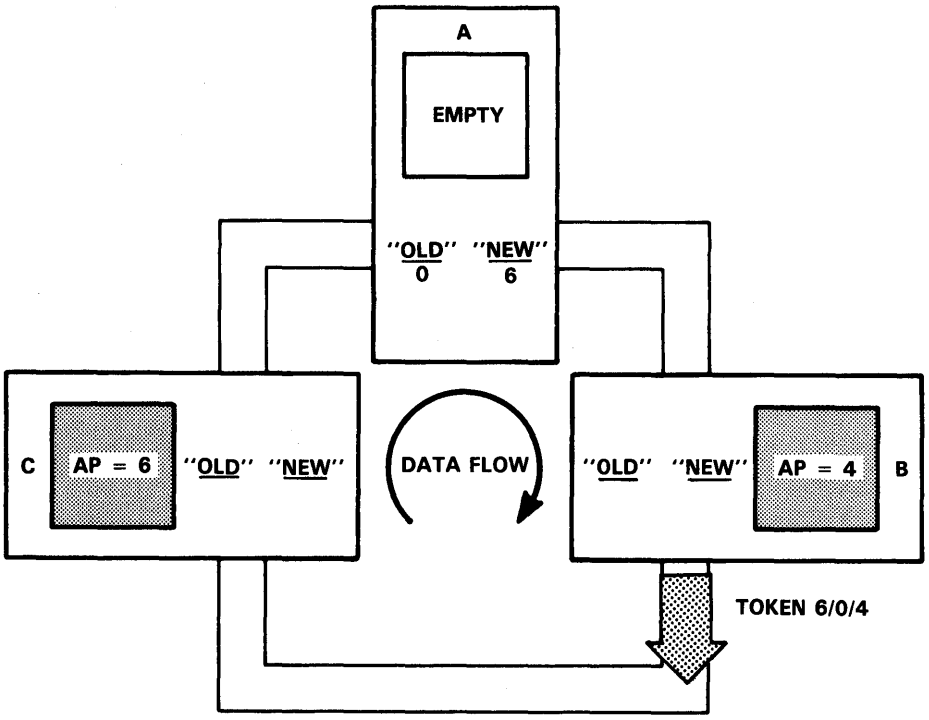


FIGURE 3-27. STATION B REPEATS TOKEN AND CHANGES PR TO 4

Example - Step 8.

Referring to Figure 3-28, when Station C receives the priority 6 token, it now captures the token and begins transmitting its enqueued frame. The token was captured because the PI equaled the access priority of the enqueued frame.

Note that the PR field was left unchanged.

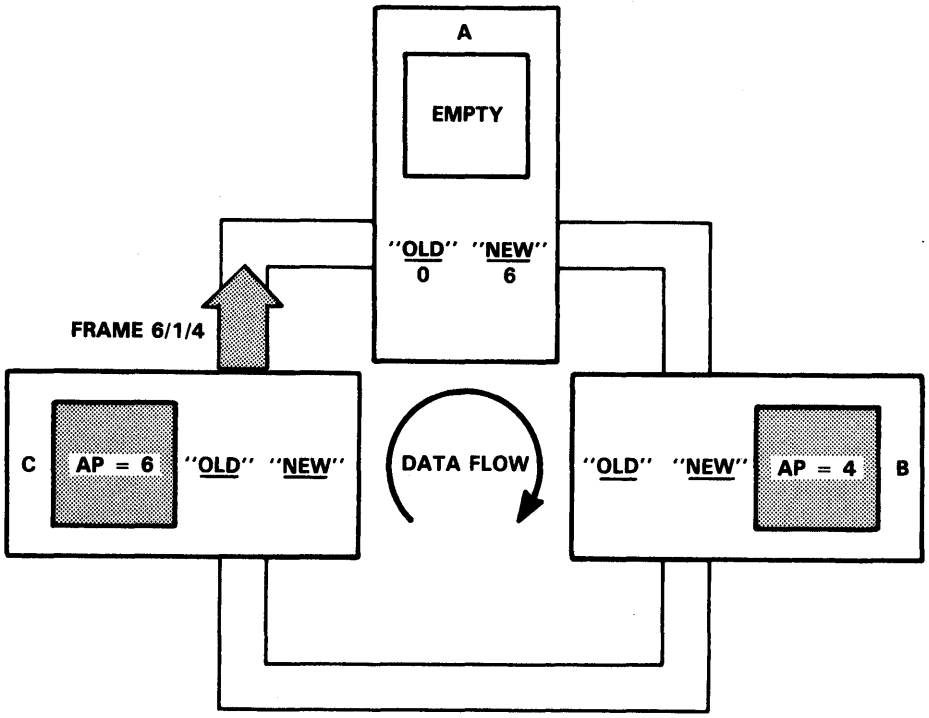


FIGURE 3-28. STATION C CAPTURES TOKEN AND BEGINS TRANSMISSION OF FRAME

Example - Step 9.

Referring to Figure 3-29, the frame transmitted by Station C circulates the ring normally. Neither Station A nor Station B modify the PR value. Station A has no frame to transmit and Station B need not change the PR from its current value.

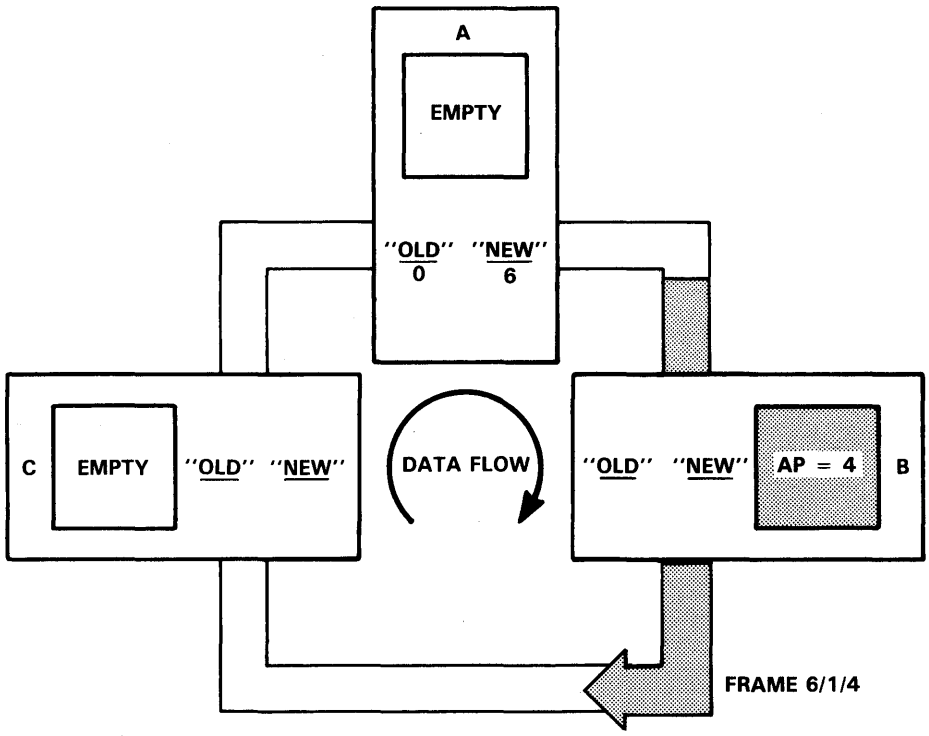


FIGURE 3-29. FRAME CIRCULATES WITH NO MODIFICATION

Example - Step 10.

Referring to Figure 3-30, Station C receives the frame it transmitted and begins stripping the frame from the ring.

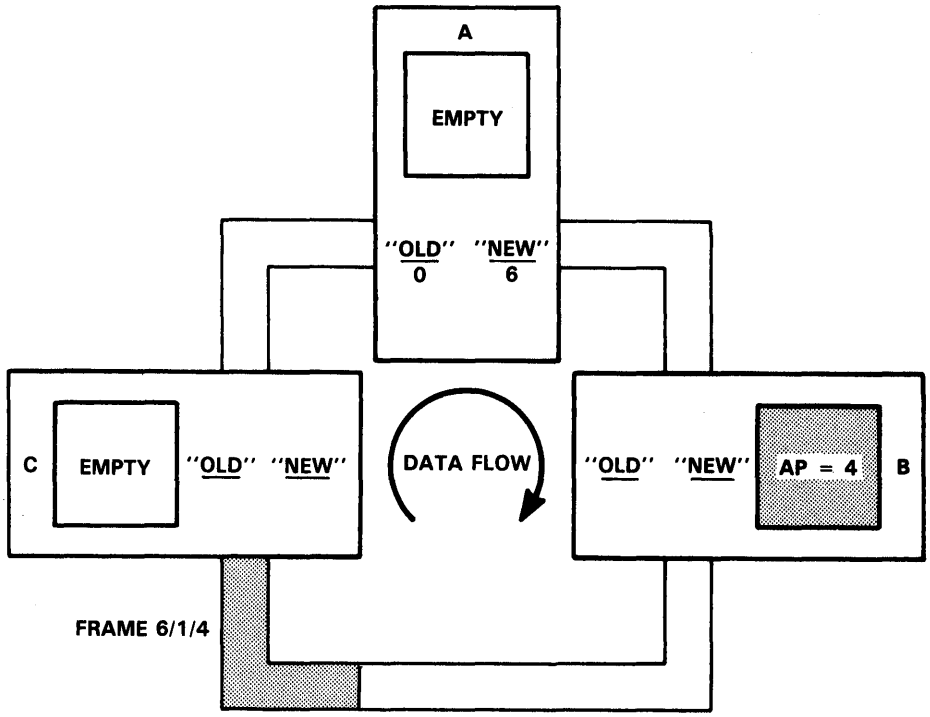


FIGURE 3-30. STATION C BEGINS STRIPPING THE FRAME FROM THE RING

Example - Step 11.

Referring to Figure 3-31, once Station C strips its frame, it releases a token with PI = 6 and activates its Priority State Machine. Because the PI is greater than the PR of the token, no stack operations are performed prior to token transmission.

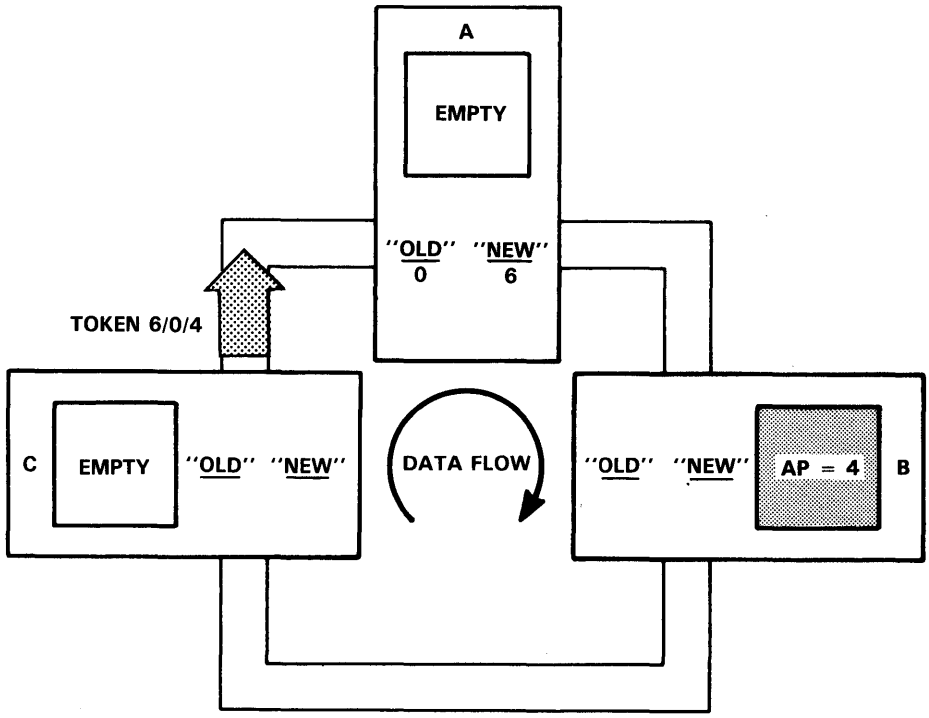


FIGURE 3-31. STATION C ISSUES A NEW TOKEN OF SAME PRIORITY

Example - Step 12.

Referring to Figure 3-32, when Station A receives the token, it is passed to the Priority State Machine, which is still active. Because the PI is greater than the PR, the state machine concludes that a station requests that a priority token less than the current priority level be circulated. Thus, the state machine performs a REPLACE function on the stack (as can be determined by the stimuli conditions shown in Table 3-19), substitutes the PR for the PI, and transmits the token on the ring.

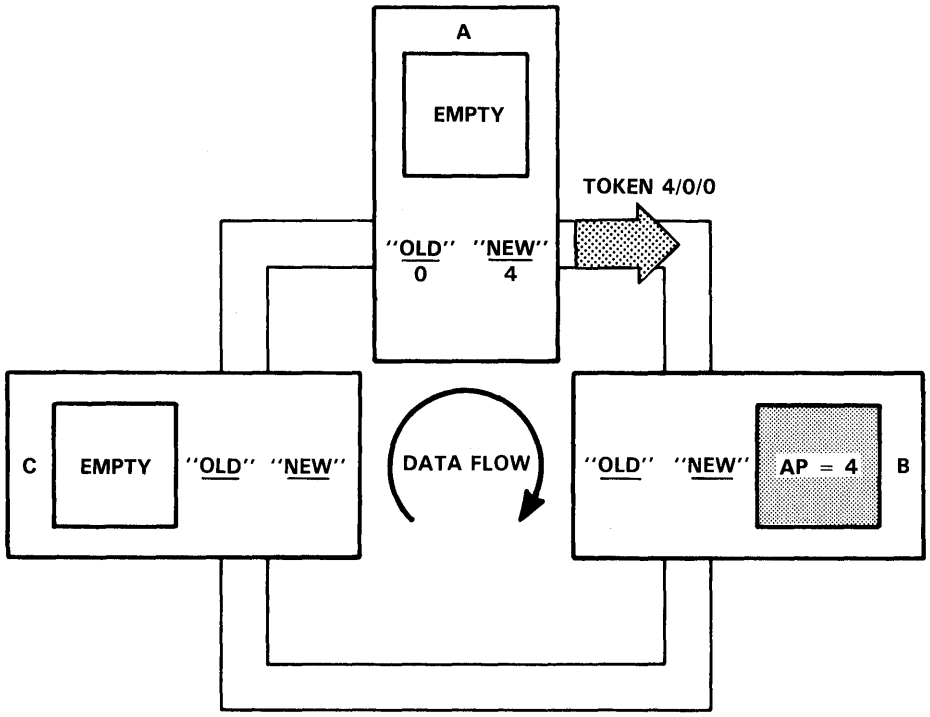


FIGURE 3-32. STATION A PERFORMS A REPLACE AND TRANSMITS THE TOKEN

Example - Step 13.

Referring to Figure 3-33, station B can now capture the token because the PI is now equal to its enqueued frame's access priority. Thus the enqueued frame is transmitted on the ring.

Station C and A do not modify the PR of the frame as they currently do not have a frame enqueued for transmission.

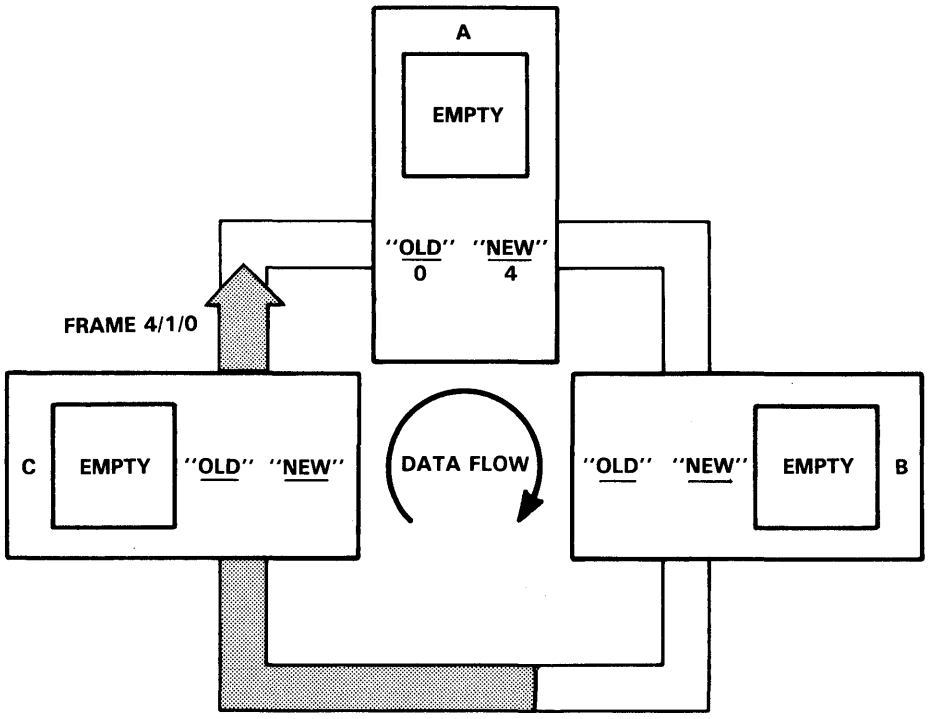


FIGURE 3-33. STATION B CAPTURES TOKEN AND TRANSMITS FRAME

Example - Step 14.

Referring to Figure 3-34, when the frame transmitted by Station B has completed circulation, Station B strips the frame from the ring.

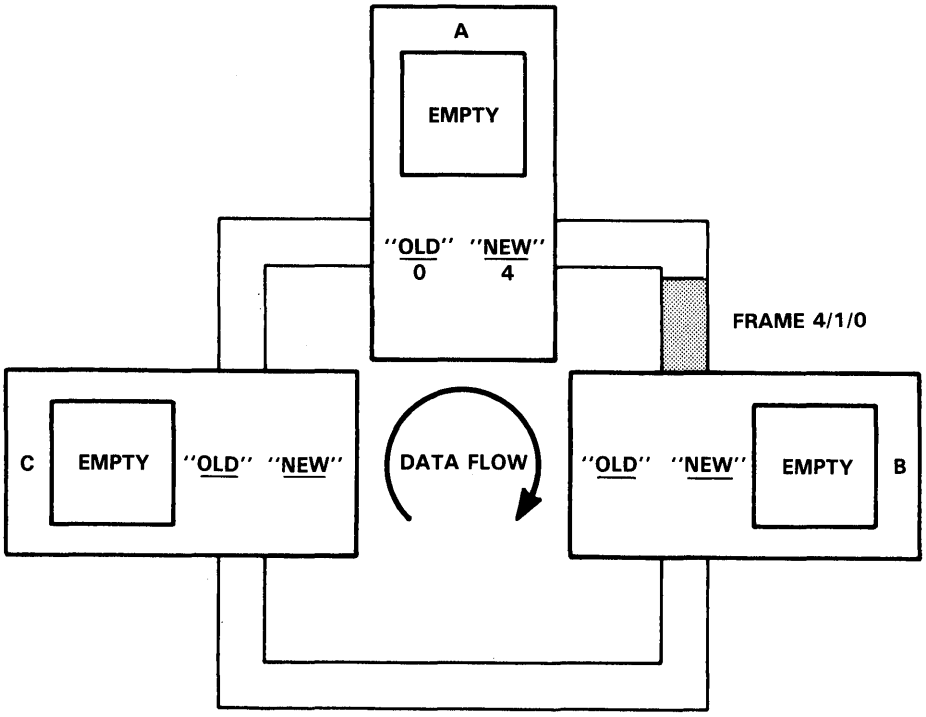


FIGURE 3-34. STATION B STRIPS ITS FRAME FROM THE RING

Example - Step 15.

Referring to Figure 3-35, Station B now issues a token of priority 4 as originally received. The Priority State Machine remains inactive because no other station requested a higher priority via the PR field of the frame.

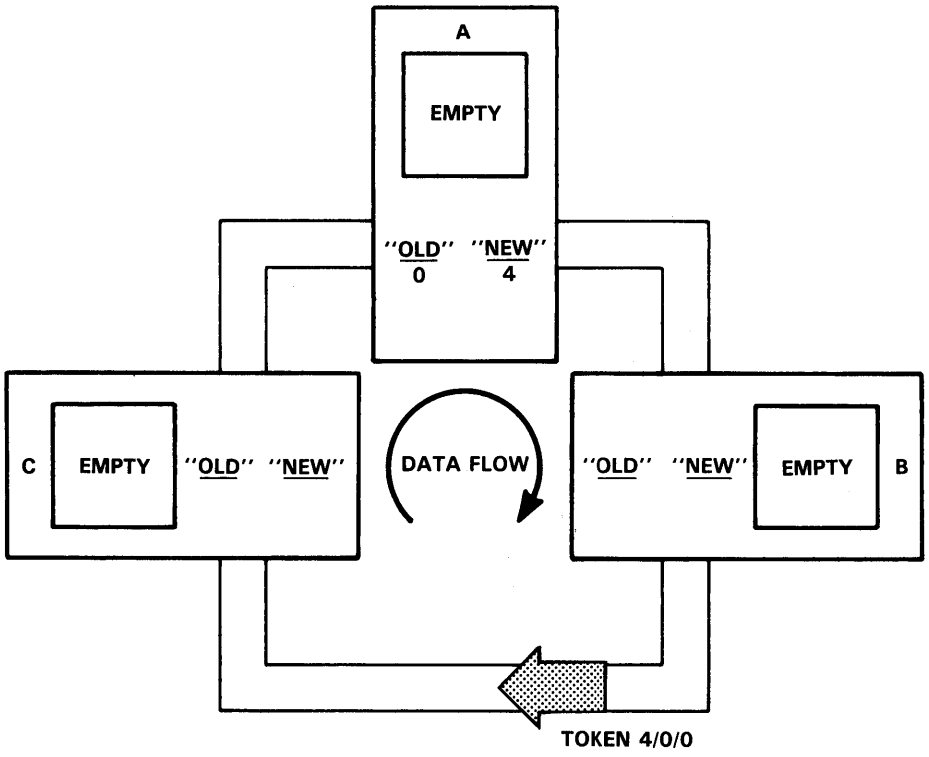


FIGURE 3-35. STATION B ISSUES A NEW TOKEN AT THE ORIGINAL PRIORITY

Example - Step 16.

Refering to Figure 3-36, when Station A receives the priority 4 token as sent from Station B, it is passed to the Priority State Machine. Because no other station requested a higher or lower priority level, the state machine performs a POP of its stacks and returns the token to its original priority-free state.

At this point, the ring is in a state similar to that shown in Figure 3-22.

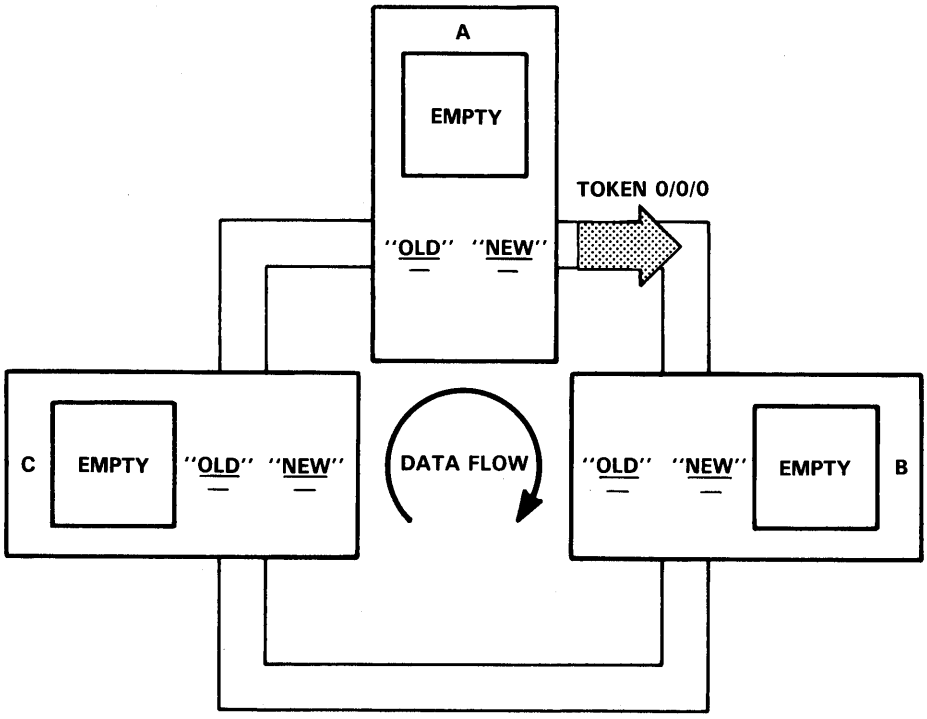


FIGURE 3-36. STATION A POPS ITS STACKS AND ISSUES PRIORITY-FREE TOKEN

This exercise provided a basic example of the priority operation of the Adapter. Note that each time the priority level of the token changes, each station on the ring is afforded equal opportunity to capture the token for frame transmission.

3.11 Soft Error Counting and Reporting

The Adapter provides a process for counting and reporting soft errors which occur during normal operations. A Soft Error is an error condition that temporarily degrades system performance but may be recovered using the protocols of the Adapter. The Adapter counts these errors and can report them to both the attached product and ring-resident servers concerned with error monitoring.

The error counters consist of two sets of identical counters:

- Soft Error Counters - These are reported on the ring to a Ring Error Monitor.
- Attached Product Counters - These are reported to the attached system through the System Interface.

Although these counters count similar error conditions, separate sets of counters are kept due to the different way in which these counters are maintained.

3.11.1 Soft Error Counters

Each Soft Error Counter is incremented by one when:

1. The Adapter detects a soft error corresponding to an error counter, and
2. The Adapter is inserted, and
3. The Adapter is in a normal state. 'Normal state' means that the Adapter is not in the Monitor Contention Process, not in the Beacon Process, not in the Ring Purge Process, and
4. The current value of the counter is not equal to 255.

When the Adapter detects a Soft Error and increments any of the Soft Error Counters, it starts the Soft Error Report Timer. When the Soft Error Report Timer expires, a Report Error MAC frame is queued for transmission and will be transmitted when the Adapter is in a normal state. The Report Error MAC frame is defined in Table 3-20. The error counts transmitted in the Report Error MAC frame are subtracted from the counters when the transmission is complete. The transmission of the Report Error MAC frame uses the Assured Delivery Process.

If a soft error occurs and the Adapter enters the Beacon Auto-removal Process, the Soft Error Report Timer is cancelled. Therefore, the soft error will not be reported until another soft error is detected after the auto-removal process has been completed.

The default value of the Soft Error Report Timer is 2.0 seconds. Its value can be changed with the receipt of an Initialize Ring Station or Change Parameters MAC frame.

TABLE 3-20. REPORT ERROR MAC FRAME

M-V (FRAME) NAME	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
				R/O		NAME
				XMT	RCV	
>29 Report Error	>6	>0	F(REM)	A		>02 UNA
				A		>0B Physical Drop
				A		>2D Isolating Error Counts
				A		>2E Non-isolaitng Error Counts

A = Always transmitted

3.11.2 Attached Product Counters

The Attached Product Error Counters can be read by the attached system with the READ ERROR LOG Command.

The Attached Product Counters are incremented when:

1. A Soft Error is detected, and
2. The Adapter is inserted, and
3. The Adapter is in a normal state, and
4. The value of the counter does not equal 255.

When an error is detected and an Attached Product Counter is incremented from 254 to 255, the Counter Overflow Bit is set in Ring Status. The Attached Product Counters are reset when the counters are read by the attached system.

3.11.3 Isolating versus Non-Isolating Error Counters

The error counters maintained by the Adapter are defined as 'isolating' or 'non-isolating'. Isolating error counters isolate errors to a transmitting Adapter, a receiving Adapter, and the components (cabling, wiring concentrators) between those two adapters. These errors are counted only by the first detecting Adapter. Other adapters also detect these errors, but are prevented from counting these errors by the EDI (Error Detected Indicator) bit in the Ending Delimiter of the frame already being set to one by the detecting Adapter.

Non-isolating error counters count errors which could have been caused by any other Adapter on the ring (the fault cannot be isolated to a specific area of the ring). However, only the detecting Adapter counts the error.

3.11.4 Isolating Error Counters

The following are the Isolating Error Counters:

- Line Error Counter
- Burst Five Error Counter
- ARI/FCI Set Error Counter

Table 3-21 defines these isolating error counters:

TABLE 3-21. ISOLATING ERROR COUNTERS

CODE	DESCRIPTION
LINE ERROR	The line error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations. It is incremented no more than once per frame whenever: 1) a frame is repeated or copied, or 2) the Error Detected Indicator (EDI) is zero in the incoming frame, or 3) one of the following conditions exists: 1. A code violation exists between the Starting Delimiter (SDEL) and the Ending Delimiter (EDEL) of the frame. 2. A code violation exists in a token. 3. A Frame Check Sequence (FCS) error exits.
BURST ERROR	The burst error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when the Adapter detects the absence of transitions for five half bit times between SDEL and EDEL. Only one Adapter detects the burst five condition because the Adapter that detects a burst four condition (four half bit times without transitions) conditions its transmitter to transmit idles if the burst five condition is detected.
ARI/FCI SET ERROR	The ARI/FCI set error counter is incremented when an Adapter receives more than one AMP or SMP MAC frame with ARI/FCI equal to zero without first receiving an intervening AMP MAC frame. The counter indicates that the up-stream Adapter is unable to set its ARI/FCI bits in a frame that it has copied.

3.11.5 Non-isolating Error Counters

The following are the non-isolating error counters:

- Lost Frame Error Counter
- Frame Copied Error Counter
- Receive Congestion Error Counter
- Token Error Counter

Table 3-22 defines the functions of these non-isolating error counters:

TABLE 3-22. NON-ISOLATING ERROR COUNTERS

CODE	DESCRIPTION
LOST FRAME ERROR	The lost frame error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter is in transmit (stripping) mode and fails to receive the end of the frame it transmitted.
FRAME COPIED	The frame copied error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter in the receive/ repeat mode recognizes a frame addressed to its specific address, but finds the ARI bits not equal to 00 (possible line hit or duplicate address).
RECEIVE CONGESTION	The receive congestion error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter in the repeat mode recognizes a frame addressed to its specific address, but has no buffer space available to copy the frame (Adapter congestion).
TOKEN ERROR	This one-byte counter is contained in Active Monitor Adapter configurations and is incremented when the Active Monitor function detects an error with the token protocol as follows: 1. A token with priority of non-zero and the MONITOR COUNT bit equals one. 2. A frame and the MONITOR COUNT bit equals one. 3. No token or frame is received within a 10 millisecond window. 4. The starting delimiter/token sequence has a code violation (in an area where code violations must not exist).

3.12 Token Ring Recovery

This section describes the error recovery mechanisms provided by the Adapter protocol processes. Rather than focus on the individual processes, this discussion focuses on the interaction of these processes to effect recovery in the event of network faults.

Error conditions which may occur on a token ring network can be classified as soft errors or hard errors:

- Hard errors prevent ring recovery protocols from restoring normal token protocols. The hard errors include streaming errors, frequency errors, signal loss errors, and internal hardware errors.
- Soft errors allow the Ring Recovery Protocols to restore normal token protocols, but cause performance degradation due to disrupted network operation. Soft errors include line errors, lost frames, lost tokens, lost Active Monitor, corrupted tokens, circulating priority tokens or frames, delimiter errors, multiple monitors, and lost delimiters.

3.12.1 Hard Error Recovery

3.12.1.1 Hard Error Types

The following are the hard error types that require hard error recovery procedures to be invoked:

Streaming Error

There are two forms of streaming: bit streaming and frame streaming.

- Bit streaming removes (destroys) tokens and frames by writing over (repeat and transmit both occurring) or replacing (uncontrolled transmit) ring data.
- Frame streaming consists of the continuous transmission of tokens, abort sequences, or frames.

Both streaming types are detected by the Adapter's Active or Standby Monitor function and cause Monitor Contention to be entered.

Frequency Error

A frequency error is a condition in which the ring clock and the crystal clock frequency of the Adapter differ by an excessive amount. Detection of this condition causes the Adapter to enter the Monitor Contention Process.

Signal Loss Error

A signal loss error occurs as the result of a broken ring, faulty wiring concentrator, a transmitter malfunction, or a receiver malfunction.

Internal Errors

Internal errors are detected by the Adapter's hardware and/or firmware; they cause the detecting Adapter to remove itself from the ring (automatic reconfiguration).

3.12.1.2 Hard Error Reconfiguration

When hard errors occur on the ring, reconfiguration of the network is necessary to effect full recovery. Reconfiguration consists of removal or bypass of the faulty station(s) or cabling. Reconfiguration takes two forms: manual reconfiguration and automatic reconfiguration.

- Automatic Reconfiguration begins when the Adapter executes one of the Beacon Remove Functions (described in section 3.8) or when an internal hardware error is detected by the background diagnostics of the Adapter.
- Manual reconfiguration is necessary if the automatic reconfiguration functions have failed to recover the ring's normal token protocol. The fault location can be easily isolated by the beacon process.

3.12.1.3 Hard Error Recovery Time Lines

Hard errors can be classified as solid (fault invokes reconfiguration) or as intermittent (fault is removed from the ring before reconfiguration is required).

Solid Hard Error Recovery Time Line

Figure 3-37 illustrates the actions taken to recover from a solid hard error. Note that reconfiguration (either auto or manual) is required to re-establish a functional ring.

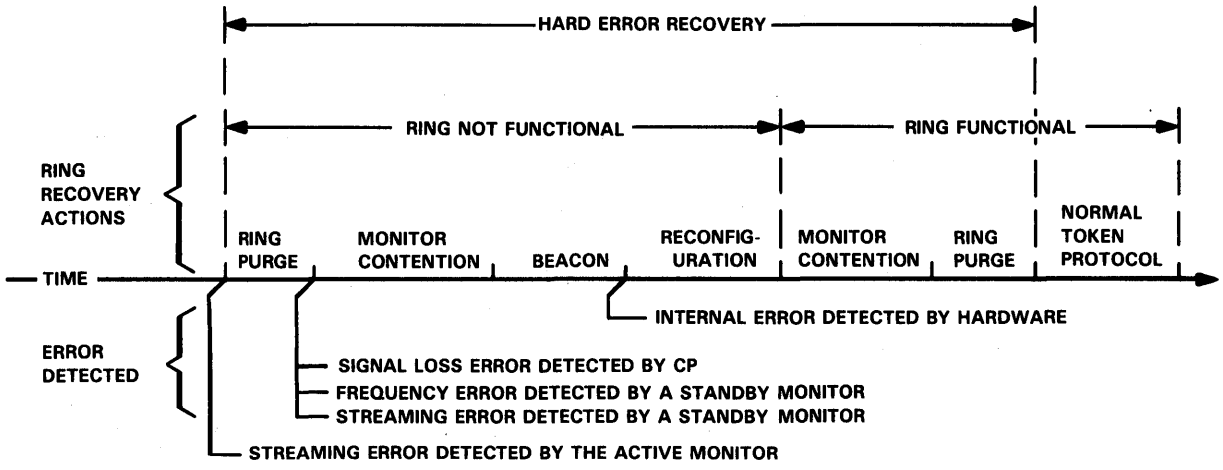


FIGURE 3-37. SOLID HARD ERROR RECOVERY TIME LINE

The following paragraphs define the terms used in Figure 3-37.

STREAMING ERROR detection by the Active Monitor causes the Adapter to enter Ring Purge, which fails, causing Monitor Contention, which also fails, causing Beacon Transmit Mode. When the condition causing streaming is removed, the ring is recovered using the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Processes.

FREQUENCY ERROR detection by the Standby Monitor causes the Adapter to enter Monitor Contention, which if it fails, causes Beacon Transmit Mode (which requires reconfiguration). When the condition causing the frequency error is removed, the ring is recovered using the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Processes.

STREAMING ERROR detection by the Standby Monitor causes the Adapter to enter Monitor Contention, which fails, causing Beacon Transmit Mode (which requires reconfiguration). When the condition causing the streaming error is removed, the ring is recovered using the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Processes.

SIGNAL LOSS ERROR detection by the Communications Processor causes the Adapter to enter Monitor Contention Transmit Mode, which, if it fails, causes Beacon Transmit Mode to be entered. When the condition causing the signal loss error is removed, the ring is recovered using the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Processes.

INTERNAL ERROR detection by the Adapter hardware causes an Adapter to de-insert from the ring.

Intermittent Hard Error Recovery Time Line

Figure 3-38 illustrates the actions taken to recover from interrmittent hard errors. Note that the same processes are used as solid hard error recovery except that the Beacon Process is terminated before reconfiguation is required.

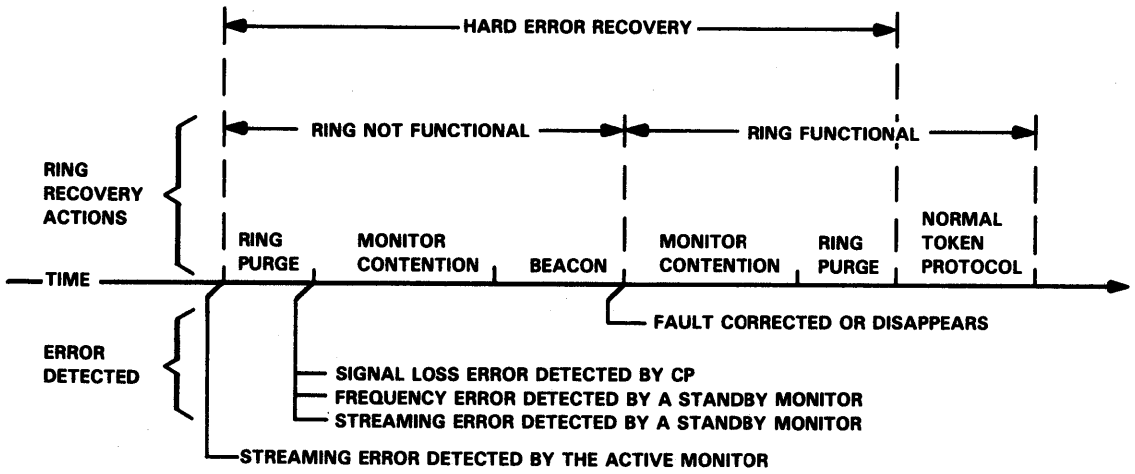


FIGURE 3-38. INTERMITTENT HARD ERROR RECOVERY TIME LINE

3.12.1.4 Beacon Removal Functions

The Beacon Removal Functions are executed when an Adapter detects a sustained hard error. The execution of these functions causes the Adapter to de-insert from the ring and execute an internal test. If this test is successful, the Adapter re-inserts. Otherwise, the Adapter is closed and remains off-ring. If the latter occurs, the attached system is notified via Ring Status a hard error has removed the Adapter from the ring.

3.12.2 Soft Error Recovery

3.12.2.1 Soft Error Types

Four types of soft errors have been defined.

TYPE 1 These errors require no ring recovery function to be executed.

TYPE 2 These errors require the Ring Purge Process to be executed.

TYPE 3 These errors require the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Process to be executed.

TYPE 4 These errors require the Beacon, Monitor Contention, and Ring Purge functions to be executed.

The detection and recovery of lost frames caused by soft error conditions are not performed by the Adapter.

Type 1 Soft Errors

Type 1 errors consist of line errors, the multiple monitor condition, and the ARI/FCI set condition.

Line Errors. Each Adapter checks each frame copied or repeated for a valid FCS or a Manchester code violation. Adapters detecting these errors set the EDI (Error Detected Indicator) to one in the frame or token's ending delimiter.

If the received EDI bit is equal to zero, the Adapter increments its "Line Error Counter". If the received EDI bit is equal to one (line error previously detected by another Adapter), the counter is not incremented.

Multiple Monitors. When an Active Monitor receives a Ring Purge MAC frame or an AMP MAC frame that it did not transmit, it queues for transmission a Report Monitor Error MAC frame with an error code indicating the multiple monitor error. It then becomes a Standby Monitor and enters repeat mode. Note that this action may leave the ring without an Active Monitor. Another Standby Monitor will enter the Monitor Contention Process in this case.

ARI/FCI Set Error. Reception of more than one AMP or SMP MAC frame with ARI/FCI equal to zero without first receiving an intervening AMP MAC frame causes the Adapter to:

1. increment the 'ARI/FCI' Set Error Counter, and
2. terminate the Ring Poll Process (does not queue the SMP MAC frame).

This process leaves the Adapter downstream of a malfunctioning Adapter with an incorrect UNA (when the Ring Poll Process terminates), but Adapters downstream from the Active Monitor to the defective Adapter will have a correct UNA.

When an Adapter is unable to set the ARI/FCI bits upon receiving a frame, the following LAN functions do not operate correctly:

1. Higher-level protocols may not work correctly because of the inability of the Insertion Process to detect duplicate addresses.
2. A beacon transmitter may identify an incorrect upstream Adapter.
3. An Adapter MAC frame requiring Assured Delivery (Section 3.6.9.2) will not be assured when the destination Adapter fails to set the ARI/FCI bits.

Type 2 Soft Error

Type 2 soft errors consist of the burst 5 error, lost frame, multiple token, corrupted token, lost token, lost delimiter, circulating token, or circulating frame error conditions. These error conditions cause the Active Monitor to execute its Ring Purge Function and may cause frames to be lost.

Burst 5 Error. An Adapter detects the Burst 5 condition when five half-bits of Manchester coded data are received without a phase change.

A type 2 soft error is detected when the burst error is long enough to remove the token or frame from the ring, but not long enough to start a hard error recovery (due to signal loss).

Lost Frames. When a transmitting Adapter has transmitted the physical trailer, the Adapter strips the ring data until an EDEL is detected or 4.1 milliseconds expires. If the 4.1 ms timer expires, then the Adapter:

1. enters repeat mode without generating a token, and
2. increments its 'Lost Frame Error Counter'.

This error causes the Active Monitor to detect a Lost Token and to perform a Ring Purge to restore normal token protocols.

Corrupted Token. When an Adapter has one or more frames to transmit and receives a token, but does not detect an EDEL after the Access Control field, a corrupted token has been detected. The Adapter transmits an Abort Delimiter (an SDEL/EDEL sequence), and queues for transmission the frame that was being transmitted, and does not generate a token.

This error causes the Active Monitor to detect a Lost Token and to restore the ring using its Ring Purge Process.

Lost Token. When the Active Monitor fails to detect a token or a frame physical header once every 10 milliseconds, the Adapter increments the 'Token Error Counter' and restores the ring using its Ring Purge Process.

Circulating Frame or Priority Token/Multiple Monitor. Each time an Adapter transmits a frame or a priority token, it sets the Monitor bit (AC bit 4) equal to zero. Each time the Active Monitor repeats a frame or a priority token, it examines the AC bit 4.

1. If equal to zero, it sets AC bit 4 equal to one.
2. If equal to one, a circulating frame, a circulating priority token, or a multiple Active Monitor condition exists. The Active Monitor increments its "Token Error Counter" and restores the ring using its Ring Purge Process.

Type 3 Soft Errors

The type 3 soft error may be caused by the nonexistence of an Active Monitor and causes execution of the Monitor Contention and Ring Purge Processes.

These error conditions or their resultant recovery techniques may cause frames to be lost.

Lost Monitor. The Standby Monitors monitor the ring for good tokens to be received at least once every 2.6 seconds. The Standby Monitors also monitor to assure that a Ring Poll Process is executed at least once every 15 seconds.

If either of these times expire, the Adapter assumes the ring's Active Monitor is not functional or not present and enters the Monitor Contention Process in Contention Transmit Mode.

Frequency Error. The Standby Monitors' detection of a frequency error causes the Adapter to enter Monitor Contention in Contention Transmit Mode. This failure may be resolved by soft error recovery or may cause the hard error recovery function to be executed.

Type 4 Soft Errors

The type 4 soft error is caused when Monitor Contention cannot be resolved. This error condition may also require hard error recovery.

This error condition or its resultant recovery may cause frames to be lost.

3.12.2.2 Soft Error Recovery Time Line

Figure 3-39 illustrates the recovery actions that take place as a function of time when one of the sort errors is detected.

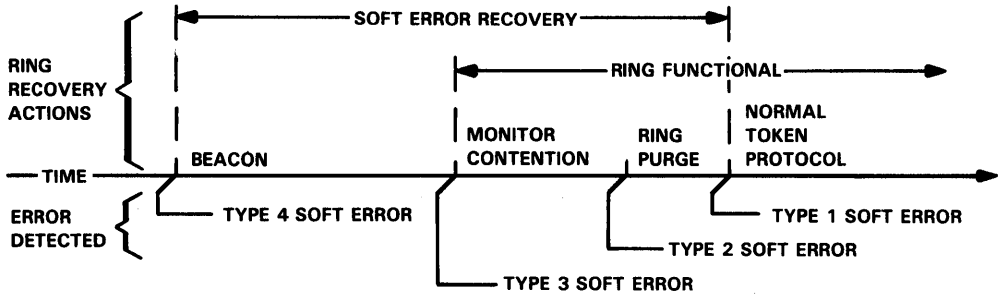


FIGURE 3-39. SOFT ERROR RECOVERY TIME LINE

3

3.12.3 Hard Error Recovery Examples

This section presents several examples of the hard error recovery process as previously described. The following examples are provided:

1. A signal loss is detected.
2. Transmit streaming is detected (not Claim Token MAC frames).
3. Receive streaming is detected (not Claim Token MAC frames).
4. Transmit streaming is detected (Claim Token MAC frames).
5. Two Adapters are transmitting streaming data (transmitter fault).
6. Two Adapters are receiving streaming data (receiver fault).

3.12.3.1 Signal Loss

Three examples of signal loss recovery are presented.

Case 1 - Transmitter Malfunction

Adapter 185 detects a Signal Loss Error caused by a transmitter malfunction in Adapter 114.

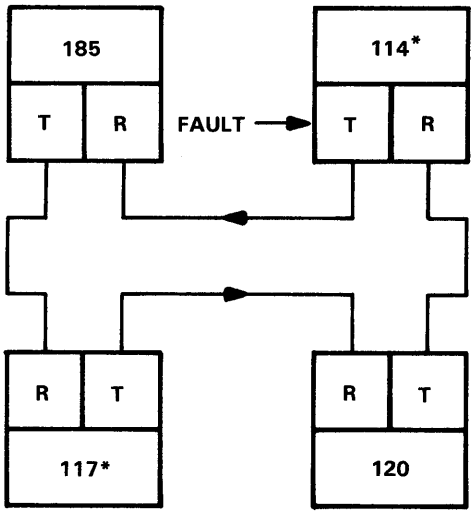


FIGURE 3-40. TRANSMITTER FAULT IN ADAPTER 114

1. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 4 error and transmits idles.
2. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 5 error.
3. The state of Adapters 114, 120, and 117 will vary depending upon which Adapter's token protocol timers expire first.
4. Adapter 185 detects the Signal Loss Error causing it to enter Contention Transmit Mode.
5. If Monitor Contention is not resolved (times out), Adapter 185 enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type subvector equal to >0002 (signal loss).
6. Adapters 114, 120, and 117 enter Beacon Repeat Mode upon receiving the Beacon MAC frame from 185 with a lower error code.
7. Adapter 185 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until the signal is restored to Adapter 185 by the removal of Adapter 114 using the Beacon Receive Auto Removal function.
8. Adapter 185 detects its own Beacon MAC frame and enters the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

Case 2 - Receiver Malfunction

Adapter 185 detects a Signal Loss Error caused by its own receiver malfunction.

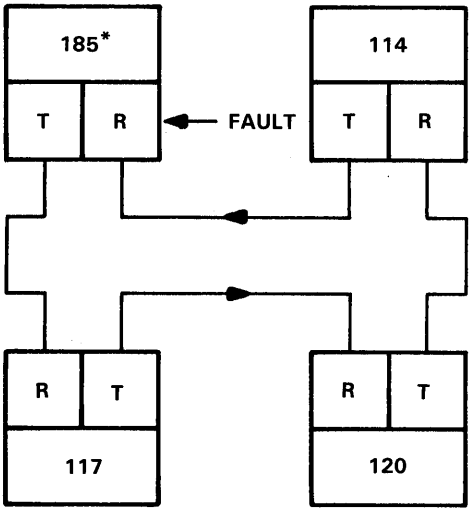


FIGURE 3-41. RECEIVER FAULT IN ADAPTER 185

1. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 4 error and transmits idles.
2. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 5 error.
3. The state of Adapters 114, 120 and 117 will vary depending upon which Adapter's token protocol timers expire first
4. Adapter 185 detects the Signal Loss Error causing it to enter Contention Transmit Mode.
5. If Adapter 185 cannot resolve Monitor Contention, it enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type subvector equal to >0002 (signal loss).
6. Adapters 114, 120, and 117 enter Beacon Repeat Mode upon receiving the Beacon MAC frame from 185 with a lower error code.
7. Adapter 185 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until it is removed from the ring by the Beacon Transmit Remove Function.

NOTE

Adapter 114 did execute the Beacon Receive Remove Function, but re-inserted into the ring since the Adapter's tests were successful.

8. Adapter 117 receives no Beacon frames for 200 milliseconds and so starts the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

Case 3 - Broken Ring

Adapter 185 detects a Signal Loss caused by a ring break within the wiring concentrator between Adapters 185 and 114.

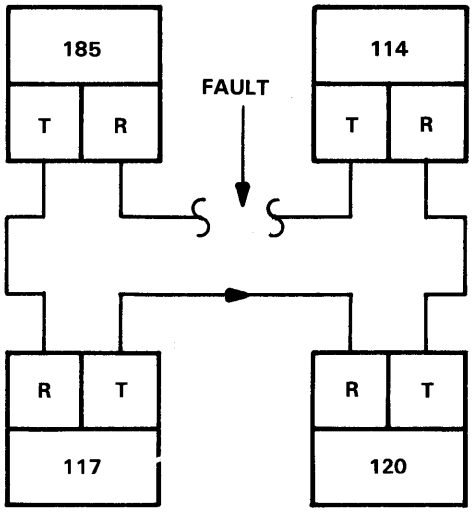


FIGURE 3-42. BROKEN RING FAULT

1. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 4 error and transmits idles.
2. Adapter 185 detects a Burst 5 error.
3. The state of Adapters 114, 120, and 117 will vary depending upon which Adapter's token protocol timers expire first.
4. Adapter 185 detects the Signal Loss Error causing it to enter Contention Transmit Mode.
5. If Adapter 185 does not resolve Monitor Contention (timeout), it enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type subvector equal to >0002 (signal loss).
6. Adapters 114, 120, and 117 enter Beacon Repeat Mode upon receiving the Beacon MAC frame from 185 with a lower error code.
7. Adapter 185 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until the broken ring segment is repaired.
8. Adapter 185 receives its own Beacon MAC frame and starts the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

3.12.3.2 Transmit Data Streaming

Adapter 185 is transmitting data without regard to ring protocol (streaming data of any kind except Claim Token MAC frames). Adapter 185 does not respond to Ring Purge, but does recognize the Beacon MAC frame.

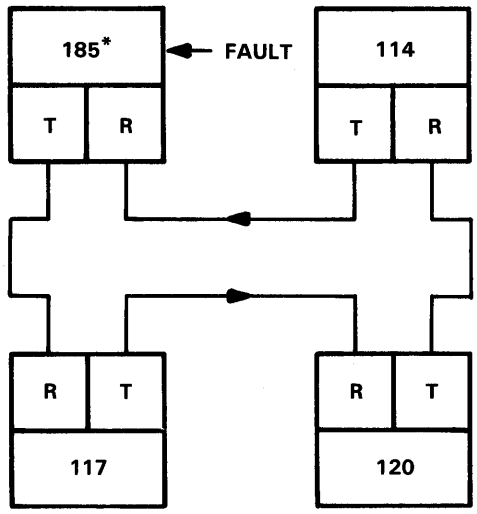


FIGURE 3-43. TRANSMITTER STREAMING FAULT IN ADAPTER 185

1. Depending on when their timers expire, any combination of Adapters may enter Monitor Contention repeat or transmit mode and start their internal watchdog timers for Monitor Contention (1 second).
2. Depending on when their contention timers expire, any combination of Adapters may enter Beacon Transmit Mode and transmit a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type Subvector equal to >0003 (Adapters 117 never received a Claim Token MAC frame) or >0004 (Adapters received a Claim Token MAC Frame).
3. Adapter 117 detects a streaming data error, enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with an error code of >0003 and a UNA identifying Adapter 185.
4. Adapters 114 and 120 enter Beacon Repeat Mode upon receiving the Beacon frame from Adapter 117 with a lower error code.
5. Adapter 117 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until the streaming Adapter 185 is removed using the Beacon Receive Remove function.
6. Adapter 117 detects its own Beacon frames and enters the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

3.12.3.3 Receive Data Streaming

Adapter 117 is receiving a signal without recognizing token or frame protocols (streaming data), but does detect a streaming error.

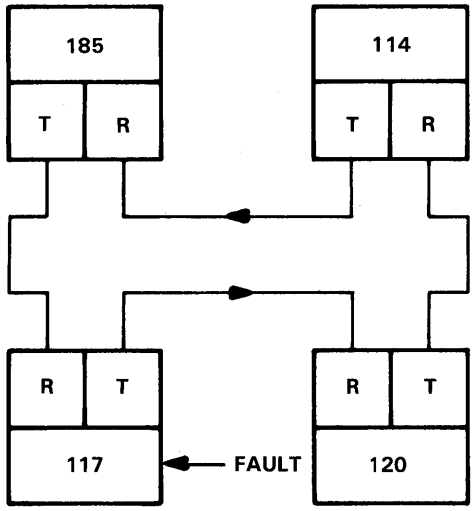


FIGURE 3-44. ADAPTER 117 DETECTS A STREAMING ERROR

1. Depending on when their timers expire, any combination of Adapters may enter Monitor Contention repeat or transmit mode and start their internal watchdog timers for Monitor Contention (1 second).
2. Depending on when their contention timers expire, any combination of Adapters may enter Beacon Transmit Mode and transmit a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type Subvector equal to >0003 (Adapters never received a Claim Token MAC frame) or >0004 (Adapters received a Claim Token MAC Frame).
3. Adapter 117 detects a streaming data error, enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with an error code of >0003 and a UNA identifying Adapter 185.
4. Adapters 114 and 120 enter Beacon Repeat Mode upon receiving the Beacon frame from Adapter 117 with a lower error code.
5. Adapter 117 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until an internal 26 second timer expires; Adapter 117 is then removed by the Beacon Transmit Remove function.
6. Adapter 120 experiences 200 milliseconds with no Beacon frames and enters the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

3.12.3.4 Transmit Monitor Contention Streaming

Adapter 185 is transmitting Claim Token MAC frames without regard to ring protocol (streaming), and does not recognize the Ring Purge MAC frame (normal for a Monitor Contention transmitter), but receives the Beacon MAC frame.

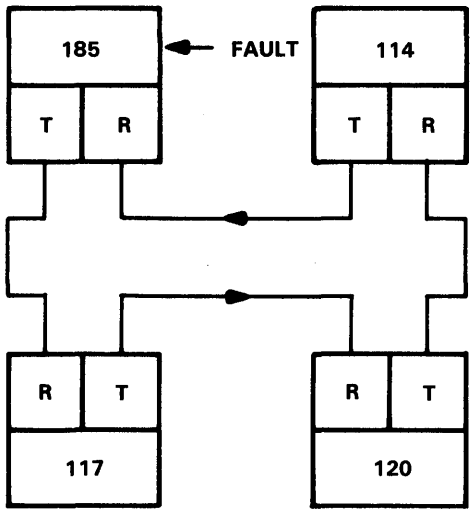


FIGURE 3-45. ADAPTER 185 STREAMING CLAIM TOKEN FRAMES

1. Adapters 114, 120, 117 all enter Monitor Contention repeat mode and start their watchdog timers (1 second) which limit the duration of the Monitor Contention Process.
2. Depending on when their timers expire, any combination of Adapters may enter Beacon Transmit mode and transmit a Beacon MAC frame with a Beacon Type Subvector (error code) equal to >0004 (Monitor Contention MAC frames have been received).
3. Adapter 117 detects the streaming Claim Token MAC frame error, enters Beacon Transmit Mode and transmits a Beacon MAC frame with an error code of >0004 and a UNA identifying Adapter 185.
4. Adapters 114 and 120 enter Beacon repeat mode upon receiving Adapter 117's Beacon MAC frame of an equal error code.
5. Adapter 117 remains in Beacon Transmit Mode until the streaming Adapter 185 is removed using the Beacon Receive Remove Function.
6. Adapter 117 detects its own Beacon frames and enters the Monitor Contention Process to recover the ring.

4. ADAPTER DESIGN

4.1 Introduction

This section is intended to aid in the integration of the Texas Instruments TMS380 Adapter chip set with an attaching product. The interface of the Adapter from both a hardware and software point of view will be discussed.

4.1.1 Scope

This section is organized into four areas:

1. Section 4.2 provides a summary of the basic interconnect of the five chips in the TMS380 family, with a full schematic of this interconnect.
2. A detailed discussion of the attached system hardware interface begins in Section 4.3. The direct I/O (DIO) and direct memory access (DMA) interfaces are discussed with respect to the two strap-selectable interface modes: 808X and 680XX.
3. Section 4.4 details the software interface required to initialize the Adapter to transmit and receive frames on the local ring, and to monitor the status of the Adapter during operation. A detailed description of the Adapter command set is provided.
4. Section 4.5 details the interface of the Adapter to the local ring. The functions of the Ring Interface circuit are discussed.

4.1.2 Conventions

4.1.2.1 Bit/Byte/Word Numbering

Bit, byte, and word numbering throughout this manual is based upon bit 0, byte 0, or word 0 occupying the most significant position. Thus, if a 16-bit word is referenced, bit 0 is the most significant bit position and bit 15 is the least significant bit position.

4.1.2.2 Hexadecimal Numbers

Hexadecimal numbers are referenced throughout this section with a ">" symbol preceding the number.

4.1.3 Hardware Interface Overview

The Adapter provides two external interfaces: an interface to the attached system and an interface to the local ring. This section gives an overview of these two hardware interfaces. More detail about these interfaces is found in Section 4.3 and 4.5.

4.1.3.1 Adapter to Ring Interface

The Adapter connects to the ring through two twisted pairs of wires: one set to transmit and one set to receive. These twisted pairs connect through a wiring concentrator to form lobes. Each lobe is serially connected to the network to form a ring topology. The wiring concentrator provides the electrical and mechanical function necessary to physically insert and de-insert the ring station onto the ring. Figure 4-1 illustrates the Local Area Network System.

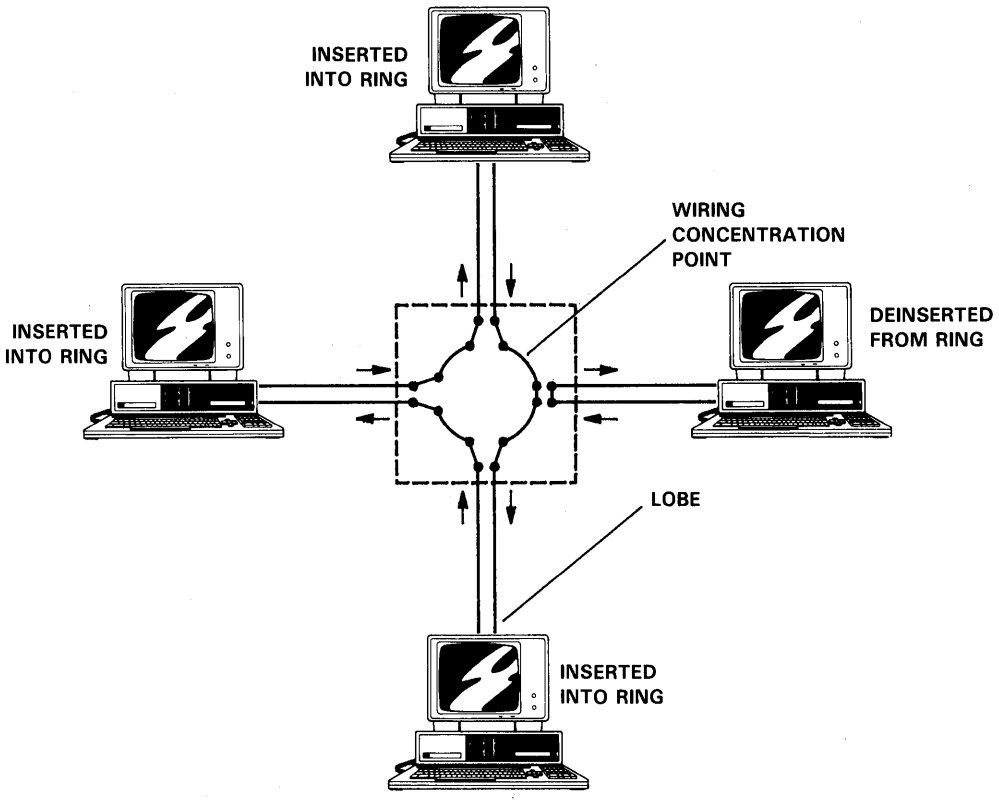


FIGURE 4-1. STAR-WIRED LOCAL AREA NETWORK

4.1.3.2 Adapter to Attached System Interface

The Adapter interface to the attached system is through the TMS38030 System Interface chip (SIF). This interface provides two user selectable modes: 808X mode and 680XX mode. These pin selectable modes allow the system designer flexibility in choosing the hardware interface most appropriate to his application. The 808X mode provides a compatible interface to the 808X series of CPU's, using either 8-bit or 16-bit data bus widths. The 680XX mode provides a compatible interface to the 680XX series of CPU's, with a 16-bit data bus width. Of course, the designer is not constrained to use these processor types in the attached system; the system designer should select the interface mode which best fits his system hardware.

The System Interface of the Adapter provides both direct I/O and DMA interfaces to the attached system. Direct I/O is used to handshake with the Adapter and to pass initialization parameters to the Adapter. All message transfers between the attached system and the ring are accomplished via the direct memory access interface. This provides for high-performance data transfer to and from the attached system.

4.1.4 Software Interface

4.1.4.1 Control and Status Registers

The attached system passes initialization parameters and retrieves Adapter status through a set of four 16-bit word address locations mapped into the System Interface chip. Each address is 16-bit word-aligned (even address). If an 8-bit data bus interface is to be used, each address is read or written one byte at a time. The register names associated with these addresses are shown in Figure 4-2. More detail on the use of these registers is in Section 4.4.

ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME
>XXX0	DATA REGISTER
>XXX2	DATA REGISTER WITH AUTO-INCREMENT
>XXX4	ADDRESS REGISTER
>XXX6	INTERRUPT REGISTER

FIGURE 4-2. ADAPTER REGISTERS

4.1.4.2 Command and Status Blocks

Adapter commands and the resulting status codes are passed to and from the Adapter by defining two memory blocks within the attached system's memory, the System Command Block (SCB) and the System Status Block (SSB). The locations of these blocks are defined by the attached system at initialization. During initialization, direct I/O is used to pass the starting address of both memory blocks to the Adapter. These blocks are shown in Figure 4-3.

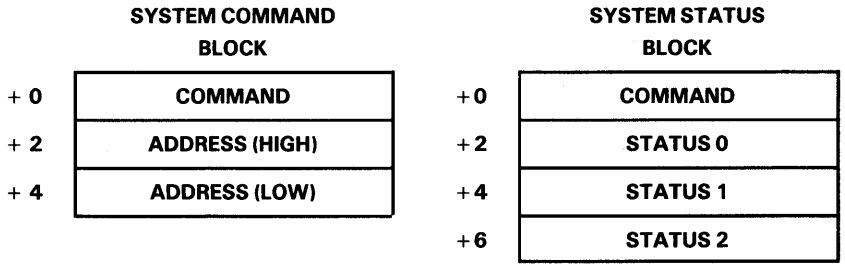


FIGURE 4-3. SYSTEM COMMAND BLOCK AND SYSTEM STATUS BLOCK

A command is initiated by the attached system by writing a command word to the System Command Block, followed by a direct I/O write to the Adapter Interrupt Register. This process posts an interrupt within the Adapter, signaling that a command is to be processed. The Adapter then performs a DMA operation to read the System Command Block, and any required parameters, into the Adapter. Upon completion of the command, the Adapter writes the completion status of the command to the System Status Block and interrupts the attached system. The command set of the Adapter is listed in Figure 4-4.

COMMAND	CODE
OPEN	>0003
TRANSMIT	>0004
TRANSMIT HALT	>0005
RECEIVE	>0006
CLOSE	>0007
SET GROUP ADDRESS	>0008
SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS	>0009
READ ERROR LOG	>000A
READ ADAPTER BUFFER	>000B

FIGURE 4-4. ADAPTER COMMAND SET

4.1.5 Adapter Data Flow

The Adapter, at a high level of detail, performs these basic operations on the data stream passing through it on the ring:

1. Repeats the received data without copying the data.
2. Repeats and copies the received data.
3. Changes the state of single bits in the received data before re-transmitting it.
4. Originates the transmission of data on the ring.
5. Removes messages from the ring that it has previously transmitted.

The Adapter is made up of four functions; the Ring Interface (RI) circuit, the Protocol Handler (PH), the Communications Processor (CP), and the System Interface (SIF).

To insure integrity of the data flow between the attached system and the Adapter, each byte may be protected with a parity bit. In addition, the integrity of the data flow within the Adapter (i.e. on the Adapter Bus) is also assured with byte parity. Parity generation and checking to the System Interface is performed on both address and data types. Parity checking in this manner, coupled with protocol level data integrity checks, assures a high level of confidence in the validity of data transported on the ring.

A description of the data flow through the Adapter is described in the following paragraphs.

4.1.5.1 Receive Data Flow

On receive, data is taken from the local ring into the Ring Interface where it is re-shaped into distortion-free digital signalling elements. The Ring Interface performs no code conversion as its primary function is to provide synchronization to the received data stream and level translations to levels compatible with the Protocol Handler (TTL). Synchronization is achieved via an integrated phase-locked loop (PLL) which locks to the bit stream signalling rate. This clock is boundary aligned to the bit stream and is passed to the Protocol Handler for data extraction.

The Protocol Handler, as the first step during data receive, provides de-serialization of the bit stream to 16-bit data words by counting clock pulses received from the Ring Interface. Parity bits are generated on the received data, so that the integrity of the received data can be continuously monitored as it passes from the Protocol Handler and ultimately to the attached system. At the appropriate time during the receive sequence, the Protocol Handler begins accumulating a cyclic redundancy code (CRC) on the received bit stream. The destination address contained within the bit stream is compared against addresses stored within the Protocol Handler to determine if the message is to be copied by the Adapter. If so, the Protocol Handler conditions itself to transfer the message being received to the Adapter Bus RAM.

The physical control fields,the destination and source addresses, the data portions, and the CRC field of the in-progress received message are now passed to the local RAM in sequence. When the end of the CRC-protected field is received, the calculated value is compared to the CRC value received as part of the message. If these two values disagree, the Protocol Handler signals the Communications Processor that an error has occurred and the message should be ignored. If, however, the CRC values agree, the Protocol Handler changes the value of the appropriate bits within the re-transmitted data stream to indicate that the message was properly received.

After a valid message has been received and buffered to the Adapter Bus RAM, the Adapter will begin transfer of the message to the attached system via direct memory access. When the transfer is complete, the Adapter completes the receive operation by reporting the status of the transfer to the attached system. Specifics about the DMA options and other initial conditions, as they relate to the Adapter/attached system interface, are provided via parameters sent to the Adapter during initialization.

4.1.5.2 Transmit Data Flow

Data flow on transmit operations is essentially the reverse of the receive operation. The message to be transmitted onto the ring is in the attached system memory. The Adapter is set up with information pertaining to the starting location and length so that a direct memory access can take place. The Adapter then does DMA accesses to transfer the message, including the destination address, from the system memory to buffer memory contained within the Adapter. Once the message has been transferred from the system to the Adapter, the Communications Processor will set up the Protocol Handler to initiate transfer of the message from the Adapter RAM buffers out onto the ring.

Upon sensing that a transmission is pending, the Protocol Handler begins to transfer the message from the Adapter RAM buffers into the PH's internal registers. After sufficient data has been transferred to sustain continuous transfers to the ring, the Protocol Handler begins to search for a free token on the ring. When a free token is received, the Protocol Handler re-transmits the token as a "busy" token, appends applicable control bits, including the source and destination addresses, and begins a sequential transmission of the message onto the ring. Concurrent with this process, the Protocol Handler begins to accumulate the CRC field to be transmitted at the appropriate time. The concurrent transfer of the message from the Adapter buffer RAM to the Protocol Handler, and the subsequent transmission of the message onto the ring, continues until the entire message has been transmitted. At this time the Protocol Handler transmits the accumulated CRC. The CRC field is followed with encoded ending fields.

After transmission has begun, the Protocol Handler begins to remove (strip) data from the ring that is being received. The incoming data stream is searched for a match of the source address to the address of the Adapter. After a match is found and transmission is complete, the Adapter encodes and transmits a free token on the ring. The transmission of the free token is followed by a continuous transmission of zeros. When receipt of the end of the transmitted message is sensed, the Adapter begins to repeat the received data stream, and the transmit operation is considered complete. The Adapter passes status back to the attached system, indicating the completion status of the transmission.

4.2 Adapter Interconnect

This section shows the interconnect of the TMS380 Adapter five chip set. The expansion of buffer RAM on the LAN Adapter bus is also described.

Figure 4-5 illustrates the interconnect schematic of the TMS38010 Communications Processor, the TMS38020 Protocol Handler, the TMS38030 System Interface, and the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface components of the Adapter. This schematic also illustrates LAN Adapter bus memory expansion, which will be discussed in Section 4.2.1.

A discussion of the Ring Interface circuit containing the TMS38051, TMS38052, the watchdog timer, and burned-in address ROM is found in Section 4.5.

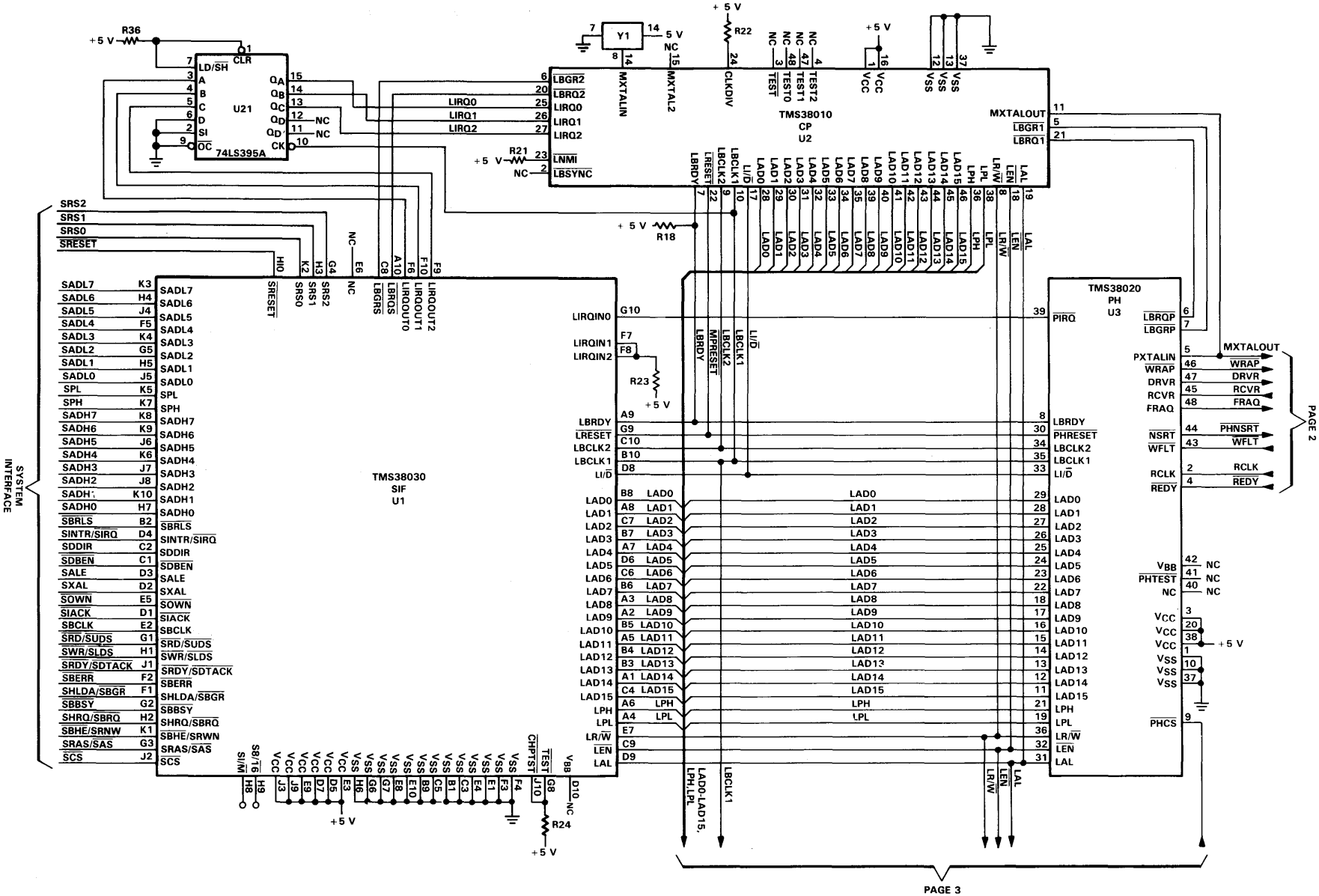


FIGURE 4-5. ADAPTER CHIP SET INTERCONNECT DIAGRAM (1 of 4)

4

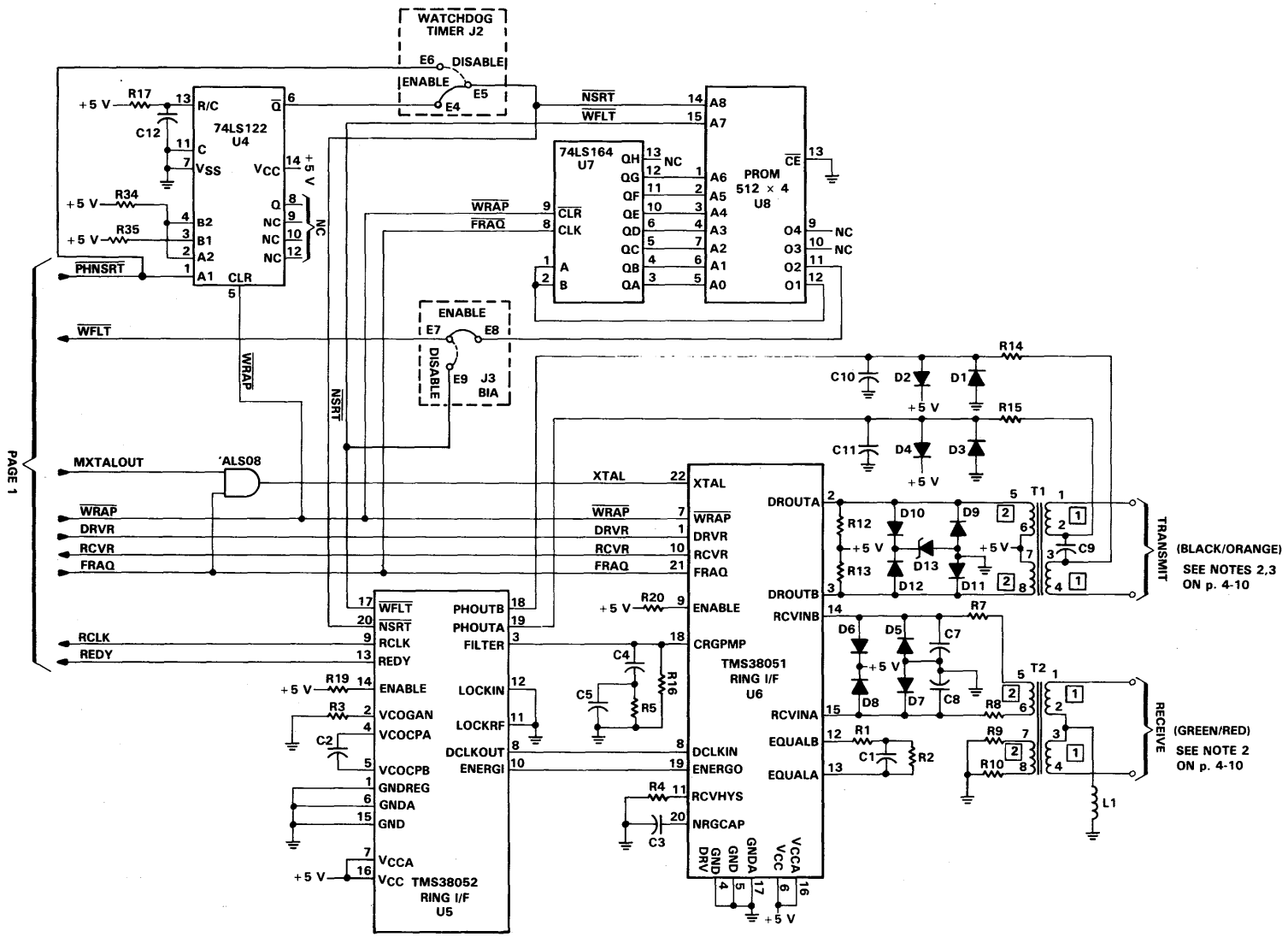


FIGURE 4-5. ADAPTER CHIP SET INTERCONNECT DIAGRAM (2 of 4)

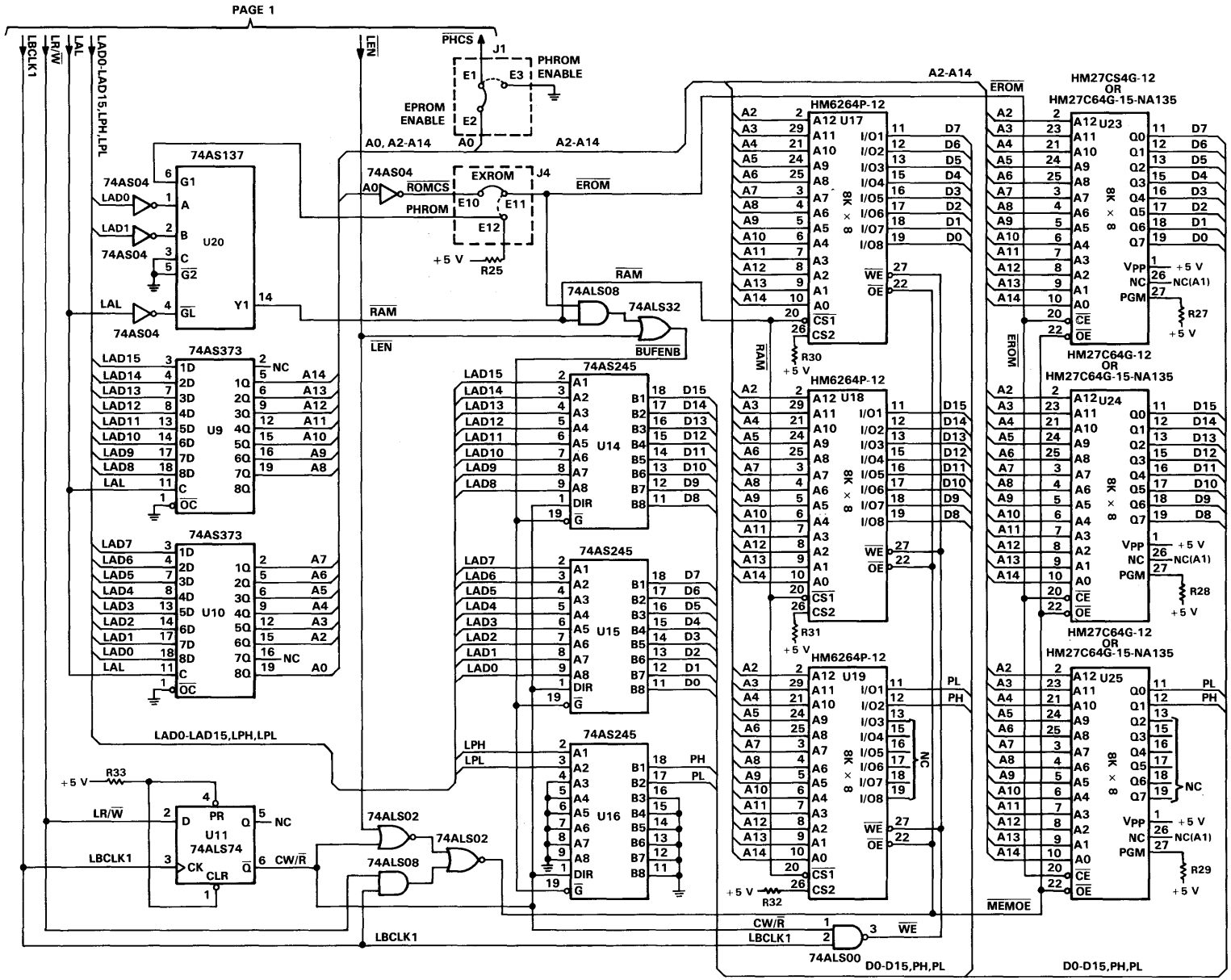


FIGURE 4-5. ADAPTER CHIP SET INTERCONNECT DIAGRAM (3 of 4)

LIST OF MATERIALS		
SYMBOL(S)	QTY	DESCRIPTION
C1	1	Capacitor, 180 pF, 5%
C2	1	Capacitor, 200 pF, 5%
C3	1	Capacitor, 6800 pF, 10%
C4	1	Capacitor, 8.2 μF, 10%
C5	1	Capacitor, 680 pF, 10%
C7, C8	2	Capacitor, 62 pF, 5%
C9	1	Capacitor, 0.1 μF, 10%
C10, C11	2	Capacitor, 8.2 μF, 20%
C12	1	Capacitor, 0.47 μF, 5%
D1-D4	4	Diode, 1N4004
D5-D12	8	Diode, 1N4148
D13	1	Diode, 1N5347B, 10 V, Zener
R1	1	Resistor, 121 Ω, 1%
R2	1	Resistor, 604 Ω, 1%
R3, R4	2	Resistor, 2.49 kΩ, 1%
R5	1	Resistor, 825 Ω, 1%
R7, R8	2	Resistor, 121 Ω, 1%
R9, R10	2	Resistor, 75 Ω, 1%
R12, R13	2	Resistor, 300 Ω, 5%
R14, R15	2	Resistor, 50 Ω, 5%, 2 W
R16	1	Resistor, 330 kΩ, 10%
R17	1	Resistor, 150 kΩ, 5%
R18	1	Resistor, 2.3 kΩ, 5%
R19-R25	3	Resistor, 4.7 kΩ, 10%
R27-R36	10	Resistor, 1 kΩ, 10%
L1	1	Coil, 56 μH, 10%
T1, T2	2	Transformer, PE63838-001 or TNI2837
Y1	1	Crystal, Oscillator KYOCERA KX0-01

NOTES:
1. Care must be exercised during card layout to assure that the capacitive loading differences between LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 does not exceed 10 pF.
2. No polarity is specified for the transmit or receive twisted pair. Therefore, signal connections to transformers T1 and T2 may be modified to accommodate specific PWB layouts.
3. No polarity is specified for signals PHOUTA and PHOUTB. Therefore, the connections on the transformer T1 are interchangeable.

FIGURE 4-5. ADAPTER CHIP SET INTERCONNECT DIAGRAM (4 of4)

4.2.1 LAN Adapter Bus Memory Expansion

In expanded Adapter configurations, the LAN Adapter bus is used to interface the Communications Processor to expansion memory. Memory expansion may be necessary if frame sizes greater than that allowed by the standard Adapter configuration are desired.

The names, functions, and basic timing of the Adapter bus interface signals are presented. Formal timing parameters and electrical specifications are found in the TMS38010 Communications Processor data sheet.

4.2.1.1 Basic LAN Adapter Bus Timing

The basic timing for transfer cycles on the LAN Adapter bus interface performed by the Communications Processor is shown in Figure 4-6. A read cycle is shown in 4-6(a), and a write cycle in 4-6(b).

Each bus transfer extends for at least one LBCLK1/LBCLK2 period. External devices may extend the bus transfer in increments of one LBCLK1/LBCLK2 period, called a "wait state." Driving LBRDY low before the start of Q4 in a cycle will extend the bus transfer. LBRDY must remain low until after the falling edge of LBCLK1. The bus transfer extends until the bus master samples LBRDY high at the falling edge of LBCLK2.

Note that both the current bus master and all slave devices on the bus sample LBRDY at the start of Q4 of each cycle. If LBRDY is high, they assume that the following Adapter bus cycle contains an address in the Q2 phase. If they sample LBRDY low, they assume the bus operation in progress continues.

At the beginning of each cycle, whether a read or a write, the LR/$\overline{W}$ and LI/$\overline{D}$ lines become valid. Also, at this time address information is presented on LAD0-LAD15 and is accompanied by a pulse on LAL. The falling edge of the LAL pulse is intended to be used by external devices to latch the address. Bus slaves latch the address presented and decode it.

During the data phase of a cycle, the bus master asserts $\overline{LEN}$. The $\overline{LEN}$ signal is not used in address decoding; it acts as an "output enable" during read cycles.

4.2.1.2 Read cycle

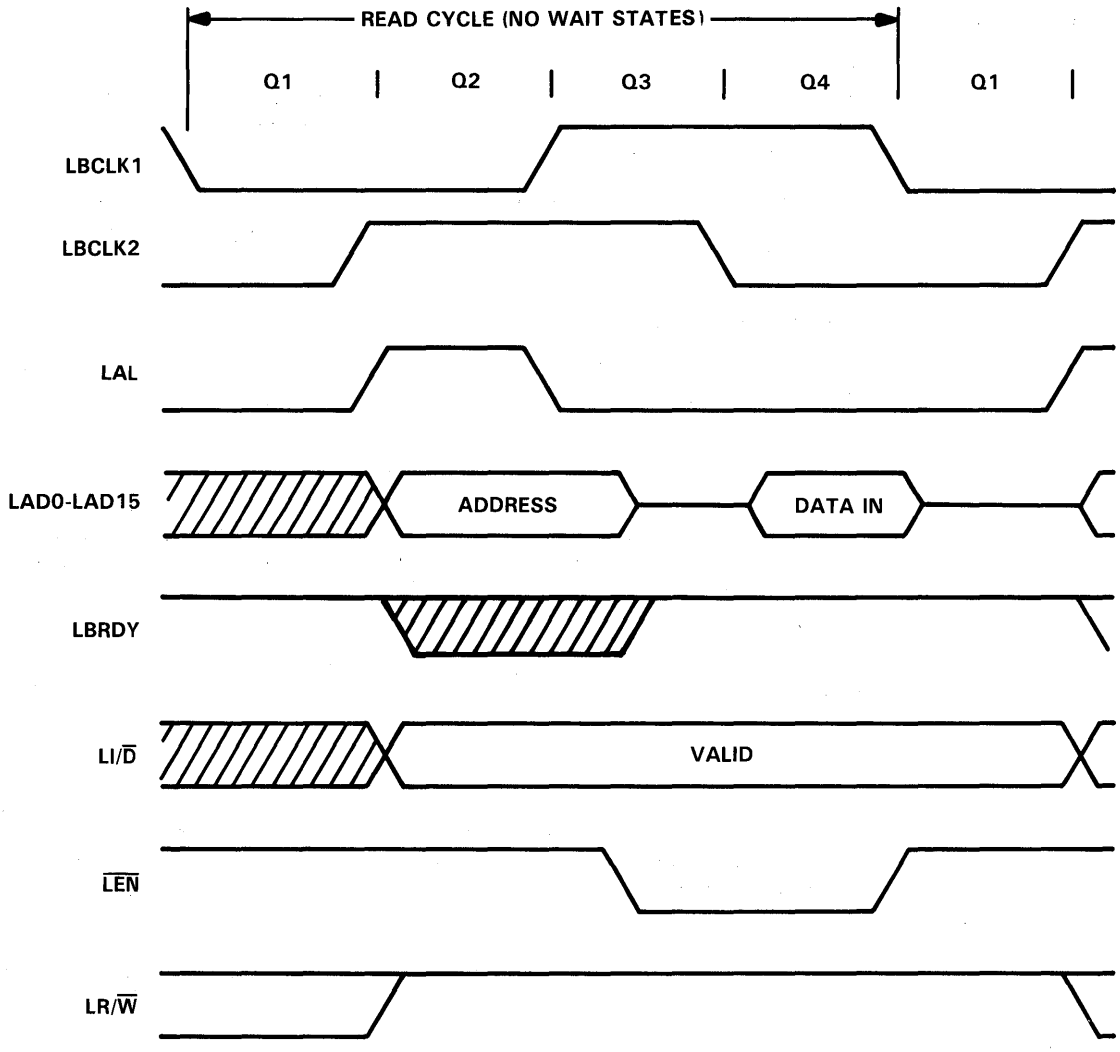
On a read cycle, the bus master holds $\overline{LEN}$ deasserted until it has tristated its LAD line in preparation for sampling the read data. The bus slave must not drive the LAD line until the master asserts $\overline{LEN}$. Output data must become valid within a specified delay from the leading edge of Q3, although the timing is such that slaves may choose to drive data from the leading edge of Q4. The bus master samples input data on the trailing edge of Q4. The bus slaves hold output data until either of two conditions are met:

1. The bus master no longer drives $\overline{LEN}$ low, or
2. LBRDY is asserted and a hold time past the start of Q1 has passed.

The bus slave must tristate its outputs within a specified delay from the deassertion of $\overline{LEN}$.

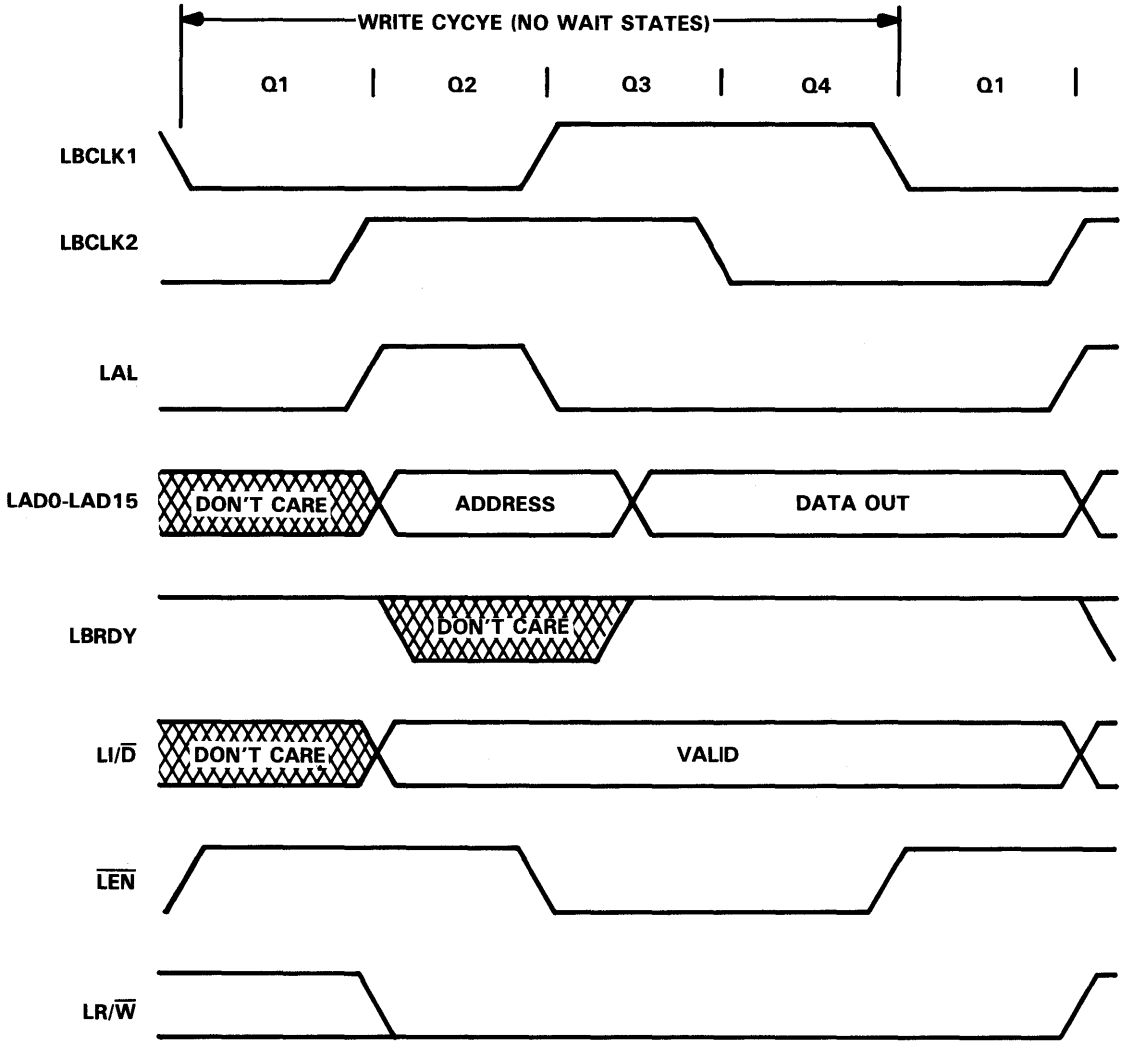
4.2.1.3 Write Cycle

On a write cycle, the bus master asserts $\overline{LEN}$ at the start of Q3 and drives write data on the LAD lines. Write data need not be valid before it asserts $\overline{LEN}$. The bus slave samples write data on the falling edge of LBCLK1 (at the end of Q4). The bus master holds $\overline{LEN}$ active after the falling edge of LBCLK1 in order to allow an external bus driver to maintain data beyond the write strobe. The bus master deasserts $\overline{LEN}$ in Q1 before the start of the next bus cycle.



(a) LAN ADAPTER BUS READ CYCLE

FIGURE 4-6. BASIC TIMING FOR LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS



(b) LAN ADAPTER BUS WRITE CYCLE

FIGURE 4-6. BASIC TIMING FOR LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS (concluded)

4.2.1.4 Wait State Generation

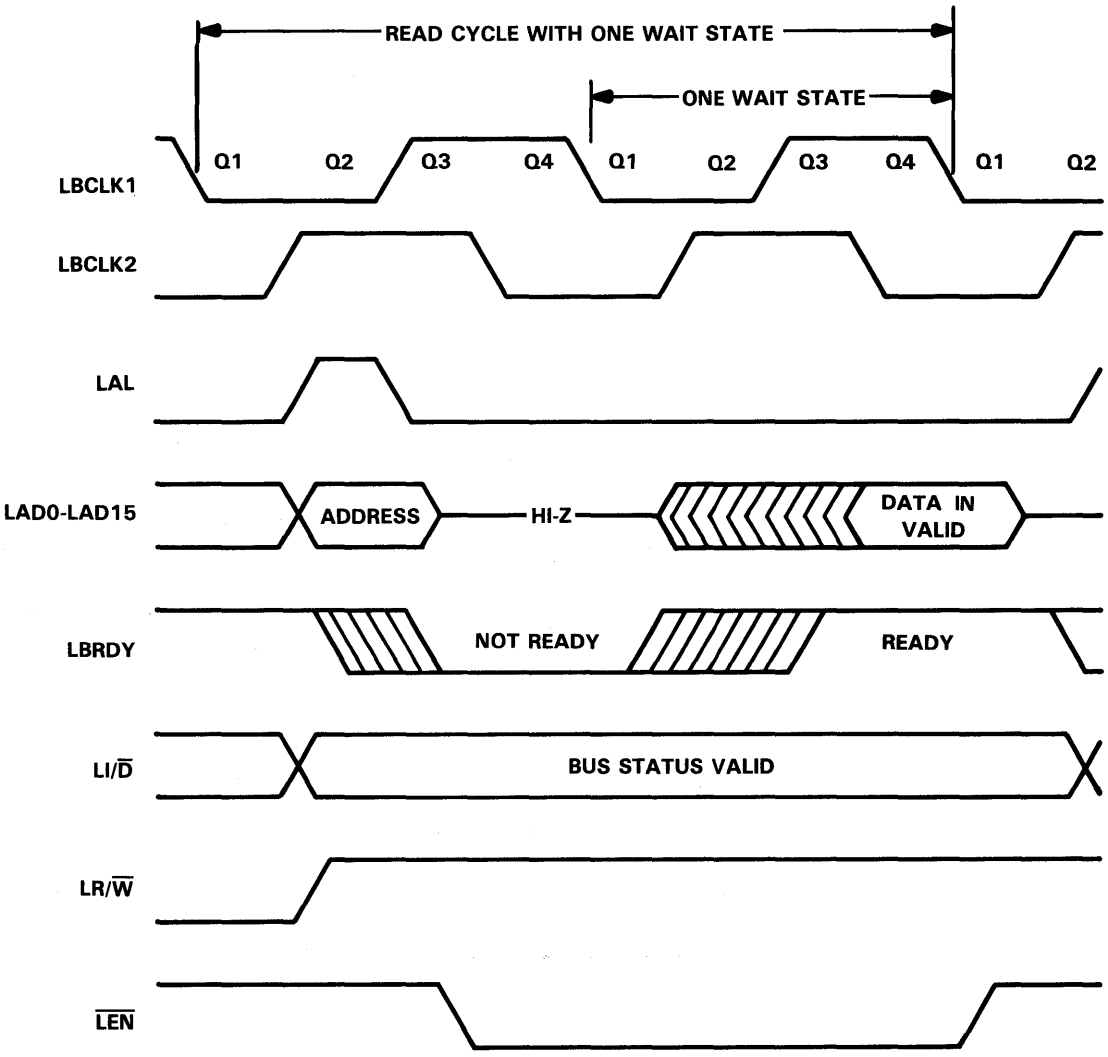
Each bus cycle is minimally one LBCLK period in duration, as shown in Figure 4-6, but can be extended by one additional LBCLK period to accommodate slow memories. An additional LBCLK period generated for this purpose is referred to as a "wait state". Wait states are permitted only for program store for the Communications Processor and are not allowed for RAM data storage.

The LBRDY signal may be driven low by either the bus master or the bus slave to extend LAN Adapter bus memory and internal bus cycles as shown in Figure 4-7. Whether the CP chip is master or slave, it will sample LBRDY as an input. The PH chip will sample LBRDY when it is accessed as a slave (i.e. an external master may request a wait state when accessing the PH ROM or a PH control register), but it will NOT honor wait states when it is the bus master. The master (on writes) or slave (on reads) will continue to drive output data as long as LBRDY is deasserted.

External circuitry may generate a wait state by driving LBRDY low (via open collector) before the falling edge of LBCLK2. Since wait states continue to be generated until LBRDY is driven high, LBRDY must be released in time to prevent a second wait state from occurring. As long as LBRDY is held low, the processor is forced to wait: it is frozen in its present microinstruction (or 'machine') state and is allowed to proceed to the next state. The CPU cannot respond to an interrupt request or bus request until LBRDY is released. This applies to non-memory as well as memory cycles controlled by the Communications Processor.

NOTE

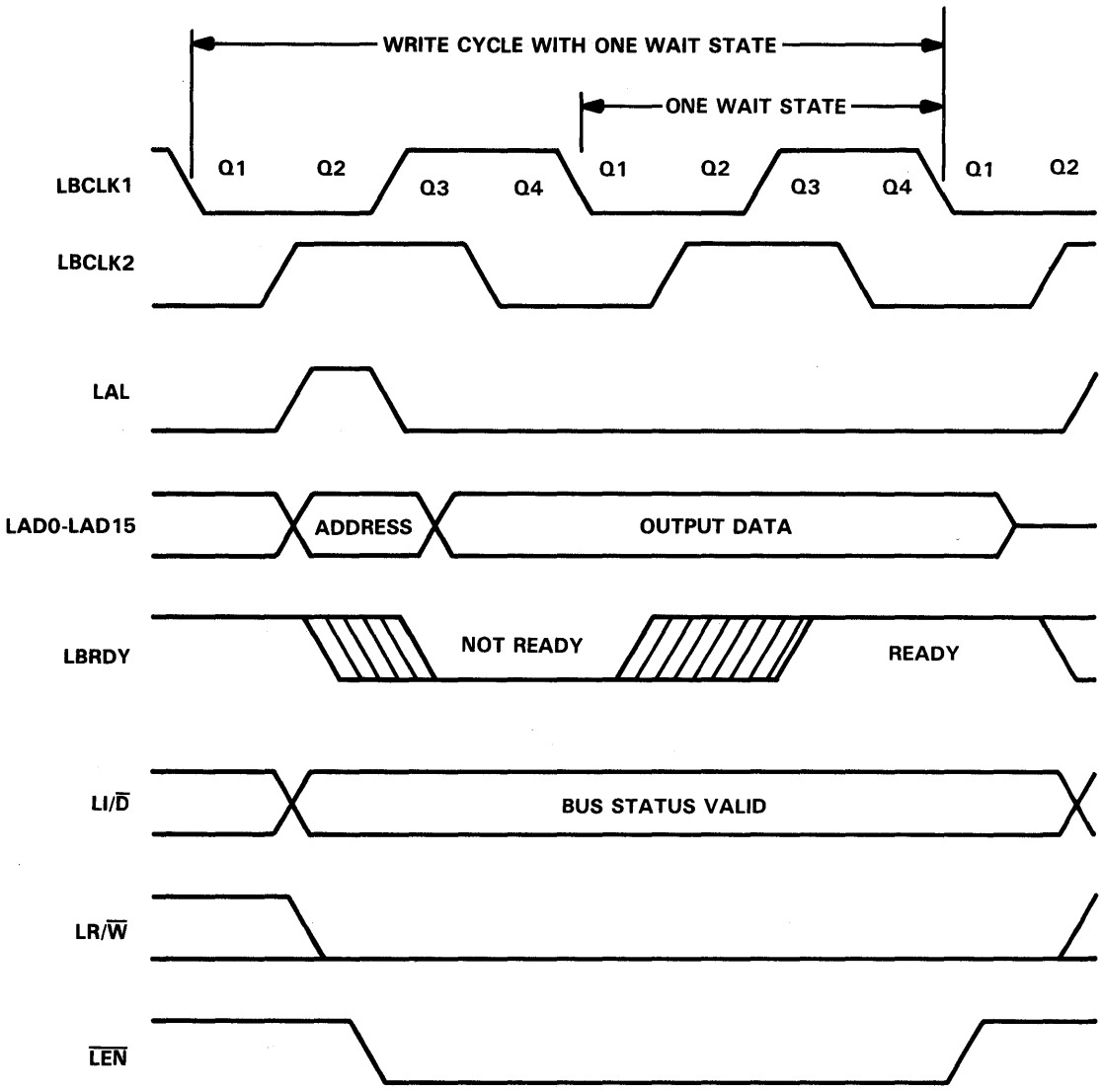
When the Communications Processor accesses on-chip RAM or registers, LBRDY must not be driven low.



(a) LAN ADAPTER BUS READ CYCLE WITH WAIT STATE

FIGURE 4-7. LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS WITH ONE WAIT STATE

4



(b) LAN ADAPTER BUS WRITE CYCLE WITH WAIT STATE

FIGURE 4-7. LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS WITH ONE WAIT STATE (concluded)

4.2.1.5 Bus Status Codes

Together, the LI/$\overline{D}$ and LR/$\overline{W}$ signals provide status information on the LAN Adapter bus cycle currently in progress. The meaning of the bus status codes appearing on these lines is shown in Table 4-1.

TABLE 4-1. ADAPTER BUS STATUS CODES

LR/$\overline{W}$	LI/$\overline{D}$	NAME	MEANING
0	0	DW	Data Write
0	1	DR	Data Read
1	0	—	invalid
1	1	IOP	Instruction or Immediate Operand

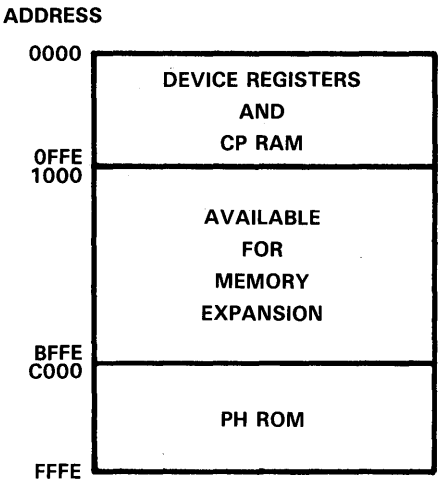
NOTE: In the table above, "1" = high and "0" = low.

The Data Write (DW) bus status code is asserted when the CP writes data to memory, or is in a RESET condition. The Data Read (DR) bus status code is asserted when the CP reads data from memory. When the CP addresses internal RAM, it asserts the appropriate bus status code and address on the bus.

The IOP bus status code is asserted when the CP reads either an instruction or an immediate operand of an instruction. This is used to qualify instruction references when debugging, and to identify instruction stream references to the PH ROM prefetch unit.

4.2.1.6 Adapter Bus Memory Map

The memory map for the Adapter is shown in Figure 4-8. This memory map illustrates a memory space of 64K bytes. The area from >1000 through >BFFE is available for expansion memory. Note that three memory devices are shown on the bus. This is due to the fact that the LAN Adapter bus requires parity for each byte on the bus.



NOTE: A15 on LAN Adapter memory cycles is always high.

FIGURE 4-8. LAN ADAPTER BUS MEMORY MAP

Figure 4-5 demonstrates how expansion RAM may be added to the Adapter. This expansion using HM6264 8K x 8 static RAM devices provides an additional 16K bytes of buffer for transmit and receive frames. The address is demultiplexed with two 'AS373 latches. Data is driven to/from the memory components with 'AS245 bus transceivers. The LR/$\overline{W}$ signal must be latched (shown with positive-edge triggered FF 'LS74) before being used as the direction signal to the AS245s, because LR/$\overline{W}$ may change before $\overline{LEN}$ is deasserted. $\overline{LEN}$ is used, in conjunction with address decode, to enable the '245s. The latched inversion of LR/$\overline{W}$ is NANDed with LBCLK1 to form the active-low write strobe to the RAMs. Appropriate decode circuitry forms the chip select to the memories. The 16K bytes of RAM are decoded starting at address location >4000.

Also shown in Figure 4-5 are sockets for EPROMs mapped starting at location >C000. The sockets allow the ROM space of the Protocol Handler to be displaced by external EPROMs. Thus, alternative programs (debug software or modified Adapter software) may be provided for the Communications Processor. Note that jumpers J1 and J4 must be set to disable the Protocol Handler ROM and enable the EPROM in this case.

The performance requirements for the memory devices shown in Figure 4-5 are calculated in Table 4-2. The calculations are made assuming a read cycle since the effect of the accumulated delays through the various buffers is more critical for a read cycle than for a write cycle. The access time requirement for the memory device used in each of these cases is calculated assuming worst-case component delays for all devices.

TABLE 4-2. MEMORY PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer high (min)	235 ns
Less: LBCLK2 high to LAL high	−47 ns
delay of address from LAL at 'AS373	−12 ns
delay of data through 'AS245	−10 ns
setup of data to LBCLK1 low	−20 ns
Memory access time from address	146 ns

4.3 System Hardware Interface

This section discusses the hardware interface between the attached system and the Adapter. Detailed logic examples are not presented in this section but may be found in the Application Examples section of this book. Pin numbering assignments and parametric information and discussions of timing constraints can be found in the TMS38030 System Interface Data Sheet.

The System Interface chip interfaces the Adapter to the attached system. The SIF provides a direct I/O (often referred to as "programmed I/O") interface and a direct memory access (DMA) interface. The direct I/O interface is provided for Adapter initialization, command initiation, and status reporting. The DMA interface allows the Adapter to take control of the attached system's memory bus for transfer of commands and parameters and frames between the system and Adapter.

4.3.1 Hardware Interface Modes

The System Interface provides the system designer the option of selecting among three hardware configuration modes:

1. 680XX 16-bit data bus
2. 808X 16-bit data bus
3. 808X 8-bit data bus

These hardware interface modes change the configuration and function of the SIF interface pins such that the desired interface is accomodated. The interface mode is selected by tying the 808X/680XX Select (SI/$\overline{M}$) pin and the the 8/16-bit Select (S8/$\overline{16}$) to the levels shown in Table 4-3.

TABLE 4-3. HARDWARE INTERFACE OPTION SELECT

SI/$\overline{M}$	S8/$\overline{16}$	MODE SELECTED
LOW	LOW	680XX 16-BIT DATA BUS
LOW	HIGH	Reserved
HIGH	LOW	808X 16-BIT DATA BUS
HIGH	HIGH	808X 8-BIT DATA BUS

4.3.2 Direct I/O Interface

The direct I/O interface consists of four word-aligned (even address) address locations which are normally mapped into either the I/O or memory address space of the attached system. These address locations address a register set within the SIF through which the Adapter may be controlled by the attached system. The use of these registers by the attached system software will be discussed in detail in Section 4-4, System Software Interface. These registers are defined as follows:

- Interrupt Register
- Data Register
- Data Register with address auto-increment
- Address Register

These registers are selected with register select lines SRS0-SRS2. Register select SRS2 is used with the 808X-mode 8-bit data bus interface to select the even address or odd address byte to be transferred. With 16-bit 808X interfaces, SRS2 is used to select the even byte to be transferred during byte operations and $\overline{SBHE}$ is used to select the odd byte. Table 4-4 summarizes these registers:

TABLE 4-4. SIF REGISTER SELECTION

SRS0	SRS1	SRS2	REGISTER SELECTED
L	L	note	Data Register
L	H	note	Data Auto-increment Register
H	L	note	Address Register
H	H	note	Interrupt Register

NOTE: SRS2 is used to to address bytes in 8-bit mode.

4.3.2.1 808X Mode DIO Interface

808X mode is selected by tying the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin of the SIF to a high logic level as shown in Table 4-3. This mode facilitates interface to the 808X family of CPU's by reconfiguring the SIF pin functions to be compatible with these CPUs. In addition, the S8/$\overline{16}$ pin may be tied either low or high to select an 8-bit data bus or 16-bit data bus interface.

808X Mode DIO Data Organization

Because of differences between the byte ordering scheme defined by the 808X series CPU and the Adapter, care must be exercised to assure proper byte orientation when performing DIO operations in 808X mode.

Referring ahead to Figure 4-13, note that the 808X format defines byte 0 as the most-significant byte which resides on an even address boundary as the 'low' byte. Byte 1 is defined as the least-significant byte which resides on an odd address boundary as the 'high' byte. The Adapter assumes opposite convention with byte 0 and byte 1 on high and low bytes, respectively.

Thus, the attached system must swap bytes prior to transfer to or from the Adapter DIO registers to maintain proper orientation.

808X Interface Pins

Table 4-5 describes the functions of the system interface pins of the SIF when configured in 808X mode (SI/$\overline{M}$ tied high) for the direct I/O interface. Many of these pins are also defined in the DMA interface. Pins used for both DIO and DMA interfaces will be noted below, and Section 4.3.3 provides an explanation of the DMA interface.

TABLE 4-5. INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS — 808X MODE

FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
SI/$\overline{M}$	SYSTEM 808X/680XX MODE SELECT. This input must be tied high for 808X mode.
S8/$\overline{16}$	SYSTEM 8/16 BIT BUS SELECT. If strapped low, an interface mode for a 16-bit data bus is selected. If strapped high, an 8-bit data bus is selected.
$\overline{SBHE}$	SYSTEM BYTE HIGH ENABLE. This input is used to enable the high byte only during 8-bit read or writes when in 16-bit mode. When in 8-bit mode this input is not used. This pin is an output during DMA operations.
$\overline{SCS}$	SYSTEM CHIP SELECT. This input must be asserted low by the attached system to initiate direct I/O read or write cycles.
SRS0-SRS2	SYSTEM REGISTER SELECT. These inputs select the word or byte to be read or written during a direct I/O access. SRS2 selects the byte referenced for 8-bit data bus configurations or during byte level transfers on a 16-bit bus.
$\overline{SWR}$	SYSTEM WRITE STROBE. This input pin serves as the active-low write strobe during attached system write cycles. This pin is an output during DMA operations.
$\overline{SRD}$	SYSTEM READ STROBE. This input pin serves as the active-low read strobe during attached system read cycles. This pin is an output during DMA operations.
SRAS	SYSTEM REGISTER ADDRESS STROBE. This input pin serves as the system register address strobe through which $\overline{SCS}$, SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SBHE}$ are latched.
$\overline{SRDY}$	SYSTEM BUS READY. This active-low output pin serves as a bus ready signal to the 808X processor. During DMA operations, this pin is an input. This output is passively pulled to an inactive-high state when not driven by the SIF.
SBCLK	SYSTEM BUS CLOCK. This is the external clock signal input with which the SIF synchronizes its bus timing. For asynchronous buses, any TTL-level oscillator signal may be applied.
SDDIR	SYSTEM DATA DIRECTION. This output provides to the external data buffers a signal indicating the direction in which the data is moving. During direct I/O writes, SDDIR is low. During direct I/O reads, SDDIR is high. For DMA operations. the SDDIR output assumes opposite polarity (i.e. SDDIR is low for DMA reads: for DMA writes, SDDIR is high).
$\overline{SDBEN}$	SYSTEM DATA BUS ENABLE. This output provides to the external data buffers the active-low signal that causes them to leave the high-impedance state and begin transmitting data. This output is also active during DMA operations.
SADH0-SADH7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — HIGH BYTE. This is the most significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. This bus corresponds to the 808X processor bus AD15-AD8. SADH0 is the most significant bit and SADH7 is the least significant bit. This bus is driven as an output during DMA operations.
SADL0-SADL7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — LOW BYTE. This is the least significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. This bus corresponds to the 808X processor bus AD7-AD0. SADL0 is the most significant bit and SADL7 is the least significant. This bus is driven as an output during DMA operations.
SPH	SYSTEM PARITY HIGH. This line contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADH0-SADH7.
SPL	SYSTEM PARITY LOW. This line contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADL0-SADL7.

808X Multiplexed and Non-Multiplexed Bus

Two direct I/O interfacing options are provided in 808X mode; multiplexed and non-multiplexed interfaces. The non-multiplexed option is suitable for expanded configurations in which the address/data bus from the 808X CPU has been demultiplexed into physically separate address and data lines. In this case, the system chip-select ($\overline{SCS}$) and the system register select (SRS0-SRS2) inputs are required to remain stable and valid for the duration of the access cycle.

The multiplexed option is provided to reduce the chip count in minimum-chip systems, in which the Adapter's SIF is interfaced directly to the the multiplexed address/data bus of the attached system. In this case, the system chip select ($\overline{SCS}$) and the system register select (SRS0-SRS2) inputs are latched within the SIF chip at the beginning of the cycle.

These two options are selected by use of the system register address strobe (SRAS) which serves as a latching signal in a multiplexed interface. In the 808X mode, the system chip select ($\overline{SCS}$) and the system register select (SRS0-SRS2) are fed into a transparent latch as they come on-chip. As long as the SRAS signal is at a high level, the outputs of the on-chip latch follow the inputs. When SRAS is brought low, the outputs of the latch are frozen at the levels present at the time of the falling edge of SRAS. For a non-multiplexed interface, SRAS is disabled by tying it inactive-high. If SRAS is coupled into the external address latch enable (ALE) of the 808X memory bus, a multiplexed interface may be configured.

808X in 16-bit Mode

When the S8/$\overline{16}$ pin is tied low, the System Interface (SIF) is configured for 16-bit mode. This mode provides full 16-bit data transfers between the Adapter and the attached system interface bus. Each of the four 16-bit registers is written or read in a single DIO access.

The address map of the 808X 16-bit interface is shown in Table 4-6.

TABLE 4-6. 808X 16-BIT ADDRESS MAP

(A1) SRS0	(A0) SRS1	$\overline{SBHE}$ = 0 MSB	SRS2 = 0 LSB
0	0	DATA	DATA
0	1	DATA/INC	DATA/INC
1	0	ADDRESS	ADDRESS
1	1	INTERRUPT	INTERRUPT

808X in 8-bit Mode

When the S8/$\overline{16}$ pin is tied high, the System Interface (SIF) is configured for 8-bit mode. In operating in 8-bit mode, each word register is written or read as a sequence of two bytes. During data transfers between the Adapter registers and the 808X interface, the even byte (SRS2 = 0) is written during the first bus cycle and the odd byte (SRS2 = 1) is written during the second cycle. In 808X processors, the even bytes and odd bytes correspond to the least significant and most significant bytes, respectively, of the memory word. Note that this is inconsistent with the Adapter's System Interface as the even addressed byte corresponds to the most significant byte and the odd address corresponds to the least significant byte. Thus, bytes must be swapped within host system memory before being written to the System Interface.

The address map of the 808X 8-bit interface is shown in Table 4-7.

TABLE 4-7. 808X 8-BIT ADDRESS MAP

$\overline{SBHE}$	(A2) SRS0	(A1) SRS1	(A0) SRS2		
X	0	0	0	DATA	(LSB)
X	0	0	1	DATA	(MSB)
X	0	1	0	DATA/INC	(LSB)
X	0	1	1	DATA/INC	(MSB)
X	1	0	0	ADDRESS	(LSB)
X	1	0	1	ADDRESS	(MSB)
X	1	1	0	INTERRUPT	(LSB)
X	1	1	1	INTERRUPT	(MSB)

"X" denotes don't care condition

808X DIO Read Cycle Sequence

This section shows the sequence of events which occur during a direct I/O read cycle. A relational timing diagram is presented, followed by a detailed description of the sequence. This sequence is based upon the non-multiplexed option described previously; however, it applies as well to the multiplexed option with one exception: the chip-select and register select inputs need only remain valid until they are latched.

Specific timing, as it relates to device switching characteristics, is not presented here but is in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

Figure 4-9 depicts an 808X mode direct I/O read cycle:

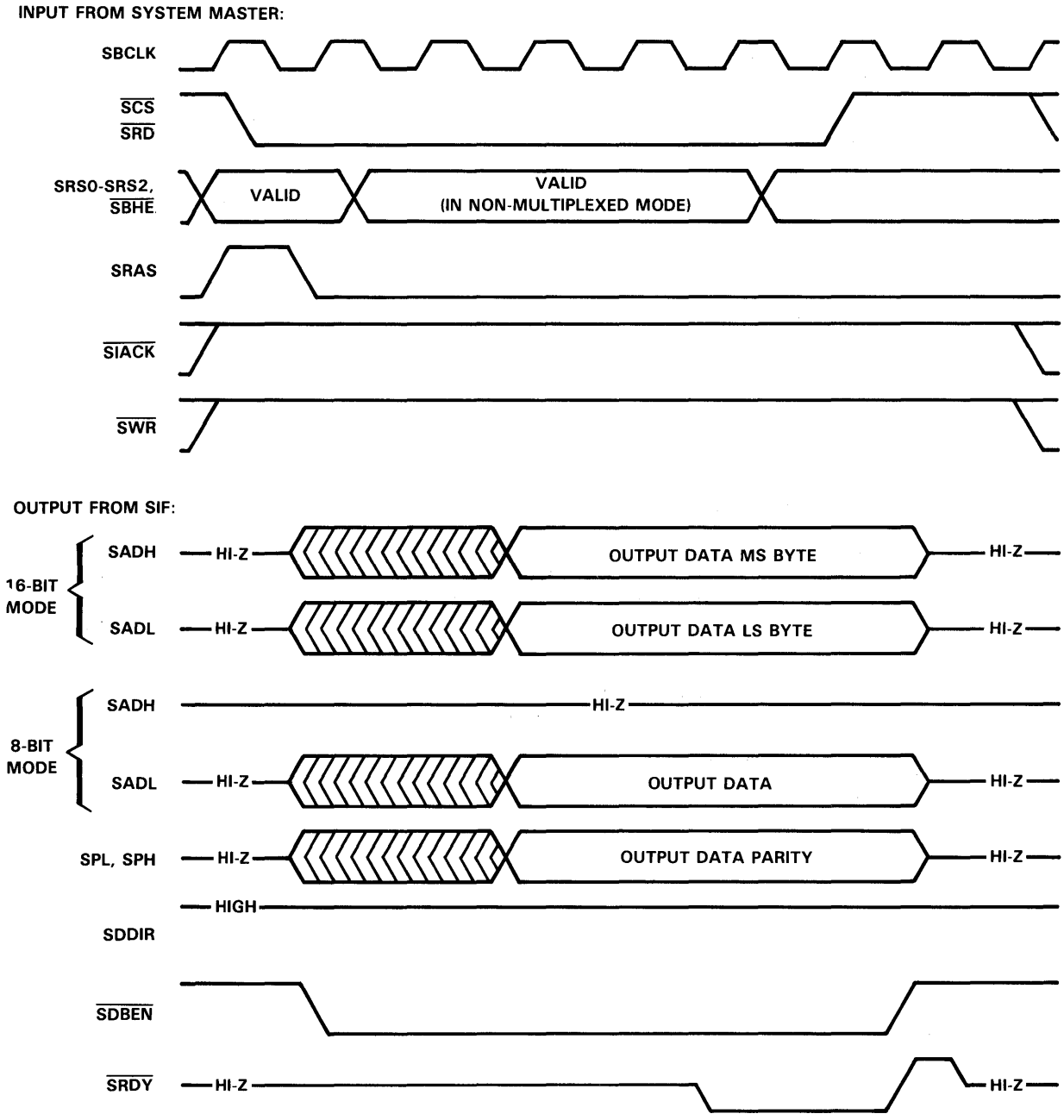


FIGURE 4-9. 808X DIO READ CYCLE

The timing illustrated in Figure 4-9 is described below:

1. In the quiescent state the system deasserts SCS, SIACK, SRD, and SWR. The SIF floats the SAD bus, and drives both SDDIR and SDBEN high. The SIF also floats its SRDY pin, but because SRDY has an internal pullup resistor (nominal 10K ohms) attached to it, the signal floats high (negated).

2. Starting the DIO cycle, the system (bus master) asserts a register address on the $\overline{SBHE}$ and SRS0-SRS2 lines, and asserts SRAS high. In 8-bit mode, $\overline{SBHE}$ is ignored.
3. The system asserts $\overline{SCS}$ low, keeping $\overline{SIACK}$ negated high.
4. The system optionally deasserts SRAS low, latching the SRS0-SRS2, $\overline{SBHE}$, and $\overline{SCS}$ inputs. SRAS may be tied high if the SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SCS}$ inputs can be held until $\overline{SRDY}$ is activated.
5. The system asserts $\overline{SRD}$ low, keeping $\overline{SWR}$ negated high. The system need not necessarily drive $\overline{SCS}$ before $\overline{SRD}$.
6. The SIF (bus slave), drives $\overline{SDBEN}$ low asynchronously when it detects $\overline{SRD}$ is low, $\overline{SCS}$ is low, and an internal "DIO busy" condition is not asserted. Because SDDIR remains high, the SAD outputs are enabled onto the system bus.
7. The SIF synchronizes $\overline{SCS}$ and all data strobes to the falling edge of SBCLK. When it samples that it is internally not busy and that both $\overline{SCS}$ and $\overline{SRD}$ are low, it starts the internal register access. The falling edge of SBCLK at which this condition is detected is called the 'sample' edge. Due to an internal synchronizer circuit, $\overline{SCS}$ or $\overline{SRD}$ may be recognized low even if they fall after the falling edge of SBCLK.
8. On the third falling edge of SBCLK after the sample edge, the SIF drives the output read data, with odd parity on the SPL and SPH lines. If the system is reading only a single byte, the SIF floats the half of SAD not containing data, as shown in Table 4-8.

TABLE 4-8. 808X DIO READ DATA BUS CONTROLS

808X 16-BIT MODE READ			
BUS CONTROLS		SAD OUTPUTS	
$\overline{SBHE}$	SRS2	SADH, SPH	SADL, SPL
0	0	DATA MSB	DATA LSB
0	1	DATA MSB	hi-z
1	0	hi-z	DATA LSB
1	1 (†)	undefined	undefined
808X 8-BIT MODE READ			
BUS CONTROLS		SAD OUTPUTS	
$\overline{SBHE}$	SRS2	SADH, SPH	SADL, SPL
X	0	hi-z	DATA LSB
X	1	hi-z	DATA MSB

(†) Illegal input combination

9. On the fifth rising edge of SBCLK from the recognition of both $\overline{SCS}$ and $\overline{SRD}$ active, the SIF drives $\overline{SRDY}$ low. The SIF guarantees that output data is valid before driving $\overline{SRDY}$.
10. When $\overline{SRDY}$ is asserted, the system may remove the register address (SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SBHE}$), if it has not already been latched by SRAS.
11. After $\overline{SRDY}$ is asserted, the system deasserts $\overline{SRD}$ and $\overline{SCS}$ high. This typically requires at least one processor clock cycle.
12. When either $\overline{SRD}$ or $\overline{SCS}$ are negated high, the SIF asynchronously deasserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ high and asynchronously drives $\overline{SRDY}$ high.

13. When the SIF detects that it has driven its $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ signal high at the pin, it floats the signal, returning to the quiescent state.
14. The system must hold $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ negated for a minimum period before reaccessing the SIF. $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ must be negated between consecutive accesses to the same 16-bit register address (SRS0, SRS1 and SRS2 do not change). $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ may be kept asserted, however, between accesses to the two bytes of the same 16-bit register address (only SRS2 changes) but must be negated between accesses to two different 16-bit register addresses (SRS0 or SRS1 change). The system must also hold the previously inactive signals $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ and $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ negated for a minimum period following a read operation.

The System Interface reloads the Data register after every write to the Address register. The SIF also writes the contents of the Data register to Adapter RAM after every write to the Data register. If the attached system attempts to read or write the Data register before this operation is complete, the $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ line will remain inactive-high until the System Interface is prepared to complete the system bus cycle. Detail on this timing may be found in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

808X DIO Write Cycle Sequence.

The sequence of events which occur during a direct I/O write cycle is shown next. A relational timing diagram is presented and is followed by a detailed description of the sequence. This sequence is based upon the non-multiplexed option described previously, however, it may apply as well to the multiplexed option with the exception that the chip-select and register select inputs must remain valid only until they are latched.

Specific timing as it relates to device switching characteristics is not presented here, but may be found in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

Figure 4-10 depicts an 808X mode direct I/O write cycle:

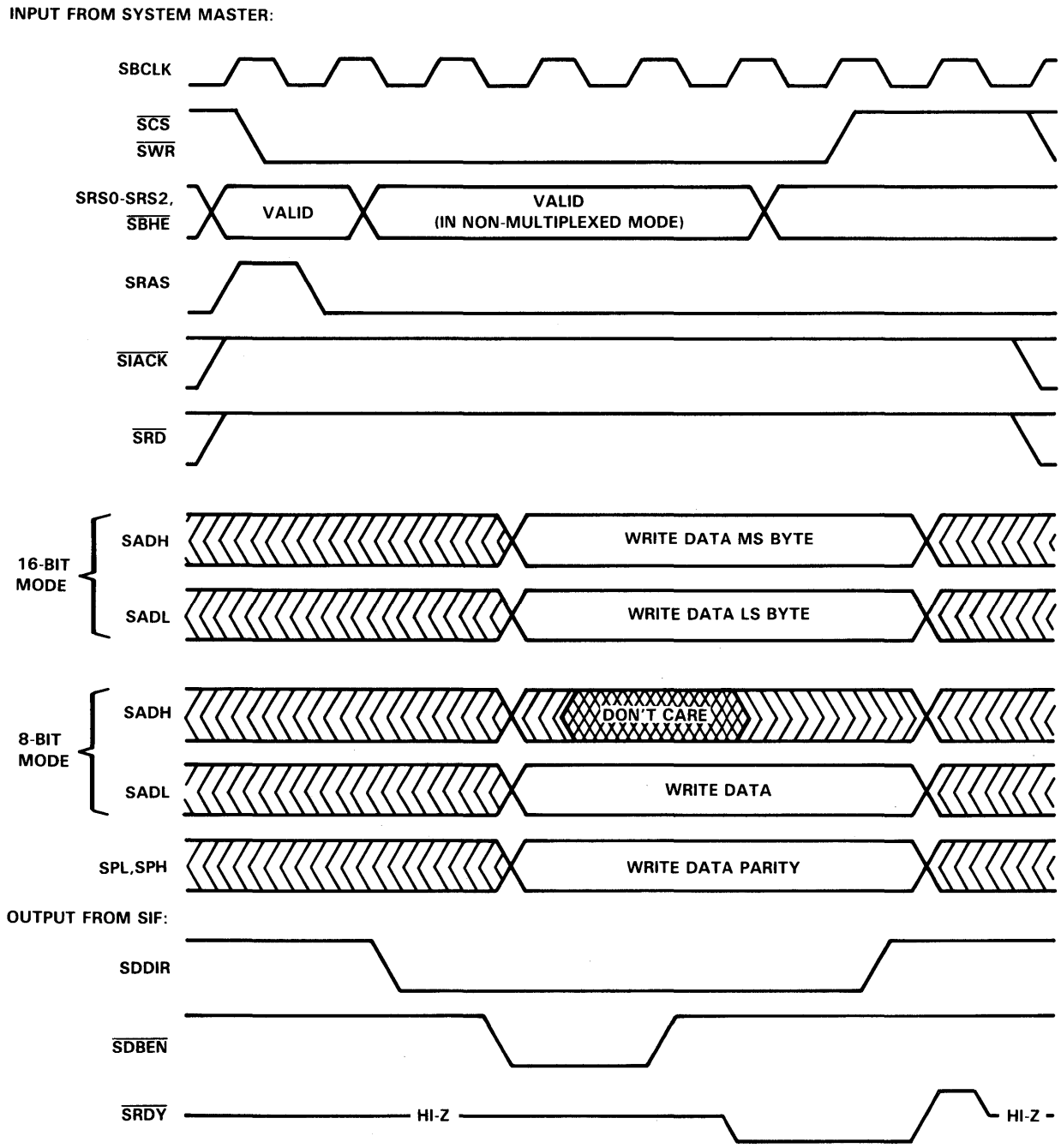


FIGURE 4-10. 808X DIO WRITE CYCLE

The timing illustrated in Figure 4-10 is described below:

1. In the quiescent state the system deasserts $\overline{SCS}$, $\overline{SIACK}$, $\overline{SRD}$, and $\overline{SWR}$. The SIF floats the SAD bus and drives both SDDIR and $\overline{SDBEN}$ high. The SIF also floats its $\overline{SRDY}$ pin, but because $\overline{SRDY}$ has an internal pullup resistor (nominal 10K ohms) attached to it, the signal floats high (negated).

2. Starting the DIO cycle, the system (bus master) asserts a register address on the $\overline{SBHE}$ and SRS0-SRS2 lines and asserts SRAS high. In 8-bit mode, $\overline{SBHE}$ is ignored.
3. The system asserts $\overline{SCS}$ low, keeping $\overline{SIACK}$ negated high.
4. The system optionally deasserts SRAS low, latching the SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SCS}$ inputs. SRAS may be tied high if the SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SCS}$ inputs can be held until $\overline{SRDY}$ is activated.
5. The system asserts $\overline{SWR}$ low, keeping $\overline{SRD}$ negated high. The system need not necessarily drive $\overline{SCS}$ before $\overline{SWR}$.
6. The SIF (bus slave), drives SDDIR low asynchronously from the activation of $\overline{SWR}$ and $\overline{SCS}$. This sets up the direction for the system bus drivers.
7. The SIF synchronizes $\overline{SCS}$ and all data strobes to the falling edge of SBCLK. When it samples both $\overline{SCS}$ and $\overline{SWR}$ low, it starts the internal register access. Due to an internal synchronizer circuit, $\overline{SCS}$ or $\overline{SWR}$ may be recognized low even if they fall after the falling edge of SBCLK.
8. On the third rising edge of SBCLK following the sample of $\overline{SCS}$ and $\overline{SWR}$ low, the SIF asserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ low, enabling the system bus lines onto the SIF SAD lines.
9. If the SIF is busy performing a read or write to internal Adapter memory as a result of an earlier DIO operation, it waits at this point until the internal operation is complete.
10. On the fifth rising edge of SBCLK (assuming no wait to complete a previously started DIO operation), the SIF latches the input data. On single-byte transfers, the half of the SAD bus not involved in the transfer is ignored, as shown below:

TABLE 4-9. 808X DIO WRITE DATA BUS CONTROLS

808X 16-BIT MODE WRITE			
BUS CONTROLS		SAD INPUTS	
$\overline{SBHE}$	SRS2	SADH, SPH	SADL, SPL
0	0	DATA MSB	DATA LSB
0	1	DATA MSB	don't care
1	0	don't care	DATA LSB
1	1 (†)	don't care	don't care
808X 8-BIT MODE WRITE			
BUS CONTROLS		SAD INPUTS	
$\overline{SBHE}$	SRS2	SADH, SPH	SADL, SPL
X	0	don't care	DATA LSB
X	1	don't care	DATA MSB

(†) Illegal input combination

11. After latching the input data, the SIF deasserts the $\overline{SDBEN}$ signal high, disabling the system bus onto the SAD bus.
12. After detecting that $\overline{SDBEN}$ is high at its output pin, the SIF activates $\overline{SRDY}$ by driving it low.

13. When $\overline{SRDY}$ is asserted, the system performs the following actions, in any order:
    a. Remove the register address, (SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SBHE}$), if it has not already done so;
    b. Remove the write data; and
    c. Deassert the $\overline{SWR}$ and $\overline{SCS}$ strobes.
14. When either $\overline{SWR}$ or $\overline{SCS}$ are negated high, the SIF asynchronously drives SDDIR and $\overline{SRDY}$ high. Because of the system's delay in deasserting $\overline{SWR}$ or $\overline{SCS}$ from $\overline{SRDY}$, the SIF effectively holds SDDIR signal active low beyond the deassertion of the $\overline{SDBEN}$ signal.
15. When the SIF detects that it has driven its $\overline{SRDY}$ signal high at the pin, it floats the signal, allowing the external pullup to maintain the signal's high level.
16. The system must hold $\overline{SWR}$ negated for a minimum period before reaccessing the SIF. $\overline{SCS}$ may be kept asserted between accesses to the high and low bytes of the same 16-bit register, but must be negated between accesses to different 16-bit registers. The system must also hold the previously inactive signals $\overline{SRD}$ and $\overline{SIACK}$ negated for a minimum period. This timing information may be found in the SIF data sheet.

The System Interface reloads the Data register after every write to the Address register or read of the Data register. The SIF also writes the contents of the Data register to Adapter RAM after every write to the Data register. If the attached system attempts to read or write the Data register before this operation is complete, the $\overline{SRDY}$ line will remain inactive-high until the System Interface is prepared to complete the DIO bus cycle. Detail on this timing is in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

4.3.2.2 680XX Mode

680XX mode is selected by tying the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin of the SIF to a low logic level as shown in Table 4-3. This mode provides an interface configuration which is compatible with 680XX series microprocessors. The S8/$\overline{16}$ pin must be tied low to select a 16-bit data bus when in the 680XX mode.

680XX Interface Pins

Table 4-10 describes the functions of the System Interface pins when configured in 680XX mode for the direct I/O interface. Many of these pins are also defined in the DMA interface. Pins used for both DIO and DMA interfaces will be noted below; a separate discussion on the DMA interface is provided in Section 4.3.3.

TABLE 4-10. INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS — 680XX MODE

PIN	FUNCTION
SI/$\overline{M}$	SYSTEM 808X/680XX MODE SELECT. This input must be tied low for 680XX mode.
S8/$\overline{16}$	SYSTEM 8/16 BIT BUS SELECT. This pin must be tied low when in 680XX mode.
$\overline{SCS}$	SYSTEM CHIP SELECT. This input must be asserted low prior to direct I/O read or write cycles by the attached system.
SRS0-SRS2	SYSTEM REGISTER SELECT. These inputs select the word or byte to be read or written during a direct I/O access.
SRNW	READ/NOT WRITE. This input pin serves as a control signal which is high to indicate a read cycle and low to indicate a write cycle. During DMA operations, this pin is driven as an output.
$\overline{SLDS}$	LOWER DATA STROBE. This input is used as the lower data strobe to select the lower (odd) byte for transfer on the 16-bit data bus. This pin is an output during DMA operations.
$\overline{SUDS}$	UPPER DATA STROBE. This pin is an active-low strobe indicating that data is transferred on the most significant byte of the system bus.
$\overline{SDSTACK}$	DATA TRANSFER ACKNOWLEDGE. This output is an active-low data transfer acknowledge used to signal to the bus master that a data transfer is complete. $\overline{SDTACK}$ is internally synchronized to SBCLK. This pin is an input during DMA operations.
SDDIR	SYSTEM DATA DIRECTION. This output provides a signal to the external data buffers indicating the direction in which data is moving. For DIO writes, SDDIR is low; for DIO reads, SDDIR is high. During DMA operations, this pin assumes opposite polarity (i.e. SDDIR is low for DMA reads and high for DMA writes). When the System Interface is not involved in a read or write operation, SDDIR is high by default.
$\overline{SDBEN}$	SYSTEM DATA BUS ENABLED. This output provides an active-low signal to the external data buffers which allows them to leave the high-impedance state and begin to transmit data. This pin is also driven during DMA operations.
SBCLK	SYSTEM BUS CLOCK. This is the external clock signal with which the SIF synchronizes its bus timing. For asynchronous buses, any TTL-level oscillator signal may be applied.
SADH0-SADH7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — HIGH BYTE. This is the most significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 15-8 (using 680XX-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADH(0) and the least significant bit is SADH(7). This bus is driven as an output during DMA operations.
SADL0-SADL7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — LOW BYTE. This is the least significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 7-0 (using 680XX-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADL(0) and the least significant bit is SADL(7). This bus is driven as an output during DMA operations.
SPH	SYSTEM PARITY HIGH. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADH0-SADH7. This line is an output during DMA operations.
SPL	SYSTEM PARITY LOW. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADL0-SADL7. This line is an output during DMA operations.

680XX 16-bit Mode

When 680XX mode is selected, the S8/$\overline{16}$ pin must be tied low to select a 16-bit data bus interface. This mode provides full 16-bit data transfers between the Adapter and the attached system interface bus. Each of the four DIO registers is written or read in a single DIO access.

The address map of the 680XX 16-bit interface is shown below:

TABLE 4-11. 680XX 16-BIT ADDRESS MAP

680XX 16-BIT DATA BUS MODE ADDRESS PINS			REGISTERS	
(A2) SRS0	(A1) SRS1	(A0) SRS2	SUDS = 0 MSB	SLDS = 0 LSB
0	0	NOT USED	DATA	DATA
0	1	NOT USED	DATA/INC	DATA/INC
1	0	NOT USED	ADDRESS	ADDRESS
1	1	NOT USED	INTERRUPT	INTERRUPT

680XX DIO Read Cycle Sequence

The following presents the sequence of events which occur during a direct I/O read cycle. A relational timing diagram is shown, followed by a detailed description of the sequence. The 680XX 16-bit interface does not have an address bit A0 to select which byte of a word is accessed; rather, it provides separate upper and lower data strobes. The $\overline{SLDS}$ and $\overline{SUDS}$ pins serve as the byte data strobe. The processor may access a single byte by asserting either $\overline{UDS}$ or $\overline{LDS}$.

Specific timing as it relates to device switching characteristics is not shown here but is in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

Figure 4-11 depicts a 680XX mode direct I/O read cycle.

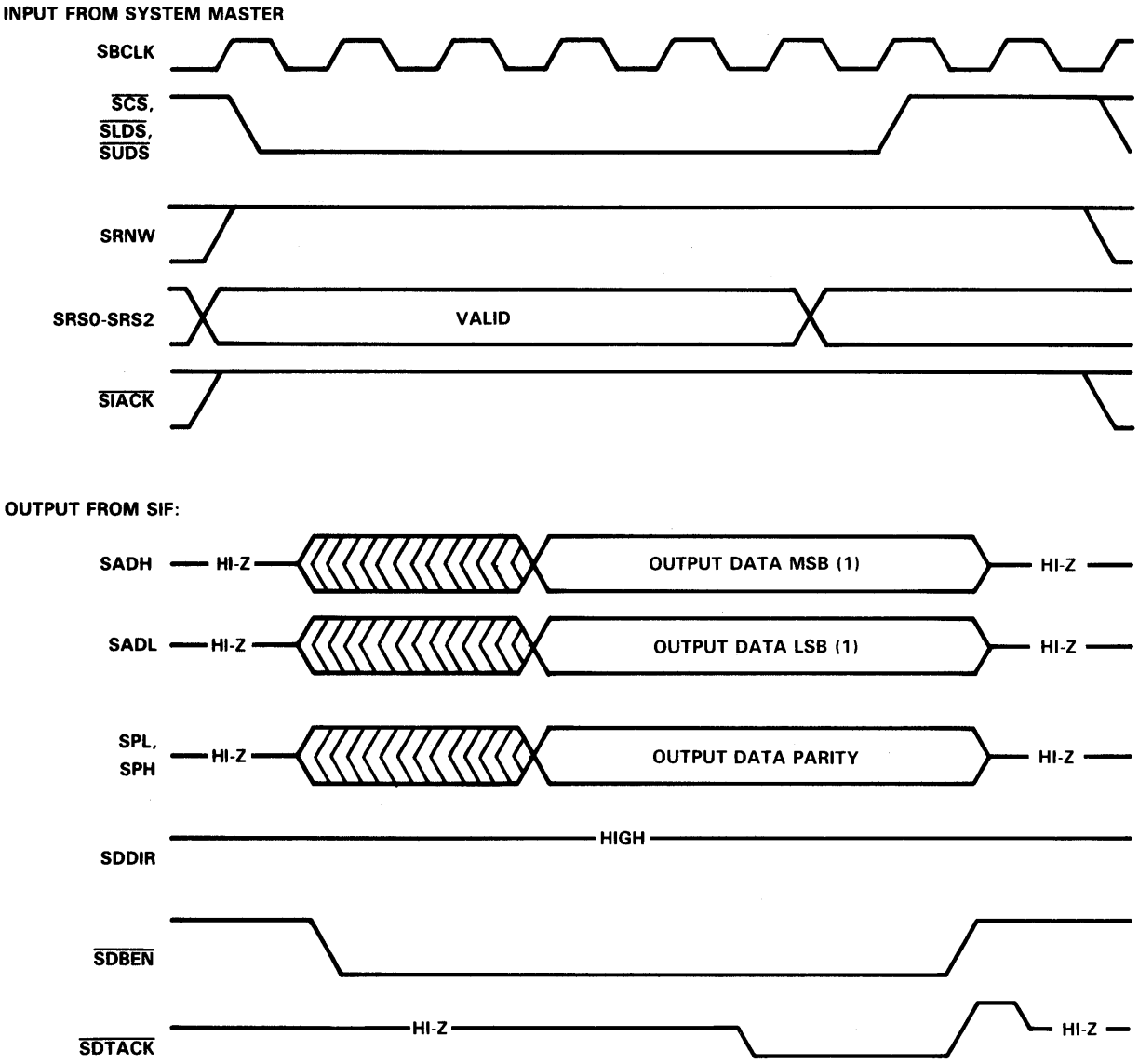


FIGURE 4-11. 680XX MODE DIO READ CYCLE TIMING

The timing illustrated in Figure 4-11 is described below:

1. In the quiescent state the system deasserts SCS, SIACK, SUDS, and SLDS. SRNW is undefined. The SIF floats the SAD bus, and drives both SDDIR and SDBEN high. The SIF also floats its SDTACK pin, but because it has an internal pullup resistor (nominal 10K ohms) attached to it, the signal floats high (negated).
2. Starting the DIO cycle, the system (bus master) asserts a register address on the SRS0-SRS2 lines, and drives SRNW high, indicating a read cycle. The SAS signal is an input to the SIF, but is not decoded.
3. The system asserts SCS low, keeping SIACK negated high.
4. The system asserts either one of SUDS or SLDS low for an 8-bit access, or both low for a 16-bit access.

5. The SIF (bus slave), drives $\overline{SDBEN}$ low asynchronously when it detects $\overline{SCS}$ low, $\overline{SRNW}$ high, either $\overline{SUDS}$ or $\overline{SLDS}$ low, and an internal "DIO busy" condition is not asserted. Because SDDIR remains high, this enables the SAD outputs onto the system bus.
6. The SIF synchronizes $\overline{SCS}$, $\overline{SRNW}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$ and an internal "DIO busy" signal to the falling edge of SBCLK. The edge at which it detects $\overline{SCS}$ low, $\overline{SRNW}$ high, either $\overline{SUDS}$ or $\overline{SLDS}$ low, and "DIO busy" not asserted is called the 'sample edge'. The SIF starts the internal DIO operation after the sample edge. Due to an internal synchronizer circuit, a signal may be recognized low even if it falls after the falling edge of SBCLK.
7. On the third falling edge of SBCLK after the sample edge, the SIF drives the output read data with odd parity on the SPL and SPH lines. If the system is reading a single byte, the SIF floats the half of SAD not containing data, as shown in Table 4-12.

TABLE 4-12. 680XX DIO READ DATA BUS CONTROLS

BUS CONTROLS			SAD INPUTS	
$\overline{SUDS}$	$\overline{SLDS}$	SRS2	SADH,SPH	SADL,SPL
0	0	X	DATA MSB	DATA LSB
0	1	X	DATA MSB	don't care
1	0	X	don't care	DATA LSB
1	1	X	undefined(†)	undefined (†)

(†)Illegal input combination

8. On the fifth rising edge of SBCLK, the SIF drives $\overline{SDTACK}$ low. The SIF guarantees that output data is valid before driving $\overline{SDTACK}$ low.
9. When $\overline{SDTACK}$ is asserted, the system may remove the register address (SRS0-SRS2 and SRNW).
10. After $\overline{SDTACK}$ is asserted, the system deasserts $\overline{SCS}$ and the data strobes high. This typically requires at least one processor clock cycle.
11. When both data strobes and $\overline{SCS}$ are negated high, the SIF asynchronously deasserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ high and also asynchronously drives $\overline{SDTACK}$ high.
12. When the SIF detects that it has driven its $\overline{SDTACK}$ signal high at the pin, it floats the signal, returning to the quiescent state.
13. The system must hold both data strobes negated for a minimum period before reaccessing the SIF registers. $\overline{SCS}$ may be kept asserted between accesses to the high and low bytes of the same 16-bit register, but must be negated between accesses to different 16-bit registers. The system must also hold the previously inactive signal $\overline{SIACK}$ negated for a minimum period. These timing restrictions are specified in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

680XX DIO Write Cycle Sequence

The sequence of events which occur during a direct I/O write cycle is described. A relational timing diagram is presented, followed by a detailed description of the sequence. The 680XX 16-bit interface does not have an address bit A0 to select which byte of a word is accessed; rather, it provides separate upper and lower data strobes. The processor may access a single byte by asserting either $\overline{UDS}$ or $\overline{LDS}$.

Specific timing, as it relates to device switching characteristics, is not presented here but is in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

Figure 4-12 depicts a 680XX mode direct I/O write cycle.

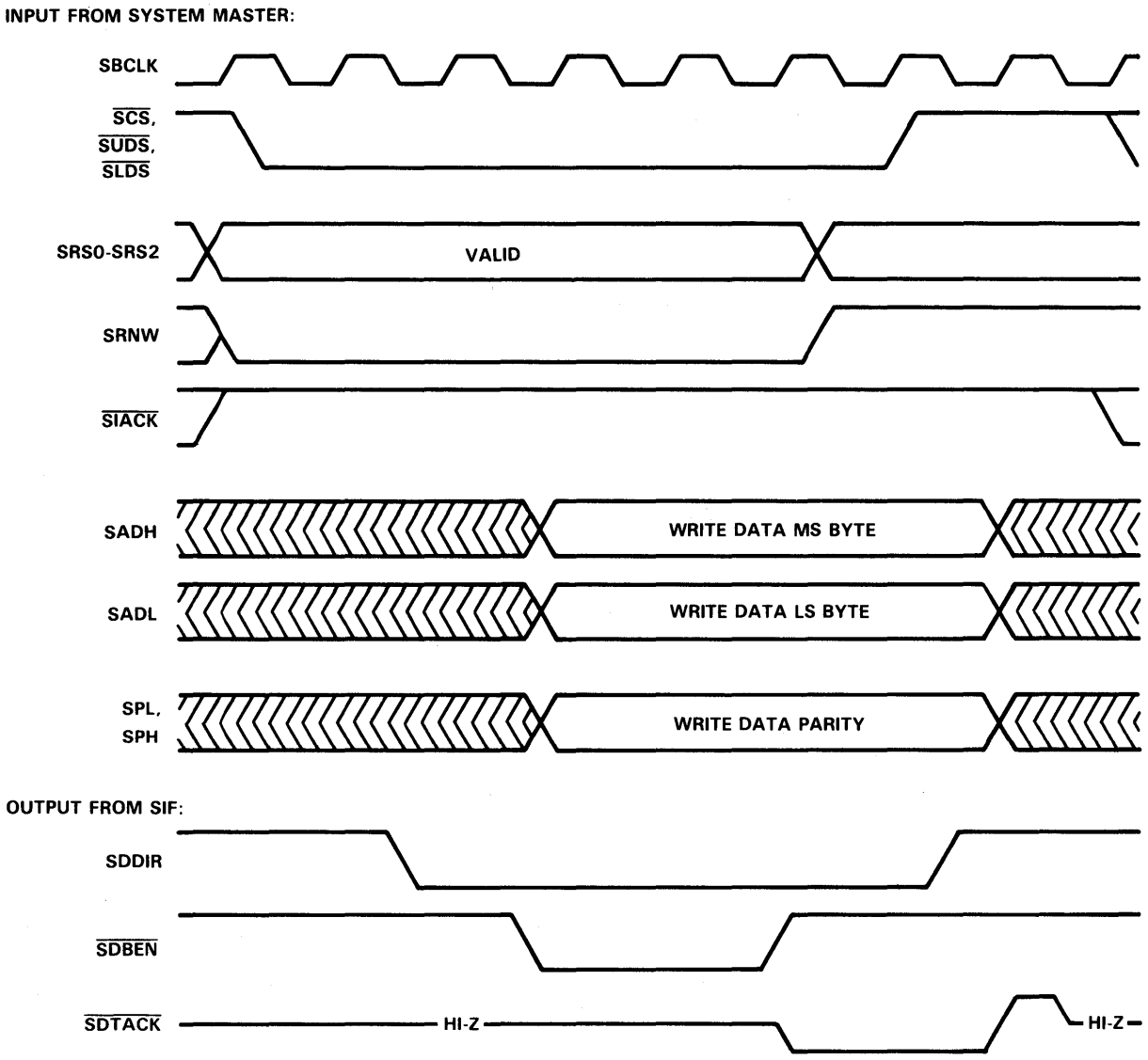


FIGURE 4-12. 680XX MODE DIO WRITE CYCLE TIMING

The timing illustrated in Figure 4-12 is described below:

1. In the quiescent state the system deasserts $\overline{SCS}$, $\overline{SIACK}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, and $\overline{SLDS}$. SRNW is irrelevant. The SIF floats the SAD bus, and drives both SDDIR and $\overline{SDBEN}$ high. The SIF also floats its $\overline{SDTACK}$ pin, but because it has an internal pullup resistor (nominal 10K ohms) attached to it, the signal floats high (negated).
2. Starting the DIO cycle, the system (bus master) asserts a register address on the SRS0-SRS2 lines, and drives SRNW low, indicating a write cycle. The $\overline{SAS}$ pin is an input to the SIF, but it is not decoded.
3. The system asserts $\overline{SCS}$ low, keeping $\overline{SIACK}$ negated high.
4. The system asserts either one of $\overline{SUDS}$ or $\overline{SLDS}$ low for an 8-bit access, or both low for a 16-bit access.

5. The SIF (bus slave), drives SDDIR low asynchronously from the activation of $\overline{SCS}$ and either $\overline{SUDS}$ or $\overline{SLDS}$. This sets up the direction for the system bus drivers.
6. The SIF synchronizes $\overline{SCS}$ and all data strobes to the falling edge of SBCLK. When it samples $\overline{SCS}$ low and either $\overline{SUDS}$ or $\overline{SLDS}$ low, it starts the internal register access. Due to an internal synchronizer circuit, a signal may be recognized low even if it falls after the falling edge of SBCLK.
7. On the third rising edge of SBCLK following the start of the access, the SIF asserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ low, enabling the system bus lines onto the SIF SAD lines.
8. If the SIF is busy performing a read or write to local bus memory as a result of an earlier DIO operation, it waits until the internal operation is complete.
9. On the fifth rising edge of SBCLK (assuming no wait for a previously started DIO operation), the SIF latches the input data. On single-byte transfers, the half of the SAD bus not involved in the transfer is ignored, as shown in Table 4-13.

TABLE 4-13. 680XX DIO WRITE DATA BUS CONTROLS

BUS CONTROLS			SAD INPUTS	
$\overline{SUDS}$	$\overline{SLDS}$	SRS2	SADH,SPH	SADL,SPL
0	0	X	DATA MSB	DATA LSB
0	1	X	DATA MSB	hi-z
1	0	X	hi-z	DATA LSB
1	1	X	undefined(†)	undefined (†)

(†)Illegal input combination

10. After latching the input data, the SIF deasserts the $\overline{SDBEN}$ signal high, disabling the system bus onto the SAD bus.
11. After detecting that $\overline{SDBEN}$ is high at its output pin, the SIF asserts $\overline{SDTACK}$ by driving it low.
12. When $\overline{SDTACK}$ is negated, the system performs the following actions, in any order:
    a. Removes the register address (SRS0-SRS2) and SRNW;
    b. Removes the write data; and
    c. Deasserts the $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ strobes.
13. When both data strobes and $\overline{SCS}$ are negated high, the SIF asynchronously drives SDDIR and $\overline{SDTACK}$ high. Because of the system's delay in deasserting data strobes from $\overline{SDTACK}$, the SIF effectively holds SDDIR active low beyond the deassertion of $\overline{SDBEN}$.
14. When the SIF detects that it has driven its $\overline{SDTACK}$ high at the pin, it floats the signal, allowing the external pullup to maintain a high level.
15. The system must hold both data strobes negated for a minimum period before again accessing the SIF. $\overline{SCS}$ may be kept asserted between accesses to the high and low bytes of the same 16-bit register, but must be negated between accesses to different 16-bit registers. The system must also hold the previously inactive signal $\overline{SIACK}$ negated for a minimum period.

The System Interface reloads the Data register after every write to the Address register. The SIF also writes the contents of the Data register to Adapter RAM after every write to the Data register. If the attached system attempts to read or write the Data register before this operation is complete, the $\overline{SDTACK}$ line will remain inactive-high until the System Interface is prepared to complete the DIO bus cycle. Detail on this timing is in the TMS38030 System Interface data sheet.

4.3.3 Direct Memory Access Interface

The DMA channel provides a full 24 bits of address with which to access up to 16 megabytes of system memory. The throughput capability of the DMA channel is matched to the host of the attached system and can exceed the throughput of the ring. The DMA channel can be programmed for either burst-mode or cycle-steal mode of operation.

Since only 16 bits of address can be output at any instant on the 16 address/data lines, the 8 most significant address bits must be multiplexed (and latched) separately from the lower 16 bits of address. The high order eight bits are called the 'extended' address bits of the DMA address. Two separate address latch enable signals are provided by the Adapter for demultiplexing of the address. For systems requiring only 16 bits of address, no external latch need be provided for the eight address extension bits, although they will still continue to be output by the Adapter.

The Adapter will perform an extra clock cycle (SBCLK) at the beginning of the DMA transfer to output the higher order 8 address bits. Thereafter, an extra cycle will be inserted only when the upper sixteen address bits are changed due to a carry propagated from the lower eight bits.

A parity bit is maintained for each byte of both address and data types on the address data bus. During DMA read cycles, the parity presented by the attached system is checked by the Adapter. During DMA write cycles, the generated parity bits will be output with the address/data. Parity checking may be disabled at Adapter initialization.

4.3.3.1 Burst/Cycle-Steal DMA Modes

Two modes of bus arbitration may be selected by the attached system: burst mode or cycle-steal mode. The method by which the attached system selects the DMA mode is explained in Section 4.4.

Burst Mode

During a burst-mode block DMA transfer, the SIF (System Interface) arbitrates for and obtains control of the attached system's memory bus and then retains the bus until one of the following conditions occurs: (1)the block transfer is completed, (2) a bus error ($\overline{\text{SBERR}}$) or a parity error is detected and parity error checking is enabled, or (3) the bus-release line from the attached system ($\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$) is asserted. During the time that the continuous transfer is in progress, successive word or byte transfers will occur 'back to back', i.e., with no idle SBCLK cycles between bus transfers. An exception will be the occasional SBCLK period (referred to as a TX cycle) used to update the extended-address latch, which occurs when the increment of the 24-bit DMA address counter causes a carry to ripple into its 16 MSBs.

Even if the SIF is unable to maintain the back-to-back DMA transfer rate, it will not release the bus temporarily to allow other devices to use the bus.

While the SIF is performing a burst-mode DMA block transfer, an external device can cause the SIF to release the system bus momentarily, with the DMA transfers resuming normally after the external device relinquishes the bus. An external device requests that the SIF release the bus by asserting an active-low signal to the SIF's $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ (bus release) input. The attached system should hold $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ active low until the SIF indicates the system bus has been released by deasserting $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ high.

When the $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ input to the SIF is asserted and the SIF has deasserted $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$, the SIF will immediately re-request the bus to complete the interrupted DMA transfer. If the $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ input remains asserted (low) and the bus is subsequently granted to the SIF, the SIF will perform a single DMA cycle followed by re-releasing the bus by deasserting $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ high. Thus, the $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ input during burst mode DMA serves as a 'mode select' driving the interface into cycle-steal mode during the time $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ is asserted low.

Cycle-Steal Mode

In cycle-steal mode, the SIF contends for the system bus for each individual system DMA data transfer, releasing the bus when the transfer is complete. This mode decreases the latency of higher-priority devices in obtaining bus cycles, but results in a longer time required to transfer a block to or from the Adapter. The TX cycle is performed on every bus transfer in cycle steal mode. The bus-release input ($\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$) has no effect in cycle-steal mode.

4.3.3.2 System DMA Data Organization

The SIF DMA controller operates on the principle that sequentially transmitted bytes are placed in system memory in increasing byte address order, according to the byte numbering conventions for the user processor. When performing DMA with 16-bit data, the SIF aligns bytes so that the first byte received from the ring is the lower-addressed byte of the word transferred.

In all interface modes, the Adapter will transfer sequentially transmitted bytes to sequentially increasing byte addresses in the attached system memory.

When interfaced to 808X-type processors, the System Interface automatically byte swaps all data transferred via DMA. This maintains proper character order between the 808X memory convention and the Adapter's internal convention.

Figure 4-13 contrasts the bit- and byte-numbering conventions for 680XX and 808X microprocessors with those used internally to the Adapter.

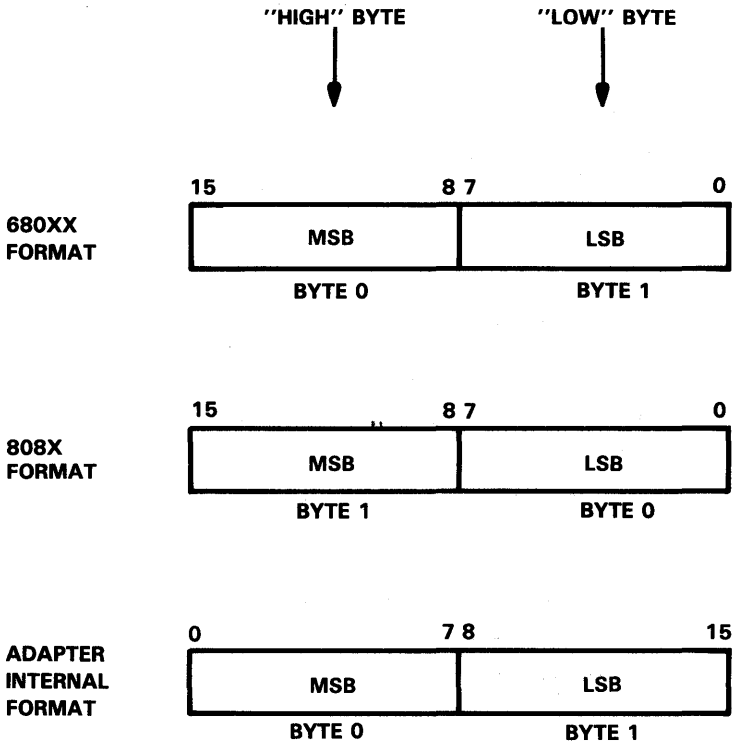


FIGURE 4-13. BIT- AND BYTE-NUMBERING CONVENTIONS

To provide a uniform way of referring to the two bytes in each word, the byte on the left is designated the "high" byte, and the byte on the right is designated the "low" byte. The impact of these conventions on the ordering of data bytes in memory is illustrated in Figure 4-14. Storing the string "ABCD" is shown for both the 680XX and 808X.

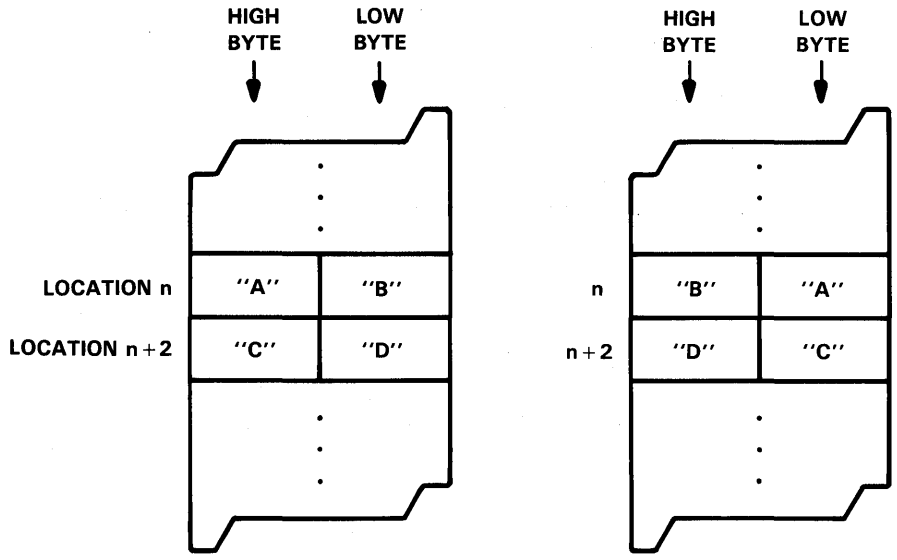


FIGURE 4-14. FORMATS FOR STORING CHARACTER STRING "ABCD" IN MEMORY

In 808X 8-bit mode, each DMA word transferred from the SIF to the user system is transmitted as a series of two bytes over the SADL0-SADL7 pins. DMA bytes are transferred in increasing byte address order on the system.

In 16-bit mode, each DMA word will be transferred as a 16-bit word if the data is aligned in attached system memory as it is in Adapter memory. Otherwise, 8-bit transfers are performed on the system bus. All DMA operations are performed to an even address in Adapter memory. DMA may be performed to an even or odd address in system memory. An even or an odd number of bytes may be moved.

With four independent binary cases, there are 16 possible cases for system DMA transfer.

1. The attached system host processor may use either 808X or 680XX data organization (selected with the SI/$\overline{M}$ strap pin);
2. The DMA starting address in system memory may be even or odd;
3. The number of bytes to be transferred may be even or odd; and
4. The transfer may be a read (system to Adapter) or write (Adapter to system) operation.

If the host is in 808X 8-bit mode, then all data transfers on the system bus are performed on the SADL pins (with the MSB of the address asserted on SADH), and one system bus cycle is used for each byte to be transferred. In 16-bit mode, however, either 8 or 16-bit data may be transferred in a cycle, and 8-bit data may appear on either the SADL or SADH pins. DMA operation with 16-bit systems is detailed for each case in Table 4-14 and 4-15. In each example, the byte string "ABCD" or "ABC" is to be transmitted/received across the system interface. For example, in 808X mode, at an even starting system address, for three bytes (odd) to write to the system, the SIF will perform two transfers:

1. The SIF will first read a word from Adapter memory with "A" in the MSB and "B" in the LSB. This is written onto the system bus as a word with "A" in the LSB and "B" in the MSB. Note that in both Adapter and system memory, "A" is in the lower (even) address and "B" is in the upper (odd) address. As always, sequentially transmitted bytes are stored in sequential byte addresses.
2. The SIF will then read a word from Adapter memory with "C" in the MSB and anything (—) in the LSB. The SIF performs a single-byte cycle on the system bus, writing the byte "C" to the lower (even) byte of the system bus. In 808X mode, the lower-addressed byte is connected to SADL, so "C" is written on these lines. The SADH lines are floated during this cycle.

TABLE 4-14.SYSTEM DMA CYCLE DESCRIPTION-808X

HOST	STARTING SYSTEM ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BYTES TO MOVE	READ FROM OR WRITE TO SYSTEM	16-BIT SYSTEM BUS TRANSFER		LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS	
				SADH 0-7	SADL 0-7	LAD 0-7	LAD 8-15
808X	EVEN	EVEN	READ	B D	A C	A C	B D
			WRITE	B D	A C	A C	B D
		ODD	READ	B —	A C*	A C	B —
			WRITE	B hi-z	A C *	A C	B —
	ODD	EVEN	READ	A * — C * —	— B * — D *	A C	B D
			WRITE	A * hi-z C * hi-z	hi-z B * hi-z D *	A C	B D
		ODD	READ	A * — C *	— B * —	A C	B —
			WRITE	A * hi-z C *	hi-z B * hi-z	A C	B —

TABLE 4-15.SYSTEM DMA CYCLE DESCRIPTION-680XX

HOST	STARTING SYSTEM ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BYTES TO MOVE	READ FROM OR WRITE TO SYSTEM	16-BIT SYSTEM BUS TRANSFER SADH 0-7	16-BIT SYSTEM BUS TRANSFER SADL 0-7	LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS LAD 0-7	LAN ADAPTER BUS TRANSFERS LAD 8-15
680XX	EVEN	EVEN	READ	A C	B D	A C	B D
			WRITE	A C	B D	A C	B D
		ODD	READ	A C	B —	A C	B —
			WRITE	A C *	B —	A C	B —
	ODD	EVEN	READ	— B * — D *	A * — C * —	A C	B D
			WRITE	hi-z B * hi-z D *	A * hi-z C * hi-z	A C	B D
		ODD	READ	— B * —	A * — C *	A C	B —
			WRITE	hi-z B * hi-z	A * hi-z C *	A C	B —

The bytes are transmitted across the ring in alphabetical order. Whenever an odd number of bytes is read from the system to the Adapter, the extra byte in the Adapter becomes a zero. Adapter internal transfers are always 16 bits wide. A "*" indicates that this byte is transferred via a single-byte operation on the system bus; the strobe for that byte only is asserted. A "—" indicates a don't-care value. Within the system and Adapter columns, each row indicates a single bus cycle. In 8-bit mode, the SADH bus continues to output the most significant byte of the address; no data is read from or written to the SADH pins. On 8-bit write cycles in 16-bit mode, the unused bus (SADH or SADL) is tristated.

4.3.3.3 System DMA Address Latching

Figure 4-15 shows how the latches, used to capture address information from the SADL0-SADL7 and SADH0-SADH7 pins, are connected to the SIF.

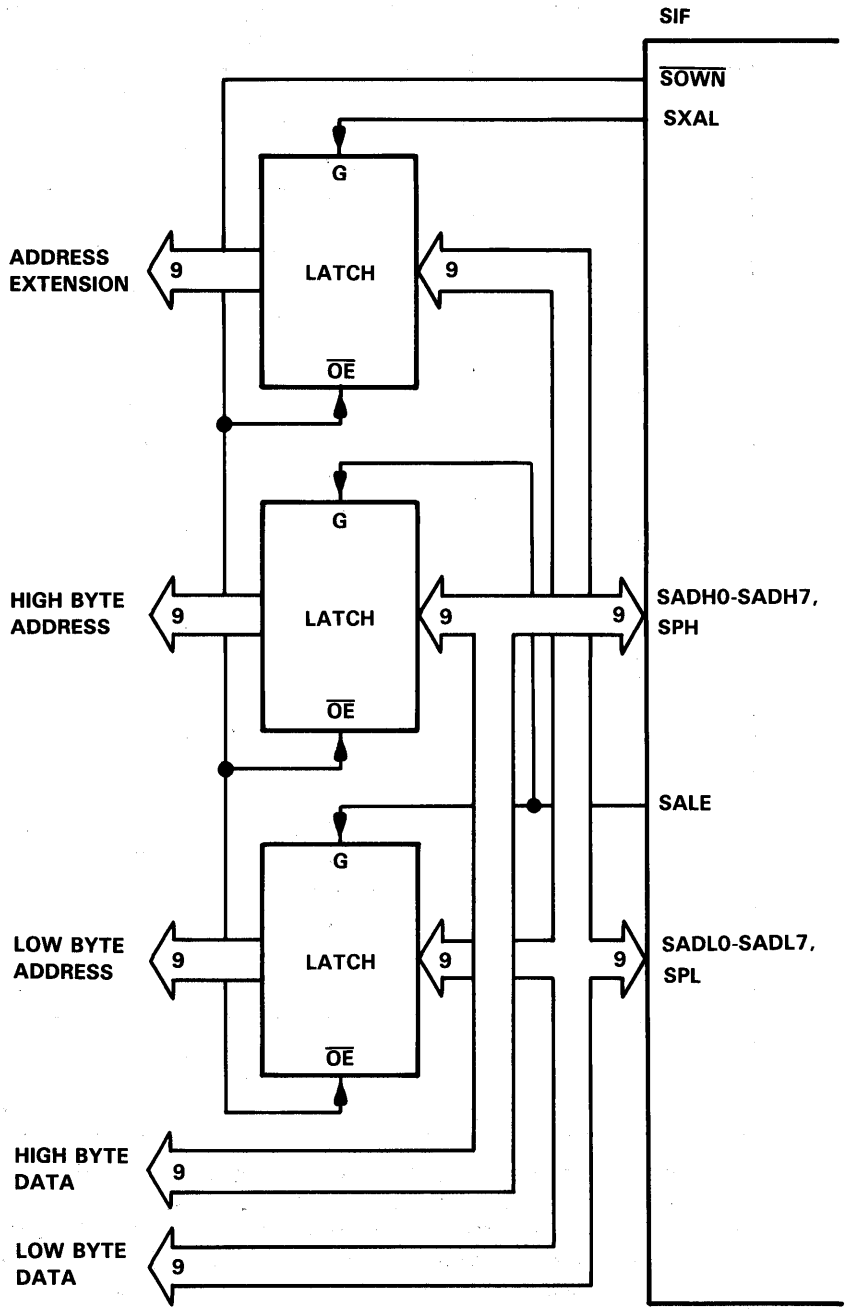


FIGURE 4-15. EXTERNAL TTL LATCHES DEMULTIPLEX ADDRESS/DATA BUS

These latches are typically TTL devices such as the 74LS373 or 74ALS573. The $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ signal is used to enable or disable the three-state outputs of the latches. Two address-latch-enable signals, system address latch enable (SALE) and extended address latch enable (SXAL), are provided by the SIF to demultiplex the low-order 16 and high-order eight address bits, respectively. When the high-order eight address bits need to be changed, a special TX bus clock phase is used to update the latches, with the new data being asserted on the SADL and SADH lines. Since the SADH address remains valid throughout the transition from the TX cycle to the next cycle, systems not implementing extended addressing may ignore the SXAL output.

The timing of the SALE and SXAL signals in both 8- and 16-bit modes is shown in Figure 4-16.

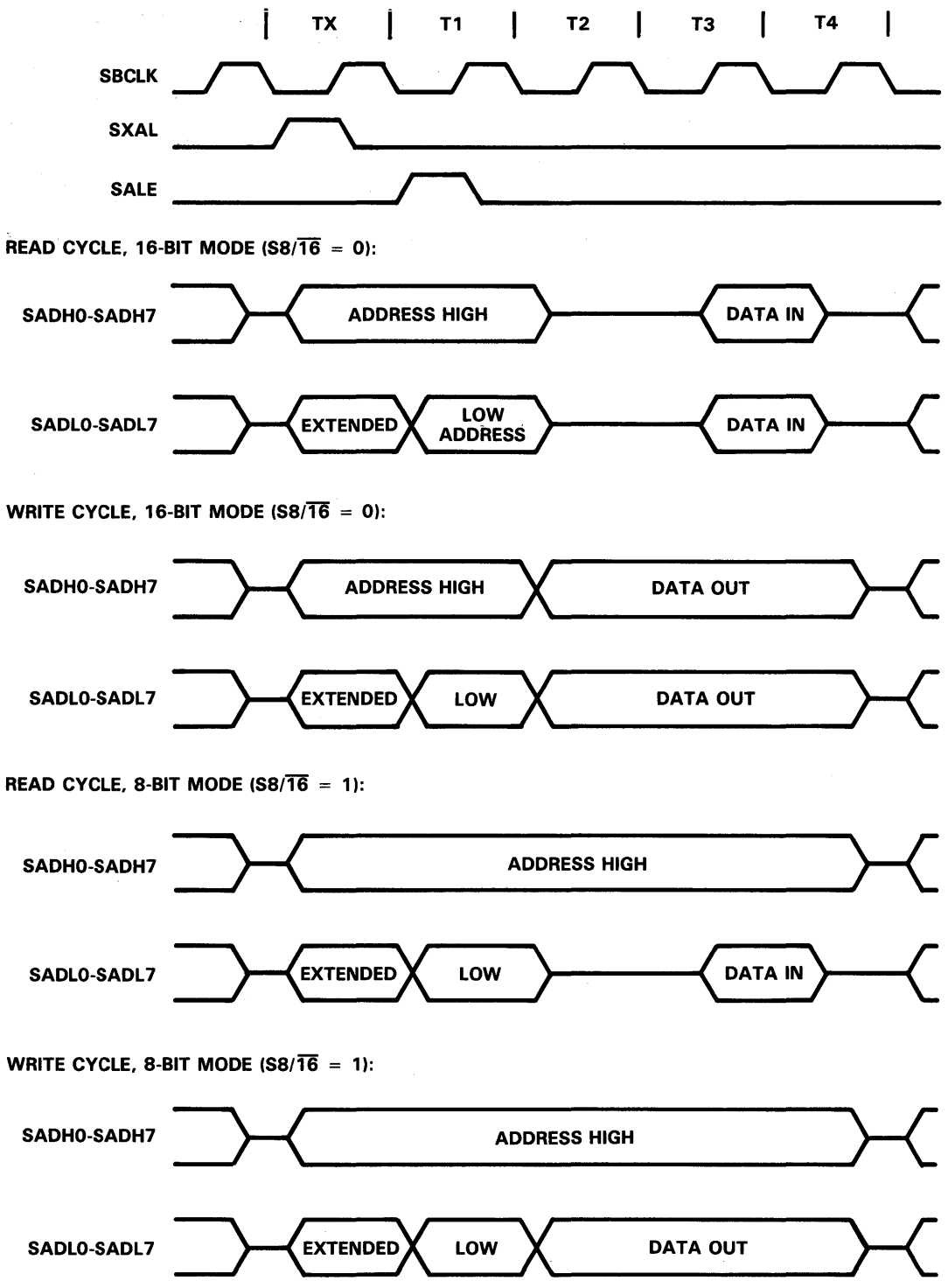


FIGURE 4-16. ADDRESS MULTIPLEXING FOR 8- AND 16-BIT MODES

The bit-by-bit correspondence between the DMA address stored in the memory of the Adapter and the representation of the same address, according to the conventions of particular host processors, are shown in Figure 4-17.

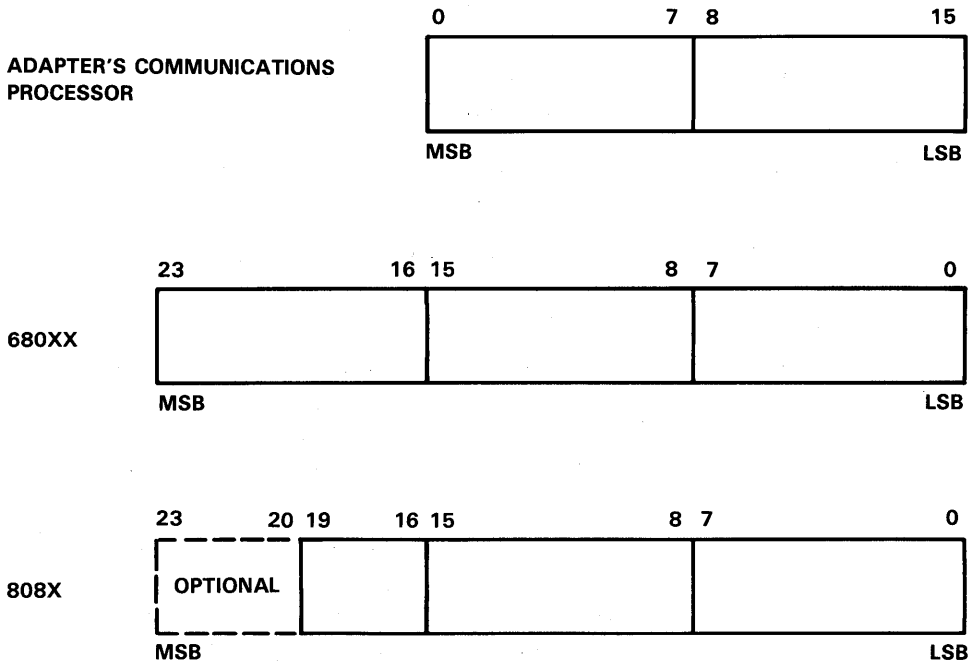


FIGURE 4-17. COMPARISON OF ADDRESS BIT FORMATS

In general, any of the microprocessors mentioned in Figure 4-17, with the exception of the 680XX, specify addresses with the least-significant byte or word preceding the most-significant byte or word. They require conversion to the format used by the Adapter. For this reason, host system software must, during setup of DIO commands, place its system addresses into Adapter memory in the correct byte order.

4

4.3.3.4 808X Mode DMA Interface

In 808X mode, the SIF controls the bus in the same manner as an 808X-type microprocessor.

Interface Signals

Table 4-16 describes the functions of the System Interface (SIF) pins when configured in 808X mode for the DMA interface.

TABLE 4-16. 808X DMA INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS

PIN	FUNCTION
$\overline{\text{SBHE}}$	SYSTEM BYTE HIGH ENABLE. This three-state output serves as an active-low byte-high-enable signal. This pin is an input during DIO operations.
$\overline{\text{SWR}}$	SYSTEM WRITE STROBE. This output is an active-low write strobe for DMA write operations. This pin is an input during DIO operations.
$\overline{\text{SRD}}$	SYSTEM READ STROBE. This output is an active-low read strobe for DMA read operations. This pin is an input during DIO operations.
$\overline{\text{SRDY}}$	SYSTEM BUS READY. This input serves as an active-low data transfer acknowledge signal which indicates to the DMA channel the completion of the bus cycle. During DIO operations, this pin is an output.
SALE	SYSTEM ADDRESS LATCH ENABLE. At the start of each DMA cycle, this output provides the enable pulse used to externally latch the sixteen LSBs of the address from the multiplexed address/data lines. Systems which implement parity on addresses also can use SALE to externally latch the parity bits (on SPH and SPL) for the sixteen LSBs of the DMA address.
SXAL	SYSTEM EXTENDED ADDRESS LATCH. This output provides the enable pulse used during DMA cycles, to externally latch the eight high-order address bits of the 24-bit system address. SXAL is activated prior to the first cycle of each block DMA transfer, and thereafter as necessary (whenever an increment of the DMA address counter causes a carry-out of the lower 8-bits). During cycle steal mode, SXAL is activated prior to each DMA transfer. Systems which implement parity on addresses also can use SXAL to externally latch the parity bit (available on SPL) for the DMA address extension byte.
SDDIR	SYSTEM DATA DIRECTION. This output provides a signal to the external data buffers, indicating the direction in which the data is moving. During DMA reads, SDDIR is low indicating input mode. During DMA writes, SDDIR is high indicating output mode.
$\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$	SYSTEM DATA BUS ENABLE. This output provides the active-low enable signal to external data bus buffers that causes them to leave the high-impedance state and begin transmiting data.
$\overline{\text{SOWN}}$	SYSTEM BUS OWNED. This output goes active-low during DMA cycles to indicate to external devices that the Adapter has control of the system bus. $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ drives the enable signal of the bus transceiver chips which drive the address and bus control signals.
SBCLK	SYSTEM BUS CLOCK. This is the external clock signal to which the Adapter synchronizes its bus timing for both direct I/O and DMA transfers. For asynchronous buses, any oscillator signal may be applied.
SHRQ	SYSTEM HOLD REQUEST. This active-high output is used to request control of the system bus in preparation for a DMA transfer.

TABLE 4-16. 808X DMA INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS (concluded)

PIN	FUNCTION
SHLDA	SYSTEM HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE. This active-high pin indicates that the DMA hold request has been acknowledged and DMA transfers may take place. It is internally synchronized to SBCLK.
$\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$	SYSTEM BUS BUSY. This input is sampled by the Adapter to be inactive-high before the system bus is driven. Although used primarily for 680XX interfaces, this pin also may be used in an 808X interface. If not used, an internal pull-up maintains this signal at an inactive-high state.
$\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$	SYSTEM BUS RELEASE. If this input is driven low during burst mode DMA transfers, it indicates that a higher-priority device requires control of the system bus and the Adapter should release control as soon as possible. Following bus release, the Adapter will immediately re-request the system bus. This pin effectively drives the interface from burst mode DMA to cycle-steal mode DMA. When cycle-steal mode DMA is being performed or if no DMA is being performed, this input is ignored.
$\overline{\text{SBERR}}$	SYSTEM BUS ERROR. This input is driven active-low during a DMA cycle to indicate to the Adapter that a bus error has occurred and that the DMA operation should be abnormally terminated. Although it is defined to correspond to the bus error signal in the 680XX interface, it also functions in the 808X mode.
SADH0-SADH7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — HIGH BYTE. This is the most significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 15-8 (using 808X-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADH(0) and the least significant bit is SADH(7).
SADLO-SADL7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — LOW BYTE. This is the least significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 7-0 (using 808X-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADL(0) and the least significant bit is SADL(7).
SPH	SYSTEM PARITY HIGH. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADH0-SADH7.
SPL	SYSTEM PARITY LOW. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte (transmitted over SADL0-SADL7.

808X DMA Bus Arbitration

The bus arbitration for 808X mode is shown in Figure 4-18 and Figure 4-19. This arbitration is similar to minimum-mode arbitration conventions for the 808X microprocessors.

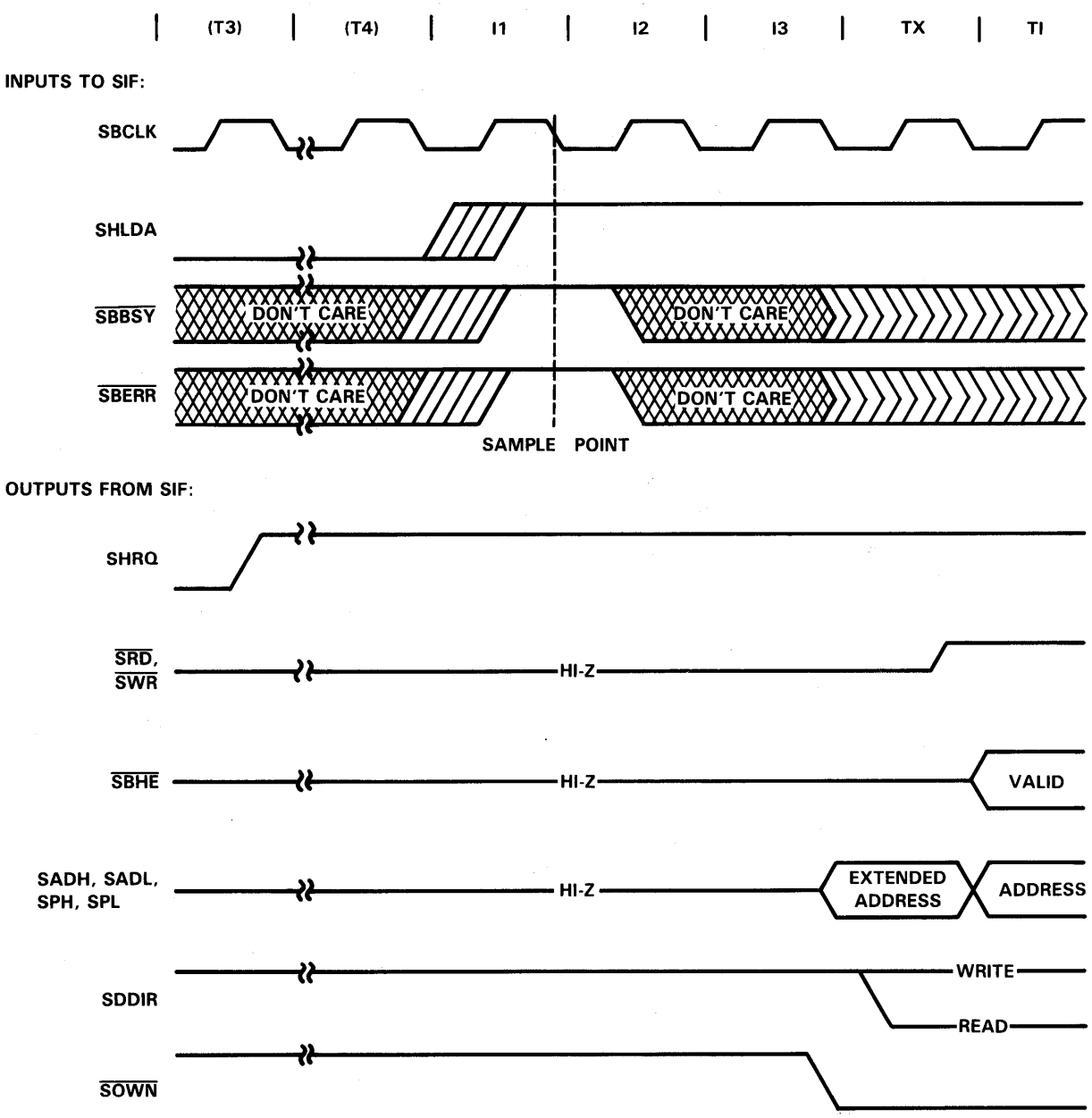


FIGURE 4-18. ADAPTER ACQUIRES SYSTEM BUS — 808X MODE

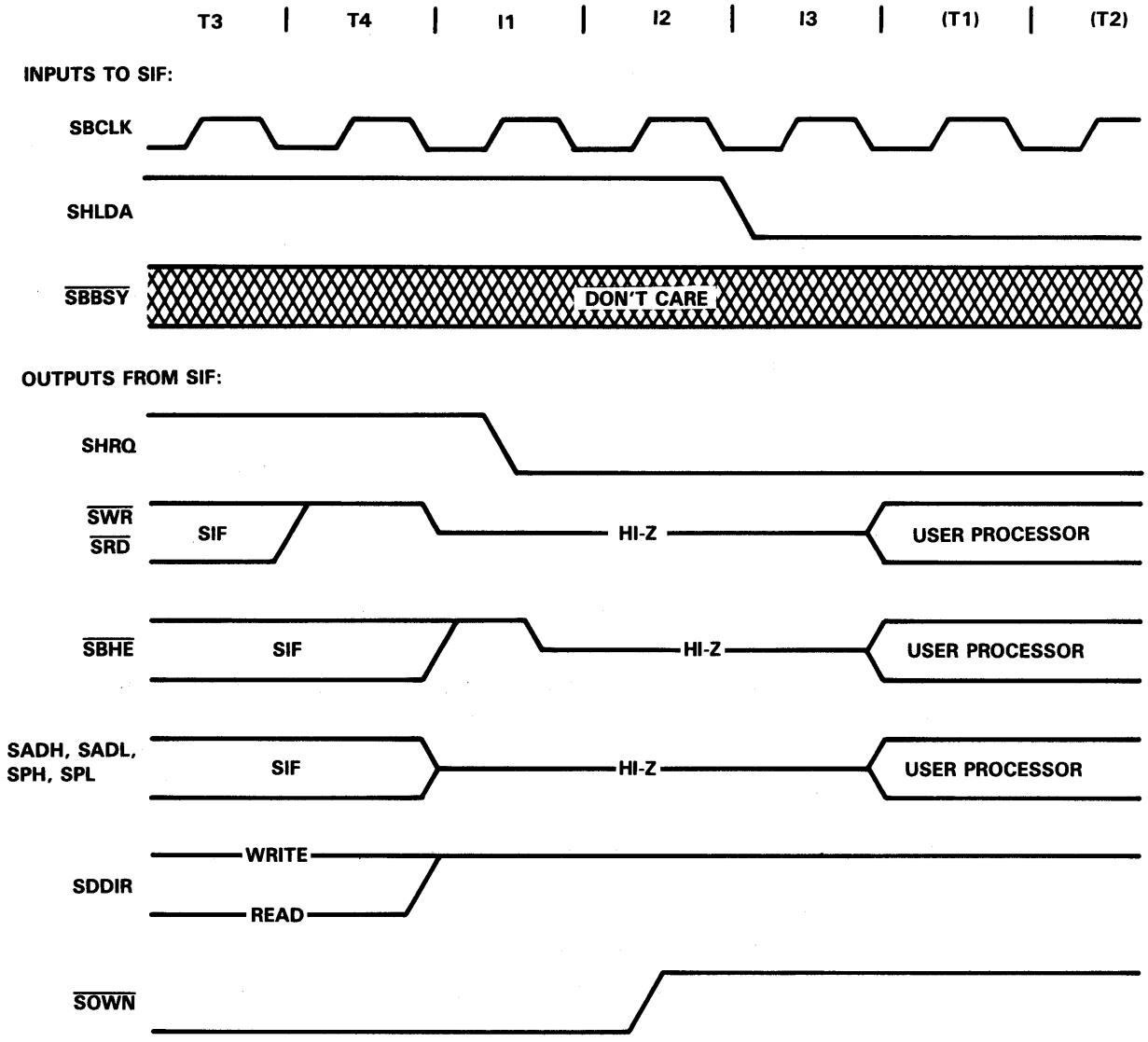


FIGURE 4-19. ADAPTER RETURNS SYSTEM BUS — 808X MODE

In Figure 4-18, the SIF arbitrates for and obtains control of the system bus in preparation for one or more DMA cycles. The sequence of operations is described below:

1. The SIF asserts SHRQ high on the rising edge of SBCLK.
2. When the system bus master completes its operation, it will assert SHLDA high.
3. The SIF samples several lines at the falling edge of SBCLK: its own SHRQ, and the asynchronous inputs SHLDA, $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SBERR}}$. If SHRQ, SHLDA, $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SBERR}}$ are all high at a sample time, the SIF will assert $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ low on the second rising edge of SBCLK following the sample (I3 low).
4. The subsequent falling edge of SBCLK starts state TX of the first DMA cycle. The SIF drives the most significant 8 bits of the 24-bit DMA address on the SADL bus, and the next most significant eight bits on the SADH bus. Figure 4-18 depicts the address driven out on TX cycles.
5. On the next rising edge of SBCLK (TX high), the SIF drives SDDIR low for a read cycle or leaves it high for a write. It drives the bus controls $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ and $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ high.
6. On the next falling edge (TX low), the SIF drives the low eight bits of address on to the SADL bus and drives $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ to its value for the transfer. It continues to drive the middle eight bits of address on the SADH bus.
7. On the next rising edge of SBCLK (T1 high), the SIF asserts $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ low for a write cycle.

Note that a minimum of three "idle" SBCLK cycles will occur in the bus handoff, where no data transfers are taking place.

Figure 4-19 demonstrates the timing when the SIF returns control of the system bus to the attached system. The sequence of operations is described below:

1. On the falling edge of SBCLK in state T4 of the last DMA transfer, the SIF does the following:
   a. Floats the bus controls $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ and $\overline{\text{SWR}}$;
   b. Drives $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ high, and when it is has detected that the pin has reached a high level, tristates the signal;
   c. Tristates the SAD bus; and
   d. Drives SDDIR back high (if previously driven low for a read cycle).
2. On the next rising edge of SBCLK (I1 high), the SIF deasserts SHRQ by driving it low.
3. On the subsequent rising edge (I2 high), the SIF deasserts $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ by driving it high.
4. Sometime after detecting that SHRQ is negated, the system deasserts SHLDA.
5. The SIF will not request the bus again until SHLDA is negated.

At least three "idle" SBCLK cycles will occur in this bus handoff.

808X DMA Read Cycles

The general timing sequence for a DMA read operation is shown in Figure 4-20.

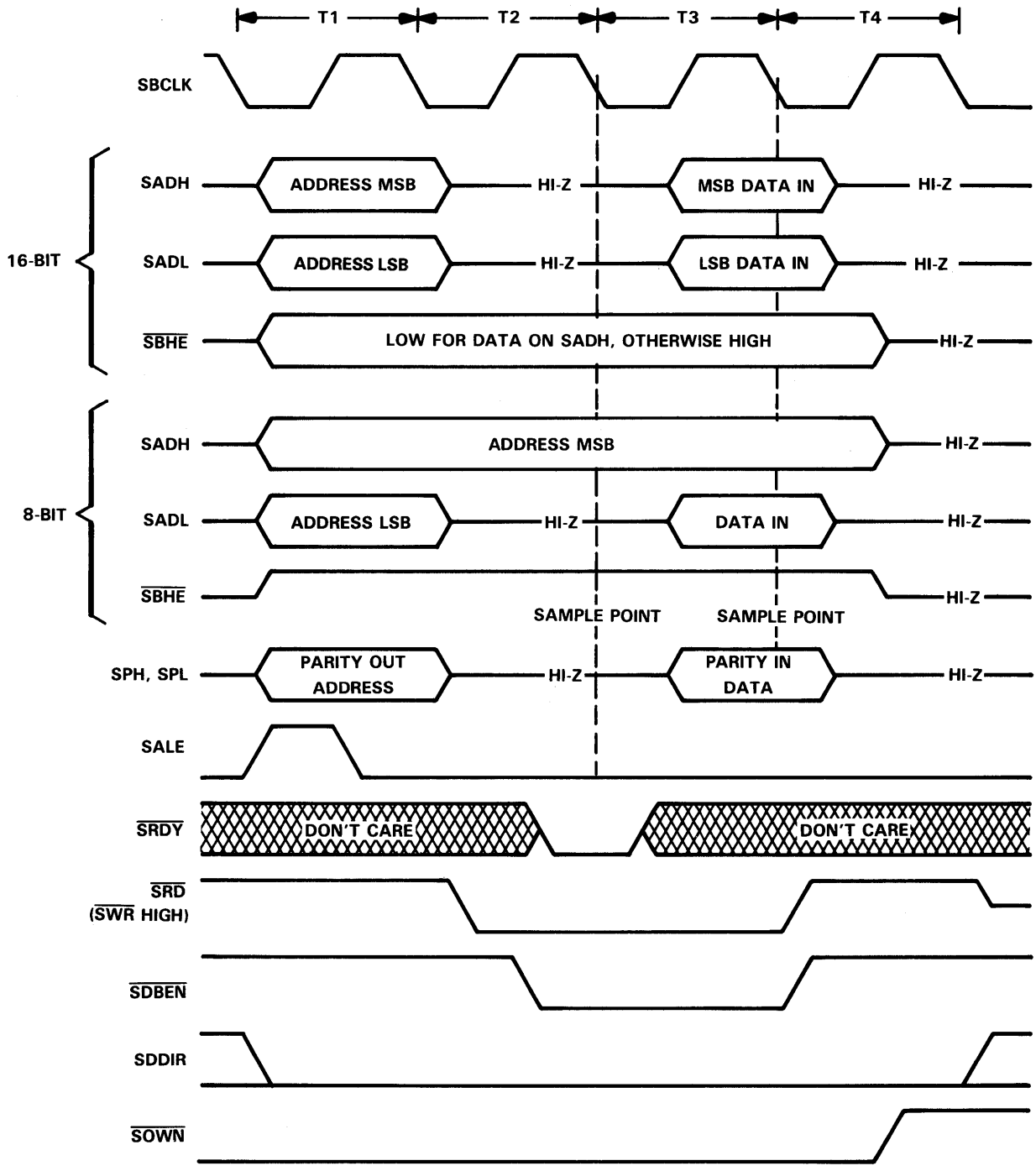


FIGURE 4-20. 808X DMA READ CYCLE TIMING

At the start of the DMA read cycle shown in Figure 4-20, the SALE output strobes the contents of address/data lines SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7 into an external latch (for example, 74LS373). 808X processors multiplex address and data in the same manner. Using the SIF's SALE output, the address/data bus can be demultiplexed with external latches to present to the system bus a non-multiplexed interface with separate address and data buses. Assuming that a transparent latch is used to capture the address from SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7, the demultiplexed address presented to the system will have become valid prior to the falling edge of SALE. This is provided in order to support memories with as long an access time (from address valid) as possible.

In 808X mode, both byte and word DMA cycles are supported. The least-significant address bit, SADL7, is the equivalent of the 808X microprocessor's A0 address bit, used to select the low byte; the $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ output is the equivalent of a 16-bit 808X processor's $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ signal. On single byte transfers (either reads or writes) the unused half of the SAD lines is placed in hi-z. In 8-bit 808X mode, data is transferred only over SADL0-SADL7 and the $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ signal is kept high.

After the address has been latched, the SIF forces its address/data lines, SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7, to high impedance, and also drives $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ active-low to enable the read data from the slave device onto the address/data lines. The read data is strobed into the SIF on the falling edge of the clock cycle marked "T3" in Figure 4-20, and $\overline{\text{SRD}}$ goes high to cause the slave device to remove its data from the bus.

808X DMA Write Cycles

The general timing sequence for a DMA write operation is shown in Figure 4-21.

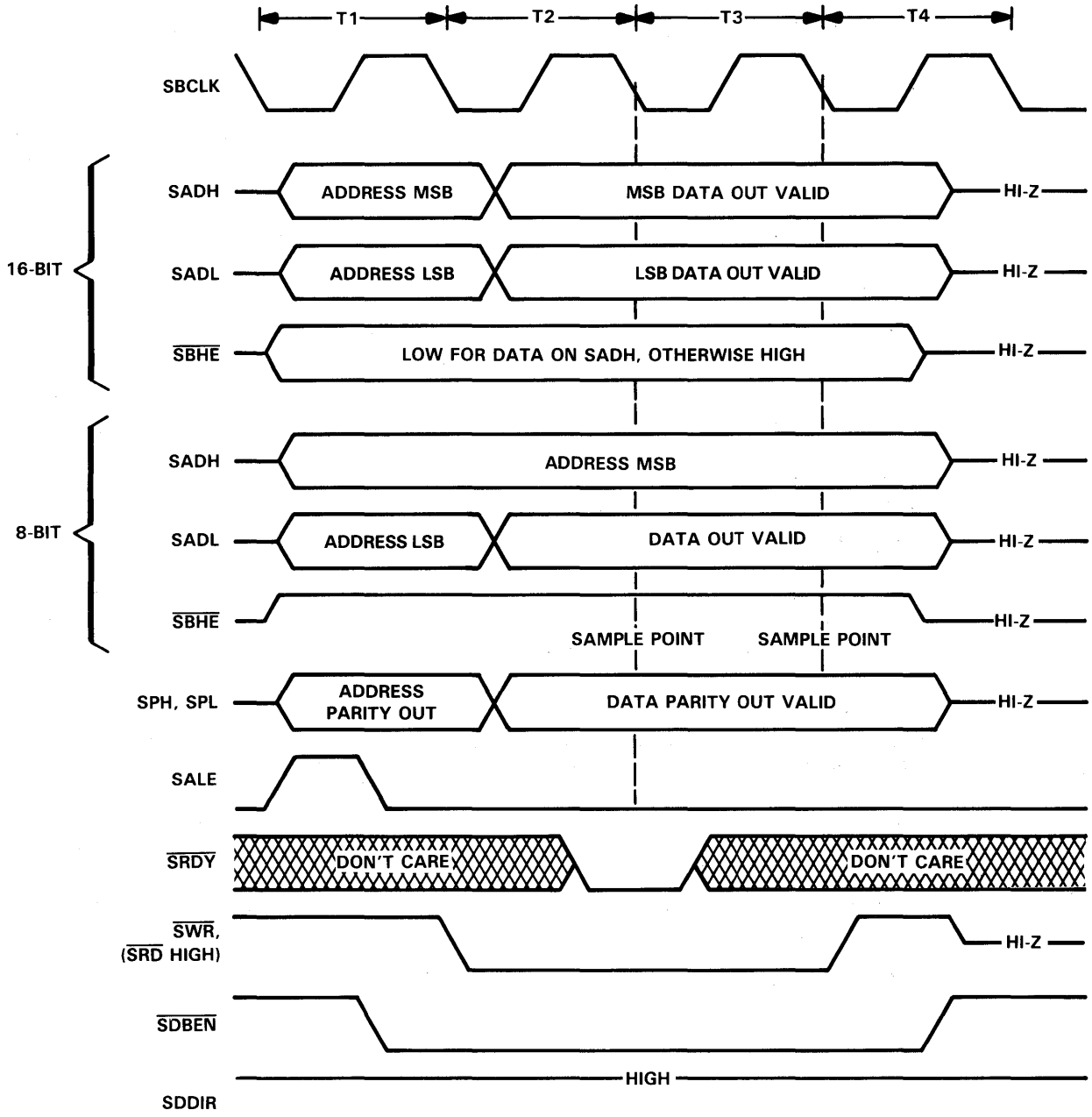


FIGURE 4-21. 808X DMA WRITE CYCLE TIMING

At the start of the DMA write cycle shown in Figure 4-21, the SALE output strobes the contents of address/data lines SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7 into an external latch (e.g., 74LS373). 808X processors multiplex address and data in the same manner. Using the SIF's SALE output, the address/data bus can be demultiplexed with external latches to present to the system bus a non-multiplexed interface with separate address and data buses. Assuming that a transparent latch is used to capture the address from SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7, the demultiplexed address presented to the system will have become valid prior to the falling edge of SALE. This is provided in order to support memories with as long an access time (from address valid) as possible.

In 808X 16-bit mode, both byte and word DMA cycles are supported. The least-significant address bit, SADL7, is the equivalent of the 808X microprocessor's A0 address bit, used to select the low byte. The $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ output is the equivalent of a 16-bit 808X $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ signal. On single byte transfers (either reads or writes) the unused half of the SAD lines is placed in hi-z. In 808X 8-bit mode, data is transferred only over SADL0-SADL7, and the $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$ signal is kept high.

After the address has been latched, the SIF drives the write data onto the address/data lines and also drives $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ active-low to indicate to slave devices that write data is available on the address/data lines. The $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ strobe shown in the figure is roughly two SBCLK periods in duration. The rising edge of $\overline{\text{SWR}}$ should be used by slave devices to latch the data from the address/data lines.

Slave devices which require longer access times should drive $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ high prior to the falling clock edge at the end of "T2" in order to generate wait states. As long as $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ remains high, the SIF will continue to generate wait states (T3 is repeated for each wait state requested by the slave device). When the slave has had sufficient time to complete the access, it drives $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$ low to allow the SIF to complete the DMA cycle.

The $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ and SDDIR outputs are provided to allow the SIF to interface easily to a system bus through a set of external data bus transceivers (such as the 74LS245). $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ is an active-low data bus enable signal used to turn on the transceivers, and SDDIR indicates the direction in which the data is to be transmitted. SDDIR is driven low to enable read data from the system bus into the SIF, and driven high to enable write data from the SIF onto the system bus.

4

4.3.3.5 680XX Mode DMA Interface

In 680XX mode, the SIF controls the bus in the same manner as a 680XX-type microprocessor.

Interface Signals

Table 4-17 describes the DMA interface functions of the System Interface (SIF) pins when configured in 680XX mode.

TABLE 4-17. 680XX DMA INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS

PIN	FUNCTION
SRNW	SYSTEM READ/NOT WRITE. This output pin serves as a control signal which is high to indicate a read cycle and low to indicate a write cycle. This output during DMA operations also serves as an input during direct I/O operations. When not driven by the Adapter, this signal is internally pulled to a high state.
$\overline{\text{SLDS}}$	SYSTEM LOWER DATA STROBE. This output serves as the active-low lower data strobe. During direct I/O operations, this pin is an input. When not driven by the Adapter, this signal is internally pulled to a high state.
$\overline{\text{SUDS}}$	SYSTEM UPPER DATA STROBE. This pin is an active-low strobe indicating that data is transferred on the most significant byte of the system bus. This pin is pulled to a high state when not driven by the SIF.
$\overline{\text{SAS}}$	SYSTEM ADDRESS STROBE. This output serves as an active-low address strobe. During direct I/O operations, this pin is an input. When not driven by the Adapter, this signal is internally pulled to a high state.
$\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$	SYSTEM DATA TRANSFER ACKNOWLEDGE. This input pin serves to indicate that a data transfer is complete. $\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$ must be asserted before the falling edge of state T2 (see Figure 4-24) in order to prevent a wait state. This signal is an output during direct I/O operations. An internal pullup is provided to drive this signal high when not driven by the Adapter.
SALE	SYSTEM ADDRESS LATCH ENABLE. At the start of each DMA cycle, this output provides the enable pulse used to externally latch the sixteen LSBs of the address from the multiplexed address/data lines. Systems which implement parity on addresses can also use SALE to externally latch the parity bits (on SPH and SPL) for the sixteen LSBs of the DMA address.
SXAL	SYSTEM EXTENDED ADDRESS LATCH. During DMA cycles, SXAL provides the enable pulse used to externally latch the eight high-order address bits of the 24-bit system address. SXAL is activated prior to the first cycle of each block DMA transfer, and thereafter as necessary (whenever an increment of the DMA address counter causes a carry-out of the lower 8-bits). During cycle steal mode, SXAL is activated prior to each DMA transfer. Systems which implement parity on addresses can also use SXAL to externally latch the parity bit (available on SPL) for the DMA address extension byte.
SDDIR	SYSTEM DATA DIRECTION. This output provides a signal to the external data buffers, indicating the direction in which the data is moving. During DMA reads, SDDIR is low indicating input mode. During DMA writes, SDDIR is high indicating output mode. This signal assumes opposite polarity during DIO operations (high for DIO reads, low for DIO writes).
$\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$	SYSTEM DATA BUS ENABLE. This output provides to external data bus buffers the active-low enable signal that causes them to leave the high-impedance state and begin transmitting data. This signal is also active during DIO operations.

TABLE 4-17. 680XX DMA INTERFACE PIN FUNCTIONS (concluded)

PIN	FUNCTION
$\overline{\text{SOWN}}$	SYSTEM BUS OWNED. This output goes active-low during DMA cycles to indicate to external devices that the Adapter has control of the system bus. $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ drives the enable signal of the bus transceiver chips, which drive the address and bus control signals.
SBCLK	SYSTEM BUS CLOCK. This is the external clock signal to which the Adapter synchronizes its bus timing for both direct I/O and DMA transfers. For asynchronous buses, any oscillator signal may be applied.
$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$	SYSTEM BUS REQUEST. This active-low output is used to request control of the system bus in preparation for a DMA transfer.
$\overline{\text{SBRG}}$	SYSTEM BUS GRANT. This active-low input pin indicates that the DMA hold request has been acknowledged and DMA transfers may take place. It is internally synchronized to SBCLK.
$\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$	SYSTEM BUS BUSY. This input is sampled by the Adapter to be inactive-high before the system bus is driven. It is physically tied to the 68000-style Bus Grant Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{BGACK}}$).
SBRLS	SYSTEM BUS RELEASE. If this input is driven low during burst mode DMA transfers, it indicates that a higher-priority device requires control of the system bus and the Adapter should release control as soon as possible. Following bus release, the Adapter will immediately re-request the system bus. This pin effectively drives the interface from burst mode DMA to cycle-steal mode DMA. When cycle-steal mode DMA is being performed or if no DMA is being performed, this input is ignored.
$\overline{\text{SBERR}}$	SYSTEM BUS ERROR. This input is driven active-low during a DMA cycle to indicate to the Adapter that a bus error has occurred and the DMA operation should be abnormally terminated.
SADH0-SADH7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — HIGH BYTE. This is the most significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 15-8 (using 680XX-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADH0 and the least significant bit is SADH7.
SADL0-SADL7	SYSTEM ADDRESS/DATA BUS — LOW BYTE. This is the least significant byte of the 16-bit address/data bus. It is attached to the host system address/data bits 7-0 (using 680XX-standard bit numbering conventions). The most significant bit is SADL0 and the least significant bit is SADL7.
SPH	SYSTEM PARITY HIGH. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADH0-SADH7.
SPL	SYSTEM PARITY LOW. Contains an odd-parity bit for each data or address byte transmitted over SADL0-SADL7.

680XX DMA Bus Arbitration

The bus arbitration for 680XX mode is shown in Figure 4-22 and Figure 4-23. The $\overline{SBRQ}$, $\overline{SBGR}$ and $\overline{SBBSY}$ signals of the SIF correspond to the $\overline{BR}$, $\overline{BG}$, and $\overline{BGACK}$ signals of the 680XX bus.

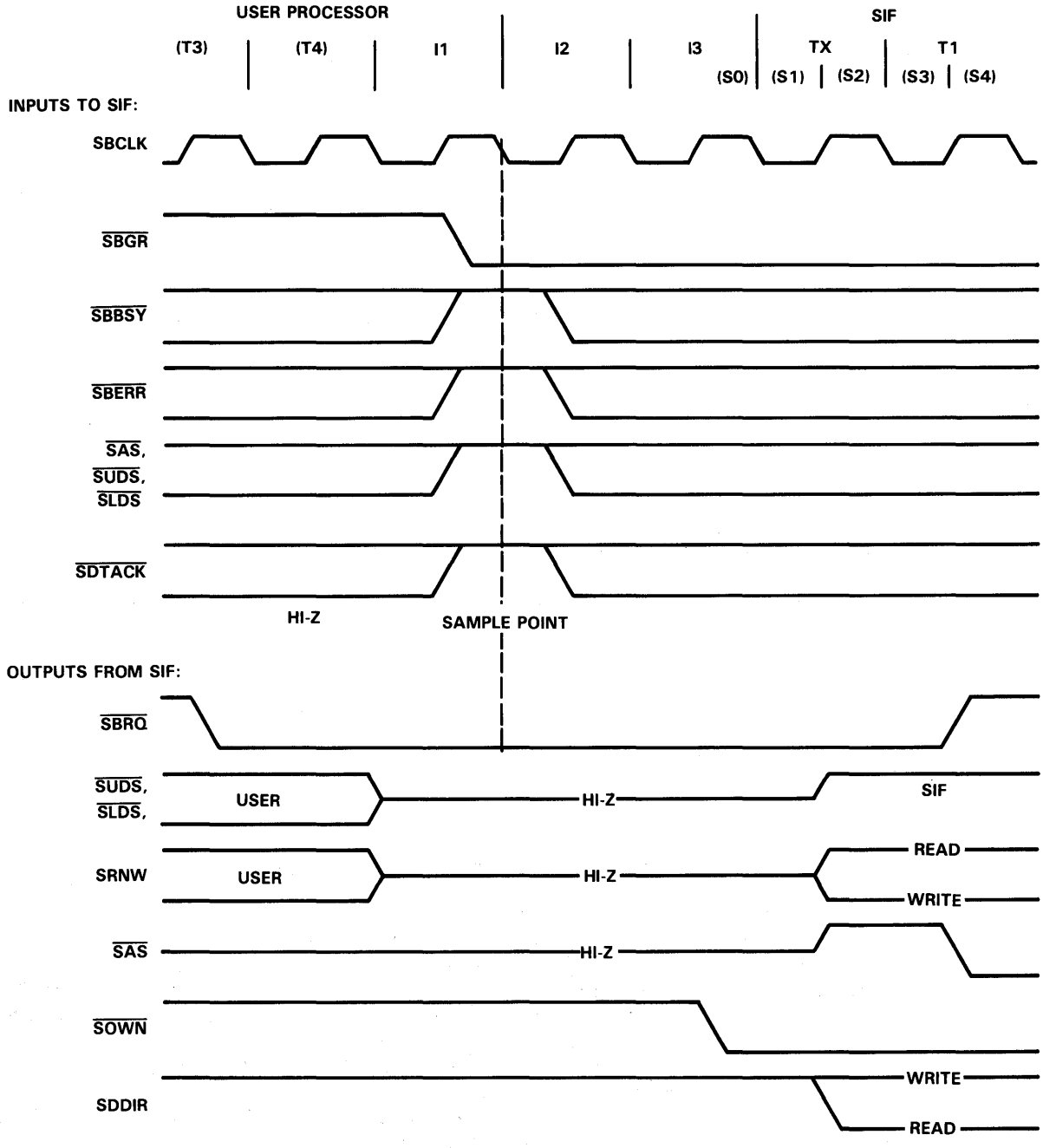


FIGURE 4-22. ADAPTER ACQUIRES SYSTEM BUS — 680XX MODE

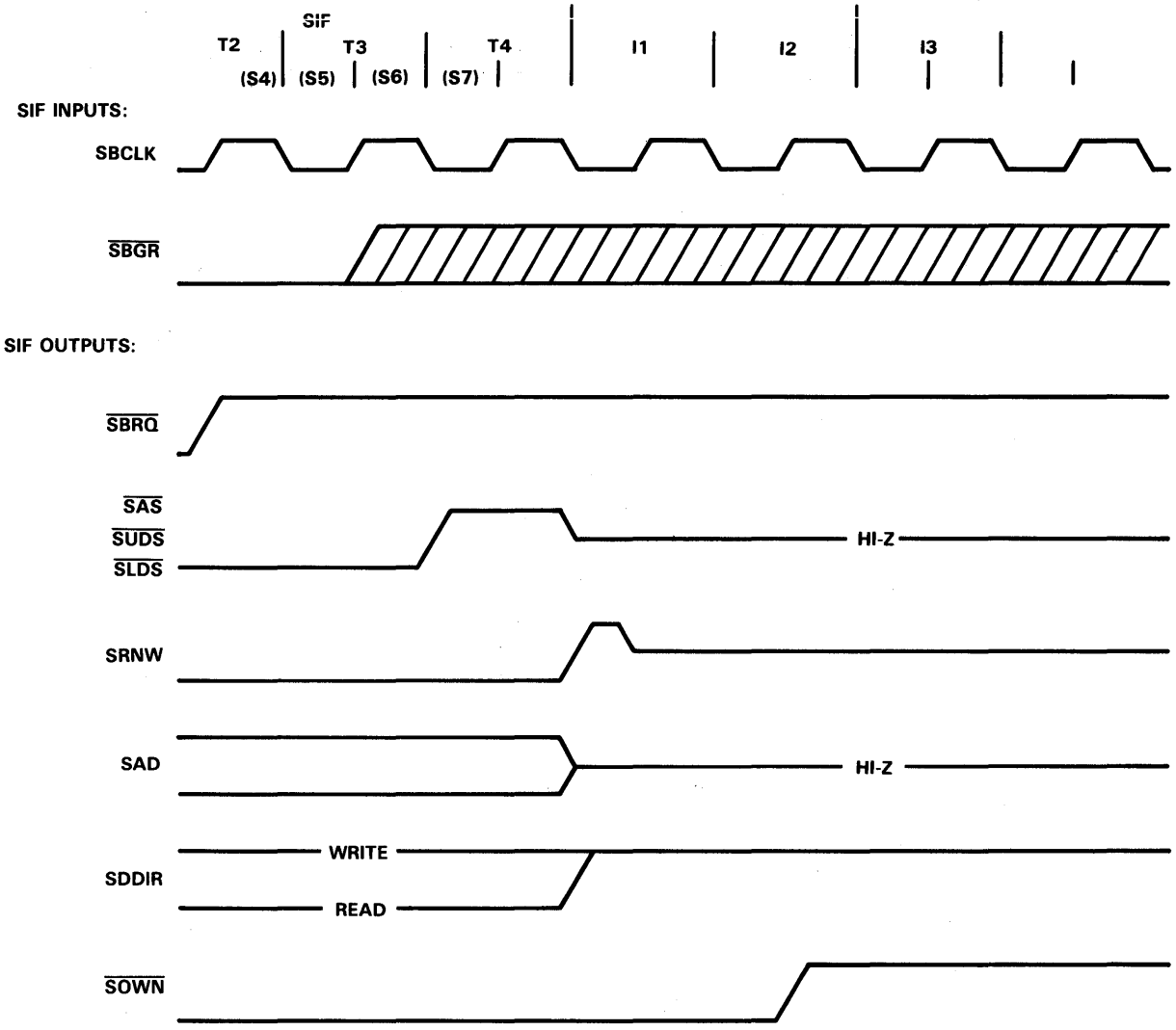


FIGURE 4-23. ADAPTER RETURNS SYSTEM BUS — 680XX MODE

In Figure 4-22, the SIF contends for and obtains control of the system bus in preparation for one or more DMA cycles. Before the SIF requests the bus, it verifies that $\overline{SBGR}$ is high at the falling edge of SBCLK. On the second rising edge of SBCLK following the SIF's sample of $\overline{SBGR}$ high, System Bus Request ($\overline{SBRQ}$) is driven low by the SIF to request the bus. System Bus Grant ($\overline{SBGR}$) is driven low by the processor to indicate its readiness to yield bus control to the SIF. The SIF samples several signals on the falling edge of SBCLK to determine when it may control the bus. Its own $\overline{SBRQ}$ must be low, $\overline{SBGR}$ must be low, and the following signals must be high: $\overline{SBBSY}$, $\overline{SBERR}$, $\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$, and $\overline{SDTACK}$. The asynchronous inputs $\overline{SBBSY}$, $\overline{SBGR}$, $\overline{SBERR}$, and $\overline{SDTACK}$ are sampled on the falling edge of SBCLK. The SIF starts phase TX of its bus cycle on the second falling edge from the sample point at which all inputs are at the appropriate level.

The SIF input pin, $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$, is connected to the Bus Grant Acknowledge pin of the system bus. As long as a system bus master holds $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ low, no other device is allowed to take control of the bus. The SIF must sample $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ ($\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$) negated before it takes control of the bus. When it does so (by driving $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ low), external glue logic drives $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ low. The SIF, having pulled $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ low, can release $\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$, return it to its inactive-high level, and still remain the exclusive master of the bus. Other DMA devices can now arbitrate among themselves — using the $\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{SBGR}}$ lines — to determine which of them will be the next to gain control of the bus. But none of these devices can actually take control of the bus until the SIF releases $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ by negating its $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ signal.

The SIF is shown returning control of the bus to the user processor in Figure 4-23. The timing shown represents a simple case in which no other DMA device is requesting the bus; hence, the processor again assumes control of the bus.

The bus arbitration signals of the SIF have been designed to permit minimum-chip configurations to be built using as little additional "glue" logic as possible. The $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$ input of the SIF connects to the Bus Grant Acknowledge signal of the system bus. If left unconnected, $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$ floats high due to the pullup device connected inside the chip.

In order to monitor asynchronous inputs on the $\overline{\text{SBGR}}$ and $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$ pins, the SIF contains internal double-buffered synchronizer latches to insure reliable operation in all system configurations. In larger systems, the signals to these inputs will, in fact, be asynchronous; and some external "glue" logic is required to provide buffering and to support daisy-chaining of the bus grant signals. In a small system in which the user processor and SIF are connected directly to the same bus and share the same clock, a "no-glue" bus arbitration configuration can be constructed by connecting the $\overline{\text{BR}}$, $\overline{\text{BG}}$ and $\overline{\text{BGACK}}$ pins of the processor directly to the corresponding pins of the SIF. In support of this synchronous, minimum-chip configuration, the SIF follows timing conventions on its bus arbitration pins similar to the 680XX microprocessor: (1) inputs are always sampled on falling clock edges, and (2) outputs always change on rising clock edges.

680XX DMA Read Cycles

The general system timing for DMA read cycles between the Adapter and the attached system for 680XX mode is shown in Figure 4-24.

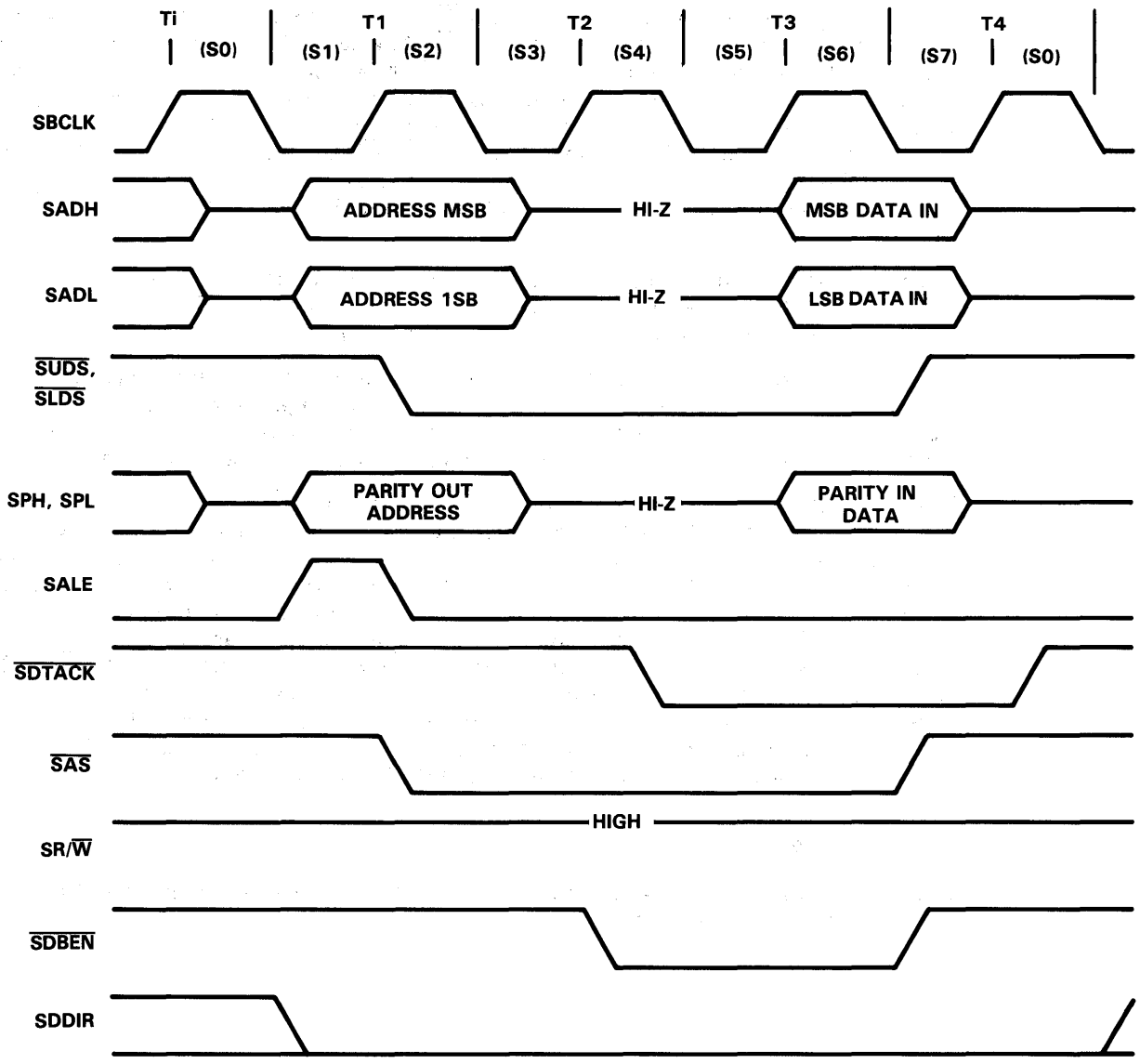


FIGURE 4-24. 680XX MODE DMA READ TIMING

At the start of the DMA read cycle shown in Figure 4-24, output System Address Latch Enable (SALE) strobes the contents of SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7 into an external latch (e.g., 74LS373). Unlike the 680XX microprocessor, the SIF multiplexes address and data over the same physical I/O pins. However, the timing of SALE enables the address/data bus to be demultiplexed with external latches to present to the system bus a non-multiplexed interface whose signals and timing are similar to those of the 680XX. Assuming that a transparent latch is used to capture the address from the SAD pins of the SIF, the address at the outputs of the external latch will have become valid prior to the falling edge of SAS (System Interface Address Strobe).

Data strobes $\overline{\text{SUDS}}$ and $\overline{\text{SLDS}}$ have the same timing as $\overline{\text{SAS}}$. SDDIR, used to indicate the direction of the data transfer to the '245-type external data bus transceivers, remains at its default low level throughout the cycle. $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$, the signal used to turn the data bus transceivers on (if $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ is low) and off (if $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ is high), goes low in the middle of the cycle to gate the contents of the system data bus into the SIF.

4.3.3.6 80XX DMA Write Cycles

The general system timing for DMA write cycles between the Adapter and the attached system for 680XX mode is shown in Figure 4-25.

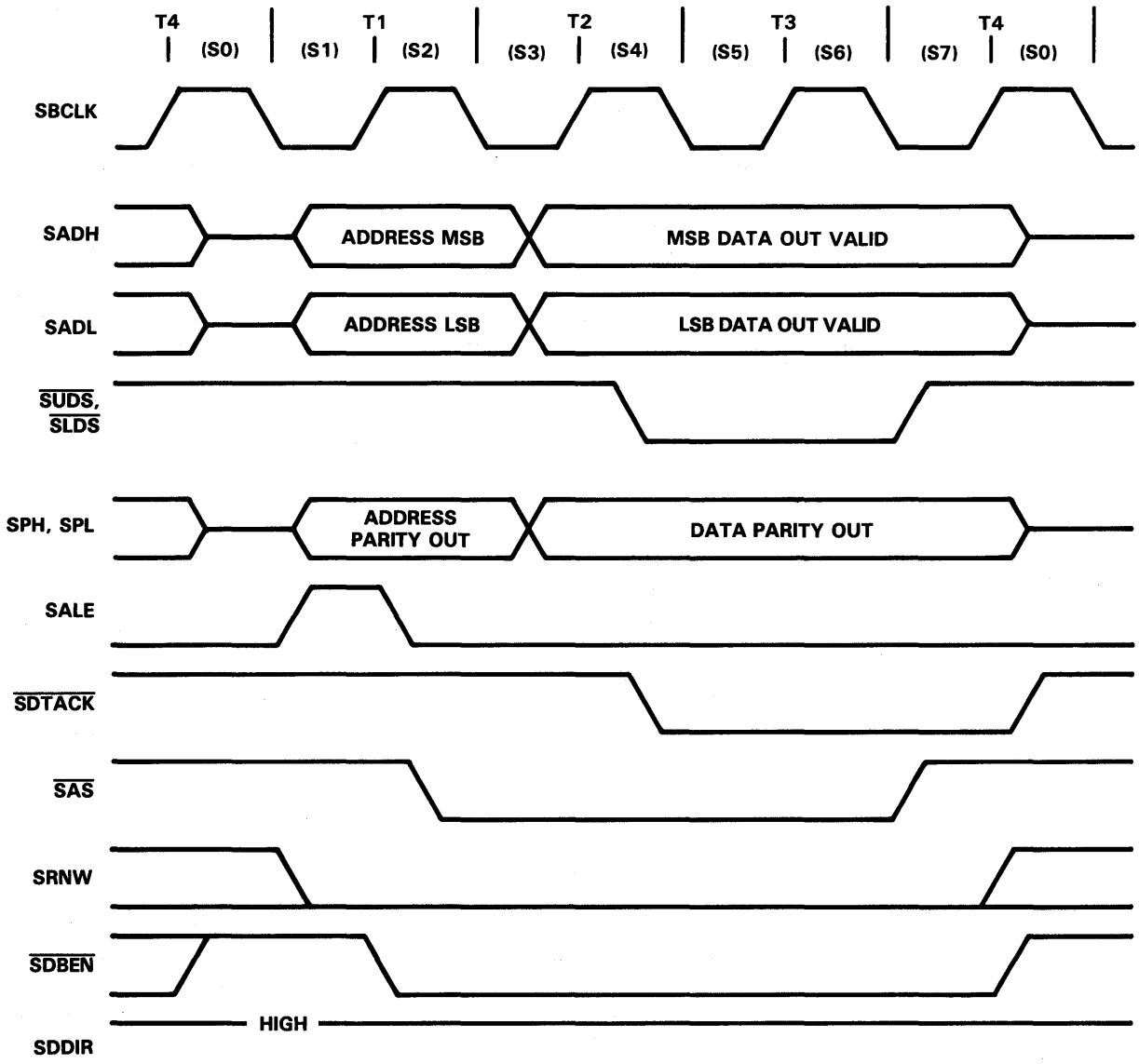


FIGURE 4-25. 680XX MODE DMA WRITE TIMING

At the start of the DMA write cycle shown in Figure 4-25, output System Address Latch Enable (SALE) strobes the contents of SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7 into an external latch (e.g., 74LS373). Unlike the 680XX microprocessor, the SIF multiplexes address and data over the same physical I/O pins. However, the timing of SALE is such that the address/data bus can be demultiplexed with external latches to present to the system bus a non-multiplexed interface, whose signals and timing are similar to those of the 680XX. Assuming that a transparent latch is used to capture the address from the address/data pins of the SIF, the address at the outputs of the external latch will have become valid prior to the falling edge of $\overline{SAS}$ (System Interface Address Strobe).

SRNW goes low to indicate that a write operation is taking place. The falling edges of data strobes $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ occur one full clock after the falling edge of $\overline{SAS}$. SDDIR remains high during the cycle, and $\overline{SDBEN}$ goes low to enable the external data bus transceivers to drive the data output from the SADH0-SADH7 and SADL0-SADL7 pins of the SIF onto the system data bus. In certain cases, only a single byte is transferred when the SIF is in 16-bit mode. In these cases, the unused half of SAD is floated.

4.3.4 Adapter Interrupt Interface

Interrupts are used to communicate the start or end of many Adapter operations and attached system operations. The attached system interrupts the Adapter by writing a one to the MSB of the Interrupt register using the direct I/O interface. During the same write cycle to the Adapter, the attached system indicates the type, or purpose, of the interrupt through other bits in the Interrupt Register. This interrupt control by the attached system software will be discussed in Section 4.4.

Interrupts to the attached system from the Adapter are initiated by assertion of the SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$ (interrupt request) pin. To clear the interrupt, the attached system must clear the active state of the SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$ pin by writing a zero to bit 8 of the Interrupt Register with a DIO write cycle.

An optional interrupt vector may be obtained from the Adapter by asserting the Interrupt Acknowledge ($\overline{SIACK}$) pin. This causes a special bus operation known as an interrupt acknowledge cycle to occur, allowing the attached system to read the interrupt vector.

4.3.4.1 Interrupt Interface Pin Descriptions

Table 4-18 describes the Adapter pins used in the Adapter attached system interrupt interface.

TABLE 4-18. ADAPTER INTERRUPT PIN DESCRIPTIONS

PIN	DESCRIPTION
SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$	SYSTEM INTERRUPT REQUEST. The SIF activates this output to signal an interrupt to the attached system. In 808X mode, this pin is active-high; in 680XX mode it is active-low.
$\overline{SIACK}$	SYSTEM INTERRUPT ACKNOWLEDGE. This input is driven active-low by the attached system to acknowledge the interrupt request from the Adapter. The Adapter's SIF responds to this signal by gating its interrupt vector onto the system bus. System buses not requiring an interrupt cycle may strap $\overline{SIACK}$ high. Note that this does not clear the active level of the SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$ pin, as this level must be cleared by writing to the Interrupt register.

4.3.4.2 808X Interrupt Acknowledge Sequence

In the 808X mode, the optional interrupt vector (specified by the attached system during the Adapter initialization sequence) is an 8-bit vector read by the attached system in two back-to-back interrupt acknowledge cycles (IACK asserted twice).

The SIF outputs the interrupt vector on the second of two consecutive low-going pulses of the $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ pin. On the first pulse, the SIF does not drive any of its I/O pins. On the second pulse, the SIF operates according to the DIO read operation, where the $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ signal serves as the data strobe rather than the combination of $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ and $\overline{\text{SRD}}$.

The 808X interrupt acknowledge timing is shown in Figure 4-26.

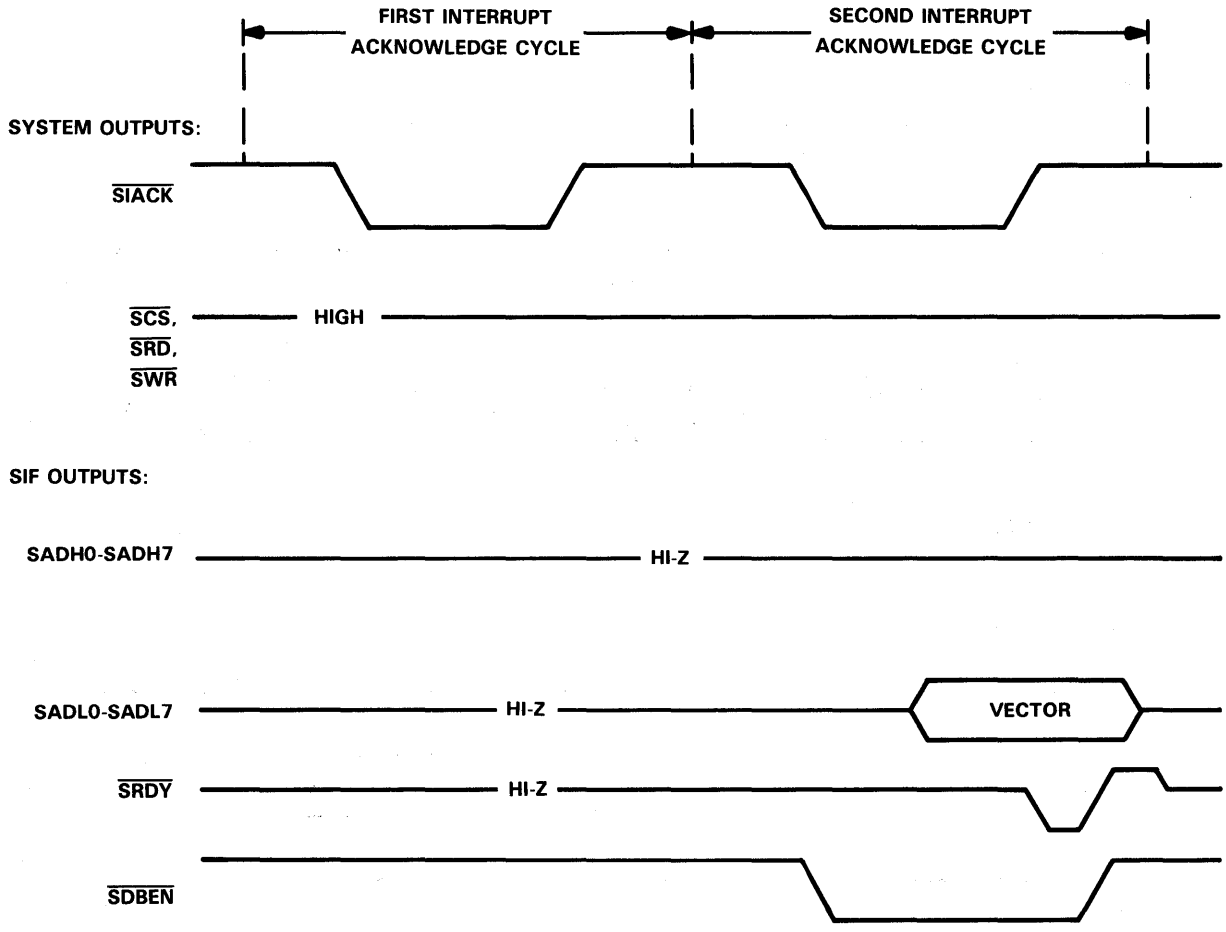


FIGURE 4-26. INTERRUPT ACKNOWLEDGE TIMING FOR 808X MODE

The interrupt acknowledge sequence consists of two back-to-back interrupt acknowledge (IACK) cycles. Read Strobe ($\overline{\text{SRD}}$) and Write Strobe ($\overline{\text{SWR}}$) must not be asserted between these cycles. During the second cycle, the SIF outputs the interrupt vector. Timing for the second interrupt acknowledge cycle is identical to that for the DIO read, with Interrupt Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{SIACK}}$) used instead of the Logical AND of Chip Select ($\overline{\text{SCS}}$) and Read Strobe ($\overline{\text{SRD}}$). The System Interrupt (SINTR) output is not affected by the interrupt acknowledge sequence. The Chip Select ($\overline{\text{SCS}}$) input must be

negated while Interrupt Acknowledge (SIACK) is asserted. The input signals on SRD/SUDS and SWR/SLDS must remain inactive-high for the duration of the sequence shown in Figure 4-26. The Register Select (SRS0-SRS2) inputs are ignored. The SIF does not check that Interrupt Request (SINTR/SIRQ) is also asserted when responding to an Interrupt Acknowledge (SIACK) pulse.

4.3.4.3 680XX Interrupt Acknowledge Sequence

The timing for the 680XX-mode interrupt acknowledge cycle is shown in Figure 4-27. The timing is virtually identical to a 680XX read cycle. Only the chip select differs; the Interrupt Acknowledge (SIACK) is used instead of Chip Select (SCS). The signal presented to the SIACK input of the SIF is decoded from the FC<0-2> and A<1-3> outputs of the 680XX microprocessor. The SIF does not check that SINTR/SIRQ is asserted when responding to an SIACK pulse.

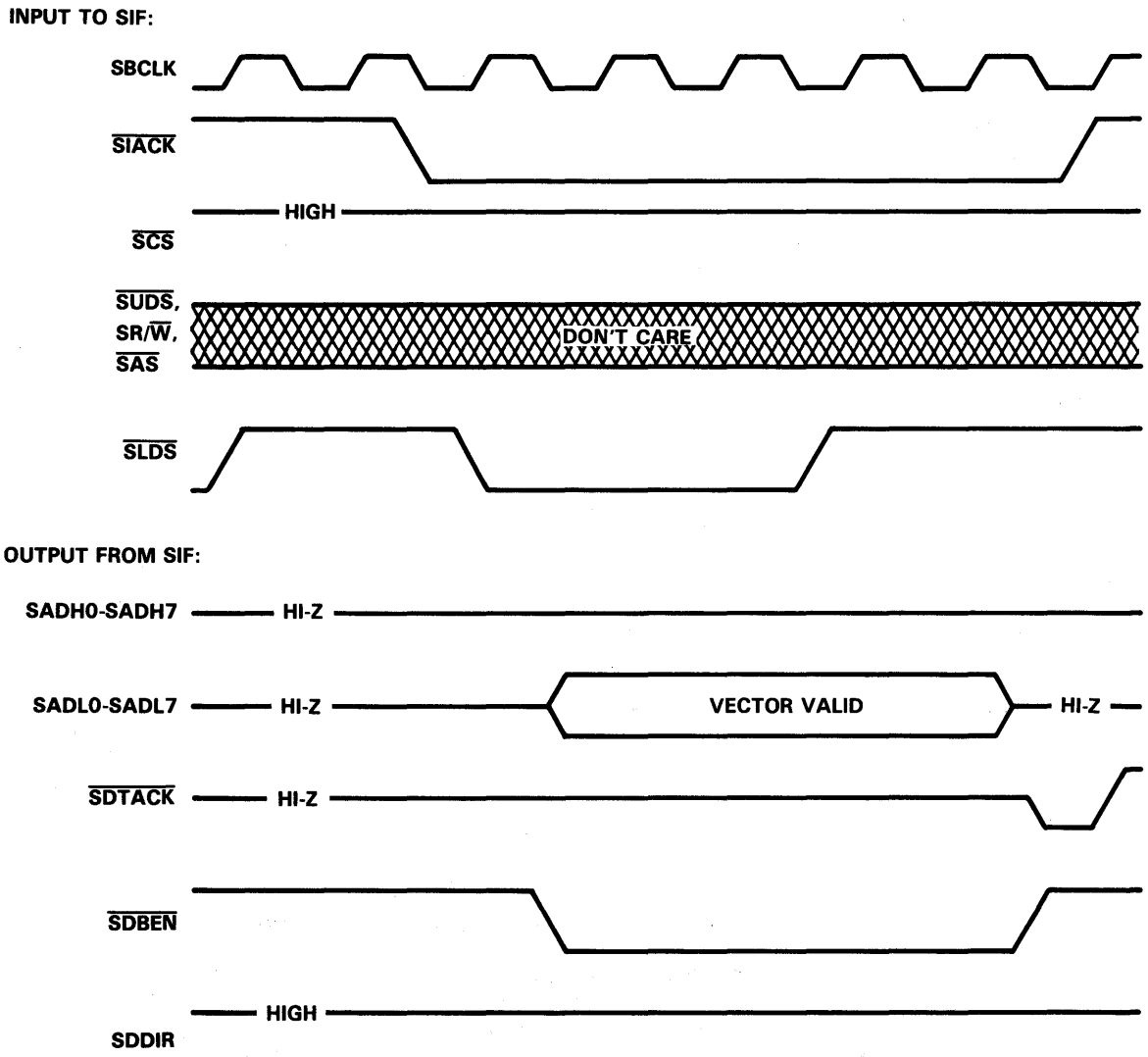


FIGURE 4-27. INTERRUPT ACKNOWLEDGE TIMING FOR 680XX MODE

4.3.5 Adapter Hardware Reset

A hardware reset to the Adapter is forced by asserting low the Reset ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$) pin on the SIF. The $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ is a Schmitt triggered input. $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ must be asserted active-low during power-on while Vcc is ramping up. It must remain active for a minimum of 100 milliseconds after Vcc has reached its minimum value. While $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ remains active, the System Interface pins behave as follows:

1. $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$, $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$, SDDIR are driven high.
2. SALE and SXAL are driven low.
3. SINTR/$\overline{\text{SIRQ}}$ and SHRQ/$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ are driven low in 808X mode and driven high in 680XX mode.
4. All bidirectional pins are driven to high impedance including $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$/SRNW, $\overline{\text{SWR}}$/$\overline{\text{SLDS}}$, $\overline{\text{SRD}}$/$\overline{\text{SUDS}}$, SRAS/$\overline{\text{SAS}}$, $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$/$\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$, $\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$, SADH0-SADH7, SPH, SADL0-SADL7, and SPL.

Following activation of $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ must remain inactive-high for 20 milliseconds prior to reasserting low.

4.4 System Software Interface

This section describes the software interface between the attached system's processor and the Adapter. This software interface controls the operation of the Adapter to effect data transfer to and from the network.

The Adapter is controlled through direct access to four registers and a DMA channel contained within the TMS38030 System Interface (SIF).

The System Interface registers are used to initialize the Adapter, read the cause of interrupts posted to the attached system, and post interrupts to the Adapter to initiate DMA transfers to and from the system memory.

The DMA channel is used to pass commands, parameters, and frames to the Adapter and to receive completion codes and frames from the Adapter. Note that all data movement to and from the ring is via DMA only.

4.4.1 Summary of System Buffer Requirements

The integration of the Adapter into an attached system requires that several system memory buffers be allocated and reserved for Adapter use. The following lists the neccessary system memory allocation; it does not describe their application in detail.

SYSTEM COMMAND BLOCK	The System Command Block (SCB) is a six byte buffer which is used to hold the command to be executed by the Adapter and a 24-bit address pointer to a parameter block or buffer.
SYSTEM STATUS BLOCK	The System Status Block (SSB) is an eight byte buffer which is used to hold status codes returned upon completion of Adapter commands.
COMMAND PARAMETER LISTS	Certain commands (like the OPEN command) require that a block of memory be designated as a parameter block. Once the command has completed execution, this buffer allocation may be released for other uses.

RECEIVE LIST	The RECEIVE command requires that Receive List(s) be allocated within system memory. The memory allocation size is dependent upon the size and number of lists used in the application. The size of a receive list may be selected upon Adapter initialization to be either 14, 20, or 26 bytes in length. The number of lists is application dependent. A discussion on Receive Lists will be provided in Section 4.4.7.4.
TRANSMIT LIST	The TRANSMIT command requires that Transmit List(s) be allocated within system memory. The memory allocation size is dependent upon the size and number of lists used in the application. The size of a Transmit List may be selected upon Adapter initialization to be either 14, 20, or 26 bytes in length. The number of lists is application dependent.
PRODUCT ID	The OPEN command requires a pointer to an 18 byte Product ID as part of the open parameter list. The system software designer should reserve 18 bytes of system memory for this function. After the OPEN command completes, this memory may be released for other uses. Additional information on Product IDs may be found in the IBM Token-Ring Architecture Reference.

4.4.2 Register Descriptions

The registers within the System Interface (SIF) consist of four address locations as described in the hardware interface description. This section will describe in detail the functions performed by these registers.

4.4.2.1 Interrupt Register

The Interrupt Register is used to post interrupts to the Adapter as well as to read interrupt status information from the Adapter. It is important to note that bits 0-7 can be set to one but not reset to zero by the attached system. These bits, when set to one by the attached system, can only be cleared by the Communications Processor. Likewise, bit 8 can be reset to zero by the attached system but can only be set by the Communications Processor. Bits 9-15 can be read only by the attached system. These bits are set or reset by the Communications Processor.

Writing to the Interrupt Register

A direct I/O (DIO) write to the Interrupt Register will transfer a 16-bit word which is used to post interrupts within the Adapter as well as reset the Adapter-to-system interrupt level on the SINTR/SIRQ pin.

Figure 4-28 shows the bit assignments of the Interrupt Register when written by the attached system. Table 4-19 defines the functions of each bit.

BIT	0	INTERRUPT ADAPTER
	1	ADAPTER RESET
	2	SSB CLEAR
	3	EXECUTE
	4	SCB REQUEST
	5	RECEIVE CONTINUE
	6	RECEIVE VALID
	7	TRANSMIT VALID
	8	RESET SYSTEM INTERRUPT
	9	X
	10	X
	11	X
	12	X
	13	X
	14	X
LSB	15	X

'X' denotes don't care, writing to these bits has no effect.

FIGURE 4-28. INTERRUPT REGISTER WRITE BIT ASSIGNMENTS

TABLE 4-19. INTERRUPT REGISTER WRITE BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	FUNCTION
BIT 0	INTERRUPT ADAPTER. Bit 0, when set to one, will cause an internal Adapter interrupt. This bit when set to zero has no effect. This bit will be cleared by the Adapter after the Adapter responds to the interrupt. The purpose of the interrupt is defined by the SSB CLEAR, EXECUTE, SCB REQUEST, RECEIVE CONTINUE, RECEIVE VALID, and TRANSMIT VALID bits described below. Note that bit 0 must be set for the Adapter to recognize bits 1 through 7.
BIT 1	ADAPTER RESET. Setting bit 1 to one forces an Adapter reset if bit 0 and bits 2-7 are also set to one. Following an Adapter Reset, the initialization procedure outlined in Section 4.4.5 should be followed. This reset function is a software command and certain conditions of hardware failure may prevent its execution.
BIT 2	SSB CLEAR. This interrupt request is used by the system to notify the Adapter that the System Status Block (SSB) is available for the Adapter to post additional status information. The SSB CLEAR bit should be set whenever an Adapter command is executed (Bit 3-Execute is set) to insure that command status will be seen in the System Status Block (SSB).
BIT 3	EXECUTE. This interrupt is used to initiate an Adapter command contained in the System Command Block (SCB). This block will be DMA read and executed by the Adapter.
BIT 4	SCB REQUEST. This interrupt is used to cause the Adapter to interrupt the attached system when the SCB is available for another command. The Adapter will return the SCB CLEAR interrupt code.
BIT 5	RECEIVE CONTINUE. This interrupt request signals the Adapter that buffers have been added to the Receive List Chain in the attached system's memory.
BIT 6	RECEIVE VALID. This interrupt request signals the Adapter that the condition causing List Processing suspension during receive has been cleared.
BIT 7	TRANSMIT VALID. This interrupt request signals the Adapter that the condition causing List Processing suspension during transmit has been cleared.
BIT 8	RESET SYSTEM INTERRUPT. Writing a zero to bit 8 will reset the Adapter-to-attached system interrupt (i.e. clearing the SINTR line). Writing a one to this bit has no effect. SSB CLEAR and INTERRUPT ADAPTER should always be set when this bit position is cleared.
BITS 9-15	RESERVED. These bits are ignored.

Reading from the Interrupt Register

A Direct I/O (DIO) read of the Interrupt Register will transfer a 16-bit word, which is used to examine status of the Adapter.

Figure 4-29 shows the bit assignments of the Interrupt Register when read by the attached system. Table 4-20 defines the functions of each bit.

BIT	0	INTERRUPT ADAPTER
	1	ADAPTER RESET
	2	SSB CLEAR
	3	EXECUTE
	4	SCB REQUEST
	5	RECEIVE CONTINUE
	6	RECEIVE VALID
	7	TRANSMIT VALID
	8	INTERRUPT SYSTEM
	9	INITIALIZE
	10	TEST
	11	ERROR
	12	INTERRUPT CODE 0/ERROR CODE 0
	13	INTERRUPT CODE 1/ERROR CODE 1
	14	INTERRUPT CODE 2/ERROR CODE 2
LSB	15	ERROR CODE 3

NOTE: Bits 12 through 15 are used to report bring-up diagnostic and initialization errors.

FIGURE 4-29. INTERRUPT REGISTER READ BIT ASSIGNMENTS

TABLE 4-20. INTERRUPT REGISTER READ BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	FUNCTION
BIT 0	INTERRUPT ADAPTER. Bit 0 reflects the current state of the system-to-Adapter interrupt bit.
BIT 1	ADAPTER RESET. Bit 1 reflects the current state of the ADAPTER RESET interrupt request bit.
BIT 2	SSB CLEAR. Bit 2 reflects the current state of the SSB CLEAR interrupt request bit.
BIT 3	EXECUTE. Bit 3 reflects the current state of the EXECUTE interrupt request bit.
BIT 4	SCB REQUEST. Bit 4 reflects the current state of the SCB REQUEST interrupt request bit.
BIT 5	RECEIVE CONTINUE. Bit 5 reflects the current state of the RECEIVE CONTINUE interrupt request bit.
BIT 6	RECEIVE VALID. Bit 6 reflects the current state of the RECEIVE VALID interrupt request bit.
BIT 7	TRANSMIT VALID. Bit 7 reflects the current state of the TRANSMIT VALID interrupt request bit.
BIT 8	INTERRUPT SYSTEM. Bit 8 is set to one if the Adapter-to-attached system interrupt is valid. In systems not implementing hardware interrupt control, this bit may be polled under software control. The Adapter cannot reset this bit to zero. This must be done by the attached system writing a zero to this bit location.
BIT 9	INITIALIZE. Bit 9 is set to one when the bring-up diagnostics have completed and the Adapter is ready to start the initialization process. This bit is cleared to zero when the initialization process is complete.

TABLE 4-20. INTERRUPT REGISTER READ BIT FUNCTIONS (concluded)

BIT	FUNCTION
BIT 10	TEST. Bit 10 is set to one by the bring-up diagnostics following an Adapter reset. This bit is cleared when INITIALIZE (bit 9) is initially set.
BIT 11	ERROR. Bit 11 is set if the bring-up diagnostics detect an error or if there is an error during the initialization process. The error condition is specified in bits 12 through 15.
BITS 12-15	INTERRUPT CODE 0-2/ERROR CODE 0-3. Bits 12-14 define the Adapter-to-attached system interrupt reason code. The lower numerically the code value, the higher the interrupt priority. The 3-bit interrupt code is shown below: 000 ADAPTER CHECK. This interrupt code is used when the Adapter has encountered an unrecoverable hardware or software error. 010 RING STATUS. This interrupt code will be used if the SSB is updated with Ring Status. 011 SCB CLEAR. This interrupt code will be used following a SCB REQUEST interrupt when the SCB is clear. 100 COMMAND STATUS. This interrupt code will be used when the SSB is updated with command status for commands other than TRANSMIT and RECEIVE. This includes COMMAND REJECT STATUS. 101 RECEIVE STATUS. This interrupt code will be used if the SSB is updated with RECEIVE COMMAND STATUS. 110 TRANSMIT STATUS. This interrupt code will be used if the SSB is updated with TRANSMIT COMMANDS STATUS. Bits 12-15 are also used to indicate the error code resulting from the execution of bring-up diagnostics or the initialization process. These codes will be defined in the sections that discuss these operations.

4.4.2.2 Address Register

The Address register contains the address pointer for internal Adapter RAM accesses via the Data or Data/Auto-increment registers. All 16 bits can be read, although only bits 5-14 can be actually set/reset by the attached system. This allows the attached system to access a 2K byte block of the Adapter's internal RAM. The actual starting location of RAM which is read is a function of how the Adapter sets bits

0-4. During normal operation of the Adapter, bits 0-4 will be set to 00001. If an Adapter Check interrupt occurs, these bits will be set to 00000. Bit 15 is controlled by the Adapter as all data transfers on the LAN Adapter bus are by 16-bit words only.

4.4.2.3 Data Register

The Data Register is the 'port' into the Adapter's internal RAM in which data may be read or written. The internal RAM locations read or written through this register are pointed to by the address contained in the Address Register.

This capability allows initialization parameters to be passed to the Adapter for initialization. This capability may also be used in some cases to diagnose Adapter failure. After the initialization sequence, write access to the LAN Adapter bus is denied.

After initialization, only the address range >0800 through >0FFF may be read through the data registers unless an Adapter Check interrupt occurs, in which case only the address range >0000 through >07FF may be read.

When the Data Register is written by the attached system, a DMA write operation occurs on the LAN Adapter bus to write the data to the location pointed to by the Address Register. However, if a subsequent read of the Data Register is performed by the attached system, a DMA read operation of the location pointed to by the Address Register is NOT performed, irrespective of what was actually written to the address location by the DMA write operation. To read a location which had just been written by writing to the Data Register, the Address Register should be rewritten with the same address pointer prior to reading the Data Register. This forces a DMA read cycle on the LAN Adapter bus updating the Data Register with the new contents.

4.4.2.4 Data Register with Auto increment

This register is identical to the Data Register except that the address contained in the Address Register is automatically incremented following a read or write to this register. When in 8-bit mode, a write to the MSB causes the Address Register to increment by two. This allows Adapter RAM to be read or written sequentially without re-writing the Address Register pointer between each access. If the Address register attempts to increment past >0FFF, the address will reset to >0800.

4.4.3 Bring-up Diagnostics

The Communications Processsor of the Adapter executes a stand-alone diagnostic routine upon one of two conditions:

1. $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ line of the System Interface becoming active-low.
2. Writing a one to bits 0-7 (>FF00) of the Interrupt Register.

These diagnostics are executed independently of the state of the System Interface pins or the lobe media.

The Bring-up Diagnostics perform extensive testing of the Adapter hardware and software. Initial tests confirm the existence of a software reset routine, and deductibly, executable code. Next, a checksum of adapter code is performed to determine its validity. Internal Adapter RAM is tested with traditional memory tests. This includes only RAM which is located on the Communications Processor. External memory is tested at the OPEN command.

The CP itself is then self tested, first with an instruction test, and then the XOPs and interrupts are tested. The Protocol Handler is then thoroughly tested. The PH registers are tested first. Then, using internal wrap mode in the Ring Interface, the CRC generation and checking, code violation detection, receive and transmit functions, MAC frame reception, and buffer chaining are tested. Also in wrap mode, the monitor and priority state machines, and PH parity checkers are tested. Finally, the SIF registers on the Adapter bus are tested.

4.4.4 Bring-up Diagnostics Verification

Before the Adapter can be initialized for proper operation, the attached system must verify that the bring-up diagnostics terminated normally. To do this the following procedure should be followed:

1. After either application of the $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ signal, or writing a software reset (>FF00) to the Interrupt Register, the attached system should read the Interrupt Register until one of the following conditions has occurred:
   a. If the INITIALIZE bit is set to one, and the TEST bit is zero, and the ERROR bit is zero, then the INTERRUPT CODE bits (12-15) should also be zero. This indicates that the bring-up diagnostics completed successfully and the Adapter may now be initialized.
   b. If the TEST and the ERROR bits are set to one, the diagnostics have detected an unrecoverable hardware error. The bring-up error code may be read from bits 12-15. Table 4-21 lists the definitions of these error codes.
   c. If neither of the above conditions occur within three seconds of reset, there is a hardware error preventing completion of the diagnostic routines. It is recommended that the attached system reset and re-try this procedure three times. If still unsuccessful, an unrecoverable hardware error has occurred and the Adapter should be checked.

TABLE 4-21. BRING-UP DIAGNOSTIC ERROR CODES

ERROR CODE				ERROR CONDITION
12	13	14	15	
0	0	0	0	Initial Test Error
0	0	0	1	Adapter ROM CRC Error
0	0	1	0	Adapter RAM Error
0	0	1	1	Instruction Test Error
0	1	0	0	Context/Interrupt Test Error
0	1	0	1	Protocol Handler Hardware Error
0	1	1	0	System Interface Register Error

Following verification of the bring-up diagnostics, the attached system software may now continue with Adapter initialization.

4.4.5 Adapter Initialization

After verification that the Adapter's bring-up diagnostics completed normally, the system software must initialize the Adapter. This initialization involves the transfer of parameters to the Adapter using the DIO interface. These parameters specify:

- The address in the system memory of the System Command Block (SCB) and System Status Block (SSB).
- Interrupt control parameters.

Before the completion of the initialization process, the Adapter initiates a test of the DMA interface. These tests include:

- DMA writes to both the System Command Block and System Status Block.
- DMA reads from both the System Command Block and System Status Block to compare to expected results.

These DMA tests do not require any attached system software to execute, however, in the event these tests fail, the Adapter will return an error in the Interrupt Register.

4.4.5.1 The Initialization Block

The Initialization Block is 22 bytes in length and the entire block must be transferred to the Adapter. Figure 4-30 defines the 11 words of this block:

	HIGH BYTE	LOW BYTE	
WORD 0	INITIALIZATION OPTIONS		
1	COMMAND	TRANSMIT	INTERRUPT VECTORS
2	RECEIVE	RING	
3	SCB CLEAR	ADAPTER CHECK	
4	RECEIVE BURST SIZE		
5	TRANSMIT BURST SIZE		
6	DMA ABORT THRESHOLDS		
7	SCB ADDRESS (HIGH)		
8	SCB ADDRESS (LOW)		
9	SSB ADDRESS (HIGH)		
10	SSB ADDRESS (LOW)		

FIGURE 4-30. PARAMETER INITIALIZATION BLOCK

The following sections describe the various fields of the Initialization Block and the corresponding bit functions within each field.

Initialization Options

This 16-bit field is used to specify the desired initialization options. The bit assignments of the 16-bit Initialization Options field is shown in Figure 4-31:

BIT 0	1
1	PARITY ENABLE BIT 1
2	PARITY ENABLE BIT 2
3	BURST SCB/SSB
4	BURST LIST
5	BURST LIST STATUS
6	BURST RECEIVE DATA
7	BURST TRANSMIT DATA
8	0
9	0
10	0
11	0
12	0
13	0
14	0
LSB 15	0

FIGURE 4-31. INITIALIZATION OPTIONS BIT ASSIGNMENTS

The function of each of these bits is described in Table 4-22:

TABLE 4-22. INITIALIZATION OPTIONS FIELD BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	FUNCTION
BIT 0	RESERVED. This bit must be set to one.
BITS 1-2	PARITY ENABLE. These bits should be set to one if the system bus provides odd parity on its data. If parity checking is not desired, these bits should be set to zero. If enabled, parity checking is performed on both DIO and DMA transfers between the Adapter and attached system.
BIT 3	BURST SCB/SSB. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will transfer the SCB from the system and the SSB to the system in DMA burst mode. The burst size will be six bytes for the SCB read, two bytes for SCB clear, and eight bytes for SSB write. If this bit is set to zero, then these transfers will occur in cycle steal mode.
BIT 4	BURST LIST. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will transfer transmit and receive lists from the system in DMA Burst Mode. The burst size will be a maximum of 26 bytes. If this bit is set to zero then cycle steal mode is selected.
BIT 5	BURST LIST STATUS. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will transfer list status data to the system in DMA Burst Mode. The burst size will be two bytes. If this bit is set to zero, cycle steal mode will be selected.
BIT 6	BURST RECEIVE DATA. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will transfer receive data to the system in DMA burst mode. The burst size is specified in the RECEIVE BURST SIZE field of the Initialization Block. If this bit is set to zero, cycle steal mode is selected.
BIT 7	BURST TRANSMIT DATA. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will transfer transmit data from the system in DMA burst mode. The burst size is specified in the TRANSMIT BURST SIZE field of the Initialization Block. If this bit is set to zero, cycle steal mode is selected.
BITS 8-15	RESERVED. These bits must be set to zero.

4

Command Status Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus when the SSB is updated with command status for commands other than transmit or receive. COMMAND REJECT STATUS will also use this vector.

Transmit Command Status Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus when the SSB is updated with TRANSMIT COMMAND STATUS.

Receive Command Status Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus when the SSB is updated with RECEIVE COMMAND STATUS.

Ring Status Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus when the SSB is updated with RING STATUS.

SCB Clear Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus if an SCB CLEAR interrupt is generated.

Adapter Check Vector

This byte contains the interrupt vector that the Adapter places on the attached system bus if an ADAPTER CHECK interrupt is generated.

Receive Burst Size

This 16-bit field contains a count of the maximum number of bytes that the Adapter will DMA during one burst cycle when receive data is written to the attached system memory. If this field is cleared, the Adapter will set the burst size equal to the amount of data to be transferred. This parameter is ignored if the BURST RECEIVE DATA bit of the Initialization Options field is set to zero, indicating cycle steal mode. This parameter must be even.

Transmit Burst Size

This 16-bit field contains a count of the maximum number of bytes that the Adapter will DMA during one burst cycle when transmit data is read from the attached system memory. If this field is cleared, the Adapter will set the burst size equal to the amount of data to be transferred. This parameter is not ignored if the BURST TRANSMIT DATA bit of the Initialization Options field is set to zero, indicating cycle steal mode. Even in cycle steal mode, TRANSMIT BURST SIZE is used to limit transmit data bus utilization so that higher priority receive DMA operations can be initiated. This parameter must be even.

DMA Abort Thresholds

This 16-bit field contains counts for the number of times the Adapter will try a DMA operation (read or write) if it is terminated abnormally with a bus error or parity error. The high-order byte (bits 0-7) contains the count for bus errors and the low-order byte (bits 8-15) contains the count for parity errors. The counts specify the total number of times the DMA operation is to be attempted. A count of zero is not permitted.

SCB Address

This 32-bit field contains the 24-bit address of the SCB in attached system memory. This value must be an even address aligned on a word boundary. The high-order byte of this field is ignored.

SSB Address

This 32-bit field contains the 24-bit address of the SSB in attached system memory. This value must be an even address aligned on a word boundary. The high-order byte of this field is ignored.

4.4.5.2 Writing the Initialization Block

The Initialization Block is passed to the Adapter by following the procedure below:

1. Verify that the bring-up diagnostics completed successfully as previously described.
2. Write the value >0A00 into the Address Register.
3. Begin transfer of the Initialization Block by writing each byte or 16-bit word to the Data Register/Auto-increment. This will cause the block to be written to successive Adapter RAM locations beginning at RAM address >0A00.
4. Write the bit pattern >9080 to the Interrupt Register. This sets the INTERRUPT ADAPTER, EXECUTE, and prevents resetting of the SYSTEM INTERRUPT bit and clears all others.

5. Continue to read the Interrupt Register until one of the following occurs:
   a. The INITIALIZE, TEST, and ERROR bits are all zero. This condition indicates that initialization is complete without error. The SCB should contain >0000C1E2D48B and the SSB should contain >FFFFD1D7C5D9C3D4.
   b. If the ERROR bit is set, the initialization process has failed. The Interrupt Code bits 12-15 will contain the initialization error code. (These error codes are listed in Table 4-23.) The initialization procedure must be restarted from Adapter reset.
   c. If neither of the above conditions occurs within 10 seconds of loading the Parameter Initialization Block, there is a hardware error. It is recommended that the attached system reset the Adapter and re-try the initialization procedure three times. If still unsuccessful, there is an unrecoverable hardware error.

TABLE 4-23. ADAPTER INITIALIZATION ERRORS

ERROR CODE 12	13	14	15	ERROR CONDITION
0	0	0	1	Invalid Initialization Block. Twenty-two (22) bytes were not passed.
0	0	1	0	Invalid Options. This code is returned if the PARITY ENABLE Bits are not equal or the Reserved bits are not zero.
0	0	1	1	Invalid Receive Burst Count. The Receive Burst count is odd.
0	1	0	0	Invalid Transmit Burst count. The Transmit Burst count is odd.
0	1	0	1	Invalid DMA Abort Threshold. The DMA abort thresholds were specified as zero.
0	1	1	0	Invalid SCB. The SCB address was specified as odd.
0	1	1	1	Invalid SSB. The SSB address was specified as odd.
1	0	0	0	DIO Parity. A parity error occured during a DIO write operation.
1	0	0	1	DMA Timeout. The Adapter timed out (10 seconds) waiting for a test DMA transfer to complete.
1	0	1	0	DMA Parity Error. A parity error occurred during the DMA tests and the operation was tried unsuccessfully the number of times specified by the DMA Abort Threshold.
1	0	1	1	DMA Bus Error. The DMA test encountered a bus error and the operation was tried unsuccessfully the number of times specified by the DMA Abort Threshold.
1	1	0	0	DMA Data Error. Initialize DMA test failed due to a data compare error.
1	1	0	1	Adapter Check. The Adapter encountered an unrecoverable hardware error.

4.4.6 The Command and Status Block

Two fixed-address control blocks must be provided by the system: the System Command Block (SCB) and the System Status Block (SSB). The starting address of both blocks is passed to the Adapter during the initialization process as described in the previous section. Both blocks must be aligned on a word (even address) boundary.

In general, the attached system issues a command to the Adapter by loading the request in the SCB and interrupting the Adapter. The Adapter will then download the command (and any required parameters) through the System Interface DMA channel. If the SCB REQUEST bit (bit 4) of the Interrupt Register is set, the Adapter will interrupt the attached system after the command has been downloaded, indicating to the attached system that the SCB is available for additional commands.

When the status of any outstanding command is to be returned, the Adapter will load the SSB via DMA and interrupt (if enabled) the attached system. After the system has read the SSB, the system must notify the Adapter that the SSB is clear and available for additional status posting. This is done by writing a one to the SSB CLEAR bit (bit 2) of the Adapter's Interrupt Register. All command status is returned in the SSB.

4.4.6.1 Command Initiation: System Command Block

The System Command Block (SCB) is six bytes in length and the Adapter will always DMA read 6 bytes. The SCB format is shown in Figure 4-32.

SCB ADDRESS		
	+ 0	COMMAND
	+ 2	ADDRESS (HIGH)
	+ 4	ADDRESS (LOW)

FIGURE 4-32. SYSTEM COMMAND BLOCK FORMAT

The Command field contains the 16-bit command code request to the Adapter. The command set of the Adapter will be discussed in detail later in this section.

The 32-bit address field contains a 24-bit address used as a pointer to the command parameters. The high-order byte of this field is read but ignored. Some commands do not have additional parameters and only the 16-bit command code must be written.

The attached system initiates an Adapter command by following the sequence shown below:

1. The attached system must write the command request code into the SCB including the address to the parameter block, if required.
2. The attached system writes to the Adapter's Interrupt Register and sets the following bits to one:
   a. INTERRUPT ADAPTER bit (bit 0)
   b. SSB CLEAR (bit 2)
   c. EXECUTE bit (bit 3)

This sequence will cause an interrupt internal to the Adapter. The Adapter will fetch, via DMA, the SCB and any required parameters. Once the SCB and any required parameters are downloaded, the Adapter will write a zero to the Command field of the SCB. This indicates to the attached system that the command has been downloaded and another may be issued.

If the SCB REQUEST bit (bit 4) of the Adapter Interrupt Register is set to one, an interrupt will also be posted to the attached system when the SCB is available for additional commands. If this is the case, the attached system must reset the interrupt by writing a zero to the RESET SYSTEM bit (bit 8) of the Interrupt Register to clear the Adapter-to-system interrupt. The system should also check that the Command Field of the SCB is set to zero when the interrupt is recognized. If the Command Field is zero,

then the SCB is available for use. If the Command Field is non-zero, an EXECUTE Interrupt request was issued or the SCB was altered in preparation for an EXECUTE Interrupt request subsequent to the SCB REQUEST. If SCB REQUEST is desired, it is recommended that either the SCB REQUEST be issued coincident with an EXECUTE Interrupt Request, or that the SCB alteration and EXECUTE Interrupt Request be performed only in response to SCB CLEAR.

A maximum of three commands may be executed simultaneously within the Adapter. A fourth command will not begin execution until there are less than three commands executing simultaneously. There may not be more than one transmit or receive command executed at one time. Thus the Adapter may be executing a TRANSMIT command, a RECEIVE command, and one other command.

4.4.6.2 Status Reporting : The System Status Block

The System Status Block (SSB) is eight bytes in length. It is the block in which the Adapter returns RING STATUS, COMMAND REJECT STATUS, and status upon completion of Adapter commands. The Adapter will always DMA write the entire eight bytes regardless of the actual length of the returned status. The unspecified status fields should be ignored in this case. The SSB is not used to return status for frame commands. The frame status information can be obtained in the parameter lists associated with RECEIVE and TRANSMIT commands. The SSB format is defined in Figure 4-33.

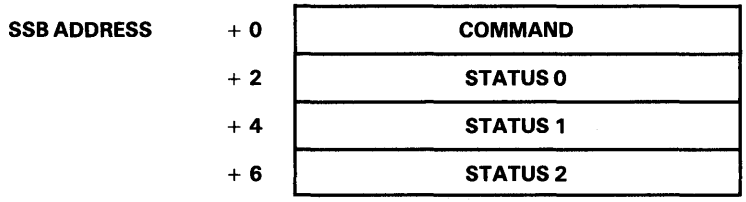


FIGURE 4-33. SYSTEM STATUS BLOCK FORMAT

The Command field is written to the SSB by the Adapter and is used to identify either RING STATUS, COMMAND REJECT STATUS, or the status of a general command. The Status fields contain the actual status information for the Command field.

Following the DMA operation to write the status information to the SSB, the Adapter will interrupt the attached system to indicate that the SSB contains valid status information. The attached system software should reset the Adapter-to-system interrupt and communicate to the Adapter that the SSB is clear and available for additional status posting. This is done by writing a one to the INTERRUPT ADAPTER and SSB CLEAR and a zero to the RESET SYSTEM INTERRUPT bit (bits 2 and 8 respectively) of the Interrupt Register.

RING STATUS Interrupt

The SSB will be loaded with the current ring status and an interrupt posted to the attached system when any of the following error interrupt conditions occur:

1. The Adapter detects a signal loss on the ring.
2. The Adapter is transmitting or receiving beacon frames to/from the ring. This interrupt condition may be disabled by setting bit 1 of the OPEN command options.
3. The Adapter transmits a Report Error MAC Frame. This interrupt error condition may be disabled by setting bit 2 of the OPEN command options.
4. An open or short circuit fault is detected by the Adapter.

5. The Adapter receives a Remove Ring Station MAC frame.
6. The attached product counter has been incremented from 254 to 255 (See Section 3).
7. The Adapter has been opened and is the only station on the ring.
8. The Adapter is transmitting or receiving Claim Token MAC frames.

Due to the dynamic nature of the report indications and the possibility that the ring status could change before the system can respond to a previous RING STATUS interrupt, the current ring status could possibly equal the last ring status report.

Ring Status will not be reported until the completion of the OPEN command.

The SSB is loaded with RING STATUS as shown in Figure 4-34. The bit positions of the Ring Status Field are defined in Figure 4-35.

SSB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0001
	+ 2	RING STATUS FIELD

FIGURE 4-34. RING STATUS SSB FORMAT

BIT	0	SIGNAL LOSS
	1	HARD ERROR
	2	SOFT ERROR
	3	TRANSMIT BEACON
	4	LOBE WIRE FAULT
	5	AUTO-REMOVAL ERROR
	6	—RESERVED—
	7	REMOVE RECEIVED
	8	COUNTER OVERFLOW
	9	SINGLE STATION
	10	RING RECOVERY
	11	0
	12	0
	13	0
	14	0
LSB	15	0

FIGURE 4-35. RING STATUS FIELD BIT ASSIGNMENTS

These bits are described in Table 4-24.

TABLE 4-24. RING STATUS FIELD BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	DESCRIPTION
BIT 0	SIGNAL LOSS. Bit 0, when set to one indicates that the Adapter has detected a loss of signal on the ring.
BIT 1	HARD ERROR. Bit 1, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter is presently transmitting or receiving beacon frames to or from the ring.
BIT 2	SOFT ERROR. Bit 2, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter has transmitted a Report Error MAC frame.
BIT 3	TRANSMIT BEACON. Bit 3, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter is transmitting beacon frames to the ring.
BIT 4	LOBE WIRE FAULT. Bit 4, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter has detected an open or short circuit in the lobe data path. The Adapter will be closed and at the state following Adapter initialization (waiting for an SCB command). The Attached System must wait 500 milliseconds before attempting to execute another OPEN command.
BIT 5	AUTO-REMOVAL ERROR. Bit 5, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter has detected an internal hardware error following the Beacon Auto-removal process and has de-inserted from the ring. The Adapter will be closed and at the state following Adapter initialization (waiting for an SCB command). The Attached System must wait 500 milliseconds before attempting to execute another OPEN command.
BIT 6	RESERVED. This bit is undefined.
BIT 7	REMOVE RECEIVED. Bit 7, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter has received a Remove Ring Station MAC frame request. The Adapter will be closed and at the state following Adapter initialization (waiting for an SCB command). The Attached System must wait 500 milliseconds before attempting to execute another OPEN command.
BIT 8	COUNTER OVERFLOW. Bit 8, when set to one, indicates that an Attached Product Counter has been incremented from 254 to 255.
BIT 9	SINGLE STATION. Bit 9, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter has sensed that it is the only station on the ring. This bit will be reset to zero when another station inserts into the ring.
BIT 10	RING RECOVERY. Bit 10, when set to one, indicates that the Adapter is either transmitting or receiving Claim Token MAC frames. This bit will be reset to zero when the Adapter receives a Ring Purge MAC frame.
BITS 11-15	RESERVED. Bits 11-15 will be set to zero.

COMMAND REJECT Status Interrupt

The SSB will be loaded with COMMAND REJECT STATUS if the Command Field or Address Field of the SCB are in error. The format of the SSB in this situation is shown in Figure 4-36. The Command Field of the SSB will be set to >0002. The Reject Command will be loaded with the Command Field of the offending SCB. Figure 4-37 defines the bit position within the Reject Reason Field.

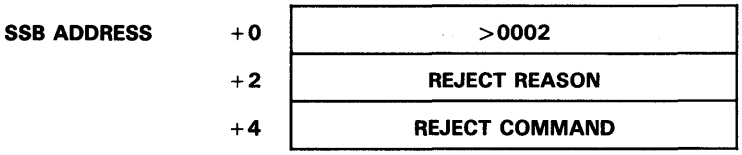


FIGURE 4-36. COMMAND REJECT SSB FORMAT

BIT	0	ILLEGAL COMMAND
	1	ADDRESS ERROR
	2	ADAPTER OPEN
	3	ADAPTER CLOSED
	4	SAME COMMAND
	5	0
	6	0
	7	0
	8	0
	9	0
	10	0
	11	0
	12	0
	13	0
	14	0
LSB	15	0

FIGURE 4-37. REJECT REASON FIELD BIT ASSIGNMENTS

These bits are described in Table 4-25:

TABLE 4-25. REJECT REASON FIELD BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	FUNCTION
BIT 0	ILLEGAL COMMAND. Bit 0 is set to one when an illegal command is issued from the SCB.
BIT 1	ADDRESS ERROR. Bit 1 is set to one if the SCB ADDRESS Field is odd (not word-aligned).
BIT 2	ADAPTER OPEN. Bit 2 is set to one if a command is issued when an Adapter is open and the command is honored only when the Adapter is closed.
BIT 3	ADAPTER CLOSED. Bit 3 is set to one if a command is issued when the Adapter is closed and the command is honored only when the Adapter is open.
BIT 4	SAME COMMAND. Bit 4 is set to one if a command is issued and the same command is already executing.
BITS 5-15	These bits will be set to zero.

ADAPTER CHECK Error Interrupt

The ADAPTER CHECK Interrupt is generated when the Adapter has encountered an unrecoverable hardware or software error. The SSB is not altered when the ADAPTER CHECK Interrupt is generated. The Adapter will be in a closed state waiting to be reset.

ADAPTER CHECK information may be obtained by writing the 16-bit Address Register with the address >05E0 and then reading the next consecutive eight bytes through the Data/Auto-increment register. The Adapter check status format is shown in Figure 4-38. The bit assignments are illustrated in Figure 4-39.

ADAPTER RAM >05E0 + 0	ADAPTER CHECK
+ 2	PARAMETER 0
+ 4	PARAMETER 1
+ 6	PARAMETER 2

FIGURE 4-38. ADAPTER CHECK STATUS FORMAT

BIT 0	DIO PARITY
1	DMA READ ABORT
2	DMA WRITE ABORT
3	ILLEGAL OP CODE
4	LB PARITY ERROR
5	EM PARITY ERROR
6	SIF PARITY ERROR
7	PH PARITY ERROR
8	RECEIVE PARITY ERROR
9	XMIT PARITY ERROR
10	RING UNDERRUN
11	RING OVERRUN
12	INVALID INTERRUPT
13	INVALID ERROR INTERRUPT
14	INVALID XOP
LSB 15	RESERVED

FIGURE 4-39. ADAPTER CHECK FIELD BIT ASSIGNMENTS

Table 4-26 defines the bits in the 16-bit Adapter Check Field:

TABLE 4-26. ADAPTER CHECK BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	DIO PARITY. Bit 0 is set to one if the Adapter detects bad parity on data passed from the attached system to the Adapter through a direct I/O access. Parameters 0-2 should be ignored.
BIT 1	DMA READ ABORT. Bit 1 is set to one if the Adapter aborts a DMA read operation (from the system). This can be a result of parity errors in excess of the parity abort threshold set during initialization, bus errors in excess of the bus error abort threshold also set during initialization, or if the Adapter times out 110 seconds) waiting for the completion of a DMA bus operation (with or without an error). Parameter 0 will contain the following information: >0000 Indicates a timeout abort. >0001 Indicates a parity error abort. >0002 Indicates a bus error abort. Parameters 1-2 will contain the failing system address. This address can be within plus or minus 6 bytes of the actual failed address.
BIT 2	DMA WRITE ABORT. Bit 2 is set to one if the Adapter aborts a DMA write. The description for DMA READ ABORT (bit 1) applies to this condition also.
BIT 3	ILLEGAL OP CODE. Bit 3 is set to one if the Adapter's Communications Processor detects an illegal operation code in the Adapter's internal program. Parameters 0-2 will contain the Communications Processor registers R13, R14, and R15 respectively.
BIT 4-9	PARITY ERRORS. These bits are set to one if the Adapter detects a bus parity error on the Adapter's internal Adapter Bus. Parameters 0-2 will contain the Communications Processor registers R13, R14, and R15 respectively. The specific bit set to one (bits 4-9) depends upon the source of the error. A description of bits 4-9 and the parity error causing the bits to be set to one, follows: BIT 4 Bit 4 is set to one if the Communications Processor detects the Adapter Bus parity error. BIT 5 Not used. BIT 6 Bit 6 is set to one if the SIF detects the Adapter Bus parity error. BIT 7 Bit 7 is set to one if the PH detects the Adapter Bus parity error. BIT 8 Bit 8 is set to one if the parity error occurred when the Adapter was copying a frame from the ring. Parameter 0 will contain the buffer address. BIT 9 Bit 9 is set to one if the parity error occurred when the Adapter was transmitting on the ring. Parameter 0 will contain the buffer address.
BIT 10	RING UNDERRUN. Bit 10 is set to one if the Adapter detects an internal DMA underrun when transmitting on the ring. Parameters 0-2 should be ignored.

TABLE 4-26. ADAPTER CHECK BIT DEFINITIONS (concluded)

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 11	RING OVERRUN. Bit 11 is set to one if the Adapter detects an internal DMA overrun when receiving from the ring.
BIT 12	INVALID INTERRUPT. Bit 12 is set to one if an unrecognized interrupt was generated internal to the Adapter. Parameters 0-2 will contain the Communications Processor registers R13, R14, and R15, respectively.
SIT 13	INVALID ERROR INTERRUPT. Bit 13 is set to a one if an unrecognized error interrupt was generated. Parameters 0-2 will contain Adapter registers R13, R14, R15.
BIT 14	INVALID XOP. Bit 14 is set to one if an unrecognized XOP request was generated in the Communications Processor's code. Parameters 0-2 will contain the Communications Processor registers R13, R14, and R15, respectively.
BIT 15	RESERVED. This bit should be ignored.

4.4.7 Adapter Commands

This section describes the Adapter SCB commands and subsequent error reporting. Table 4-27 lists the available Adapter commands.

TABLE 4-27. ADAPTER COMMAND SUMMARY

FUNCTION	COMMAND
OPEN	>0003
TRANSMIT	>0004
TRANSMIT HALT	>0005
RECEIVE	>0006
CLOSE	>0007
SET GROUP ADDRESS	>0008
SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS	>0009
READ ERROR LOG	>000A
READ ADAPTER BUFFER	>000B

4.4.7.1 OPEN Command

Before the Adapter can be used for data communications, the attached system must first open the Adapter by issuing an OPEN command. The OPEN command serves to set the Adapter's various addresses and enables the receipt of frames from the ring. A RECEIVE command must be issued immediately after successful OPEN completion. The Adapter will suspend processing of all interrupt requests except reset during the OPEN process.

The OPEN options can be changed only by closing the Adapter via the CLOSE command and then re-opening the Adapter with the desired options.

OPEN Command Block

The OPEN SCB is shown in Figure 4-40. The Address Field is a 24-bit address which points to a 32-byte block of the OPEN parameter list. The high order byte of this address is ignored.

SCB ADDRESS	**+ 0**	**>0003**
	+ 2	**ADDRESS (HIGH)**
	+ 4	**ADDRESS (LOW)**

FIGURE 4-40. OPEN COMMAND SCB

Upon completion of the OPEN command, the status of the OPEN completion is loaded into the SSB address + 2.

OPEN Parameter List

Figure 4-41 defines the OPEN parameter list. Table 4-28 describes the functions of the fields within the OPEN parameter list.

BYTE 0	OPEN OPTIONS	
2	NODE ADDRESS (HIGH)	
4	NODE ADDRESS	
6	NODE ADDRESS (LOW)	
8	GROUP ADDRESS (HIGH)	
10	GROUP ADDRESS (LOW)	
12	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS (LOW)	
14	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS (LOW)	
16	RECEIVE LIST SIZE	
18	TRANSMIT LIST SIZE	
20	BUFFER SIZE	
22	EXP. RAM START ADDRESS	
24	EXP. RAM END ADDRESS	
26	XMIT BUFFER MIN COUNT	XMIT BUFFER MAX COUNT
28	PRODUCT ID ADDRESS (HIGH)	
30	PRODUCT ID ADDRESS (LOW)	

FIGURE 4-41. OPEN PARAMETER LIST

TABLE 4-28. OPEN PARAMETER FUNCTIONS

BYTE	FUNCTION
BYTE 0, 1	OPEN OPTIONS. The bit functions of the Open Options field are provided below: BIT 0 WRAP INTERFACE. Setting bit 0 to one on OPEN negates the Ring Insertion Process and causes all user transmit data to appear as user receive data. The data is transmitted on the lobe from the attached product to the wiring concentrator. This option can be used for system interface debug, system interface DMA testing, or lobe media testing. A CLOSE command must be issued to terminate WRAP mode. BIT 1 DISABLE HARD ERROR. If bit 1 is set to a one, the Ring Status HARD ERROR and TRANSMIT BEACON Interrupts will not be generated. BIT 2 DISABLE SOFT ERROR. If bit 2 is set to a one, the Ring Status SOFT ERROR Interrupt will not be generated.

TABLE 4-28. OPEN PARAMETER FUNCTIONS (continued)

BYTE	FUNCTION
	BIT 3 PASS ADAPTER MAC FRAMES. Bit 3 is used to specify to the Adapter what action is to be taken when Adapter class MAC frames are received, but are not recognized by the Adapter. If this bit is set to one the MAC frames will be passed to the attached system as normal receive data. If this bit is set to zero, the Adapter will ignore all unrecognized Adapter MAC frames, purge them from internal Adapter buffers, and transmit a negative response MAC frame to the originating station. BIT4 PASS ATTENTION MAC FRAMES. If bit 4 is set to one, all Attention MAC frames that are not equal to the last Attention MAC frame received will be passed to the system as normal receive data following normal processing by the Adapter. BIT 5 PAD ROUTING FIELD. If bit 5 is set to one, the Adapter will pad the Routing Field to 18 bytes. If no RI field is present in the received frame (as indicated by the MSB of the source address), the entire field will be padded to 18 bytes. This option is voided if the current buffer's data count is not at least 32 bytes. In this case the frame will be transferred as if the bit was set to zero. If this bit is reset to zero, the Routing Field will not be padded to 18 bytes whether present or not. BIT 6 FRAME HOLD. If bit 6 is set to one, the Adapter will wait for an entire frame to be copied from the ring before initiating the DMA transfer of the frame to the system. If this bit is a zero, then a DMA transfer will be initiated whenever an Adapter internal buffer is filled. BIT 7 CONTENDER. If bit 7 is set to one, the Adapter will participate in the Monitor Contention Process if another Adapter detects the need for contention and initiates the Monitor Contention Process. This bit has no effect if this Adapter detects the need for contention and initiates the Monitor Contention Process. BIT 8 PASS BEACON MAC FRAMES. If this bit is set to one, the Adapter will pass Beacon MAC frames if received. After passing the Beacon MAC frame, the next Beacon MAC frame will be passed only if the source address or the Beacon Type Subvector changes. BITS 9-15 RESERVED. Bits 9-15 should be reset to zero.
BYTES 2-7	NODE ADDRESS. This 6-byte field specifies the node address for the Adapter. If this address is all zeros, the Adapter will use the Burned-in-address (BIA) read from the BIA PROM. If the Node Address is not zero then the following check is made. Byte 0 bits 0, 1 must be set to "01". If any of the above checks fail, the Adapter will report a Node Address Error.

TABLE 4-28. OPEN PARAMETER FUNCTIONS (concluded)

BYTE	FUNCTION
BYTES 8-11	GROUP ADDRESS. This 32-bit field specifies the Group Address and will cause the Adapter to receive messages that are sent to the Group Address. The GROUP ADDRESS can be any value. Bit 0 is ignored by the Adapter. Group Address recognition is disabled by specifying the GROUP ADDRESS as zero.
BYTES 12-15	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS. This 32-bit field specifies the Functional Address Mask and will cause the Adapter to receive messages that are sent to the Functional Address. FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS bits 0 (the most significant bit), 30 and 31 are ignored by the Adapter. A zero value disables the Functional Address feature.
BYTES 16-17	RECEIVE LIST SIZE. This 16-bit field indicates the number of bytes the Adapter will read when obtaining a Receive List from the attached system. A decimal value of 0, 14, 20, or 26 is required. If zero, the default value of 26 is used.
BYTES 18-19	TRANSMIT LIST SIZE. This 16-bit field indicates the number of bytes the Adapter will read when obtaining a Transmit List from the attached system. A decimal value of 0, 14, 20, or 26 is required. If zero, the default value of 26 is used.
BYTES 20-21	BUFFER SIZE. This 16-bit field indicates the Adapter's internal buffer size in bytes. BUFFER SIZE must be greater than or equal to 96. The three low-order bits must be zero. If this field is zero, a default value of 112 bytes is used.
BYTES 22-23	EXPANSION RAM START ADDRESS. This 16-bit parameter defines an expansion RAM start address within the Adapter. This additional RAM may be used for transmit and/or receive buffers. If this field is zero, no external RAM is defined within the Adapter. If bit 15 is set to one, the existing internal TMS38010 RAM will not be used for transmit or receive buffers, defaulting to the expansion RAM. External RAM expansion must fall within the address range >1000 to >BFFF. The RAM start address must be on an eight-byte boundary minus two bytes (bits 13 and 14 are "11"). For example, if the expansion RAM starts at >4000, this parameter would be>4006. The expansion RAM and decode logic are tested, but if bad parity is detected, an ADAPTER CHECK Parity Error will be issued.
BYTES 24-25	EXPANSION RAM END ADDRESS. This 16-bit field specifies the ending address of Adapter expansion RAM. If the EXPANSION RAM START ADDRESS is zero, this field is ignored.
BYTE 26	TRANSMIT BUFFER MINIMUM COUNT. This byte parameter contains the number of Adapter buffers that are to be reserved as transmit buffers. These buffers will be reserved for transmit only and will never be used for receive. If zero is specified, no buffers are reserved for transmit. The minimum transmit buffer count must be equal to or less than the transmit maximum buffer count (byte 27).
BYTE 27	TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT. This byte parameter contains the maximum number of Adapter buffers that are to be used for transmit. A minimum of two buffers must be available for receive. If zero, a default value of six is used. The product of TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT and (BUFFER SIZE −8) determines the maximum size frame that the Adapter can transmit.
BYTES 28-31	PRODUCT ID ADDRESS. This 32-bit field contains a 24-bit address of the attached system Product ID. Eighteen bytes are read starting from the location specified during the OPEN command processing. After the OPEN command is complete, these 18 bytes in attached system memory may be released for other purposes. The bytes read are included in the product ID subvector of the Report Station Attachment MAC frame. This frame is transmitted in response to the Request Station Attachment MAC frame.

OPEN Completion Status

Upon completion of the OPEN command, the SSB will be loaded with the status of the OPEN completion as shown in Figure 4-42. If the OPEN command completes with an error, the attached system must wait 500 milliseconds before attempting to execute another OPEN command.

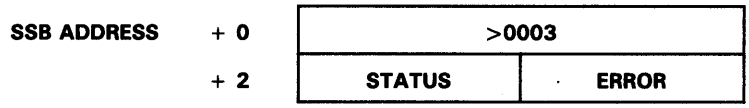


FIGURE 4-42. OPEN COMMAND SSB

The first word of the SSB contains the OPEN command op code. The second word contains a Status Byte and an Error Byte. The bit definitions of the Status Byte are shown in Table 4-29:

TABLE 4-29. OPEN STATUS BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITIONS
BIT 0	ADAPTER OPEN. Bit 0 is set to one if the OPEN command completed successfully. All other bits will be set to zero.
BIT 1	NODE ADDRESS ERROR. Bit 1 is set to one if an error was detected in the Node Address of the Open Parameters or the BIA if the node address was all zeros.
BIT 2	LIST SIZE ERROR. Bit 2 is set to one if the Receive List Size and/or the Transmit List Size are not equal to 0, 14, 20, or 26.
BIT 3	BUFFER SIZE ERROR. Bit 3 is set to one if BUFFER SIZE is less than 96 or negative, if the three low-order bits are not zero, or if there are less than two buffers specified.
BIT 4	EXPANSION RAM ERROR. Bit 4 is set to one if EXPANSION RAM is not within the range >1000 to >BFFF or if an error (other than parity) is detected in the RAM.
BIT 5	TRANSMIT BUFFER COUNT ERROR. Bit 5 is set to one if the total number of buffers minus the TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT is less than two.
BIT 6	OPEN ERROR. Bit 6 is set to one if an error is detected during the OPEN command processing. The Error byte of the SSB will specify the error.
BIT 7	RESERVED. This bit is reset to zero.

Table 4-30 specifies the Error Byte of the second word of the OPEN SSB. The Error Byte is effectively divided into two 4-bit entities. The first 4-bit field, entitled Open Phase, is set to the OPEN command processing phase when the error defined in the second 4-bit field occurs. The second 4-bit field, entitled the Open Error Code, is set to the appropriate error code if a ring-related error occurs during OPEN command processing.

TABLE 4-30. OPEN PHASES AND OPEN ERROR CODES

BITS 8	9	10	11	OPEN COMMAND PHASES
0	0	0	1	Lobe Media Test
0	0	1	0	Physical Insertion
0	0	1	1	Address Verification
0	1	0	0	Participation in ring poll
0	1	0	1	Request Initialization

BITS 12	13	14	15	OPEN ERROR CODES
0	0	0	1	Function Failure
0	0	1	0	Signal Loss
0	1	0	1	Timeout
0	1	1	0	Ring Failure
0	1	1	1	Ring Beaconing
1	0	0	0	Duplicate Node Address
1	0	0	1	Request Initialization
1	0	1	0	Remove Received

Table 4-31 describes the OPEN Error Codes:

TABLE 4-31. OPEN ERROR CODES

CODE	DESCRIPTION
FUNCTION FAILURE	This code is returned when the Adapter fails the lobe media test while transmitting through its lobe at the wiring concentrator, or if any MAC frames are received during the lobe media test phase of insertion.
SIGNAL LOSS	This code is returned if a signal loss condition is detected at the receiver input of the Adapter during the open process (either when wrapped or inserted onto the ring).
TIMEOUT	This code is returned if the Adapter fails to logically insert onto the ring before the expiration of the insertion timer. Each phase of the insertion process must complete before the insertion timer (18 seconds) expires.
RING FAILURE	This code is returned if, after becoming the Active Monitor on the ring, the Adapter times out when attempting to purge the ring. That is, the Adapter is unable to receive its own Ring Purge MAC frames.
RING BEACONING	This code is returned if the Adapter receives, after physically inserting, a Beacon MAC frame, or if a Monitor Contention timeout occurs during Phase 1.
DUPLICATE NODE ADDRESS	This code is returned if, during the Address Verification Phase, the Adapter determines that another station on the ring has the same node address.
REQUEST INITIALIZATION	This code is returned if the Adapter determines that a Ring Parameter Server (RPS) is present on the ring and the RPS does not respond to a Request Initialization MAC frame. (If no RPS is present, the Adapter will not return this code.)
REMOVE RECEIVED	This code is returned if the Adapter receives a Remove Adapter MAC frame during the insertion process.

Adapter Buffer Management

Frame data is transferred into the Adapter local memory before transmission on the ring. Data is stored in the Adapter local memory as a linked list of buffers. Because the chosen buffer size can affect overall Adapter performance, the local buffer size is a user-programmable option through the OPEN parameters. The default Adapter internal buffer size is 112 bytes. The Adapter's internal buffer format is shown in Figure 4-43. Note that the buffer size chosen for the Adapter internal buffer is independent of the data buffers used in the attached system memory. The Adapter automatically divides or combines internal memory buffers to form the minimum number of internal buffers required to represent a frame.

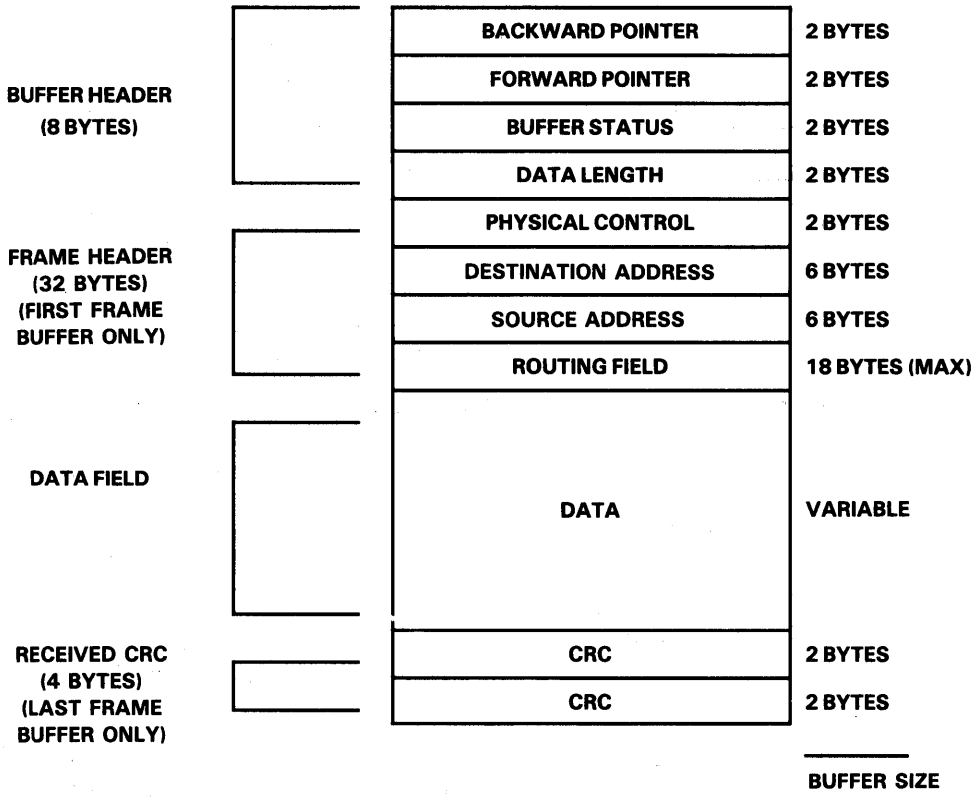


FIGURE 4-43. ADAPTER INTERNAL BUFFER FORMAT

Buffer Allocation

Without memory expansion, the Adapter has 1792 bytes of RAM available for a buffer pool for both the reception of frames from the ring media and transmission of frames to the ring media. When the attached system requests a frame transmission, buffers are taken from the buffer pool one at a time until the frame has been transferred to the Adapter. The user can specify a maximum number of these buffers to be used for transmission. The rest are dedicated receive buffers.

The TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT of the OPEN parameters must leave at least two buffers available to receive frames. A maximum of two transmit frames can be processed simultaneously by the Adapter. One will be enqueued for transmission while the other is transferred across the System Interface, or both frames can be enqueued for transmission.

The maximum number of buffers that can be taken for frame transmission is specified in the TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT of the OPEN parameters. If the system requests transmission of a single frame that causes the number of buffers required to transmit the frame, to exceed the TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT, the TRANSMIT command will be terminated with LIST ERROR.

Buffer Size

The 1792 bytes of RAM for a buffer pool will configure into sixteen 112-byte buffers. The default TRANSMIT MAXIMUM COUNT is six, allowing a transmit frame maximum information field size of 600 bytes including a 32 byte frame header and 4 byte CRC field. The attached system can alter the buffer size with the OPEN Command BUFFER SIZE parameter.

The limit on transmit frame size is specified by (BUFFER SIZE - 8) x TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT. The buffer size must be evenly divisible by eight and a minimum of two buffers must be allocated. The minimum buffer size must be 96 bytes.

Additional RAM can be added to the Adapter to increase the number of buffers and/or increase the buffer size. The RAM expansion is specified with the EXPANSION RAM parameter in the OPEN Command. To expand the buffer size greater than 1792 bytes per buffer, the internal RAM of the Communications Processor must be disabled (setting bit 15 of the EXPANSION RAM START ADDRESS to one).

4.4.7.2 TRANSMIT Command

The TRANSMIT command is used to transmit frames to other nodes. These frames are passed from the attached system to the Adapter using the logical format shown in Figure 4-44.

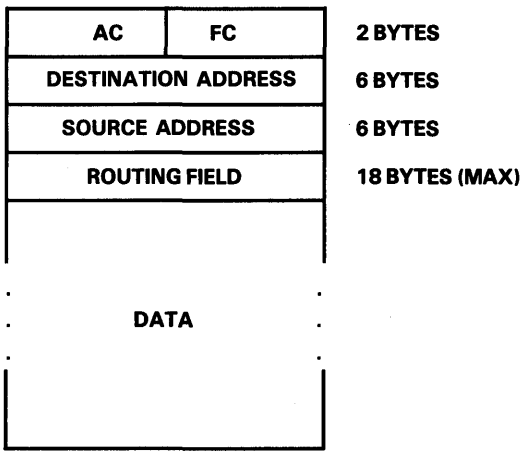


FIGURE 4-44. ATTACHED SYSTEM FRAME LOGICAL FORMAT

Table 4-32 describes the logical frame fields:

TABLE 4-32. ATTACHED SYSTEM FRAME FIELDS

FRAME	FIELD
AC	ACCESS CONTROL FIELD. This control field consists of the following bit functions: BITS 0-2 ACCESS PRIORITY. Bits 0-2 select the Access Priority for the frame. This value (0-3) must be less than or equal to the Allowed Access Priority. BITS 3-7 RESERVED. These bits should be reset to zero.
FC	FRAME CONTROL FIELD. This 8-bit field is defined in detail in Section 3. If the MAC Indicator bit is set to zero, the Enabled Function Class parameter is used to validate the Major Vector Source Class.
DESTINATION ADDRESS	This field is 48 bits wide and contains the address of the destination. The address format for this field is explained in Section 3. The address contained within this six-byte field must be organized in system memory with the highest order byte occupying the lowest system byte address and the lowest order byte occupying the highest system byte address.
SOURCE ADDRESS	This field is ignored with the exception of byte 0 bit 0 (the Routing Information Indicator). The Node Address that is supplied by the Burned-in Address (BIA) or passed during the OPEN command will be used for the remaining bits of the source address of the frame.
ROUTING FIELD	The Routing Field must be included if bit 0 of the Source Address field is set to one.
DATA	The Data portion is transmitted as specified by the attached system. The CRC, Ending Delimiter, and FS are appended to the data by the Adapter.

4

Transmit Command Block

The TRANSMIT command will be rejected with Adapter COMMAND REJECT STATUS if the Adapter has not been opened, if there is already an executing TRANSMIT command, or if the address passed in the SCB is not aligned on a 16-bit boundary.

The System Command Block for a TRANSMIT command is shown in Figure 4-45.

SCB ADDRESS	**+0**	**>0004**
	+2	**ADDRESS (HIGH)**
	+4	**ADDRESS (LOW)**

FIGURE 4-45. TRANSMIT SCB

ADDRESS is a 32-bit field containing a 24-bit address pointer to the Transmit Parameter List Chain. The high-order byte of the ADDRESS field is ignored. This address must be word-aligned. The Transmit Parameter List Chain is a 14 to 26-byte block which is used during the transmission of a single frame. A chained Transmit Parameter List is created by the attached system; it passes the first address in TRANSMIT SCB. One Transmit Parameter List cannot be used to transmit more than one frame. Several Transmit Parameter Lists can be used to transmit a single frame.

Transmit Parameter List

The Transmit Parameter List is shown in Figure 4-46.

FORWARD POINTER (HIGH)	
FORWARD POINTER (LOW)	
TRANSMIT CSTAT	
FRAME SIZE	
1	DATA COUNT
DATA ADDRESS (HIGH)	
DATA ADDRESS (LOW)	
1	DATA COUNT
DATA ADDRESS (HIGH)	
DATA ADDRESS (LOW)	
0	DATA COUNT
DATA ADDRESS (HIGH)	
DATA ADDRESS (LOW)	

FIGURE 4-46. TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST

Table 4-33 describes each of the fields in the TRANSMIT Parameter List.

TABLE 4-33. TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST FIELDS

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
FORWARD POINTER	This 32-bit field contains a 24-bit address which is a pointer to the next Transmit Parameter List in the chain. When this address is ODD, it denotes that the current Transmit List is the last in the chain. The Adapter will continue to process Transmit Lists until it reads an ODD address. It will then wait for the last frame (list with ODD address) to be transmitted onto the ring. If the system updates the FORWARD POINTER before the last frame is transmitted, the Adapter will continue to process the Transmit Lists. If not, the TRANSMIT command will complete and another must be issued to continue. The system must update the FORWARD POINTER from the most significant byte to the least significant byte to ensure that the address is valid before changing to an EVEN address. Frames, not lists that define partial frames, should be added to the chain. The FORWARD POINTER should not be initialized to point to itself, as problems may occur due to the pipelined nature of list processing employed by the Adapter. Transmit Lists must be aligned on 16-bit boundaries. The Adapter will not alter this parameter.
FRAME SIZE	This 16-bit field contains the number of bytes to be transmitted as a frame. The FRAME SIZE value includes AC/FC, DESTINATION and SOURCE ADDRESS, the Routing Field, and the Information Field. FRAME SIZE does not include CRC, FS, or EDEL. This parameter is valid only for the Transmit List that has the FRAME START bit set, however, FRAME SIZE must NOT be zero in any list. The Adapter will not alter this parameter. A frame size of zero is not valid. The maximum frame size which can be transmitted is (BUFFER SIZE -8) $\times$ TRANSMIT BUFFER MAXIMUM COUNT.
DATA COUNT	This 16-bit field contains the number of bytes to be transmitted starting from the address defined in the DATA ADDRESS parameter. There can be a maximum of three DATA COUNT/DATA ADDRESS parameters to provide a gather write capability per Transmit List (not frame). If Bit 0 is zero, it is the last DATA COUNT in the Transmit List. Bit 0 of the third DATA COUNT is ignored. A DATA COUNT of 0 is permitted (with or without Bit 0 set). The sum of the used DATA COUNT parameters must equal the FRAME SIZE specified on the Start of Frame List. The DATA COUNT can be even or odd. The Adapter will not alter this parameter.
DATA ADDRESS	This 32-bit field contains the 24-bit address of the data to be transmitted. DATA ADDRESS may be even or odd. The Adapter will not alter this parameter.
TRANSMIT CSTAT	TRANSMIT COMMAND/STATUS. This 16-bit parameter is set by the attached system when the Transmit List is created. It is over-written by the Adapter to report frame completion status. When initially set by the attached system, this parameter field is referred to as the TRANSMIT CSTAT REQUEST field. After a frame completes transmission, the Adapter will overwrite bits in this field only in the list which starts the frame. These bits indicate the completion status of the frame. This parameter field is referred to as the TRANSMIT CSTAT COMPLETE. Note that command and status information within the TRANSMIT CSTAT field is associated with frames and not the TRANSMIT command directly.

TABLE 4-33.TRANSMIT PARAMETER LIST FIELDS (concluded)

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
	TRANSMIT CSTAT REQUEST. The CSTAT bits are set by the attached system as follows: BIT 0 VALID.The Adapter will wait for bit 0 to be set to a one before processing the current Transmit List. The attached system may have to issue a TRANSMIT VALID Interrupt Request when changing VALID bits from a zero to a one. This bit is ignored unless the list is an anticipated start of frame (i.e. follows End of Frame or is first list of command). BIT 1 FRAME COMPLETE. Bit 1 should be reset to zero. BIT 2 START OF FRAME. Bit 2 must be set to one for a list which defines the start of a frame. BIT 3 END OF FRAME. Bit 3 must be set to one for a list which defines the end of a frame. BIT 4 FRAME INTERRUPT. Setting bit 4 to one will cause the Adapter to interrupt when the frame has been transmitted. rather than waiting for all frames on the chain to be transmitted. This bit is ignored unless START OF FRAME (bit 2) is a one. BIT 5-15 RESERVED. Bits 5-15 should be set to zero. TRANSMIT CSTAT COMPLETE. This 16-bit field is loaded, on a list which starts a frame only, with the completion code for the transmitted frame (not TRANSMIT command) when the Adapter has transmitted a frame. CSTATs which are not in a list which defines the start of a frame, are not altered by the Adapter. The TRANSMIT CSTAT COMPLETE bit definitions are shown below. BIT 0 VALID. Bit 0 is reset to zero. BIT 1 COMPLETE. Bit 1 is set to one. BIT 2 FRAME START. Bit 2 is the same as specified in CSTAT REQUEST. BIT 3 FRAME END. Bit 3 is the same as specified in CSTAT REQUEST. BIT 4 INTERRUPT (FRAME). Bit 4 is the same as specified in CSTAT REQUEST. BIT 5 TRANSMIT ERROR. Bit 5 is set to one if the frame transmit or strip process was in error. BITS 6-7 RESERVED. Bits 6-7 are the same as that specified in the CSTAT REQUEST. BIT 8-15 STRIP FS. Bits 8-15 contain a copy of the FS byte returned when the transmitted frame is stripped off the ring. If TRANSMIT ERROR is set, the FS should be ignored.

Transmit Completion

An interrupt will be generated for the TRANSMIT command when:

- All the frames specified by the Transmit Parameter List Chain have been transmitted, or
- The TRANSMIT HALT command has completed, or
- A frame has been transmitted that had FRAME INTERRUPT set in CSTAT, or
- A list error is detected.

The SSB will be loaded as shown in Figure 4-47.

SSB ADDRESS	**+ 0**	**>0004**
	+ 2	**XMIT COMPLETE**
	+ 4	**LIST ADDRESS (HIGH)**
	+ 6	**LIST ADDRESS (LOW)**

FIGURE 4-47. TRANSMIT SSB

The Transmit Complete Field bit definitions are provided in the following table:

TABLE 4-34. TRANSMIT COMPLETE FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	COMMAND COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set to one to indicate that the TRANSMIT command has completed. The system must issue another TRANSMIT command to transmit additional frames. LIST ADDRESS will contain the address of the last Transmit List processed. This bit is also set as a result of a TRANSMIT HALT command. If a TRANSMIT HALT is issued and no frames have been transmitted, LIST ADDRESS will be cleared. The COMMAND COMPLETE and FRAME COMPLETE bits are not set at the same time if a TRANSMIT HALT is issued and no frames have been transmitted.
BIT 1	FRAME COMPLETE. Bit 1 is set to one to indicate that a frame has been transmitted and the FRAME INTERRUPT bit was set in CSTAT. Since frames on the Transmit Chain can be transmitted faster than the system can respond to the interrupts and/or faster than the Adapter can cause the interrupts, the FRAME COMPLETE interrupt can report the completion of more than one frame at a time. LIST ADDRESS will contain the address of the last Transmit List of the last frame transmitted. If lists with the FRAME INTERRUPT set are intermixed with lists that do not have FRAME INTERRUPT set, FRAME COMPLETE can include frames that did not have FRAME INTERRUPT set.
BIT 2	LIST ERROR. Bit 2 is set to one if there is an error in one of the lists that comprise a frame. Bits 8-13 define the error. The TRANSMIT command will be terminated and the system must issue another TRANSMIT command to continue transmission. LIST ADDRESS will contain the address of the list that starts the frame with parameter errors. The LIST ERROR interrupt will not occur until all other transmit status has been posted. The CSTATs of lists found to be in error are not altered by the Adapter. Neither the FRAME COMPLETE nor the COMMAND COMPLETE bits will be set with LIST ERROR.
BIT 3-7	RESERVED. Bits 3-7 are reset to zero.
BIT 8	FRAME SIZE. Bit 8 is set to one if FRAME SIZE does not equal the sum of the DATA COUNTS or if the frame size is less than the required header plus one byte of Information Field (15 bytes plus Routing Field), or a frame size of zero was specified.
BIT 9	TRANSMIT THRESHOLD. Bit 9 is set to one if a single frame size exceeds the buffer count specified in the OPEN parameter TRANSMIT BUFFER MAX COUNT.
BIT 10	ODD ADDRESS. Bit 10 is set to one if an odd FORWARD POINTER is read on a list that is not Frame End.
BIT 11	FRAME START. Bit 11 is set to one if the FRAME START bit is set to one on a list that is not an anticipated start of frame or the FRAME START bit is not set to one on an anticipated start of frame.
BIT 12	ACCESS PRIORITY ERROR. Bit 12 is set to one if the Access Priority requested has not been allowed.
BIT 13	UNENABLED MAC FRAME. Bit 13 is set to one if the Adapter is not enabled to send a MAC Frame with the Source Class specified, if the MAC frame has a source class of zero, or if the MAC frame PCF ATTN field is greater than one.
BIT 14	ILLEGAL FRAME FORMAT. If bit 0 of the FC field was set to one, the transmit command will terminate with this bit set to one.
BIT 15	RESERVED. Bit 15 is reset to zero.

The attached system can create a chain of a fixed number of Transmit Lists, set the last list FORWARD POINTER to the address of the first list, and manipulate the VALID bits to initiate transmission.

When the Adapter reads a Frame Start List with the VALID bit reset to zero, it will suspend processing until a TRANSMIT VALID Interrupt Request is issued by the system by writing to the INTERRUPT ADAPTER (bit 0) and the TRANSMIT VALID (bit 7) bits of the Interrupt register. The system is not notified of this condition. The TRANSMIT VALID Interrupt should be issued when changing one or more VALID bits from zero to one, when the list is on the Transmit Chain.

The TRANSMIT VALID interrupt can be issued at any time and the Adapter will ignore the interrupt if it is not waiting for a VALID bit transition.

If a fixed Transmit Chain technique is utilized and more than one list is used to transmit a single frame, lists that do not have the FRAME START bit set should have the VALID bit reset to zero. Since the Adapter does not alter the CSTAT field for lists that are not Start of Frame, re-validating of the start of frame list will also release the remaining frame lists if the VALID bits were initially set.

A chain should not be made with a one frame list. Due to the pipelined nature of transmit list processing, (i.e. the first frame is transmitted while the second frame is concurrently DMAed from system memory) this technique can cause the Adapter to erroneously send the same frame twice.

The DATA ADDRESS parameters in the Transmit List can be on even or odd byte boundaries. If the Adapter is to read data from an even byte system address to an internal odd byte address (due to an odd Data Count), it will transfer a single byte and transfer the remaining data starting at an odd system address.

Since Transmit Lists can be added dynamically to the Transmit Chain, a test should be made following COMMAND COMPLETE to determine if the Adapter has processed all frames that the attached system has placed on the chain. If frames have been added to the chain subsequent to the TRANSMIT command, the FORWARD POINTER at the address contained in LIST ADDRESS should be examined following COMMAND COMPLETE. If the FORWARD POINTER is ODD, all frames have been transmitted. If the FORWARD POINTER is EVEN, another TRANSMIT command should be executed with the SCB pointer to the Transmit List Chain set equal to that FORWARD POINTER.

Transmit List Examples

Three examples (Figures 4-48 to 4-50) of possible list formats will be illustrated and all result in the transmission of a single 400-byte frame. Figure 4-50 is configured such that the attached system buffer space is appended to a 14-byte list.

The fourth example (Figure 4-51) illustrates two lists chained together to form the Transmit Chain for transmission of two frames.

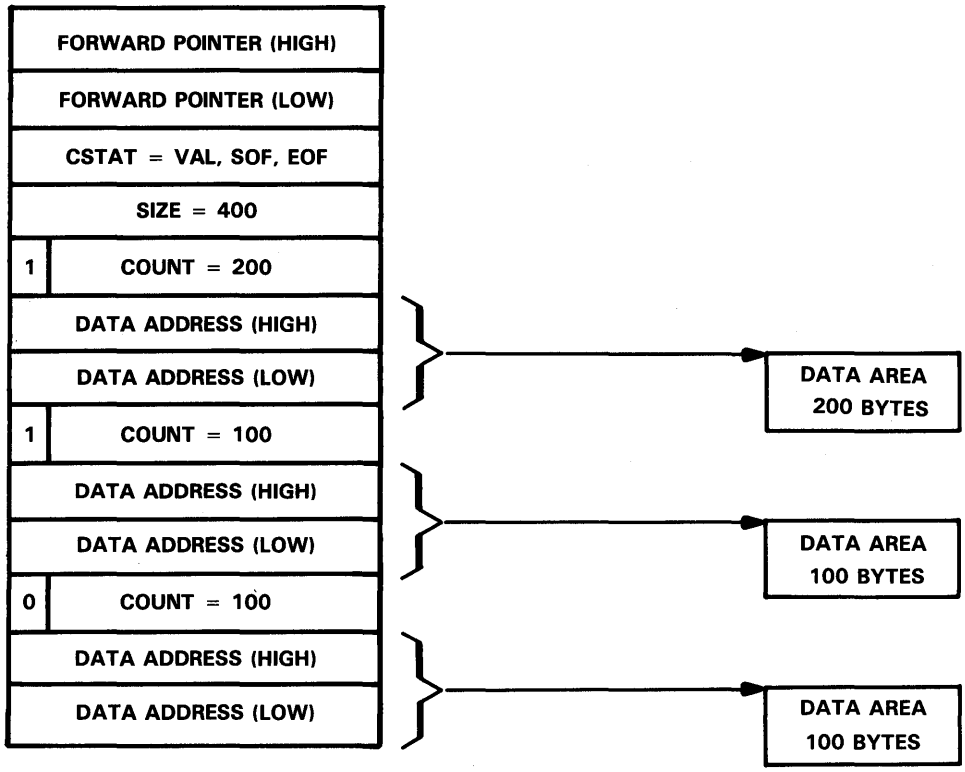


FIGURE 4-48. TRANSMIT LIST FORMAT: EXAMPLE 1

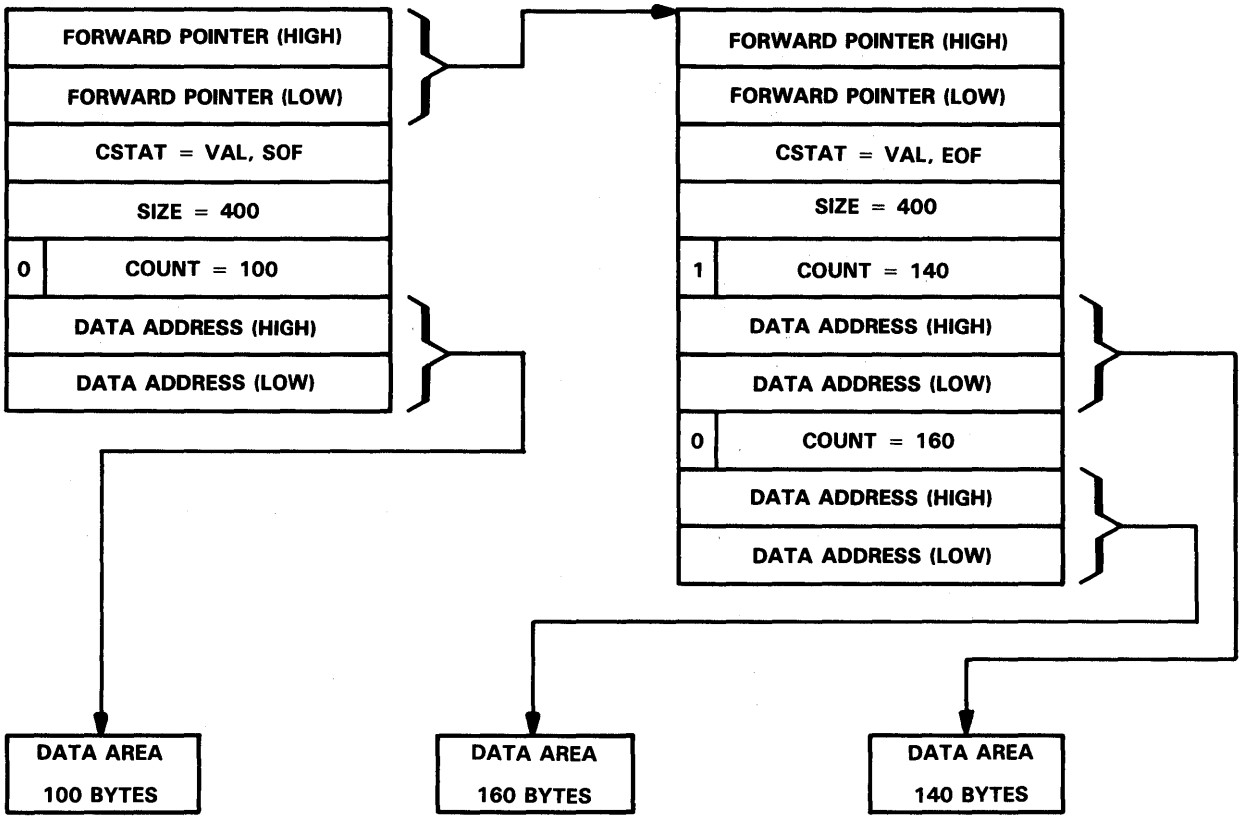


FIGURE 4-49. TRANSMIT LIST FORMAT: EXAMPLE 2

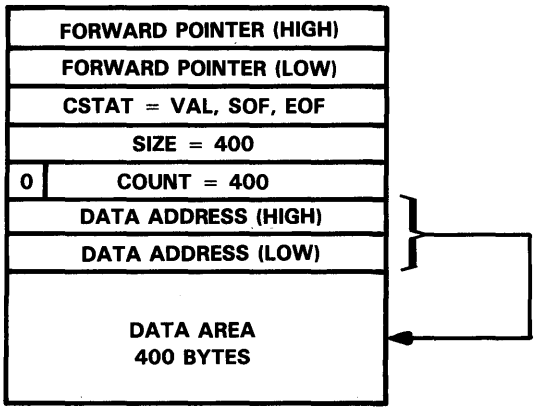


FIGURE 4-50. TRANSMIT LIST FORMAT: EXAMPLE 3

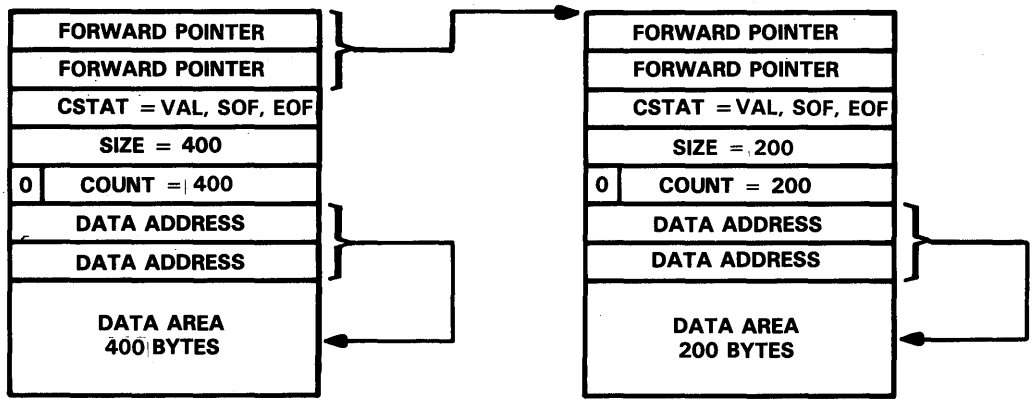


FIGURE 4-51. TRANSMIT LIST FORMAT: EXAMPLE 4

4.4.7.3 TRANSMIT HALT Command

The TRANSMIT HALT command is used to interrupt the Transmit List chain. Following recognition of this command, the Adapter will terminate the transmit chain as soon as possible. Any frames queued in the Adapter will be purged and the TRANSMIT command will be terminated with COMMAND COMPLETE status. If there is not an executing TRANSMIT command, TRANSMIT HALT is ignored.

TRANSMIT HALT Command Block

The SCB for a TRANSMIT HALT command is shown in Figure 4-52.

SCB ADDRESS		
	+ 0	>0005
	+ 2	----
	+ 4	----

FIGURE 4-52. TRANSMIT HALT COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit field following the COMMAND field of the SCB is read by the Adapter, but ignored.

4.4.7.4 RECEIVE Command

The RECEIVE command is used to receive frames from other stations on the ring. This command normally is issued only once (after OPEN), since receive data is dynamically added to a Receive Parameter List Chain. The RECEIVE command can be terminated by issuing the CLOSE command.

The logical format of received frames passed across the system interface is identical to the logical format of transmit frames, as shown in Figure 4-44.

The AC and FC, destination address and source address fields, are transferred to the attached system as they were received from the ring.

The Routing Field is passed to the attached system for all frames, if received. If the PAD ROUTING FIELD option is specified during OPEN,the routing field will be padded to 18 bytes. If the frame does not contain a Routing Field the field will still be padded to 18 bytes. The padding will not alter the contents of the system's data buffer.

The RECEIVE command will be rejected with Adapter COMMAND REJECT STATUS under the following conditions:

- If the Adapter has not been opened, or
- If there is already an executing RECEIVE command, or
- If the address passed in the SCB is not word aligned.

RECEIVE Command Block

The SCB for a RECEIVE command is shown in Figure 4-53.

SCB ADDRESS	**+ 0**	**>0006**
	+ 2	**ADDRESS (HIGH)**
	+ 4	**ADDRESS (LOW)**

FIGURE 4-53. RECEIVE COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit ADDRESS field contains a 24-bit address pointer to a Receive Parameter List Chain. The high-order byte of this field is ignored. This address must be word-aligned.

RECEIVE Parameter List

The attaching system creates a chained Receive Parameter List as shown in Figure 4-54. The address of the Receive Parameter list is in the RECEIVE command SCB. A single Receive Parameter List cannot be used to receive more than one frame. Several Receive Parameter Lists can be used to receive a single frame.

The Receive Parameter List is a 14, 20 or 26-byte data structure as shown in Figure 4-54.

FORWARD POINTER		HIGH
FORWARD POINTER		LOW
RECEIVE CSTAT		
FRAME SIZE		
1	DATA COUNT	
DATA ADDRESS		HIGH
DATA ADDRESS		LOW
1	DATA COUNT	
DATA ADDRESS		HIGH
DATA ADDRESS		LOW
0	DATA COUNT	
DATA ADDRESS		HIGH
DATA ADDRESS		LOW

FIGURE 4-54. RECEIVE PARAMETER LIST

Table 4-35 describes each of the fields in the RECEIVE Parameter List.

TABLE 4-35. RECEIVE PARAMETER LIST FIELD DEFINITIONS

POINTER	DEFINITION
FORWARD POINTER	This 32-bit field contains a 24-bit address pointer to the next RECEIVE Parameter List in the chain. When this address is odd, it denotes that the current RECEIVE Parameter List is the last in the chain. The Adapter will DMA write a received frame into the address(es) specified in the RECEIVE List and then check the FORWARD POINTER. If it is odd, the Adapter will interrupt the system with a request to place additional lists on the chain. The Adapter will not terminate the RECEIVE command and will wait for a RECEIVE CONTINUE Interrupt Request to resume the receive operation. The attached system must update the FORWARD POINTER from the most significant byte to the least significant byte to ensure that the address is valid before changing to an EVEN address. Receive Lists must be aligned on 16-bit boundaries. The Adapter will not alter this parameter.
FRAME SIZE	This 16-bit field contains the number of bytes in the received frame. The Adapter will store this count in the Receive List which starts a new frame. FRAME SIZE includes AC, FC, Destination and Source Address, Routing Field (if any), pad length (if PAD ROUTING FIELD specified), and the Data Field. FRAME SIZE does not include CRC, FS, or EDEL.
DATA COUNT	This 16-bit field contains the maximum number of bytes that can be stored starting at the address defined in the DATA ADDRESS parameter. There can be a maximum of three DATA COUNT/DATA ADDRESS parameters to provide a scatter write capability per Received List (not frame). If bit 0 is cleared, it is the last DATA COUNT in the Receive List. Bit 0 of the third DATA COUNT is ignored. A zero DATA COUNT is permitted (with or without Bit 0 set). The DATA COUNT can be even or odd. The Adapter will not alter this parameter. If the PAD ROUTING FIELD option is specified during the OPEN command, then the first DATA COUNT in a Receive List used for start of frame must be at least 32. This allows space for the AC, FC, DESTINATION ADDRESS, SOURCE ADDRESS, and the ROUTING FIELD which will be padded to 18 bytes. If the DATA COUNT is less than 32, the option will be voided.
DATA ADDRESS	This 32-bit field contains the address of the data to be received. DATA ADDRESS may be even or odd. The Adapter will not alter this parameter.
RECEIVE CSTAT	RECEIVE COMMAND/STATUS. This 16-bit parameter is set by the attached system when the Receive List is created and is over-written by the Adapter to report frame completion status. When initially set by the attached system, this parameter field is referred to as the RECEIVE CSTAT REQUEST field. After receiving a frame, the Adapter will overwrite bits in this field only in the list which starts a frame and the list which ends a frame. However, if the last list used contained an odd FORWARD POINTER, then this field will not be written until additional lists are added to the chain (FORWARD POINTER made even and RECEIVE CONTINUE written to the Interrupt Register). These bits indicate the completion status of the frame. This parameter field is referred to as the RECEIVE CSTAT COMPLETE. Note that command and status information within the RECEIVE CSTAT field is associated with frames and not directly with the RECEIVE command.

TABLE 4-35. RECEIVE PARAMETER LIST FIELD DEFINITIONS (concluded)

POINTER	DEFINITION
	RECEIVE CSTAT REQUEST. The RECEIVE CSTAT REQUEST bit definitions are set by the attached system as shown below: BIT 0 VALID. The Adapter will wait for bit 0 to be set before placing data in the current Receive List. A RECEIVE VALID Interrupt Request must be issued by the attaching system when changing VALID bits. This bit is examined for every Receive List. BIT 1 COMPLETE. Bit 1 should be reset to zero. BIT 2 FRAME START. Bit 2 should be reset to zero. BIT 3 FRAME END. Bit 3 should be reset to zero. BIT 4 INTERRUPT (FRAME). Bit 4, when set to one, will cause the Adapter to interrupt when the frame has been received. This bit is ignored unless the list starts a frame. BIT 5 INTERFRAME WAIT. Setting this bit to one will cause the Adapter to interrupt when a frame has been received. The FRAME COMPLETE bit (bit 0) will set in the SSB when this occurs. The Adapter will assume a suspended state waiting for the RECEIVE CONTINUE bit of the Interrupt Register to be set to one prior to resuming frame transfer. The next list to be used is addressed by the FORWARD POINTER of the list which has the FRAME END bit set. This bit is ignored in lists which are not start of frame lists. BITS 6-15 RESERVED. Bits 6-15 should be set to zero. RECEIVE CSTAT COMPLETE When a frame has been transferred to the system, the CSTATs for the Lists which start and end a frame are updated by the Adapter as follows: BIT 0 VALID. Bit 0 is reset to zero. BIT 1 FRAME COMPLETE. Bit 1 is set to one. BIT 2 FRAME START. Bit 2 is set to one on the list that starts a frame. BIT 3 FRAME END. Bit 3 is set to one on the list that ends a frame. BITS 4-7 RESERVED. Bits 4-7 are reset to zero. BITS 8-13 RECEIVED FS. When a FRAME START bit is reset to zero, these bits will also be reset to zero. When FRAME START is set to one, these bits will contain the high order 6-bits of the received FS. BITS 14-15 RESERVED. Bits 14-15 should be ignored.

RECEIVE Completion

An interrupt will be generated for the RECEIVE command when the Receive Parameter List chain has ended (odd address in FORWARD POINTER) or when a frame is copied into a list that has Frame Interrupt set in the CSTAT parameter. Note that the RECEIVE command NEVER terminates but rather enters a suspended state waiting for the RECEIVE VALID or the RECEIVE CONTINUE bits of the Interrupt register to be set.

The SSB upon receive completion will be loaded as shown in Figure 4-55.

SSB ADDRESS		
	+ 0	>0006
	+ 2	RECEIVE COMPLETE
	+ 4	LIST ADDRESS
	+ 6	LIST ADDRESS

FIGURE 4-55. RECEIVE COMMAND SSB

The RECEIVE COMPLETE Field bit definitions are provided in Table 4-36.

TABLE 4-36. RECEIVE COMPLETE FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	FRAME COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set to one to indicate that a frame has been received and the FRAME INTERRUPT or INTERFRAME WAIT bit was set in CSTAT. Since frames can be received and transferred faster than the attached system can respond to the interrupts and/or faster than the Adapter can cause the interrupts, the FRAME COMPLETE interrupt can report the completion of more than one frame at a time. The 32-bit LIST ADDRESS will contain the address of the last Receive List of the last frame transferred to the system. If lists with the FRAME INTERRUPT bit set are intermixed with lists that do not have FRAME INTERRUPT set, FRAME COMPLETE can include frames that did not have FRAME INTERRUPT set. FRAME COMPLETE will not be set with the RECEIVE SUSPENDED bit also set.
BIT 1	RECEIVE SUSPENDED. Bit 1 is set to one when the Adapter detects an odd address in the Receive Parameter List Chain. LIST ADDRESS will contain the address of the list that has an odd FORWARD POINTER. The attached system must update the FORWARD POINTER and issue a RECEIVE CONTINUE Interrupt Request in order to continue. RECEIVE SUSPENDED will not be set with the FRAME COMPLETE bit also set.
BITS 2-15	RESERVED. Bits 2-15 are reset to zero.

The examples (Figure 4-48 to Figure 4-51) for Transmit Parameter List Formats can also be applied to Receive Parameter Lists Formats.

An attached system can create a chain of a fixed number of Receive Parameter Lists by setting the last list FORWARD POINTER to the address of the first list, and manipulate the VALID bits appropriately to initiate reception.

When the Adapter reads any list with VALID reset to zero, it will suspend processing until a RECEIVE VALID Interrupt Request is issued by the system. The attached system is not notified of this condition. The RECEIVE VALID Interrupt must be issued when changing the condition of one or more VALID bits from 0 to 1 when the list is on the Receive Chain.

The RECEIVE VALID Interrupt can be issued at any time and the Adapter will ignore the interrupt if it is not waiting for a transition in the VALID bit.

If a fixed Receive Chain technique is utilized and more than one list is used to receive a single frame, caution should be exercised when validating the lists. Since the Adapter does not alter the CSTAT for lists that are not the start of a frame or the end of a frame, re-validation of the start of frame list would also release the middle of frame lists.

When creating a circular chain of receive lists, the sum of the DATA COUNT fields must be equal to or greater than the largest frame to be received. Since the CSTAT fields are not updated by the Adapter until a frame has been transferred, violating this rule will cause the Adapter to overwrite portions of the same frame being transferred (i.e. the frame will wrap back upon itself). Thus, data will be lost in this case.

The DATA ADDRESS parameters in the Receive List can be an even or odd byte alignment.

If the Adapter is to write data to an even system address from an internal odd address (i.e. odd DATA COUNT), then it will transfer a single byte and then transfer the remaining data starting at an odd system address.

The RECEIVE CONTINUE Interrupt can be issued at any time and the Adapter will ignore the interrupt if it is not waiting for a FORWARD POINTER transition from an odd to even address.

Header Routing

Some systems may need to receive only a frame header (or header and a portion of the data) and route the remainder of the frame data according to the contents of the header. This can be accomplished as follows:

1. Set FRAME HOLD in the Open Command.
2. Post a Receive List that has an odd FORWARD POINTER and one DATA COUNT/DATA ADDRESS parameter sufficient to hold the desired header.
3. The Adapter will use the list and interrupt the system with RECEIVE SUSPENDED, leaving the CSTAT unchanged. (Should the entire frame be less than or equal to DATA COUNT, a FRAME COMPLETE interrupt will be posted if requested.)
4. Following RECEIVE SUSPENDED, the system can examine the header and determine the frame destination. The frame size field of the receive parameter list will not be updated by the Adapter and is not valid.
5. Post additional lists to receive the data by writing a non-odd address in the FORWARD POINTER field, followed by another header list with an odd FORWARD POINTER.
6. Issue a RECEIVE CONTINUE Interrupt Request.
7. When the frame has been transferred, a FRAME COMPLETE interrupt will occur (if requested).

4.4.7.5 CLOSE Command

The CLOSE command is used to terminate transmission on the ring or to terminate OPEN with the wrap option, and will purge all frames in the Adapter. The CLOSE command will be rejected with COMMAND REJECT STATUS if the Adapter is not open.

CLOSE Command Block

The SCB for a CLOSE command is shown in Figure 4-56.

SCB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0007
	+ 2	---
	+ 4	---

FIGURE 4-56. CLOSE COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit field following the COMMAND field is read by the Adapter, but ignored.

CLOSE Completion

Upon close completion the SSB will be loaded with Close Completion status as shown in Figure 4-57.

SSB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0007
	+ 2	CLOSE COMPLETION

FIGURE 4-57. CLOSE COMMAND SSB

Table 4-37 describes the CLOSE COMPLETION field bit definitions.

TABLE 4-37. CLOSE COMPLETION FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	ADAPTER CLOSED. Bit 0 is set to one when the CLOSE command is completed.
BITS 1-15	RESERVED. Bits 1-15 are reset to zero.

4

4.4.7.6 SET GROUP ADDRESS Command

The SET GROUP ADDRESS command is used to set the Adapter Group Address if it is to be changed after OPEN. The SET GROUP ADDRESS command will be rejected with COMMAND REJECT STATUS if the Adapter is not open.

SET GROUP ADDRESS Command Block

The SCB for a SET GROUP ADDRESS command is shown in Figure 4-58.

SCB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0008
	+ 2	GROUP ADDRESS (HIGH)
	+ 4	GROUP ADDRESS (LOW)

FIGURE 4-58. SET GROUP ADDRESS COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit address following the COMMAND field in the SCB is the Group Address and is stored in the Adapter Group Address Register. Bit zero is ignored.

SET GROUP ADDRESS Completion

Upon completion of the SET GROUP ADDRESS command, the SSB will be loaded with SET GROUP ADDRESS completion status as depicted in Figure 4-59.

SSB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0008
	+ 2	SET GRP ADDR COMP

FIGURE 4-59. SET GROUP ADDRESS COMMAND SSB

Table 4-38 describes the SET GROUP ADDRESS completion field bit definitions.

TABLE 4-38. SET GROUP ADDRESS COMPLETION FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	COMMAND COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set when the SET GROUP ADDRESS command is completed.
BITS 1-15	RESERVED. Bits 1-15 are reset to zero.

4.4.7.7 SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS Command

The SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS command is used to set and reset the Adapter Functional Address if it is to be changed after OPEN. The SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS command will be rejected with COMMAND REJECT STATUS if the Adapter is not open.

SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS Command Block

The SCB for a SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS command is shown in Figure 4-60.

SCB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0009
	+ 2	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS (HIGH)
	+ 4	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS (LOW)

FIGURE 4-60. SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit address following the COMMAND field in the SCB is the Functional Address and is stored in the Adapter's internal Functional Address Register. Bit 31 (least-significant bit) and bit 30 (corresponding to the Active Monitor and Ring Parameter Server respectively) are ignored. Bit 0 is also ignored.

SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS Completion.

Upon completion of the SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS command, the SSB will be loaded with SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS completion status as depicted in Figure 4-61.

SSB ADDRESS	+ 0	>0009
	+ 2	SET FTN ADDR COMP

FIGURE 4-61. SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS COMMAND SSB

Table 4-39 describes the SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS Completion field bit definitions.

TABLE 4-39 SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS COMPLETION FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	COMMAND COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set when the SET FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS command is completed.
BITS 1-15	RESERVED. Bits 1-15 are reset to zero.

4.4.7.8 READ ERROR LOG Command

The READ ERROR LOG command is used to read and reset the Adapter Attached Product Error Log. After READ ERROR LOG command completion, the Error Log will be all zeros.

READ ERROR LOG Command Block

The SCB for a READ ERROR LOG command is shown in Figure 4-62.

SCB ADDRESS	+ 0	>000A
	+ 2	ADDRESS (HIGH)
	+ 4	ADDRESS (LOW)

FIGURE 4-62. READ ERROR LOG COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit ADDRESS field contains a 24-bit starting address location where the 14-byte Error Log will be written in attached system memory. The 14-byte Error Log table is shown in Figure 4-63. See Table 4-40 for a description of these error counts.

BYTE			
	+ 0	LINE ERROR	RESERVED
	+ 2	BURST ERROR	ARI/FCI ERROR
	+ 4	RESERVED	RESERVED
	+ 6	LOST FRAME ERROR	RECEIVE CONGESTION ERROR
	+ 8	FRAME COPIED ERROR	RESERVED
	+ 10	TOKEN ERROR	RESERVED
	+ 12	DMA BUS ERRORS	DMA PARITY ERRORS

FIGURE 4-63. ERROR LOG TABLE

TABLE 4-40. READ ERROR LOG ERROR COUNTERS

COUNTER	DESCRIPTION
LINE ERROR	The line error counter is contained in all adapter configurations. It is incremented no more than once per frame whenever: 1) a frame is repeated or copied, or 2) the Error Detected Indicator (EDI) is zero in the incoming frame, or 3) one of the following conditions exists: 1. A code violation exists between the Starting Delimiter (SDEL) and the Ending Delimiter (EDEL) of the frame. 2. A code violation exists in a token. 3. A Frame Check Sequence (FCS) error exits.
BURST ERROR	The burst error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when the Adapter detects the absence of transitions for five half-bit times between SDEL and EDEL. Only one Adapter detects the burst five condition because the Adapter that detects a burst four condition (four half-bit times without transitions) conditions its transmitter to transmit idles if the burst five condition is detected.
ARI/FCI SET ERROR	The ARI/FCI set error counter is incremented when an Adapter receives more than one AMP or SMP MAC frame with ARI/FCI equal to zero without first receiving an intervening AMP MAC frame. The counter indicates that the up-stream Adapter is unable to set its ARI/FCI bits in a frame that it has copied.
LOST FRAME ERROR	The lost frame error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter is in transmit (stripping) mode and fails to receive the end of the frame it transmitted.
RECEIVE CONGESTION	The receive congestion error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter in the repeat mode recognizes a frame addressed to its specific address, but has no buffer space available to copy the frame (Adapter congestion).
FRAME COPIED	The frame copied error counter is contained in all Adapter configurations and is incremented when an Adapter in the receive/repeat mode recognizes a frame addressed to its specific address, but finds the ARI bits not equal to 00 (possible line hit or duplicate address).
TOKEN ERROR	This one-byte counter is contained in Active Monitor Adapter configurations and is incremented when the Active Monitor function detects an error with the token protocol as follows: 1. A token with priority of non-zero and the MONITOR COUNT bit equals one. 2. A frame and the MONITOR COUNT bit equals one. 3. No token or frame is received within a 10 millisecond window. 4. The starting delimiter/token sequence has a code violation (in an area where code violations must not exist).
DMA BUS ERRORS	The DMA Bus Error Counter counts the occurances of DMA bus errors which do not exceed the abort thresholds as specified in the initialization parameters.
DMA PARITY ERRORS	The DMA Parity Error Counter counts the occurances of DMA parity errors which do not exceed the abort thresholds as specified in the initialization parameters.

READ ERROR LOG Completion

Upon completion of the READ ERROR LOG command, the SSB will be loaded with READ ERROR LOG completion status as shown in Figure 4-64.

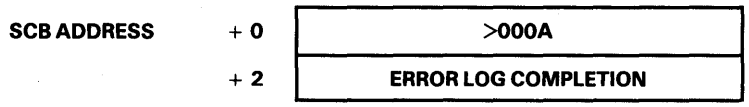


FIGURE 4-64. READ ERROR LOG COMMAND SSB

Table 4-41 describes the READ ERROR LOG COMPLETION field bit definitions.

TABLE 4-41. READ ERROR LOG COMPLETION FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	COMMAND COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set to one when the READ ERROR LOG command is completed.
BITS 1-15	RESERVED. Bits 1-15 are reset to zero.

4.4.7.9 READ ADAPTER BUFFER Command

The READ ADAPTER BUFFER command is used to transfer Adapter storage across the System Interface to attached system memory.

READ ADAPTER BUFFER Command Block

The SCB for a READ ADAPTER BUFFER command is shown in Figure 4-65.

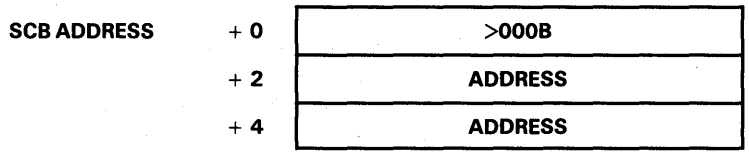


FIGURE 4-65. READ ADAPTER BUFFER COMMAND SCB

The 32-bit ADDRESS field contains a 24-bit address pointer to buffer space in the attached system memory. The system buffer space is shown in Figure 4-66.

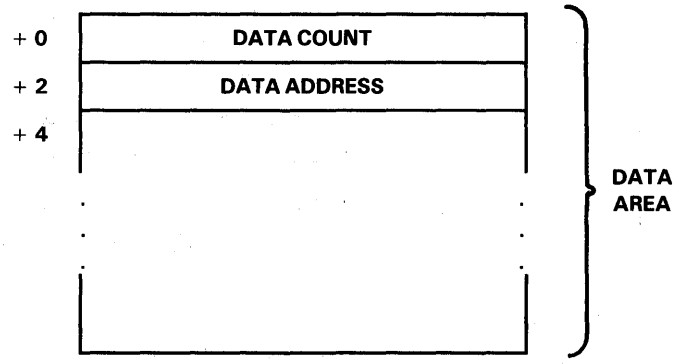


FIGURE 4-66. READ ADAPTER SYSTEM BUFFER SPACE

The 16-bit DATA COUNT field contains the number of bytes to read from the Adapter. The data will be stored starting at the DATA COUNT location which is at the beginning of the system's buffer space.

The DATA ADDRESS is a 16-bit field containing the address of the data in the Adapter to be read. Bit 15 is reset to zero by the Adapter. The DATA ADDRESS is not checked for valid extents. The READ ADAPTER command will result in an ADAPTER CHECK Parity Error if reference is made to an undefined storage area. Certain PH registers are cleared when read, so proper Adapter performance cannot be insured if read. The READ ADAPTER BUFFER command should not be used to access the PH ROM.

Table 4-42 illustrates some of the internal Adapter pointers accessible via the READ ADAPTER BUFFER command. These pointers will reside beginning at location >0A00 in Adapter memory. These pointers must be read following initialization but before issuing the OPEN command.

TABLE 4-42. ADAPTER INTERNAL POINTERS

ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
>0A00	Pointer to Burned-in Address.
>0A02	Pointer to Software Level
>0A04	Pointer to Adapter addresses:
	pointer + 0 Node address.
	pointer + 6 Group address.
	pointer + 10 Functional address.
>0A06	Pointer to Adapter parameters:
	pointer + 0 Physical Drop Number.
	pointer + 4 Upstream Neighbors Address.
	pointer + 10 Upstream physical drop number.
	pointer + 14 Last poll address.
	pointer + 20 reserved.
	pointer + 22 Allowed Access Priority.
	pointer + 24 Enabled Source Classes
	pointer + 26 Last attention code.
	pointer + 28 Last source address.
	pointer + 34 Last beacon type.
	pointer + 36 Last major vector.
	pointer + 38 Ring status.
	pointer + 40 Soft error timer value.
	pointer + 42 reserved.
	pointer + 44 reserved.
	pointer + 46 Monitor error code.
	pointer + 48 Beacon transmit type.
	pointer + 50 Beacon receive type.
	pointer + 52 Frame correlator save.
	pointer + 54 Beaconing station UNA.
	pointer + 60 reserved.
	pointer + 64 Beaconing station physical drop number.
>0A08	Pointer to MAC Buffer (a special buffer used by the software to transmit Adapter generated MAC frames).

READ ADAPTER BUFFER Completion

Upon completion of the READ ADAPTER BUFFER command, the SSB will be loaded with READ ADAPTER BUFFER completion status as shown in Figure 4-67.

SSB ADDRESS		
	+ 0	>000B
	+ 2	READ COMPLETION

FIGURE 4-67. READ ADAPTER BUFFER COMMAND SSB

Table 4-43 describes the READ ADAPTER BUFFER Completion field bit definitions.

TABLE 4-43. READ ADAPTER BUFFER COMPLETION FIELD BIT DEFINITIONS

BIT	DEFINITION
BIT 0	COMMAND COMPLETE. Bit 0 is set when the READ ADAPTER BUFFER command is completed.
BITS 1-15	RESERVED. Bits 1-15 are reset to zero.

4.5 Ring Interface

Interface of the Adapter to the twisted pair cabling is via a Ring Interface circuit (RI), containing two bipolar MSI circuits and several discrete components. This section describes briefly the function of the Ring Interface circuit. The "TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface Circuits" data sheet should be consulted for additional detail on electrical characteristics.

4.5.1 TMS38051 and TMS38052 Components

The two bipolar MSI chips are an analog chip set which provide the IEEE 802.5 compatible interface functions required to transmit and receive data between the TMS38020 Protocol Handler (PH) and the token ring cabling.

These chips are referred to as the TMS38051 and the TMS38052; the TMS38051 Transceiver provides the transmit and receive functions while the TMS38052 Controller provides ring interface control functions.

The functional block diagram of the ring interface and the division of this function between the TMS38051 and the TMS38052 is illustrated in Figure 4-68.

4.5.2 Ring Interface Interconnect Schematic

Figure 4-69 illustrates a schematic suitable for implementating the ring interface function. Included in this schematic are all the necessary discrete components in addition to a 74LS164 and a 512 x 4 PROM for implementing the Adapter Burned-in-address (BIA), and a 74LS122 which serves as a watchdog timer.

Table 4-44 provides a list of discrete component values, tolerances, and part types.

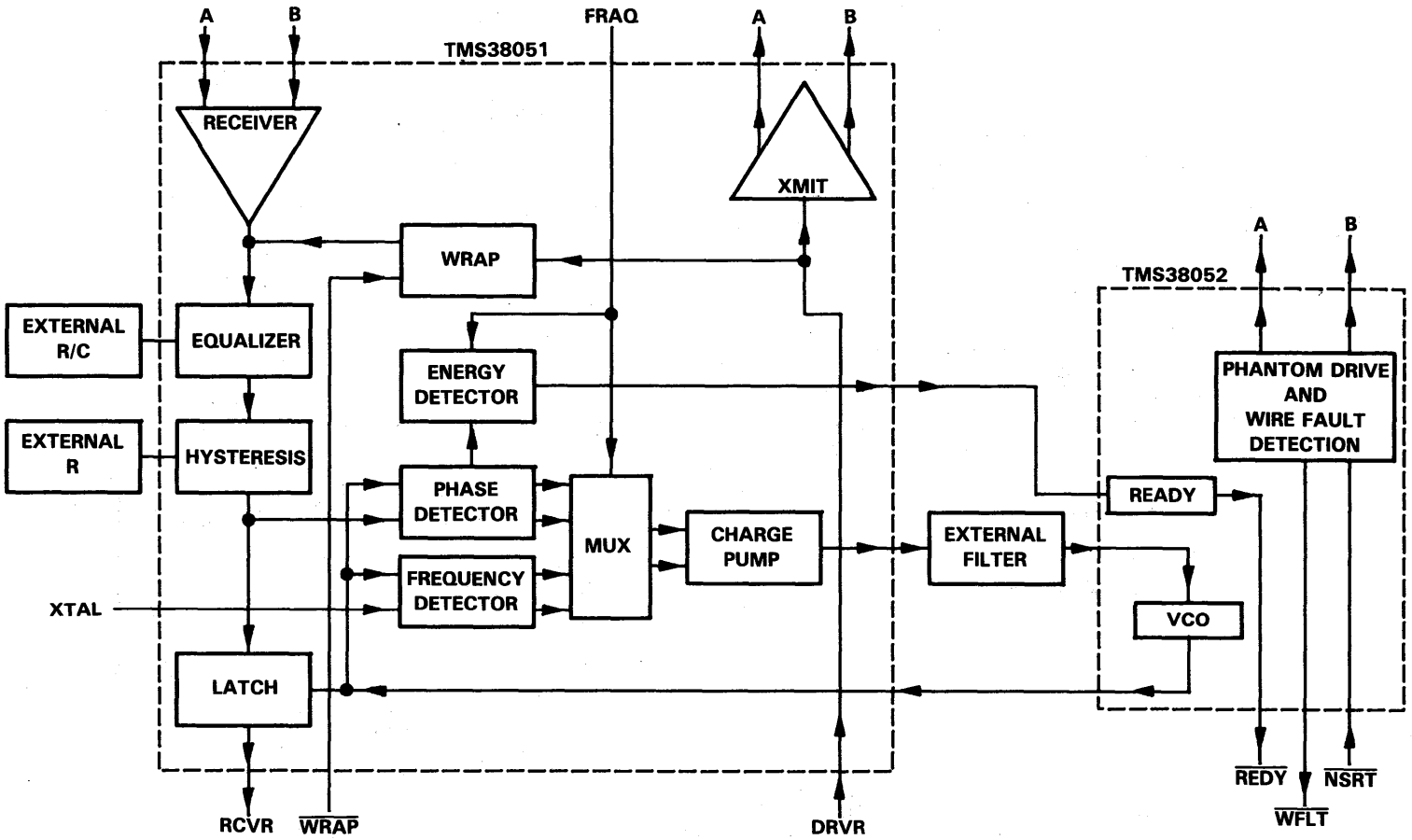


FIGURE 4-68. RING INTERFACE FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM

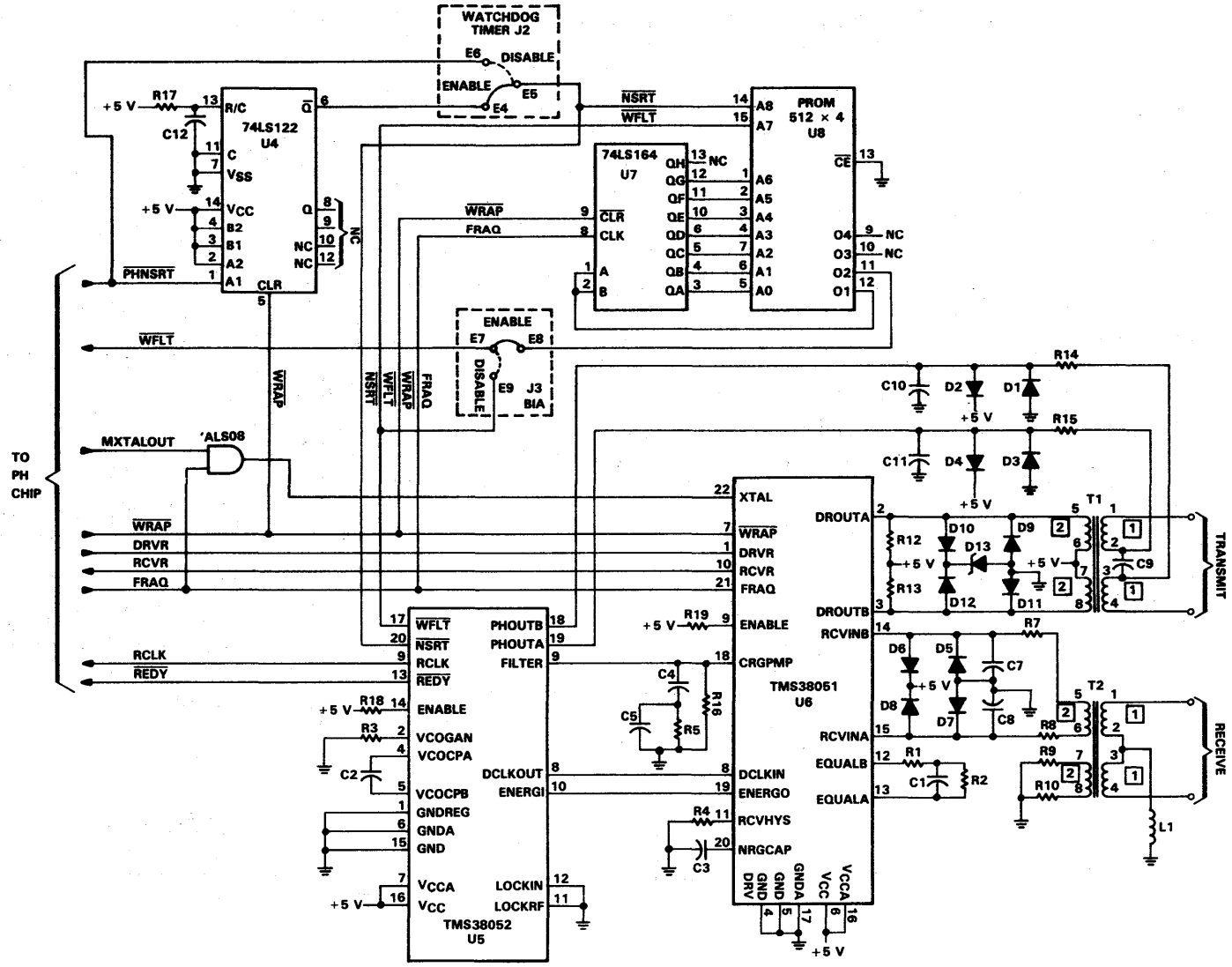


FIGURE 4-69. RING INTERFACE SCHEMATIC

TABLE 4-44. RING INTERFACE COMPONENT LIST

LABEL	VALUE	TOLERANCE	TYPE
R1	121Ω	1%	1/10W
R2	604Ω	1%	1/10W
R3,R4	2.49 kΩ	1%	1/10W
R5	825Ω	1%	1/10W
R7,R8	121Ω	1%	1/10W
R9,R10	75Ω	1%	1/10W
R12,R13	300Ω	5%	1/8W
R14,R15	50Ω	5%	2W
R16	330 kΩ	5%	1/8W
R17	150 kΩ	5%	1/4W
R18,R19	4.9 kΩ	10%	1/4W
C1	180 pF	5%	Ceramic NPO
C2	200 pF	5%	Ceramic NPO
C3	6800 pF	10%	Ceramic X5R
C4	8.2 uF	10%	Tantalum
C5	680 pF	10%	Ceramic X5R
C7,C8	62 pF	5%	Ceramic NPO
C9	0.1 uF	10%	Ceramic X5R
C10,C11	8.2 uF	20%	Tantalum
C12	0.47 uF	5%	
L1	56 uH	10%	$R_{DC} < 5\Omega$
D1-D4			1N4004
D5-D12			1N4148
D13			10 V,5W zener 1N5347B
T1,T2			TNI2837 or PE63838-001

4

4.5.3 Watchdog Timer

The 74LS122 retriggerable monostable multivibrator implements a "watchdog timer". This one-shot is configured (via R17 and C12) to provide a 30 millisecond pulse when a negative transition occurs on signal $\overline{\text{PHNSRT}}$. The inverted output (Q) of the one-shot serves as the $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ (insert) signal to the ring interface. When $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ is active-low, the phantom drive circuit is activated causing the wiring concentrator to physically insert the wiring lobe into the ring. If this signal is taken inactive-high, the lobe is de-inserted from the ring.

The Adapter's program code toggles the $\overline{\text{PHNSRT}}$ line every 10 milliseconds whenever an inserted condition is desired. This maintains the state of $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ active-low. If a condition exists which prevents the Communications Processor from toggling the $\overline{\text{PHNSRT}}$ signal, the one-shot times out and the Adapter is physically de-inserted from the ring.

This feature is added as an enhancement to ring reliability, avoiding the possibility that clock failure or code problems within an Adapter will cause ring corruption. If errors occur such that the TMS38010 Communications Processor cannot maintain a "heartbeat" on the $\overline{\text{PHNSRT}}$ line, the Adapter is automatically de-inserted from the ring.

4.5.4 Burned-in Address

The 512 x 4 PROM and the 74LS164 implement the burned-in address feature of the Adapter. This PROM is read by the Adapter upon power-on and will use the 48-bit address read as the node address if one is not passed during the OPEN command. Appendix B discusses the Burned In Address (BIA) in detail.

4.5.5 TMS38020 Protocol Handler to Ring Interface Signals

Table 4-45 describes the signals which exist between the Protocol Handler and the Ring Interface circuit.

TABLE 4-45. PROTOCOL HANDLER TO RING INTERFACE SIGNALS

SIGNAL	DEFINITION
DRVR	This is the data output of the PH to the Ring Interface. The Ring Interface provides simple current amplification of the transmitted data.
FRAQ	When asserted by the PH, this signal places the Ring Interface in frequency acquisition mode. The Phase Locked Loop (PLL) becomes locked to the signal XTAL.
$\overline{\text{NSRT}}$	This input to the Ring Interface, when low, forces the Ring Interface to activate the phantom drive circuit to achieve physical insertion. It is driven indirectly by the PH through the watchdog timer circuit.
RCLK	This is the output of the VCO on the TMS38052, and provides a data sampling clock that is phase locked to the incoming data stream.
RCVR	This signal contains the TTL-level Differential Manchester code data from the ring, as detected by the TMS38051.
$\overline{\text{REDY}}$	This line is asserted low by the Ring Interface when both of the following conditions are met: 1) Minimum signal energy is detected on the input pair. 2) The Ring Interface Phase Locked Loop is locked on the input signal.
$\overline{\text{WFLT}}$	This signal is asserted low by the Ring Interface circuit when it detects a short to ground on either or both of the receive or transmit pair, or when it detects an open circuit on either the receive or transmit pair but not both.
$\overline{\text{WRAP}}$	When asserted low, this signal forces the Ring Interface to activate an internal attenuated feedback path from the transmitted data to the received data signals. This is used during bring-up diagnostics when the Adapter is reset.

4.5.6 Ring Interface Transmitter

The transmitter function that is integrated into the TMS38051 transforms a TTL compatible, Differential Manchester encoded, signal on the data input pin (DRVR) into a differential current that is compatible with a twisted pair transmission line with a characteristic impedance of 150 ohms.

The transmitter, in response to a signal on DRVR, steers current sourced from the transformer center tap supply to one of the two driver stage outputs (DROUTA or DROUTB). When the DRVR pin is high the current is directed towards DROUTA and when low towards DROUTB. Both DROUTA and DROUTB are open collector outputs that are current controlled to 25ma ±5ma. The equivalent circuit seen by the open collector on DROUTA or DROUTB is a 75 ohm resistor to the VCC supply. This results in a nominal voltage swing between (VCC + 1.875v) and (VCC - 1.875v) at the DROUTA and DROUTB pins. Figure 4-70 shows the open collector output of the TMS38051 transmitter and its equivalent loading. Transmitted data is not retimed within the TMS38051, therefore the transmitter maintains symmetry between the data input on DRVR and the transmitted data.

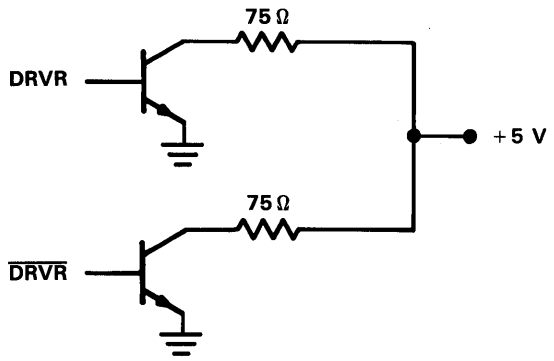


FIGURE 4-70. TMS38051 LINE DRIVER STAGE

4.5.7 Ring Interface Receiver

The receive channel of the TMS38051 provides functions for equalization, signal shaping and retiming of the received data. The TMS38051 is transformer coupled to the transmission media to reject any DC offsets in the differential signal. Receive circuitry within the TMS38051 independantly biases the two differential inputs, RCVINA and RCVINB, to VCC/2. A common mode rejection of 40 dB is provided for a 4 megabit per second transmission rate on the twisted pair. A low pass filter is included between the transformer and the TMS38051 to attenuate high frequency noise.

4.5.7.1 Equalization

The TMS38051 receive function utilizes a two state adaptive equalizer to compensate for the transmission line attenuation of high frequencies. The term "two state" is derived from the fact that the equalizer function is effective for low amplitude signals, and is transparent to high amplitude signals. Equalization is not needed for high amplitude signals because this is indicative of a short transmission line length. The two state nature of the equalizer is the result of nonlinearities within the equalizer circuit.

The external equalization components are used to set the transfer function of the equalizer and the signal level below which equalization is effective. At low frequencies, the low frequency equalizer gain is set by the sum of the two resistors, R1 and R2. At high frequencies the capacitor, C1, bypasses R2 and the equalizer gain is set by R1. With the components listed in Table 4-46, at 1.5 MHz the equalizer gain increases from its low frequency value to its high frequency value at a rate of 20 db per decade. Figure 4-71 illustrates the transfer function of the TMS38051 equalizer for low amplitude inputs.

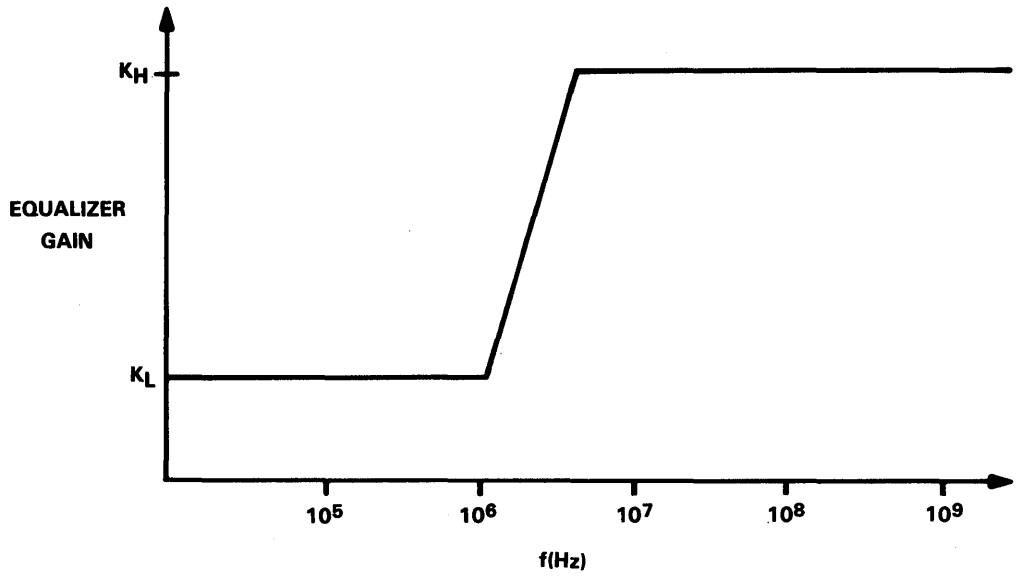


FIGURE 4-71. EQUALIZER TRANSFER FUNCTION

4.5.7.2 Hysteresis

The hysteresis function serves to set the threshold levels for received data and to shape the received data into a digital signal. The proper setting of threshold values prevents noise from being interpreted as data. The minimum received signal must be greater than 50 mV peak-to-peak.

4.5.7.3 Data Latch

The final stage of the TMS38051 receive channel is a data latch which synchronizes the RCVR to the extracted data clock (DCLK). A rising edge of DCLK causes RCVR to take the present state of the hysteresis circuit output. The phase locked loop assures that the rising edge of DCLK will occur within the 'data eye' created by RCVINA and RCVINB. The phase locked loop is discussed in section 4.5.8. Figure 4-72 illustrates the received data 'eye' and the receive channel timing.

The data latch introduces a latency of one-half bit time between the received data and RCVR.

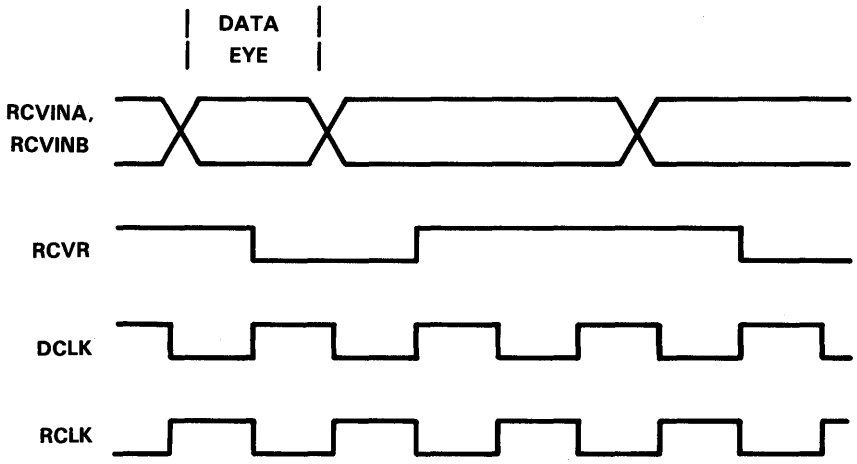


FIGURE 4-72. RECEIVE TIMING RELATIONSHIPS

4.5.8 Ring Interface Phase Locked Loop

The recovery of the 8 MHz data clock embedded in the received Differential Manchester encoded data is accomplished by a phase locked loop (PLL) that is integrated into the TMS38051 and TMS38052. The loop filter is the only function of the PLL that is implemented entirely in discrete components, although the transfer function of the voltage controlled oscillator is set via discrete components. The ring interface schematic diagram in Figure 4-69 implements a 2nd order phase locked loop with a bandwidth of 97.6 kHz and a loop damping factor of 25.7. A block diagram of the phase locked loop is shown in Figure 4-73. A description of each functional unit is provided in the following sections.

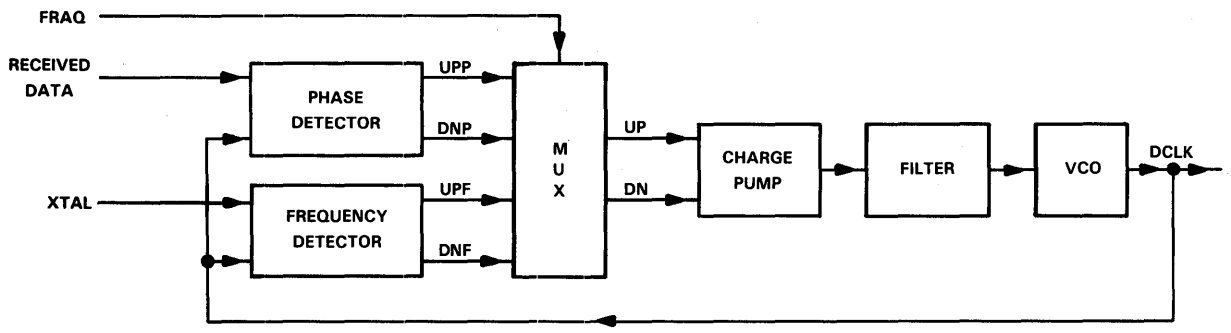


FIGURE 4-73. PHASE LOCKED LOOP BLOCK DIAGRAM

4.5.8.1 Voltage Controlled Oscillator

The recovered data clock, DCLK, that is used by the data retiming latch, the phase detector, and the frequency detector is generated by a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) integrated into the TMS38052. The VCO function is broken into two stages. First, a voltage to current converter which converts the PLL filter voltage into a biasing

current for the VCO. Second, an emitter coupled astable multivibrator which is capable of producing a square wave output that is symmetrical to within 8% of the period. Each of the two VCO stages is controlled via discrete components external to the TMS38052.

The components used to control the VCO are shown in the Ring Interface schematic diagram as resistor R3 and capacitor C2. The resistor is used to set the voltage to current converter gain and the capacitor is used to time the astable multivibrator. The values of these two components determine the sensitivity of the VCO frequency to changes in the input voltage. This parameter is known as the VCO gain and is an important factor in the evaluation of the phase locked loop. A VCO implemented using the R3 and C2 values listed in Table 4-46 produce an 8 MHz oscillation for a 2.5 V nominal PLL filter voltage, with a 3.19 MHz/V gain.

The signal RCLK is an inverted version of the VCO output. RCLK is used by the TMS38020 Protocol Handler to sample the output of the data retiming latch (RCVR).

4.5.8.2 Phase Detector

The phase detector circuit samples the received data and the VCO output, compares edges, and generates a set of phase error correction signals. The outputs of this circuit are a train of pulses on the two phase detector outputs, UPP and DNP. The phase detector signals the charge pump to raise or lower the VCO frequency by adjusing the pulse widths on UPP and DNP. If the pulse width on DNP is greater than the pulse width on UPP then the VCO frequency is decreased. The data clock is phase aligned with the received data when the pulse width on UPP and DNP are equal.

The phase detector generates the pulses on UPP and DNP in the following manner. UPP is driven high on a rising edge of the received data, and is driven low on the rising edge of DCLK (VCO output). DNP is driven high on the rising edge of DCLK and driven low on the falling edge of DCLK. Therefore, the pulse width on DNP is always equal to one half the period of DCLK. The phase detector has been designed such that there cannot be a pulse on DNP and UPP at the same time. Figure 4-74 illustrates the timing characteristics of the phase detector.

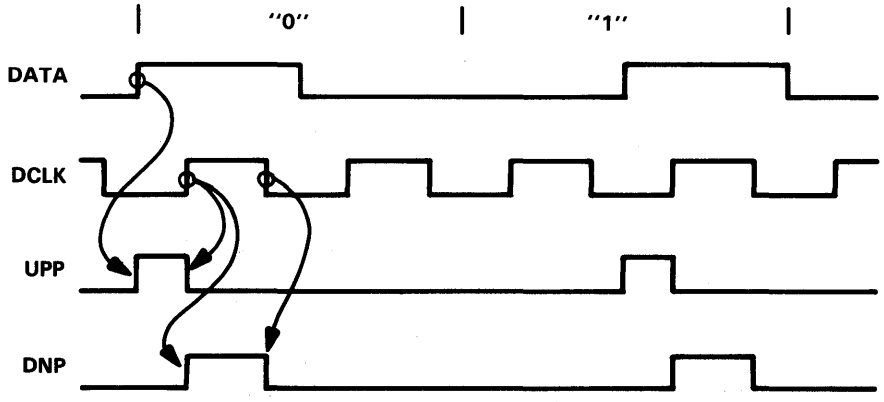


FIGURE 4-74. PHASE DETECTOR TIMING CHARACTERISTICS

4.5.8.3 Frequency Detector

A frequency detector has been implemented in the ring interface PLL to bring the VCO frequency within the operating range of the PLL. This function is necessary because during startup and fault conditions, the VCO frequency can drift outside the pull in range of the PLL. The output of the frequency detector is a set of command lines, UPF and DNF, similar to to those of the phase detector. The signal FRAQ is used to multiplex the phase detector and the frequency detector outputs to the charge pump. The ring interface PLL is in frequency acquisition mode (frequency detector outputs selected) when FRAQ is asserted high.

The frequency detector charge pump controls are asserted somewhat differently than the phase detector charge pump controls. Unlike the phase detector, the frequency detector is activated by high to low transitions at the input. In the quiescent state, both UPF and DNF are deasserted. A falling edge on either DCLK or XTAL causes a rising edge on one of the control lines. DCLK falling causes DNF to rise and XTAL falling causes UPF to rise. The UPF or DNF line is returned to a low state upon detection of a falling edge on the input that did not cause the transition from low to high. For example, if DCLK caused DNF to rise, then the falling edge of DNF must be caused by XTAL. When XTAL and DCLK are locked, their falling edges will be coincident and both UPF and DNF will remain low. Figure 4-75 illustrates the frequency detector timing characteristics. Because the frequency detector is not always pulsing both DNF and UPF, The gain of the phase locked loop is much greater than in phase detection mode. This allows the VCO to rapidly acquire the frequency of XTAL when FRAQ is asserted.

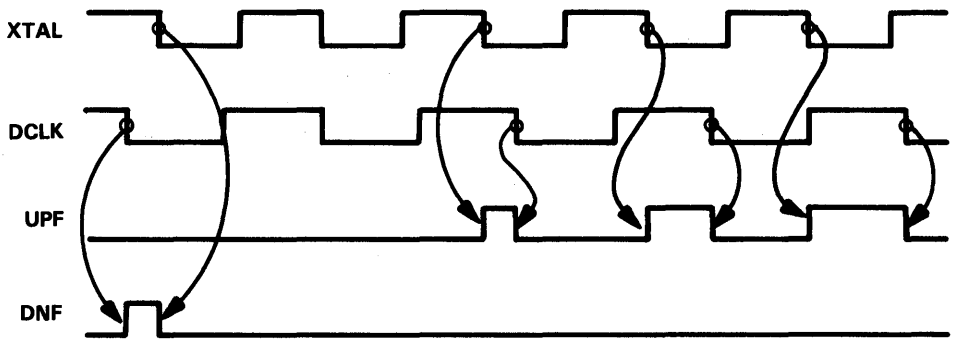


FIGURE 4-75. FREQUENCY DETECTOR TIMING CHARACTERISTICS

4.5.8.4 Charge Pump and Loop Filter

The charge pump converts the train of pulses that are output from the frequency/phase detector into a controlling current for the PLL filter. In response to a pulse on the UP line, the charge pump sources current to the loop filter, a pulse on DN causes the charge pump to sink current. The charge pump is specified to sink or source 0.4 mA ±15% for the duration of a pulse. The loop filter acts as an integrator of the charge pump current. When the VCO is phase aligned with the received data, the pulse widths of the UP and DN lines are equal. The net result is no change in the DC voltage on the PLL filter. The selection of loop filter components determine how the voltage at the VCO input responds when the current being sourced and sunk by the charge pump is not equal.

4.5.9 Energy Detect

The energy detect circuit detects the presence of an active signal at the receive channel input. Each time a rising edge is detected in the received data, a fixed amount of change is sourced to the energy detect capacitor (C3, connected to TMS38052 pin NRGCAP). The absence of rising edges in the received data stream causes the charge to leak off the energy detect capacitor. A full description of the energy detect characteristics may be found in the TMS38051/TMS38052 Data Sheet.

4.5.10 Wrap Mode

The TMS38051 provides a wrap function for Adapter diagnostic purposes. Activated by a low logic level on the $\overline{\text{WRAP}}$ pin, this circuit internally routes data to the receive channel instead of to the twisted pair driver stage. The line driver stage is disabled such that there is no differential output on DROUTA and DROUTB, and the twisted pair receiver is disabled by removing the bias on pins RCVINA and RCVINB. Wrap mode does not affect any of the other receive channel functions. When the TMS38051 is in normal operational mode, $\overline{\text{WRAP}}$ deasserted high, a high degree of isolation is provided between the transmit and receive channels. The timing of the received signal in wrap mode conforms to the received data timings shown in Figure 4-75.

Note that the data output on RCVR will be the inverse of the data presented to DRVR.

4.5.11 Ring Interface Phantom Drive

The phantom drive circuit that is integrated into the TMS38052 is used to impress a DC signal on the lobe media and to monitor the lobe media for an open or short circuit condition. The term phantom drive was given to indicate the invisibility of the DC signal to the differential voltage that is used to carry information.

The phantom drive circuit is activated upon assertion of $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$. This signal is driven by the watchdog timer. Upon asserton of $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$, a DC voltage is placed on the PHOUTA and PHOUTB pins. The resultant DC current travels through the transmit twisted pair to the wiring concentrator where it activates a relay which switches the Adapter onto the ring. The current is then returned to ground through an inductor connected to the center tap on the receive transformer primary side. Figure 4-76 shows the DC current path for the phantom drive.

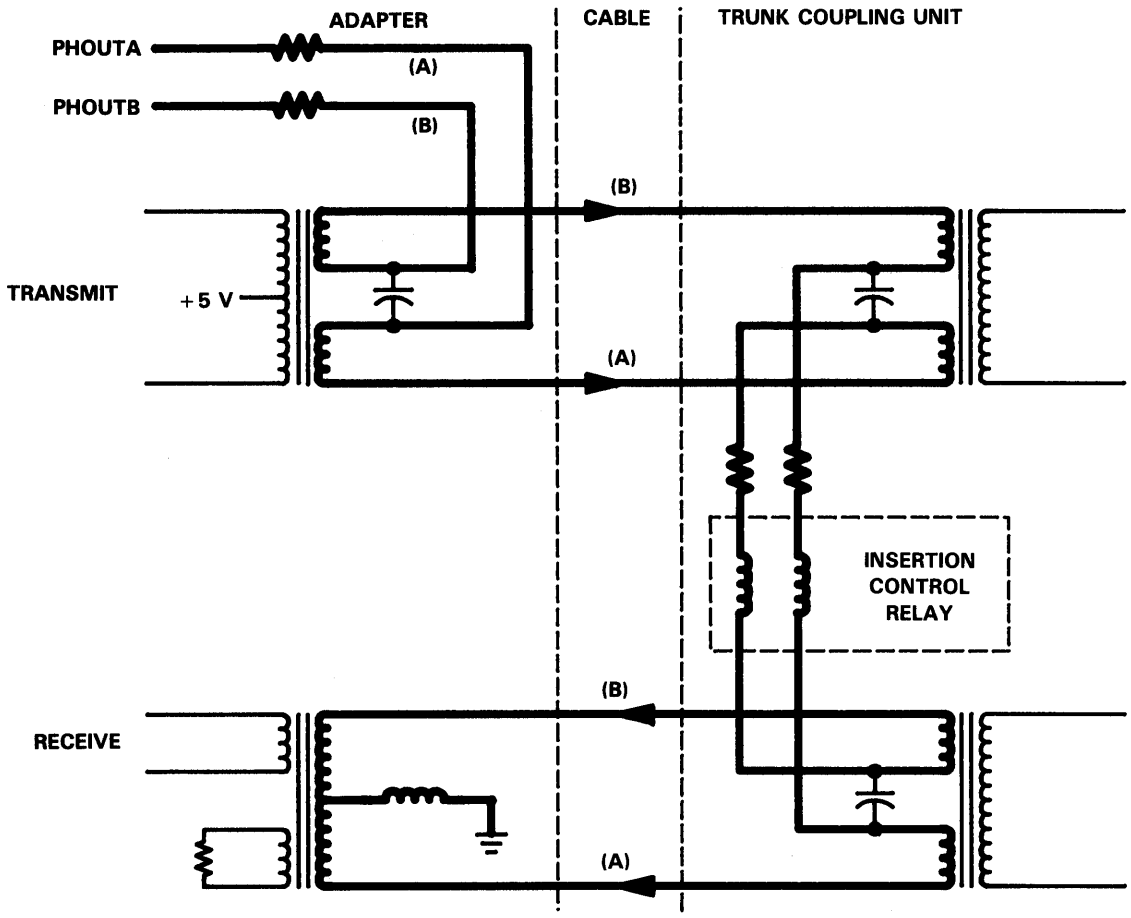


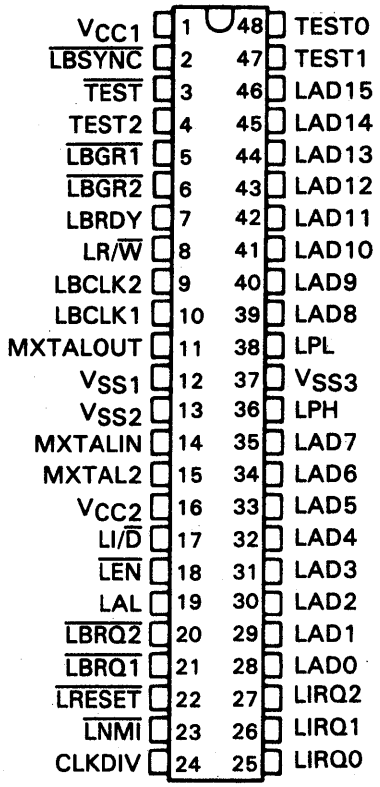
FIGURE 4-76. PHANTOM DRIVE PATH

A wire fault condition is detected by monitoring the current being supplied through the PHOUTA and PHOUTB pins. In the event that an abnormally high or low current, as specified in the TMS38051/TMS38052 Data Sheet, is detected on either phantom drive pin, the $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ output is asserted.

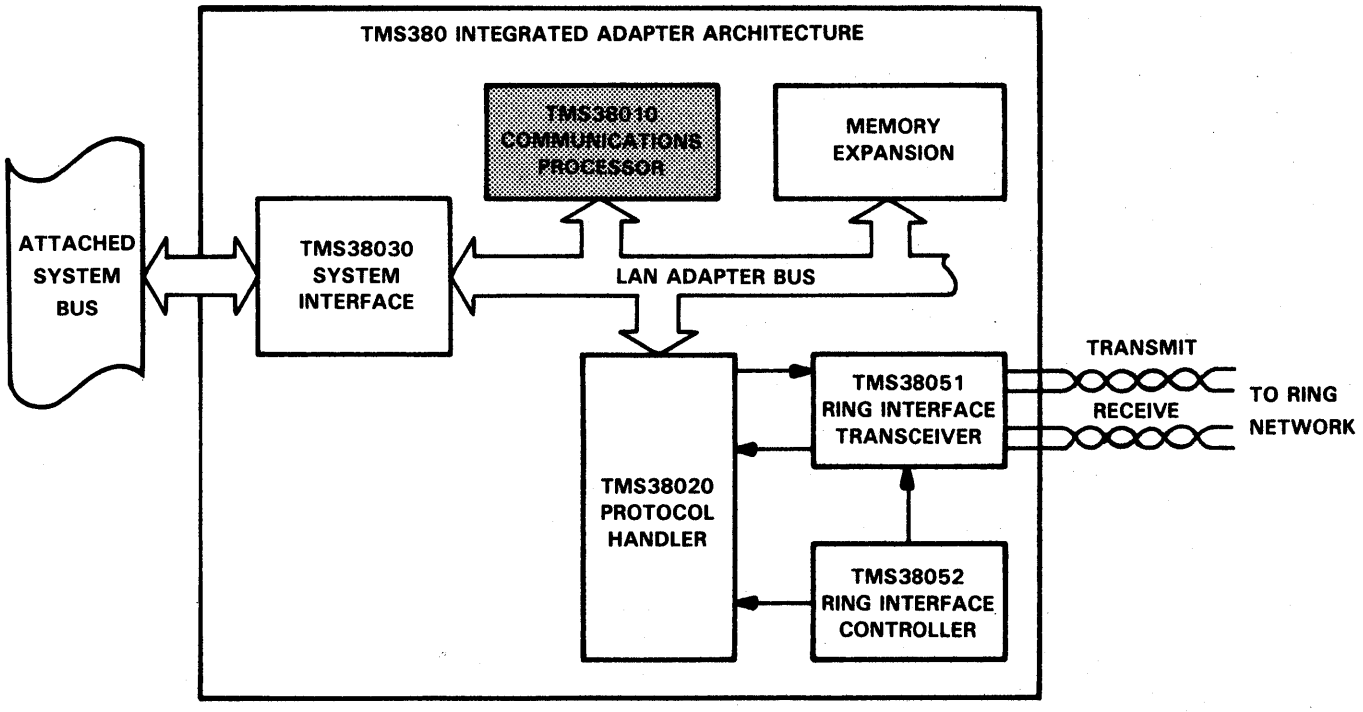
SEPTEMBER 1985 – REVISED MAY 1986

- **High-Performance 16-Bit CPU for Processing Communications Protocols**
  - **–333-ns Machine and Bus Cycle Time**
  - **–Single Cycle Pipelined Bus Arbitration**
  - **–9 Interrupt Priority Levels**
  - **–8-Bit General Purpose Timer**
- **On-Chip 2.75K-Byte RAM for Buffering Network Data**
  - **–1408 x 18-Bit Organization**
  - **–Byte Parity Protection**
  - **–6 Megabyte per Second Data Transfer Rate**
- **Expandable Program and Data Memory Space up to 256K Bytes**
- **Built-in Real Time Error Detection**
- **Test Pins for Hi-Z, Module-in-Place Testing**
- **Single 5-V Supply**
- **24-MHz Crystal Oscillator or Crystal Input (Internal Oscillator Option)**
- **Low-Power Scaled-NMOS Technology**

JD PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



token ring LAN application diagram



A

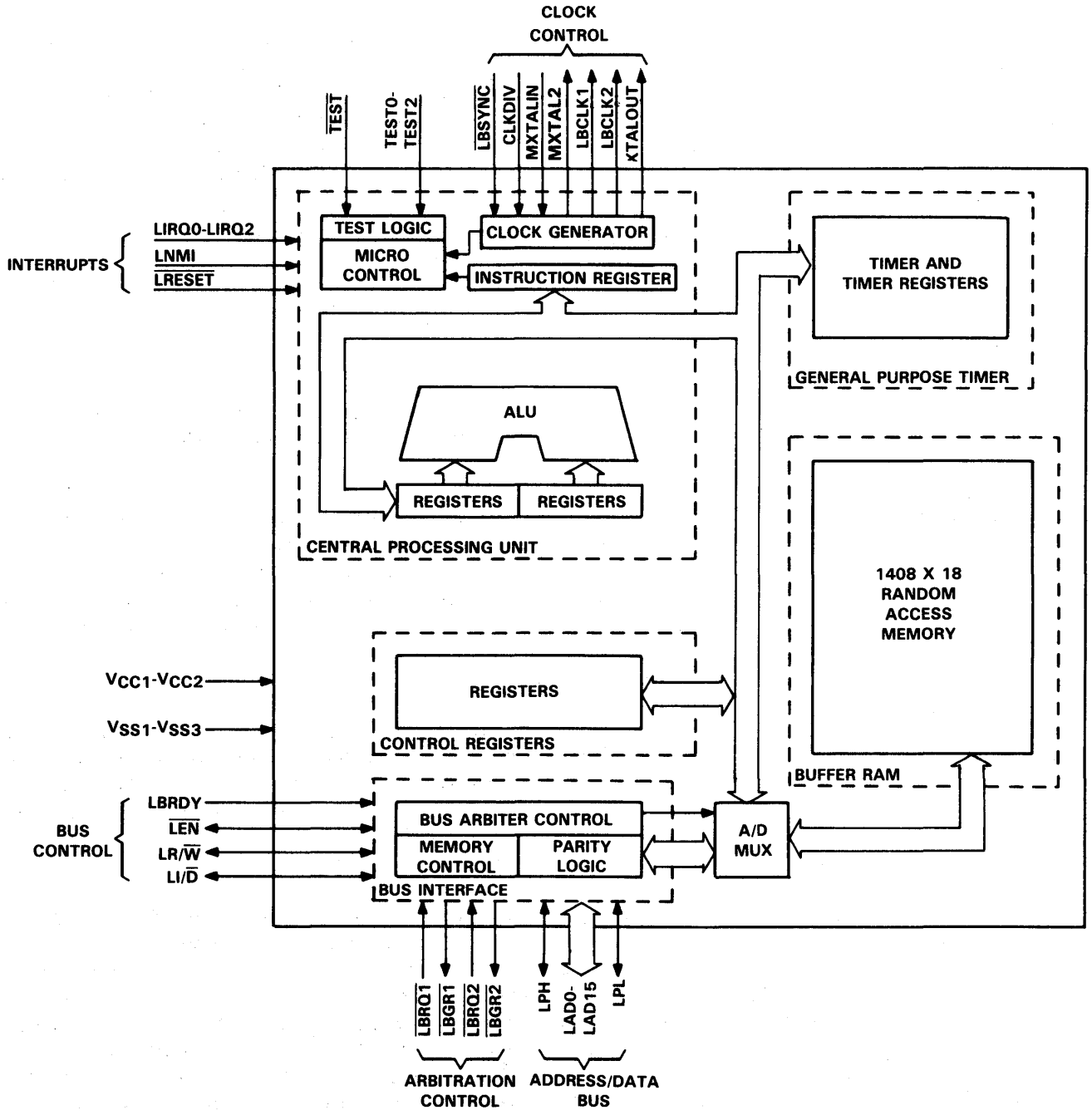
TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

pin descriptions

NAME	I/O	DESCRIPTION
$\overline{\text{LRESET}}$	I	TMS38010 Reset
LBCLK1, LBCLK2	O	Bus Clocks
$\overline{\text{LBSYNC}}$	I	Bus Synchronization. This pin is reserved and should be left unconnected.
LAL	I/O	Address Latch Enable
$\overline{\text{LEN}}$	I/O	Data Enable
LBRDY	I	Bus Ready. Used to force wait states on bus read/write cycles.
LIRQ0, LIRQ1, LIRQ2	I	Interrupt Request Level Request
$\overline{\text{LNMI}}$	I	Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) Request
$\overline{\text{LBRQ1}}$, $\overline{\text{LBRQ2}}$	I	Bus Request 1 and 2. Used by bus masters to request control of the bus.
$\overline{\text{LBGRI}}$, $\overline{\text{LBGR2}}$	O	Bus Grant 1 and 2
LAD0 - LAD15	I/O	Address/Data bus. LAD0 is the most-significant bit and LAD15 is the least-significant bit. LAD15 serves as a "Page Select" during the address phase of memory cycles.
LPH, LPL	I/O	Parity High Byte and Low Byte. Parity for data carried over LAD0-LAD15.
LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$	O	Instruction Fetch/Data Transfer Status Code
LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$	I/O	Read/Write signal
CLKDIV	I	This pin is reserved and should be tied to V_{CC}.
MXTALIN	I	Input to internal oscillator from crystal or external clock
MXTAL2	O	Connection to internal oscillator from crystal
MXTALOUT	O	Crystal Frequency Output. This frequency is MXTALIN/3.
$\overline{\text{TEST}}$, TEST0-TEST2	I	TMS38010 Test Pins. These pins should be left unconnected.
V_{CC}	I	5-V supply pins
V_{SS}	I	Ground pins

A

functional block diagram



A

description

The TMS38010 Communications Processor is a member of the TMS380 family of VLSI components which form a highly integrated Adapter used for attaching to a token ring local area network (LAN). The TMS38010 provides a high-performance CPU ideal for processing communications protocols. The TMS38010 provides 63 instructions, a 1408 x 18-bit RAM for communications data buffering and CPU workspace, and a general purpose timer for implementing software protocol timers. The TMS38010's architecture features hardware and software interrupts, memory-based registers for fast response to hardware and software interrupts, and a 333-ns machine cycle time. Bus arbitration is provided internal to the TMS38010 Communications Processor.

The TMS38010 Communications Processor, when coupled with the TMS38020 Protocol Handler, the TMS38030 System Interface, and the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface Pair, forms a complete, integrated token ring LAN Adapter fully compatible with the IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Ring Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications for token ring networks.

architecture

The architecture of the TMS38010 Communications Processor consists of a 16-bit CPU, a LAN Adapter bus interface, a general purpose timer, control registers, and a 2.75K-byte buffer RAM.

central processing unit

The central processing unit (CPU) of the TMS38010 contains the arithmetic-logic unit (ALU), registers, and control store. This CPU features memory-to-memory architecture which can address up to 256K bytes of memory, logically divided into 128K bytes of data memory and 128K bytes of instruction memory. Using paging techniques, both the instruction and data spaces are paged into two 64K byte regions. This paging is accomplished via a page select output on the LAD15 pin during the address phase of memory cycles. The state of this pin is controlled through the CPU's status register.

arithmetic-logic unit (ALU)

The arithmetic-logic unit of the TMS38010 is 16 bits wide. The ALU performs all arithmetic and logical operations required during instruction execution. The ALU is partitioned into two 8-bit halves to accommodate byte operations. The bus interface only performs 16-bit wide transfers on the LAN Adapter bus, thus, the byte being operated upon may be modified while the unaffected byte is passed through unchanged.

internal registers

The CPU contains three registers used for programming: the Program Counter (PC), the Status Register (ST), and the Workspace Pointer (WP). The Program Counter contains the memory address of the next instruction word. The Status Register contains bits which signify the results of program comparisons, indicate program status conditions, and supply the interrupt mask to the interrupt priority circuits. The Workspace Pointer contains a memory address which defines the first word of a block of 16 words which define the Workspace Registers. These workspace registers are memory-resident working registers and are used as scratch and index registers similar to the internal registers of register-based architectures. By changing the value of the Workspace Pointer (as may occur when an interrupt occurs), a new set of registers is defined for efficient program context switches.

interrupts

Interrupts are presented to the TMS38010 via the LIRQ0, LIRQ1, and LIRQ2 interrupt request pins. These pins, when any one is active low for an entire LBCLK cycle, cause an interrupt request to be posted to the TMS38010's CPU. LIRQ0 (the most-significant bit) through LIRQ2 (the least-significant bit) present an interrupt level of one (all low) through level seven. When LIRQ0 through LIRQ2 are all high, no interrupt is requested. The prioritization of interrupts is done external to the TMS38010. In the TMS380 LAN Adapter, this function is performed by the TMS38030 System Interface.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

When an interrupt is accepted (by one or more of the LIRQ lines being low for a full LBCLK cycle), the CPU performs a context switch by fetching a new Program Counter value and a new Workspace Pointer value from predefined memory locations in the first 32 bytes of memory. Three interrupt levels are specially defined for the TMS38010. The first is interrupt level 10. This interrupt level is used by the TMS38010's internal general purpose timer when the count has decremented to zero. The level ten interrupt is also used for a special "software interrupt" initiated by a request bit in the CPCTL (CP Control) register. This bit allows higher level software routines to activate lower-level routines such as a task scheduler. The second interrupt level specially defined for the TMS38010 is the level-2 interrupt. The level-2 interrupt is used to report several error conditions of the TMS38010. These include arithmetic fault, illegal opcode, and LAN Adapter bus parity errors. The third interrupt level defined for the TMS38010 is the level-0 interrupt. This interrupt is asserted when the $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ or the $\overline{\text{LNMI}}$ pin is taken active low.

LAN adapter bus interface

The TMS38010 provides a high-speed interface to the TMS380 family LAN Adapter bus. This bus interface allows the TMS38010's CPU to communicate to external memory and peripherals and allows external LAN Adapter Bus masters unrestricted access to the internal Buffer RAM of the TMS38010. A full description of the bus cycles and their timing may be found in the electrical specifications.

The LAN Adapter bus is a multiplexed bus with address and data multiplexed on the LAD0-LAD15 pins. All transfers on the LAN Adapter bus consist of 16-bit words. Parity is checked and generated on each data byte transfer on the LAN Adapter bus. Detection of a parity error by the TMS38010 causes a level-2 interrupt to occur.

Each cycle on the LAN Adapter bus extends for at least one LBCLK1/LBCLK2 period (333 ns). External devices may extend the bus transfer in increments of one LBCLK1/LBCLK2 period (wait states) by driving LBRDY low before the falling edge of LBCLK2. The bus transfer extends until the bus master samples LBRDY high at the falling edge of LBCLK2. When accessing the internal buffer RAM, neither the CPU nor external bus masters incur wait states.

The LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$ pin is driven high or low at the beginning of each memory cycle to indicate whether data is being accessed or an instruction is being fetched. This information may be used to partition the memory map of the TMS38010 into a data space and an instruction space. Also, LAD15 will display the inverted value of status bit 8 of the Status Register during the address phase of the cycle which may be used to "page" the memory for extended memory applications. Note, however, that the TMS38010 does not decode either the LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$ pin nor the LAD15 (page select) for accesses to internal buffer RAM or registers.

general purpose timer

The TMS38010 contains a general purpose timer which can be programmed to provide an interrupt to the TMS38010 CPU at regular intervals. This timer is intended as the hardware base for all protocol timers implemented in software.

The general purpose timer is controlled by the CPU through two registers: the GPTLATCH register and the GPTDATA register. The GPTLATCH register is an 8-bit register loaded by the CPU as the initial timer value. It is read and written by the CPU as the most-significant byte of the word at address >0096 (">" designates a hexadecimal number). A second register, GPTDATA, is an 8-bit decrementer that the CPU may read as the most-significant byte of the word at address >0098. GPTDATA is loaded with the contents of GPTLATCH when either the GPTDATA register is decremented to zero or the timer start bit of CPCNTL is toggled from 0 to 1.

The general purpose timer decrements the value in GPTDATA by a signal derived from LBCLK (3 MHz) divided by 512. When GPTDATA decrements to zero, the GPTINT bit of the CPSTS (CP Status) register is set. If the interrupt was enabled by setting the GPTIEN bit of the CPCTL (CP Control) register, a level-10 interrupt will be asserted to the CPU. The decrementer will be reloaded with the value in GPTLATCH on the next LBCLK cycle following the decrement to zero. Hence, the period of timer interrupts is $(512)t_c$(GPTLATCH) where t_c is the machine cycle time (333 ns).

control registers

In addition to the GPTLATCH and GPTDATA register, the TMS38010 Communications Processor contains two additional 16-bit registers: the CP Control (CPCTL) register and the CP Status (CPSTS) register. These 16-bit registers are used by the CPU as follows: 1) to control the operation of the general purpose timer, 2) to test the parity of the LAN Adapter bus, and 3) to store status information with respect to the CPU. These registers are shown in Figure 1.

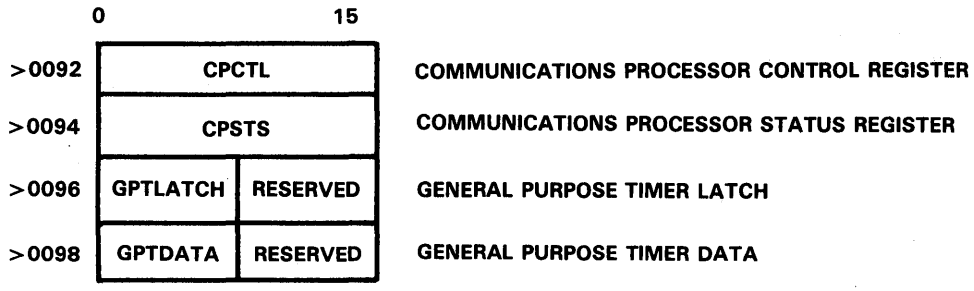


FIGURE 1. TMS38010 CONTROL REGISTERS

CPCTL register

The CPCTL register controls the general purpose timer and the LAN Adapter bus parity checker/generator. Four bits are defined; the remaining bits are reserved. These bits are defined in Table 1.

TABLE 1. CONTROL REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	LPIEN	Local Parity Interrupt Enable
1	LPTST	Local Parity Test
2	GPTIEN	General Purpose Timer Interrupt Enable
3	GPTSTART	General Purpose Timer Start
4	RFLAG	Reset Flag. Cleared upon hardware reset.

CPSTS register

The CPSTS register provides additional status for the CPU, the status of the parity checkers, and the status of the general purpose timer. The bits of the CPSTS register are shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2. CPSTS REGISTER BIT VALUES

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	ILLOP	Illegal Operation Interrupt Request
1	AFI	Arithmetic Fault Indicator
2	LPE	Local Parity Error
3	GPTINT	General Purpose Timer Interrupt
4	SWINT	Software Interrupt Indicator
5-11		Reserved
12	TEST0	Test 0 pin value
13	TEST1	Test 1 pin value
14	TEST2	Test 2 pin value
15	CLKDIV	CLKDIV pin value

A

buffer RAM

The TMS38010 contains 1408 x 18-bits of random-access memory on chip. The RAM is implemented with a dynamic cell. Refresh is performed transparently to bus operation. The buffer RAM features single cycle access (no wait states) when accessed by either the CPU of the TMS38010 or external bus masters.

The buffer RAM is intended for storage of incoming and outgoing frame data as well as additional CPU software working storage. The RAM occupies addresses >0000 through >007E and >0580 through >0FFE in the memory space of the CPU.

test mode

The TMS38010 reatures a module-in-place test mode for board-level testing with the TMS38010 in circuit. This facilitates testing by bed-of-nails testers. This test mode is enabled by tying pins $\overline{\text{TEST}}$, TESTO, TEST1 and TEST2 to ground and maintaining the clock input on MXTALIN. This has the effect of driving all outputs of the TMS38010 to the high-impendance state except MXTAL2. These pins may also be used to disable the on-chip buffer RAM. Table 3 illustrates the modes selectable through the test pins. All pin state combinations are reserved and should only be configured as shown in Table 3. When not used for these purposes, these pins should be left unconnected. An internal pullup drives these pins high when not externally connected.

TABLE 3. TEST PIN MODES

$\overline{\text{TEST}}$	TESTO	TEST1	TEST2	MODE SELECTED
NC	NC	NC	NC	Normal Operation
LOW	LOW	LOW	LOW	Module-In-Place Test
NC	LOW	NC	NC	On-Chip RAM Disabled

NC denotes no-connect

CPU instruction set summary

DUAL-OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS — GENERAL SOURCE AND DESTINATION		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
A	Add Words	(SA) + (DA) → (DA)
AB	Add Bytes	(SA) + (DA) → (DA)
C	Compare Words	Compare (SA) to (DA) and set appropriate status bits.
CB	Compare Bytes	Compare (SA) to (DA) and set appropriate status bits.
S	Subtract Word	(DA) − (SA) → (DA)
SB	Subtract Byte	(DA) − (SA) → (DA)
SOC	Set Ones Corresponding	(DA) OR (SA) → (DA)
SOCB	Set Ones Corresponding Byte	(DA) OR (SA) → (DA)
SZC	Set Zeros Corresponding	(DA) AND (SA) → (DA)
SZCB	Set Zeros Corresponding Byte	(DA) AND (SA) → (DA)
MOV	Move Word	(SA) → (DA)
MOVB	Move Byte	(SA) → (DA)

A

CPU instruction set summary (continued)

DUAL-OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS — REGISTER DESTINATION		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
COC	Compare Ones Corresponding	Test (D) to determine if 1's are in each bit position where 1's are in (SA). If so, set appropriate bits in status register.
CZC	Compare Zeros Corresponding	Test (D) to determine if 0's are in each bit position where 1's are in (SA). If so, set appropriate bits in status register.
XOR	Exclusive OR	(D) XOR (SA) → (D)
MPY	Multiply	Multiply unsigned (D) by unsigned (SA) and place unsigned 32-bit product in D (most significant) and D+ 1 (least significant).
DIV	Divide	If unsigned (SA) is less than or equal to (D), perform no operation and set status register bit 4. Otherwise, divide unsigned (D) and (D+1) by unsigned (SA). Quotient → (D), remainder → (D+1)
SIGNED MULTIPLY AND DIVIDE		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
MPYS	Signed Multiply	Multiply signed 2's complement integer in register 0 by signed 2's complement integer in (SA) and place signed 32-bit product in register 0 (most significant) and register 1 (least significant).
DIVS	Signed Divide	If the quotient cannot be expressed as a signed 16-bit quantity (hex 8000 is a valid negative number), set the appropriate status register bits, otherwise, divide the signed 2's complement integer in register 0 and register 1 by the signed 2's complement integer at SA and place the signed quotient in register 0 and the signed remainder in register 1. The sign of the quotient is determined by algebraic rules. The sign of the remainder is the same as the sign of the dividend, and |REMAINDER| < |DIV|.
EXTENDED OPERATION		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
XOP	Extended Operation	Performs a context switch. The address of the trap vector is calculated by (>0040 + 4 × D).
SINGLE-OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
B	Branch	SA → (PC)
BL	Branch and Link	(PC) → (WR11), SA → (PC)
BLWP	Branch and Load Workspace Pointer	(SA) → (WP), (SA + 2) → (PC), (old WP) → (new WR13), (old PC) → (new WR14), (old ST) → (new WR15). The LIRQ inputs are not tested upon completion of the BLWP instruction.
CLR	Clear	0 → (SA)
SETO	Set to Ones	FFFF → (SA)
INV	Invert	(SA) inverted → (SA)
NEG	Negate	− (SA) → (SA)
ABS	Absolute Value	|(SA)| → (SA)
SWPB	Swap bytes	Bits 0-7 of (SA) → bits 8-15 of (SA); bits 8-15 of (SA) → bits 0-7 of (SA)
INC	Increment	(SA) + 1 → (SA)
INCT	Increment by 2	(SA) + 2 → (SA)
DEC	Decrement	(SA) − 1 → (SA)
DECT	Decrement by 2	(SA) − 2 → (SA)
X	Execute	Execute instruction at SA

A

CPU instruction set summary (concluded)

SHIFT INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
SLA	Shift Left Arithmetic	Shift (W) left. Fill vacated bit positions with 0.
SRA	Shift Right Arithmetic	Shift (W) right. Fill vacated bit positions with original MSB of (W).
SRC	Shift Right Circular	Shift (W) right. Shift previous LSB into MSB.
SRL	Shift Right Logical	Shift (W) right. Fill vacated bit positions with zeros.
JUMP INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
JEQ	Jump Equal	Jump if ST2 = 1.
JGT	Jump Greater Than	Jump if ST1 = 1.
JH	Jump High	Jump if ST0 = 1 and ST2 = 0.
JHE	Jump High or Equal	Jump if ST0 = 1 or ST2 = 1.
JL	Jump Low	Jump if ST0 = 0 and ST2 = 0.
JLE	Jump Low or Equal	Jump if ST0 = 0 or ST2 = 1.
JLT	Jump Less Than	Jump if ST1 = 0 and ST2 = 0.
JMP	Jump	Jump unconditional.
JNC	Jump No Carry	Jump if ST3 = 0.
JNE	Jump Not Equal	Jump if ST2 = 0.
JNO	Jump No Overflow	Jump if ST4 = 0.
JOC	Jump on Carry	Jump if ST3 = 1.
JOP	Jump Odd Parity	Jump if ST5 = 1.
IMMEDIATE REGISTER INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
AI	Add Immediate	(W) + IOP → (W)
ANDI	AND Immediate	(W) AND IOP → (W)
CI	Compare Immediate	Compare (W) to IOP and set appropriate status bits.
LI	Load Immediate	IOP → (W)
ORI	OR Immediate	(W) OR IOP → (W)
INTERNAL REGISTER LOAD-IMMEDIATE INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
LWPI	Load Workspace Pointer Immediate	IOP → (W), no status bits affected.
LIMI	Load Interrupt Mask Immediate	IOP bits 12 through 15 → ST12 through ST15.
INTERNAL REGISTER LOAD-AND-STORE INSTRUCTIONS		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
STST	Store Status Register	ST → (W)
LST	Load Status Register	(W) → (ST)
STWP	Store Workspace Pointer	(WP) → (W)
LWP	Load Workspace Pointer	(W) → (WP)
RETURN		
MNEMONIC	**MEANING**	**DESCRIPTION**
RTWP	Return to Workspace Pointer	WR15 → ST, WR14 → PC, WR13 → WP.

A

TERMS USED IN INSTRUCTION SUMMARY TABLES

TERM	DEFINITIONS
SA	Source Address
DA	Destination Address
W	Workspace Register
a → b	a is transferred to b
|n|	Absolute value of n
ST	Status Register
STn	Bit n of Status Register
PC	Program Counter
(SA)	Contents of source address
(DA)	Contents of destination address
(W)	Contents of workspace register
WP	Workspace Pointer
IOP	Immediate operand
LSB	Least-significant bit (byte)
MSB	Most-significant bit (byte)
WRn	Workspace Register n

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)†

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1) . . . . . 7 V
Input voltage range . . . . . −0.3 V to 20 V
Output voltage range . . . . . −2 V to 7 V
Operating free-air temperature range (see Note 2) . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . −65°C to 150°C

†Stresses beyond those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions beyond those indicated in the "Recommended Operating Conditions" section of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute-maximum-rated conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

NOTES 1. Voltage values are with respect to V_{SS}.
2. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 90°C.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

recommended operating conditions

			MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
V_{CC}	Supply voltage		4.5	5	5.5	V
V_{SS}	Supply voltage			0		V
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage	MXTALIN	2.4			V
		CLKDIV, TEST0-TEST2, $\overline{\text{LBSYNC}}$	V_{CC}			V
		All other inputs	2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	MXTALIN			0.6	V
		CLKDIV, TEST0-TEST2, $\overline{\text{LBSYNC}}$			V_{SS}	V
		All other inputs			0.8	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	All outputs			0.15	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	All outputs			−1.7	mA
C_L	Load capacitance	MXTALOUT (Note 3)			80	pF
		All other outputs (Note 4)			100	pF
T_A	Operating free-air temperature (Note 2)		0		70	°C

NOTES: 2. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70 °C to guarantee operation at 70 °C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 90 °C.
3. High-frequency outputs on a printed-circuit card should be routed to minimize the inductance between the signal and system ground. All V_{SS} pins should also be routed to minimize inductance to system ground.
4. The difference in load capacitances on LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 must not exceed 10 pF.

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	LBCLK1, LBCLK2	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, I_{OH} = 0.15 mA	4			V
		All other outputs		2.4			V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	All outputs	V_{CC} = 5.5 V, I_{OL} = 1.7 mA			0.45	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, V_{OH} = 2.4 V			0.15	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, V_{OL} = 0.45 V			−1.7	mA
I_{OZL}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with low-level voltage applied		V_O = 0.45 V			−20	μA
I_{OZH}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with high-level voltage applied		V_O = 2.4 V			20	μA

Continued next page.

A

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (unless otherwise noted) (concluded)

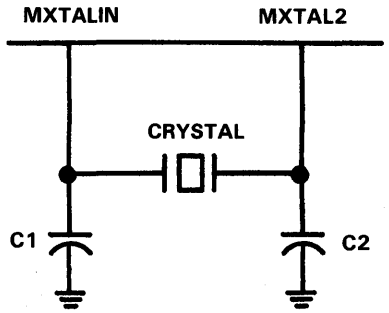
PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	$\overline{LEN}$, TEST0-TEST2, $\overline{TEST}$, $\overline{LBSYNC}$ (Notes 5 and 6)	V_I = 0.45 V			−700	μA
		All other inputs				−20	μA
I_{IH}	High-level input current		$V_I = V_{CC}$			20	μA
I_{CC}	Supply Current		V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25° C		150		mA
			V_{CC} = 5.5 V, T_A = 0° C			305	mA
			V_{CC} = 5.5 V, T_C = 90°C			240	mA
C_I	Input capacitance	All inputs	f = 1 MHz, all other inputs at 0 V			15	pF

NOTES: 5. $\overline{LEN}$, TEST0-TEST2, and $\overline{LBSYNC}$ have internal pullups. They may be left unconnected, in which case they function as being high.
6. $\overline{LBSYNC}$ and $\overline{TEST}$ should be left unconnected.

CLOCK REQUIREMENTS AND TIMING

internal clock option

The internal oscillator is enabled by connecting a parallel-resonant crystal across MXTALIN and MXTAL2 (see Figure 2). MXTALOUT is one-third the crystal fundamental frequency. C1 and C2 should be chosen such that C2 is always equal to or greater than C1.



NOTE 7: C1 and C2 represent the total capacitance on these pins including strays and parasitics, but not the input capacitance of the device pins.

FIGURE 2. EXTERNAL CRYSTAL CONNECTIONS

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Crystal frequency, fx	0°C to 70°C		24		MHz
Crystal frequency tolerance				0.006	%
C1, C2		10	15	20	pF

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

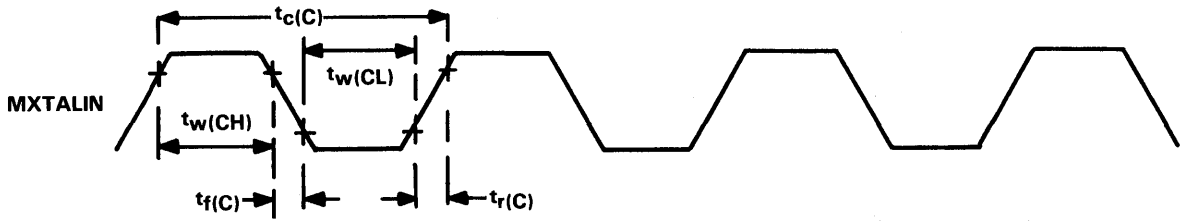
external clock option

An external frequency source can be used by injecting the frequency directly into MXTALIN with MXTAL2 left unconnected. The external source must conform to the following specification.

timing requirements over recommended operating conditions

	PARAMETER	MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
f_{ext}	External clock frequency		24		MHz
	External clock tolerance			0.006	%
$t_{c(C)}$	Input clock cycle time		41.7		ns
$t_{r(C)}$	Input clock rise time		5	15	ns
$t_{f(C)}$	Input clock fall time		5	15	ns
$t_{w(CH)}$	Input clock pulse duration high	$\frac{1}{2}t_{c(C)}-t_{f(C)}$			ns
$t_{w(CL)}$	Input clock pulse duration low	$\frac{1}{2}t_{c(C)}-t_{f(C)}$			ns

clock timing



LAN ADAPTER BUS CLOCK PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{c(LA)}$	LAN Adapter bus cycle time (Note 8)	333	333.7	ns
t_{d1}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK2 no longer low in next cycle	4Q−2	4Q+2	
t_{d2}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 high in next cycle		4Q+9	
t_{d3}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer low	Q−3	Q+3	
t_{d4}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 high		Q+9	
t_{d5}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK2 no longer high	2Q−2	2Q+7	
t_{d6}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 low		2Q+12	
t_{d7}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer high	3Q−15	3Q−1	
t_{d8}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 low		3Q	
t_{d9}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LBCLK2 high	Q		
t_{d10}	Delay time, LBCLK2 high to LBCLK1 high	Q−4		
t_{d11}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to LBCLK2 low	Q−4		
t_{d12}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK1 low	Q−16		

NOTES: 8. The LAN Adapter bus cycle time is 333.3 ns ± 0.1%. This value shall be used for calculations requiring the time between successive rising edges of LBCLK2.
9. Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS READ AND WRITE PARAMETERS

switching characteristics/timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)†

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d13}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LI/$\overline{D}$ valid		47	ns
t_{d14}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high		47	
t_{d15}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to address valid		47	
t_{d16}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LR/$\overline{W}$ valid		47	
t_{wH1}	Pulse duration, LAL high	Q−50		
t_{d17}	Delay time, address valid to LAL no longer high	Q−50		
t_{d18}	Delay time, LAL fall to 1.3 V to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d19}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d20}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance in read cycle		Q+74	
t_{d21}	Delay time, LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in read cycle	0		
t_{d22}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in read cycle		Q+84	
t_{d23}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in write cycle		Q+47	
t_{d24}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in read cycle	0		
t_{d25}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ high in read cycle		3Q+47	
t_{d26}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL low		2Q−12	
t_{d27}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LAD, LPH, LPL no longer high impedance in next cycle	80		
t_{d28}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to write data valid		3Q−70	
t_{d29}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$ no longer valid	20		
t_{d30}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to write data no longer valid	20		
t_{d31}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in write cycle	20		
t_{d32}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ high in write cycle		80	
t_{d33}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in write cycle	Q−4		
t_{su1}	Setup time, Read data valid to LBCLK1 no longer high	20		
t_{h1}	Hold time, read data valid after LBCLK1 low if t_{h2} not met	15		
t_{h2}	Hold time, read data valid after $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low if t_{h1} not met	0		
t_{d34}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY high		2Q−41	
t_{d35}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY low		2Q−21	
t_{h3}	Hold time, LBRDY valid after LBCLK2 low	80		

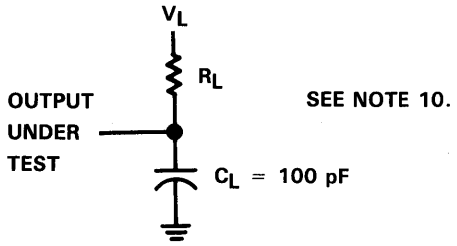
†This table is entitled switching characteristics/timing requirements because several of the parameters specified can be classified as characteristics or requirements depending on the mode of operation: bus slave or bus master. The values given are valid for both modes.

NOTE 9: Q = $0.25t_{c(LA)}$.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

PARAMETER MEASUREMENT INFORMATION



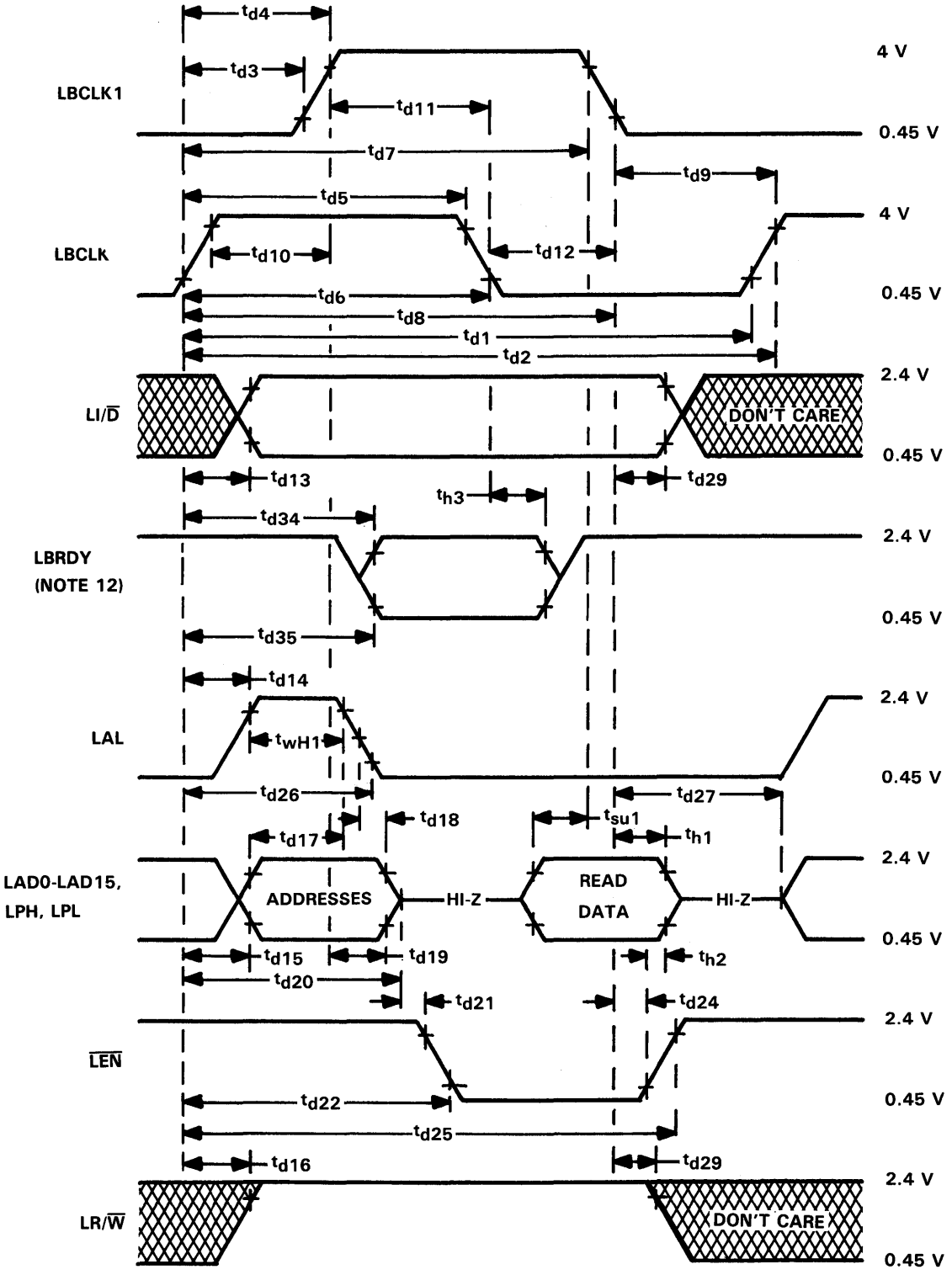
NOTE 10: R_L and V_L are chosen as follows:

$$R_L = \frac{V_{OH} - V_{OL}}{|I_{OL} - I_{OH}|} \qquad V_L = V_{OH} - (I_{OH})(R_L)$$

FIGURE 3. LOAD CIRCUIT

A

LAN Adapter bus read timing

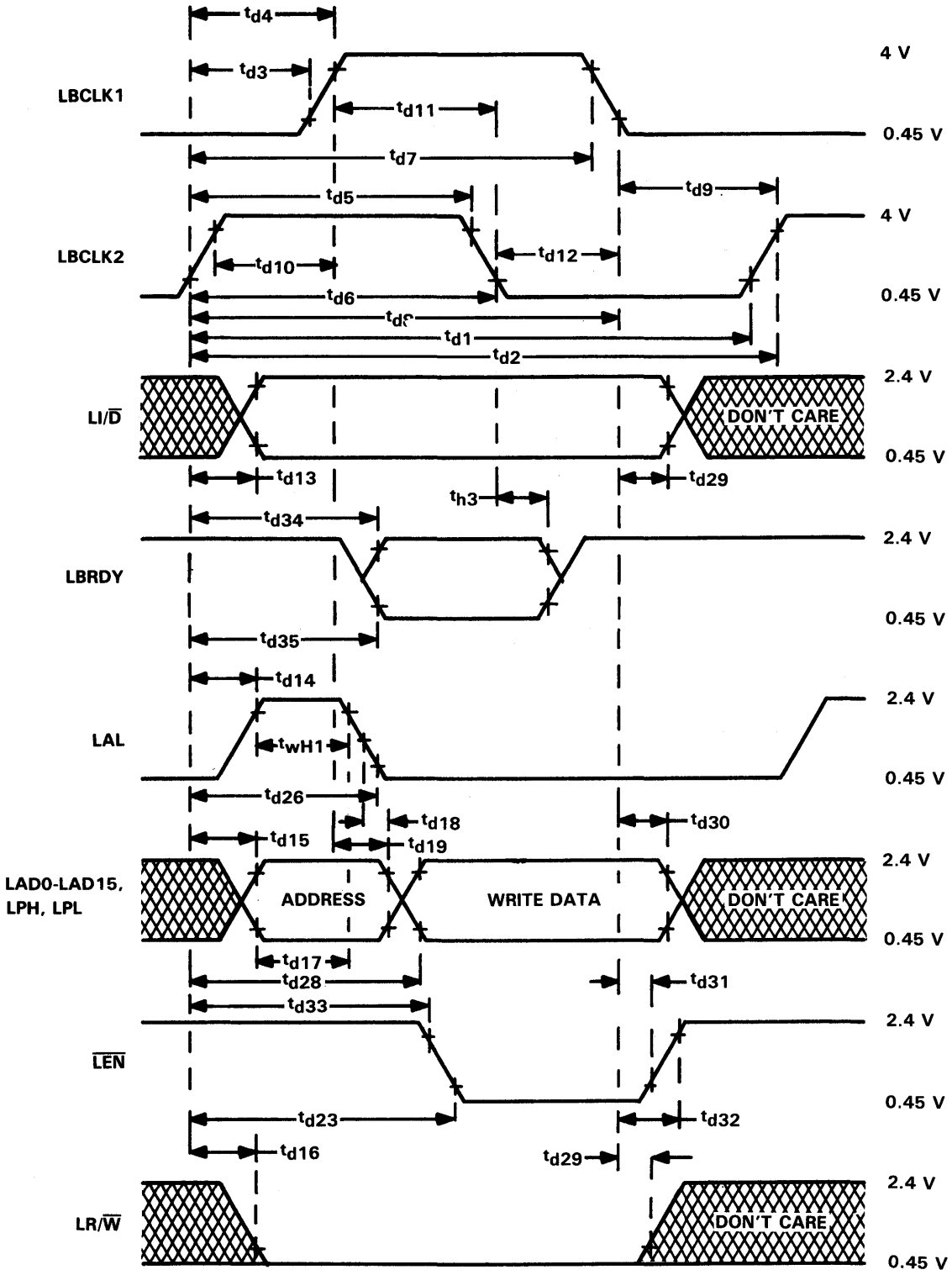


NOTES: 11. The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.
12. LBRDY should be maintained at a high state unless wait states are required.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN Adapter bus write timing



NOTE 11: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS ARBITRATION PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d36}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LBGR1}$, $\overline{LBGR2}$ valid		57	ns
t_{d37}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LBGR1}$, $\overline{LBGR2}$ no longer valid	−6		
t_{d38}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer driven low, TMS38010 releases bus	3Q−15		
t_{d39}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high impedance, TMS38010 releases bus		4Q−2	
t_{d40}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer high impedance, TMS38010 acquires bus	2Q−9		
t_{d41}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL driven low, TMS38010 acquires bus		3Q−15	
t_{d42}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ high impedance, TMS38010 releases bus		74	
t_{d43}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high impedance, TMS38010 acquires bus	80		
t_{d44}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ driven high, TMS38010 acquires bus		74	
t_{d45}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{W}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL high impedance, TMS38010 releases bus		80	
t_{d46}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{W}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL no longer high impedance, TMS38010 acquires bus	80		

NOTE 9: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$

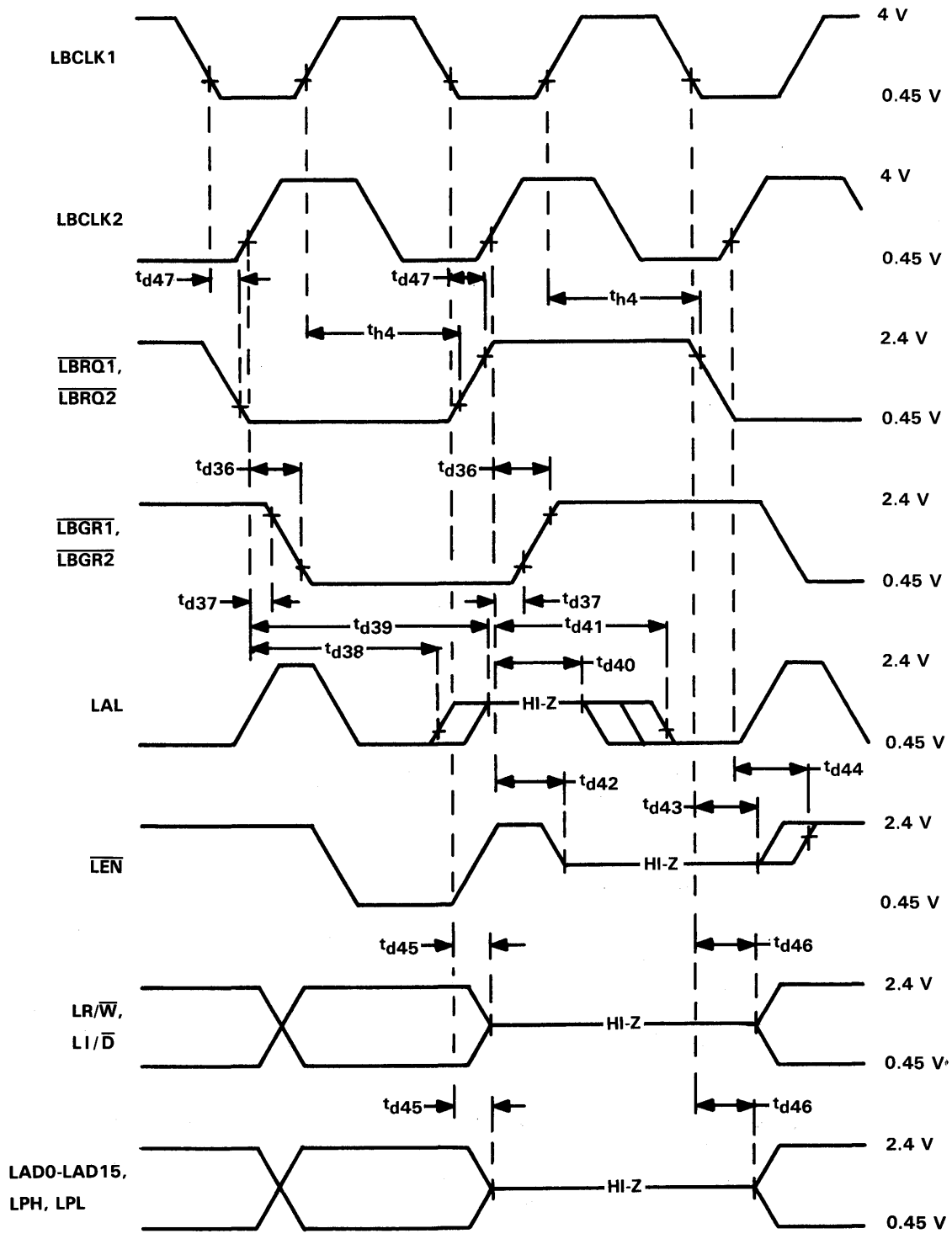
timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d47}	Delay of $\overline{LBRQ1}$, $\overline{LBRQ2}$ from LBCLK1 low		56	ns
t_{h4}	Hold of $\overline{LBRQ1}$, $\overline{LBRQ2}$ after LBCLK1 rise	0		

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN Adapter bus arbitration



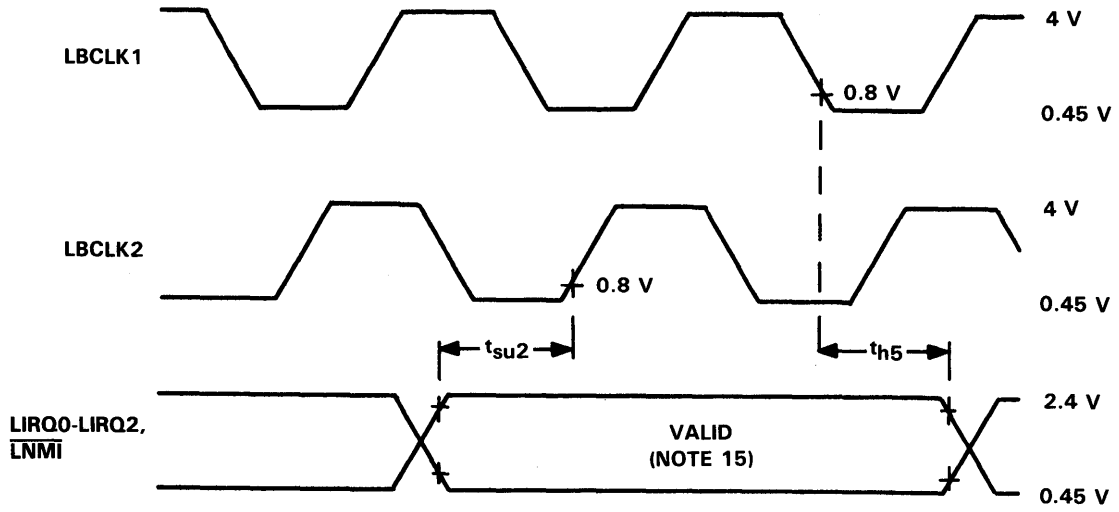
NOTE 13: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V.

MISCELLANEOUS LAN ADAPTER BUS PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

PARAMETER		MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{su2}	Setup time, $\overline{LNMI}$ or LIRQ0-LIRQ2 valid prior to LBCLK2 rise to guarantee recognition	40		ns
t_{h5}	Hold time, $\overline{LNMI}$ or LIRQ0-LIRQ2 after LBCLK1 low to guarantee recognition	40		

interrupt timing



NOTES: 14. The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for LIRQ0-LIRQ2 and $\overline{LNMI}$ are 2 V and 0.8 V.

15. Inputs LIRQ0-LIRQ2 should not change state except during the window when LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are BOTH low. To meet this requirement, a latch, clocked by the falling edge of LBCLK1, should be added between the LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2 outputs of the TMS38030 and the LIRQ0-LIRQ2 inputs of the TMS38010.

MISCELLANEOUS TIMING PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

PARAMETER		MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d48}	Delay from reading minimum V_{CC} during power-up to valid LBCLK1, LBCLK2 with $\overline{LRESET}$ active		90	ms

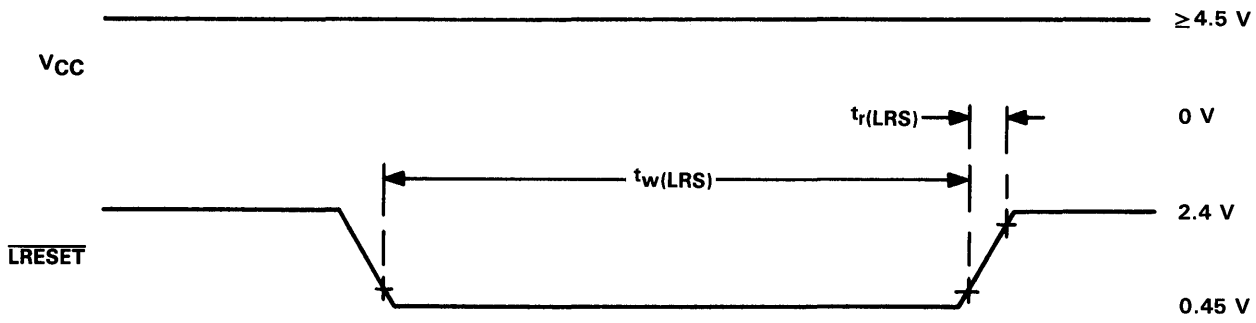
A

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

PARAMETER		MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{w(LRS)}$	$\overline{LRESET}$ pulse duration, asserted with minimum V_{CC} or greater applied, and valid LBCLK1 and LBCLK2	14		μs
$t_{r(LRS)}$	$\overline{LRESET}$ rise time		100	ns
$t_{r(VCC)}$	V_{CC} rise time from 1.2V to V_{CC} minimum	1		ms

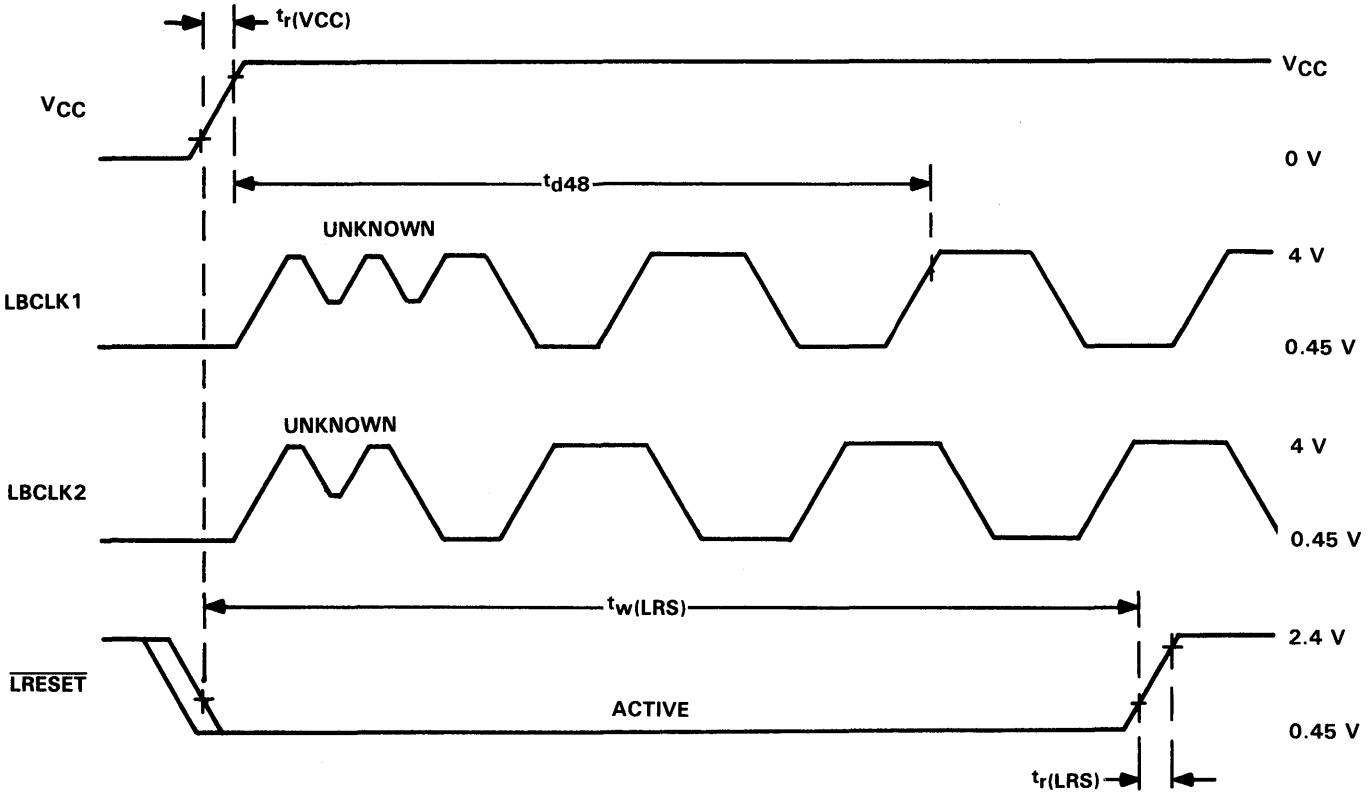
TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

$\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ timing



NOTE 16: The timing reference points are 2 V and 0.8 V.

power-up, LBCLK, and $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ timing



NOTE 17: The timing reference points for V_{CC} are 4.5 V and 1.2 V. The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ are 2 V and 0.8 V.

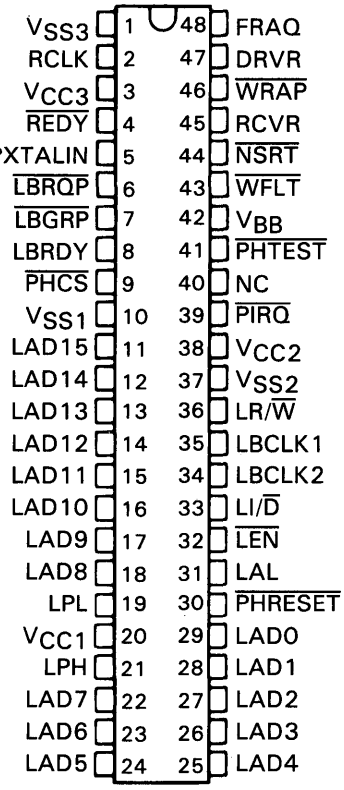
A

A

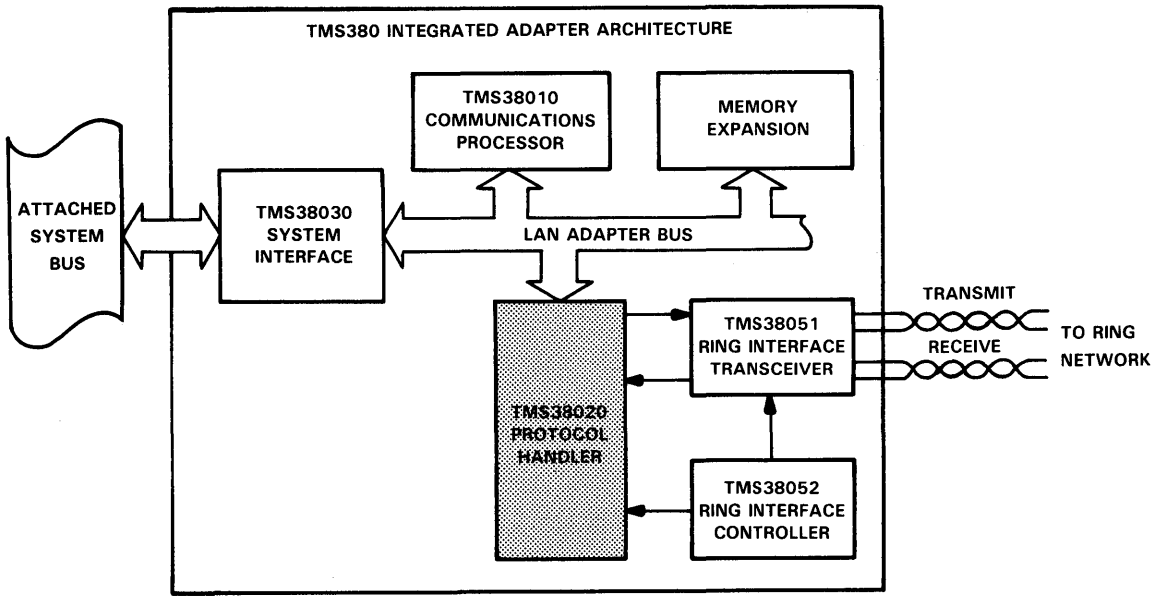
SEPTEMBER 1985 – REVISED MAY 1986

- Compatible with IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Ring Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications
  - Differential Manchester Code Conversion on 4M-Bit per Second Serial Data Stream
  - Address Recognition (Functional, Group and Specific)
  - Manchester Code Violation Detection
  - Starting and Ending Delimiter Generation and Detection
  - CRC Generation and Checking
  - High-Speed Frame Repeat Path Minimizes Ring Latency (2-Bit Times)
  - Token Transmit and Priority Control
  - Monitor Functions
- Separate Pairs of DMA Channels for Receive and Transmit
- Automatic Frame Buffer Management
- On-Chip 16K-Byte ROM for Adapter Software
  - 8K x 18-Bit ROM with Byte Parity Protection
  - Single Word Prefetch
- Test Pin for Hi-Z, Module-in-Place Testing
- 48-Pin, 600-Mil, Ceramic Dual-in-Line Packaging
- Low-Power Scaled-NMOS Technology

JD PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



token ring LAN application diagram

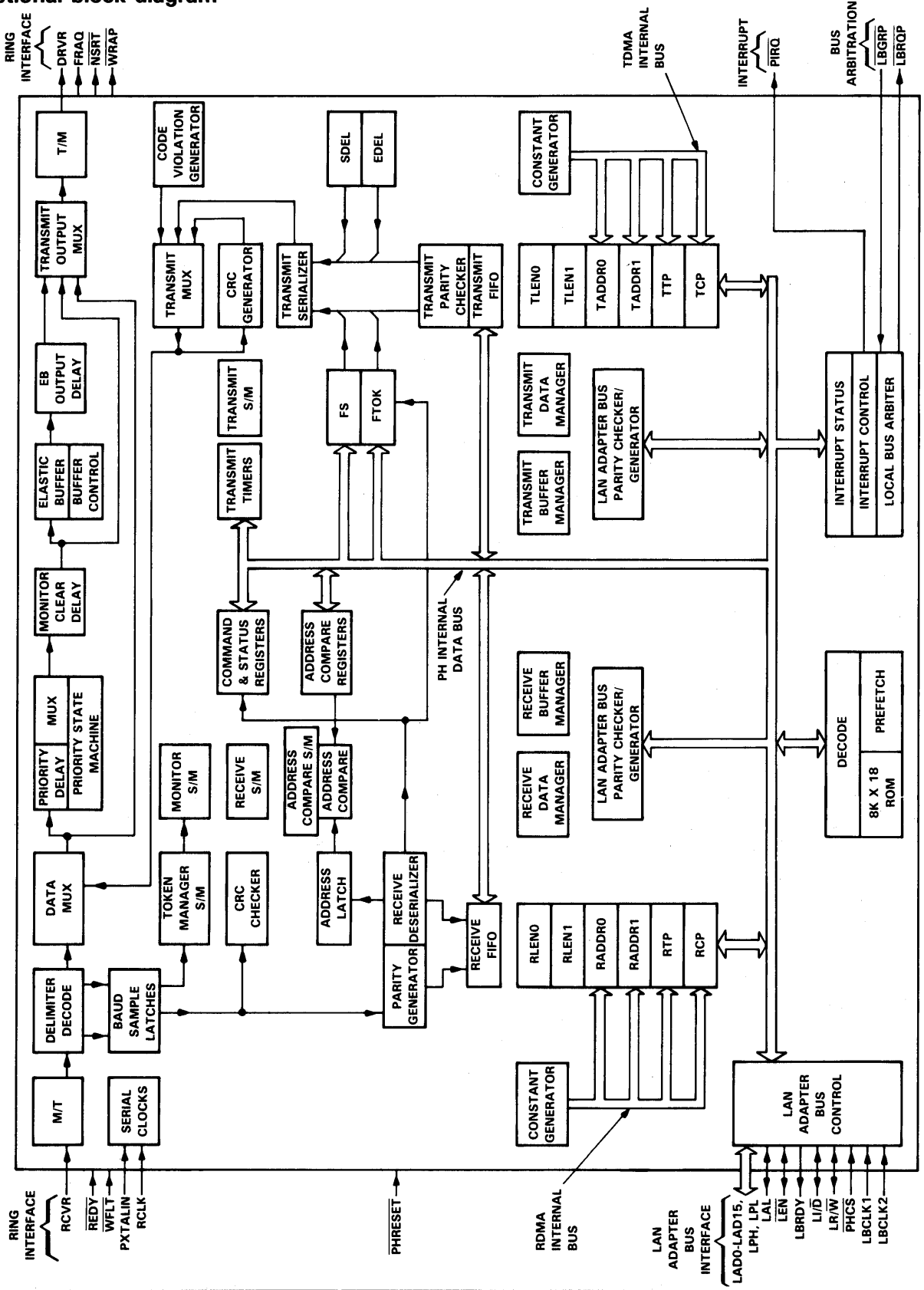


pin descriptions

NAME	I/O	DESCRIPTION
		LAN ADAPTER BUS INTERFACE PINS
LBCLK1, LBCLK2	I	Bus Clocks
$\overline{\text{LAL}}$	I/O	Address Latch Enable
$\overline{\text{LEN}}$	I/O	Data Enable
LBRDY	I/O	Bus Ready
$\overline{\text{PIRQ}}$	O	PH Interrupt Request
$\overline{\text{LBRQP}}$	O	Bus Request
$\overline{\text{LBGRP}}$	I	Bus Grant
LAD0 - LAD15	I/O	Address/Data bus. LAD0 is the most-signiticant bit, LAD15 is the least-significant bit.
LPH,LPL	I/O	Parity High/Parity Low
LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$	I/O	Instruction/Data Bus Status Code
LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$	I/O	Read/Not Write
$\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$	I	Reset
$\overline{\text{PHCS}}$	I	Chip Select
		RING INTERFACE PINS
DRVR	O	Transmitter Data
FRAQ	O	Frequency Acquisition Select
$\overline{\text{NSRT}}$	O	Insert Control
RCLK	I	Recovered Data Clock
RCVR	I	Received Data
$\overline{\text{REDY}}$	I	Ring Interface Ready
$\overline{\text{WFLT}}$	I	Wire Fault Detect
$\overline{\text{WRAP}}$	O	Wrap Select
PXTALIN	I	Ring Frequency Reference Clock
		MISCELLANEOUS PINS
$\overline{\text{PHTEST}}$	I	Module-in-Place Test Mode Select. This pin should be left unconnected.
V_{CC}		5-V supply pins.
V_{SS}		Ground pins.
V_{BB}		Substrate bias. This pin is reserved and should be left unconnected.
NC		Reserved. This pin should be left unconnected.

A

functional block diagram



A

description

The TMS38020 Protocol Handler integrates onto a single chip the hardware-based protocol functions for a 4 megabit per second token ring Local Area Network (LAN). An on-chip ROM contains 16K bytes of software used by the TMS38010 Communications Processor for implementation of a complete token ring Adapter function. The TMS38020 provides Differential Manchester encoding and decoding, frame address recognition, and includes state machine functions which capture free tokens, transmit and receive frames, manage the Adapter RAM buffers and provide token transmit and priority controls. Four DMA channels, two for transmit and two for receive, insure high-speed transfer of frames between the Adapter's buffer RAM and the ring. Integrity of transmitted and received data is provided by CRC generation and checking, detection of Differential Manchester code violations, and parity on internal data paths and at the LAN Adapter bus interface.

The TMS38020, when coupled with the TMS38010 Communications Processor, the TMS38030 System Interface, and the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface chips, forms a highly integrated token ring LAN Adapter.

architecture

The TMS38020 Protocol Handler contains a bus master interface to the LAN Adapter bus for transfer of frame data between itself and LAN Adapter bus memory, a bus slave interface to the LAN Adapter bus for control by an external CPU, an interface to the Ring Interface circuit, and a 16K-byte ROM. Internal to the TMS38020 are several finite-state machine-implemented functions which provide bit-and frame-level processing of token protocols as well as control the flow of DMA data to and from buffer RAM resident on the LAN Adapter bus. The following paragraphs describe the blocks shown in the functional block diagram.

address compare state machine

The address compare state machine controls the recognition of addresses in a received frame (including stripped frames). A description of frame addressing methodology may be found in the Communications Services Section of the User's Guide.

CRC checker

This block contains a 32-bit feedback shift register for calculation of the cyclic redundancy code of frames received. The TMS38020 calculates the CRC for each frame that the TMS38020 receives. If the calculated CRC does not agree with the CRC value of the received frame, the TMS38020 sets an error indicator bit within the frame to flag the occurrence of the error. If the TMS38020 was copying the frame at the time the CRC error was detected (due to an address match), the TMS38020 notifies the LAN Adapter CPU of the error. Mathematically, the CRC is calculated by considering the checked bytes as a polynomial and dividing it modulo 2 by the following polynomial:

$$G(X) = X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^{8} + X^{7} + X^{5} + X^{4} + X^{2} + X^{1} + 1$$

CRC generator

The cyclic redundancy code (CRC) generator generates the CRC field to be inserted by the TMS38020 when transmitting. The procedure for generating CRC is identical to that described for the CRC checker.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

data multiplexer

The data multiplexer selects the source of the data to be transmitted. The source may be received ring data (repeat mode), a constant of zeros (idles), or data to be transmitted by the TMS38020.

delimiter decode

This block detects the Start Delimiter (SDEL) and End Delimiter (EDEL) sequences defined for the protocol.

elastic buffer

The elastic buffer absorbs the accumulated phase jitter in the ring. During normal operation, only one station (the Active Monitor) inserts its elastic buffer on the ring. As the accumulated phase delay around the ring varies, it is "absorbed" by the elastic buffer. The elastic buffer can absorb ± 3 bits of accumulated jitter. The total delay through the elastic buffer is 3 ± 3 bits. When the elastic buffer is not inserted on the ring, it permits the TMS38020 to detect when the incoming data frequency falls outside acceptable bounds by detecting overrun and underrun conditions.

The overrun and underrun conditions are defined to occur within a specific number of bit times. To minimize the possibility of overrun and underrun over longer periods of time, the PH re-initalizes the elastic buffer every 512 bit times when in standby monitor mode and whenever the PH detects a token when in active monitor mode.

fire token register (FTOK)

The fire token register is used to hold the access control (AC) field that will be used in transmitting a token on the ring.

interrupt status logic

The interrupt status logic contains a register with information concerning TMS38020 interrupts. This logic provides interrupt vectoring, masking, and prioritization.

LAN Adapter bus parity checker

The LAN Adapter bus parity checker checks all data placed on the internal TMS38020 data bus from the LAN Adapter bus. This includes data written to the TMS38020 by an external bus master, data read by the TMS38020 receive or transmit buffer manager, and data read by the TMS38020 transmit DMA unit for transmission on the ring.

LAN Adapter bus parity generator

The parity generator generates the parity to be placed on the LAN Adapter bus when any TMS38020 register is read by an external bus master. However, receive data which has parity generated by the serial parity generator has no parity generated by the bus parity generator.

manchester-to-transitional decoder (M/T)

This functional block converts the Differential Manchester code received from the ring into an internal format called "transitional" code. Transitional code is so named because baud† are encoded based upon their transition from the previous baud. The receive data sampled on pin RCVR is sampled by the recovered data clock input on pin RCLK.

monitor delay

The token ring protocol calls for a ring function called an Active Monitor. Each ring will have one Active Monitor which is chosen during a contention process. One function of an Active Monitor is to introduce enough delay in a ring to provide a minimum length ring sufficient to circulate a free token. When the TMS38020 is configured as an Active Monitor [the CXMT bit of the Ring Command 1 (RINGCMD1) register is set], it inserts additional monitor delay to meet the effective ring length requirement. The monitor delay

†Two baud equals one bit of Differential Manchester encoding.

consists of a 7.5-baud (half-bit times) delay preceding the elastic buffer and a 22.5-baud delay succeeding it. The total delay through the TMS38020 when the Active Monitor mode is selected is 4-baud normal delay plus 19-baud for the priority delay plus 30-baud for the monitor delay plus 6-baud average elastic buffer delay. This delay totals 59 ± 6 baud.

monitor state machine

The monitor state machine controls the setting of the Monitor Count bit of busy or priority tokens which are repeated on the ring and the detection of token activity on the ring. This state machine is active when the TMS38020 is configured as an Active Monitor [MON bit of Ring Command 1 Register (RINGCMD1) is set].

priority delay and state machine

The TMS38020 provides control of seven levels of token priority. The priority state machine is responsible for controlling the token priority as defined by the protocol. The priority delay of 19 half-bit times is inserted when a station releases a token to allow the station to modify the token according to the priority protocol.

receive buffer manager

The receive buffer manager controls the receive buffer chaining operations on the LAN Adapter bus.

receive data manager

The receive data manager requests and acknowledges LAN Adapter bus cycles for DMA to write the received frame into memory on the LAN Adapter bus.

receive deserializer

The receive deserializer block is a 16-bit serial-in parallel-out shift register. The input is the sampled data from the ring. A serial parity generator unit calculates the parity for each eight bits shifted in and stores this parity with the parallel data. The 18 bits of data and parity are then loaded in parallel into the receive FIFO buffer.

receive DMA registers

The receive DMA registers are indicated in the functional block diagram by the names RCP, RTP, RADDR0, RADDR1, RLEN0, and RLEN1. These registers are managed by the receive buffer manager. Only the register RCP (receive chain pointer) may be accessed by external LAN Adapter bus masters. The remaining registers are not accessible by external bus masters. A brief description of these registers follows.

receive chain pointer (RCP)

This register contains the address of the buffer currently being filled with data from the ring.

receive temporary pointer (RTP)

The receive temporary pointer register contains the starting address of the buffer into which the receive DMA channel will store data when the buffer being used is full.

channel address registers (RADDR0, RADDR1)

The TMS38020 maintains two DMA channels for receive operations. The channel address register for both receive DMA channels contains the LAN Adapter bus address of the word being accessed by that channel.

channel length registers (RLEN0, RLEN1)

The channel length register for each of the two receive DMA channels contains the number of empty bytes left in the buffer currently being filled by that channel.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

receive FIFO

The receive first-in, first-out (FIFO) buffer stores up to two words (16 bits) of deserialized data before it is transferred via DMA onto the LAN Adapter bus. Data is transferred onto the LAN Adapter bus under control of the receive data manager block.

serial receive state machine

This state machine controls operation of the receiver portion of the serial data path.

serial transmit state machine

This state machine controls the operation of the serial transmit data path.

transitional-to-manchester decoder (T/M)

This functional block converts the internal transitional code representation of transmit data to Differential Manchester code.

transmit buffer manager

The transmit buffer manager performs the automatic buffer chaining of transmit buffers contained in LAN Adapter bus memory.

transmit data manager

The transmit data manager requests and acknowledges LAN Adapter bus cycles for DMA to read data to be transmitted on the ring.

transmit DMA registers

The transmit DMA registers (TCP, TTP, TADDR0, TADDR1, TLEN0, and TLEN1) are managed by the transmit buffer manager. Of these, only the transmit chain pointer (TCP) may be loaded by external LAN Adapter bus masters. The remaining registers are not accessible by external bus masters. The transmit DMA registers are described briefly below.

transmit chain pointer (TCP)

The transmit chain pointer contains the address of the buffer currently being read for transmit data.

transmit temporary pointer (TTP)

The transmit temporary pointer register contains the starting address of the buffer from which transmit data will be read by the DMA channel when the present buffer has been read.

channel address registers (TADDR0, TADDR1)

The TMS38020 maintains two DMA channels for transmit operations. The channel address register for both transmit DMA channels contains the LAN Adapter bus address of the word being read by that channel.

channel length registers (TLEN0, TLEN1)

The channel length register for each of the two transmit DMA channels contains the number of bytes yet to be transmitted from the current buffer.

transmit FIFO

The transmit FIFO buffers two 16-bit words, allowing the TMS38020 to maintain a constant flow of transmitted data into the transmit serializer. The parity from the LAN Adapter bus is maintained within the FIFO.

transmit multiplexer

The transmit multiplexer selects either the CRC generator or transmit serializer output onto the transmit data path.

transmit parity checker

The transmit parity checker checks the parity of data transferred from the top of the transmit FIFO to the transmit serializer. It performs the final check of data before it is placed in the serializer.

transmit serializer

The transmit serializer is a 16-bit parallel-in, serial-out shift register. The shift register is loaded from the data at the top of the transmit FIFO, from the concatenation of the Start Delimiter (SDEL) and the fire token register (FTOK) or from a concatenation of the End Delimiter (EDEL) and the frame status (FS) register.

transmit timer

The TMS38020 contains a physical trailer timer (PTT). This timer provides a watchdog timer function for halting the frame strip process after transmitting a frame.

command and status registers

The command and status registers of the TMS38020 are registers which may be read/written through memory-mapped I/O by an external bus master on the LAN Adapter bus. These registers are mapped to LAN Adapter bus addresses as shown in Table 1.

ADDRESS	BITS		DESCRIPTION
	0 7	8 15	
>0100	RINGCMD0		RING COMMAND 0
>0102	RINGCMD1		RING COMMAND 1
>0104	RINGSTS		RING STATUS
>0106	INTSTAT		INTERRUPT STATUS
>0108	00†	PTTLATCH	PHYSICAL TRAILER TIMER LATCH
>010A	RCP		RECEIVE CHAIN POINTER
>010C	TCP		TRANSMIT CHAIN POINTER
>010E	FTOK	00‡	FIRE TOKEN

†Most-significant bits are reserved.
‡Least-significant bits are reserved.

FIGURE 1. TMS38020 COMMAND AND STATUS REGISTERS

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

ring command 0 (RINGCMD0)

The RINGCMD0 register enables specific receive and transmit modes of the TMS38020 including idle insertion between frames and stripping of transmitted data from the ring. The bits of RINGCMD0 are defined in Table 1.

TABLE 1. RING COMMAND 0 (RINGCMD0) REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	XMTIMM	Transmit Immediate Mode
1	BDM	Baud Data Mode
2	NOSTRIP	No Strip Mode
3	XMTCRC	Transmit CRC
4	RNFT	Release No Free Token
5	XMTIDLE	Transmit Idles Mode
6	ETO	Enable Transmitter Output
7	PTEST	Parity Test
8	GAP0	Interframe Gap Bit 0
9	GAP1	Interframe Gap Bit 1
10	GAP2	Interframe Gap Bit 2
11		Reserved. This bit must be zero.
12		Reserved. This bit must be zero.
13		Reserved. This bit must be zero.
14		Reserved. This bit must be zero.
15	NOCHAIN	No Receive Chaining

ring command 1 (RINGCMD1)

The RINGCMD1 register is the master control register of the TMS38020. This register controls such functions as reset, clock sourcing, ring insertion, and address recognition. The bits of RINGCMD1 are defined in Table 2. The functions of receive options, ROPT0 and ROPT1, are presented in Table 3.

TABLE 2. RING COMMAND 1 (RINGCMD1) REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	NRESET	Not Reset
1	NFRAQ	Not Frequency Acquisition
2	INSERT	Insert Into Ring
3	NWRAP	Not Internal Wrap
4	CXMT	Crystal Transmit Mode Select
5	MON	Active Monitor Mode Select
6		Reserved. This bit must be set to zero.
7		Reserved. This bit must be set to one.
8		Reserved. This bit must be set to zero.
9	IGN0	Ignore Control 0
10	IGN1	Ignore Control 1
11	IGN2	Ignore Control 2
12	IGN3	Ignore Control 3
13	ROPT0	Receive Option 0
14	ROPT1	Receive Option 1
15		Reserved.

A

TABLE 3. RECEIVE OPTION BIT DECODE

ROPT0	ROPT1	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Copy frame if address match
0	1	Copy if MAC frame and address match
1	1	Copy all frames; set ARI and FCI only if address match.
1	0	Reserved. Must not be used.

ring status register (RINGSTS)

The RINGSTS register provides general ring status information, including ring interface status, error logging, and token validation. The bits of RINGSTS are defined in Table 4.

TABLE 4. RING STATUS (RINGSTS) REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	NGO	Not Go (Signal Loss)
1	GTDET	Good Token Detect
2	ATDET	Any Token Detect
3	WFAULT	Wire Fault
4	EBOUF	Elastic Buffer Over/Under Flow
5-9		Reserved
10	MAC0	MAC Attention Code Bit 0
11	MAC1	MAC Attention Code Bit 1
12	MAC2	MAC Attention Code Bit 2
13	MAC3	MAC Attention Code Bit 3
14	RIDER0	FS Rider Control Bit 0
15	RIDER1	FS Rider Control Bit 2

interrupt status (INTSTAT)

The INSTAT register contains information concerning TMS38020 interrupts. This register provides interrupt vectoring, masking, and prioritization. The bits of INSTAT are defined in Table 5. Table 6 lists the decode for bits 11 through 14 (INTCODE0 through INTCODE3).

TABLE 5. INTERRUPT STATUS (INTSTAT) REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	MIE	Master Interrupt Enable
1		Reserved
2	EORBE	End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Enable
3	EOTBE	End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Enable
4	SLIE	Signal Loss Interrupt Enable
5-7		Reserved
8	ID0	Interrupt Source ID Bit 0
9	ID1	Interrupt Source ID Bit 1
10	ID2	Interrupt Source ID Bit 2
11	INTCODE0	Interrupt Code Bit 0
12	INTCODE1	Interrupt Code Bit 1
13	INTCODE2	Interrupt Code Bit 2
14	INTCODE3	Interrupt Code Bit 3
15	"0"	Always zero

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

TABLE 6. INTERRUPT CODE 0 (INTCODE0) THROUGH INTERRUPT CODE 3 (INTCODE3) DECODE

INTCODE0	INTCODE1	INTCODE2	INTCODE3	DEFINITION
0	0	0	0	Reserved
0	0	0	1	LAN Adapter Bus Parity Error
0	0	1	0	Token Error
0	0	1	1	Signal Loss
0	1	0	0	BURST5 Error in Frame
0	1	0	1	Log Error
0	1	1	0	No Buffer Available
0	1	1	1	Attention
1	0	0	0	Reserved
1	0	0	1	Receive Frame Error
1	0	1	0	Transmit Frame Error
1	0	1	1	Receive End of Buffer
1	1	0	0	Transmit End of Buffer
1	1	0	1	Receive End of Frame
1	1	1	0	Transmit End of Frame
1	1	1	1	No Interrupt Pending

physical trailer timer latch (PTTLATCH)

The PTTLATCH register is an 8-bit control register containing a ring-speed-specific time constant. This value is the starting value of a timer which is started following the transmission of a frame so that a lost frame condition may be detected.

receive chain pointer (RCP)

The RCP register contains the starting address of the buffer into which the receive DMA channel, if active, stores receive data.

transmit chain pointer (TCP)

The TCP register contains the starting address of the buffer into which the transmit DMA channel, if active, reads data for transmission.

fire free token register (FTOK)

The FTOK register is used to hold the Access Control Field (AC) to be included in a token that will be generated by the TMS38020 and transmitted on the ring. Writing to the FTOK register causes a token to be released.

address compare registers

The TMS38020 contains 15 registers for use in comparing frame addresses. These registers are shown with their corresponding LAN Adapter bus addresses in Figure 2.

A

ADDRESS	NAME	DESCRIPTION
>0110	SAH	LOCAL SPECIFIC ADDRESS BITS 0-15
>0112	SAM	LOCAL SPECIFIC ADDRESS BITS 16-31
>0114	SAL	LOCAL SPECIFIC ADDRESS BITS 32-47
>0116		RESERVED. ALWAYS READ AS ZERO.
>0118	STRIPHI	STRIP ADDRESS BITS 16-31
>011A	STRIPLO	STRIP ADDRESS BITS 32-47
>011C	GNAHI	LOCAL GROUP ADDRESS BITS 0-15
>011E	GNALO	LOCAL GROUP ADDRESS BITS 16-31
>0120	>0000	RESERVED†
>0122	>0000	RESERVED†
>0124	>0000	RESERVED†
>0126	>0000	RESERVED†
>0128	>0000	RESERVED†
>012A	>0000	RESERVED†
>012C	FNAHI	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS BITS 0-15
>012E	FNALO	FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS BITS 16-31

†These registers must be initialized to zero following power up.

FIGURE 2. ADDRESS COMPARE REGISTERS

buffer management

The TMS38020's buffer managers move frame data in and out of buffer RAM, located on the LAN Adapter bus, through one or more singly-linked buffers. These buffers are aligned on 8-byte boundaries and have the organization for transmit and receive as shown in Figure 3.

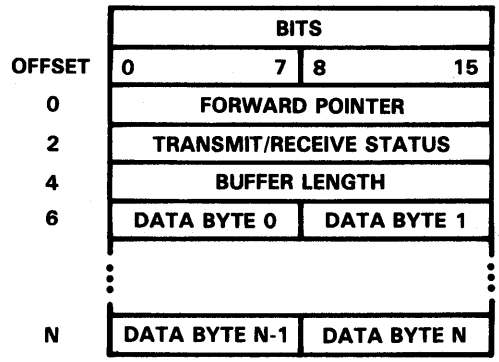


FIGURE 3. BUFFER ORGANIZATION

The forward pointer contains the address of the next buffer in a chain. The transmit/receive status field is used to report frame status. The length field contains the number of bytes in the data field of the buffer. This field is initialized by the LAN Adapter bus CPU.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

transmit buffers

When the buffer organization shown in Figure 3 is used for transmit frames, the status field has the bit functions shown in Table 7 in the last buffer in a chain used to transmit the frame.

TABLE 7. TRANSMIT STATUS FIELD BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	FUNCTION
0	INUSE	In Use Indicator
1	LFED	Local Frame Error Detect
2	RTEDI	Returned Error Detected Indicator
3	TCC0	Transmit Completion Code Bit 0
4	TCC1	Transmit Completion Code Bit 1
5	TCC2	Transmit Completion Code Bit 2
6	TCC3	Transmit Completion Code Bit 3
7	EOF	End Of Frame Indicator
8	FS0	Stripped Frame Status Bit 0 (ARI)
9	FS1	Stripped Frame Status Bit 1 (FCI)
10	FS2	Stripped Frame Status Bit 2
11	FS3	Stripped Frame Status Bit 3
12	FS4	Stripped Frame Status Bit 4 (ARI)
13	FS5	Stripped Frame Status Bit 5 (FCI)
14		Reserved. This bit is zero.
15		Reserved. This bit is zero.

The decoded function of the transmit completion code bits (TCC) is presented in Table 8.

TABLE 8. TRANSMIT COMPLETION CODE (TCC) BIT DECODE

PARALLEL LAN ADAPTER BUS PATH

TCC0	TCC1	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Normal Completion
0	1	Parity Error
1	0	DMA Underrun
1	1	Next Buffer Unavailable

SERIAL RING DATA PATH

TCC2	TCC3	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Normal Completion
0	1	PTT Timeout
1	0	Invalid Free Token
1	1	Invalid Abort on Strip

For frames to be transmitted on the ring, the data portion of a transmit buffer has the format shown in Figure 4.

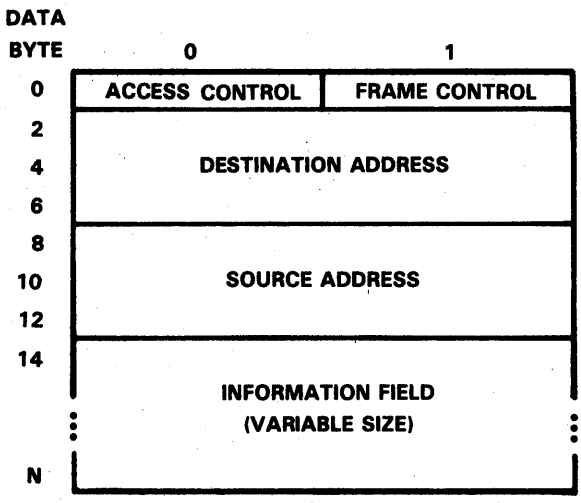


FIGURE 4. TRANSMIT DATA FORMAT

receive buffers

When the buffer organization shown in Figure 3 is used for receive frames, the status field has the bit functions shown in Table 9 in the last buffer in a chain used to receive the frame.

TABLE 9. RECEIVE STATUS FIELD BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	FUNCTION
0	INUSE	In Use
1	LFED	Local Frame Error Detect
2	REDI	Received Error Detected Indicator
3	RCC0	Receive Completion Code Bit 0
4	RCC1	Receive Completion Code Bit 1
5	RCC2	Receive Completion Code Bit 2
6	RCC3	Receive Completion Code Bit 3
7	EOF	End of Frame Indicator
8	FS0	Receive Frame Status Bit 0
9	FS1	Receive Frame Status Bit 1
10	FS2	Receive Frame Status Bit 2
11	FS3	Receive Frame Status Bit 3
12	FS4	Receive Frame Status Bit 4
13	FS5	Receive Frame Status Bit 5
14		Reserved
15		Reserved

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

The decoded function of the receive completion code bits (RCC) is presented in Table 10.

TABLE 10. RECEIVE COMPLETION CODE (RCC) BIT DECODE

PARALLEL LAN ADAPTER BUS PATH

RCC0	RCC1	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Normal Completion
0	1	Parity Error
1	0	DMA Overrun
1	1	Next Buffer Unavailable

SERIAL RING DATA PATH

RCC2	RCC3	DESCRIPTION
0	0	Normal Completion
0	1	Error: FCI not set
1	0	Implicit Abort
1	1	Explicit Abort

For frames received from the ring, the data portion of a receive buffer has the format shown in Figure 5.

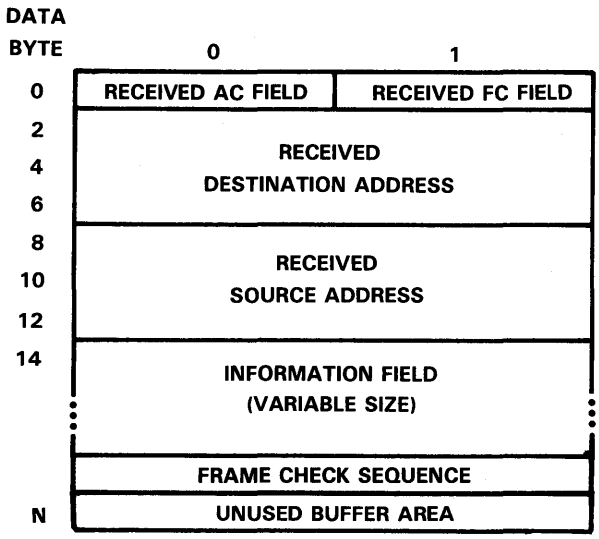


FIGURE 5. RECEIVE DATA FORMAT

A

TMS38020 ROM

The TMS38020 contains a 16K-byte ROM organized as 8K x 18 bits. Each byte contains an odd parity bit. The ROM is not used by internal TMS38020 logic but is accessed by the LAN Adapter bus CPU for program storage. This ROM contains object code for the TMS38010 Communications Processor. This ROM contains software which provides media access protocols compatible with IEEE Std 802.5-1985, protocol services for network management servers, and diagnostics which verify proper functionality of the TMS380 Token Ring Adapter.

Access to this ROM from the TMS38010 Communications Processor is in one or two LAN Adapter bus read cycles. A prefetch unit reads the word sequentially following the last word read so that sequential accesses occur with no wait states forced on the TMS38010. When access is nonsequential, the TMS38020 deasserts LBRDY in the first cycle to force the CPU to accept a wait state. On the second cycle, the TMS38020 asserts LBRDY and places the ROM data on the bus.

For testing purposes, the TMS38020 ROM should not be accessed for more than eight consecutive read cycles to successive (sequential) locations unless an intervening non-read cycle (one LBCLK cycle) or a non-sequential read cycle is performed.

When the TMS38020 is a bus slave, it will also respond if external circuitry deasserts LBRDY; it will continuously drive its output data (on reads) or delay modifying its internal register (on writes) until LBRDY is asserted high.

address decoding

The TMS38020 performs decoding of LAN Adapter bus addresses as shown in Table 12. Note that not all addresses are strictly decoded. For example, the TMS38020 does not decode address line A1 for ROM accesses at >C000. Thus, a memory read at address location >8000 is identical to an address read at location >C000. For this reason, expansion RAM on the LAN Adapter bus should negate $\overline{\text{PHCS}}$ whenever expansion RAM overlays memory addresses >8000 through >BFFF.

TABLE 12. TMS38020 ADDRESS DECODING

$\overline{\text{PHCS}}$	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	A10	A11	A12	A13	A14	SELECTED TMS38020 LOCATION
H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	X	X	L	L	Int'l Decode			Command/Status Registers
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	X	X	L	H	Int'l Decode			Address Compare Registers
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	X	X	H	L	Int'l Decode			Compare Address Registers
L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	X	X	H	H	Int'l Decode			Internal Test Registers
L	L	X	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	L	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	TMS38020 not selected
L	H	X	← Internal Decode →													TMS38020 ROM

A

test mode

The TMS38020 features a module-in-place test mode for board-level testing with the TMS38020 in-circuit. This facilitates testing by bed-of-nails testers. This test mode is enabled by tying the $\overline{\text{PHTEST}}$ pin (pin 41) to ground and supplying clock inputs LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 per the timing requirements specification. This has the effect of driving all outputs of the TMS38020 to a high-impedance state. When not used for testing purposes, this pin should be left unconnected. An internal pullup drives this pin high when not externally connected.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)†

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1) . . . . . 7 V
Input voltage range . . . . . −0.3 V to 20 V
Output voltage range . . . . . −2 V to 7 V
Operating free-air temperature range (see Note 2) . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . −65°C to 150°C

†Stresses beyond those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions beyond those indicated in the "Recommended Operating Conditions" section of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute-maximum-rated conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

NOTES: 1. Voltage values are with respect to V_{SS}.
2. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 80°C.

recommended operating conditions

			MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
V_{CC}	Supply voltage		4.75	5	5.25	V
V_{SS}	Supply voltage (Note 3)			0		V
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage	LBCLK1, LBCLK2	3.8			V
		RCVR, RCLK	2.6			V
		$\overline{\text{PHTEST}}$	V_{CC}			V
		All other inputs	2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	LBCLK1, LBCLK2, RCVR, RCLK			0.6	V
		$\overline{\text{PHTEST}}$			V_{SS}	V
		All other inputs			0.8	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	All outputs			0.15	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	DRVR			−1.2	mA
		LBRDY			−2.4	mA
		All other outputs			−1.7	mA
C_L	Load capacitance	DRVR			30	pF
		All other outputs			100	pF
T_A	Operating free-air temperature (Note 2)		0		70	°C

NOTES: 2. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 80°C.
3. Care should be taken by PC board designers to provide a minimum inductance path between the V_{SS} pins and system ground in order to minimize V_{SS} noise.

A

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.75 V, I_{OH} = 0.15 mA	2.4			V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.75 V, I_{OL} = Max			0.45	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.75 V, V_{OH} = 2.4 V			0.15	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	DRVR	V_{CC} = 4.75 V, V_{OL} = 0.45 V			−1.2	mA
		LBRDY				−2.4	mA
		All other outputs				−1.7	mA
I_{OZL}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with low-level voltage applied, outputs only		V_O = 0.45 V			−50	μA
I_{OZH}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with high-level voltage applied, outputs only		V_O = 2.4 V			50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	$\overline{PHTEST}$ (Note 4)	V_I = V_{SS}, V_{CC} at 4.75 V−5.25 V			−700	μA
		All other inputs				−20	μA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	All inputs except $\overline{PHTEST}$ (Note 5)	V_{CC} at 4.75 V−5.25 V			20	μA
I_{CC}	Supply current		V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C		110		mA
			V_{CC} = 5.25 V, T_A = 0°C			175	mA
			V_{CC} = 5.25 V, T_C = 80°C			125	mA
C_I	Input capacitance	LBCLK1, LBCLK2	f = 1 MHz, all other inputs at 0 V			20	pF
		RCVR, RCLK				10	pF
		All other inputs				15	pF

NOTES: 4. $\overline{PHTEST}$ has an internal pullup resistor implemented. It may be left unconnected; in this case it is interpreted as high.
5. I_{IH} for $\overline{PHTEST}$ is not specified because it will never be driven.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN ADAPTER BUS CLOCK PARAMETERS

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 6)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{c(LA)}$	LAN Adapter bus cycle time (Note 6)	333	333.7	ns
t_{d1}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK2 no longer low in next cycle	4Q − 2	4Q + 2	
t_{d2}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 high in next cycle		4Q + 9	
t_{d3}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer low	Q − 3	Q + 3	
t_{d4}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 high		Q + 9	
t_{d5}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK2 no longer high	2Q − 2	2Q + 7	
t_{d6}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 low		2Q + 12	
t_{d7}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer high	3Q − 15	3Q − 1	
t_{d8}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 low		3Q	
t_{d9}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LBCLK2 high	Q		
t_{d10}	Delay time, LBCLK2 high to LBCLK1 high	Q − 4		
t_{d11}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to LBCLK2 low	Q − 4		
t_{d12}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK1 low	Q − 16		

NOTES: 6. The LAN Adapter bus cycle time is 333.3 ns ± 0.1%. This value shall be used for calculations requiring the time between successive rising edges of LBCLK2.

7. $Q = 0.25\ t_{c(LA)}$.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS READ AND WRITE PARAMETERS

timing requirements/switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 6)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d13}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LI/$\overline{D}$ valid		47	ns
t_{d14}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high		47	
t_{d15}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to address valid		47	
t_{d16}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LR/$\overline{W}$ valid		47	
t_{wH1}	Pulse duration, LAL high	Q−50		
t_{d17}	Delay time, address valid to LAL no longer high	Q−50		
t_{d18}	Delay time, LAL fall to 1.3 V to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d19}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d20}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance in read cycle		Q+74	
t_{d21}	Delay time, LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in read cycle	0		
t_{d22}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in read cycle		Q+84	
t_{d23}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in write cycle		Q+47	
t_{d24}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in read cycle	0		
t_{d25}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ high in read cycle		3Q+47	
t_{d26}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL low		2Q−12	
t_{d27}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LAD, LPH, LPL no longer high impedance in next cycle	80		
t_{d28}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to write data valid		3Q−70	
t_{d29}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$ no longer valid	20		
t_{d30}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to write data no longer valid	20		
t_{d31}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in write cycle	20		
t_{d32}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ high in write cycle		80	
t_{d33}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in write cycle	Q−4		
t_{su1}	Setup time, read data valid to LBCLK1 no longer high	20		
t_{h1}	Hold time, read data valid after LBCLK1 low if t_{h2} not met	15		
t_{h2}	Hold time, read data valid after $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low if t_{h1} not met	0		
t_{d34}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY high		2Q−41	
t_{d35}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY low		2Q−21	
t_{h3}	Hold time, LBRDY valid after LBCLK2 low	80		

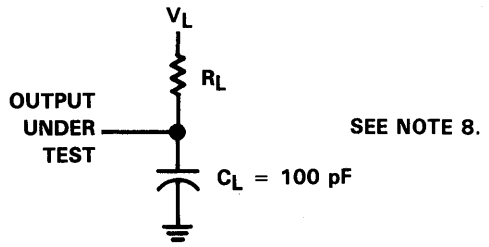
A

†This table is entitled switching characteristics/timing requirements because several of the parameters specified can be classified as characteristics or requirements depending on the mode of operation: bus slave or bus master (DMA). The values given are valid for both modes.

NOTE 7: Q = $0.25t_c$(LA).

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

PARAMETER MEASUREMENT INFORMATION



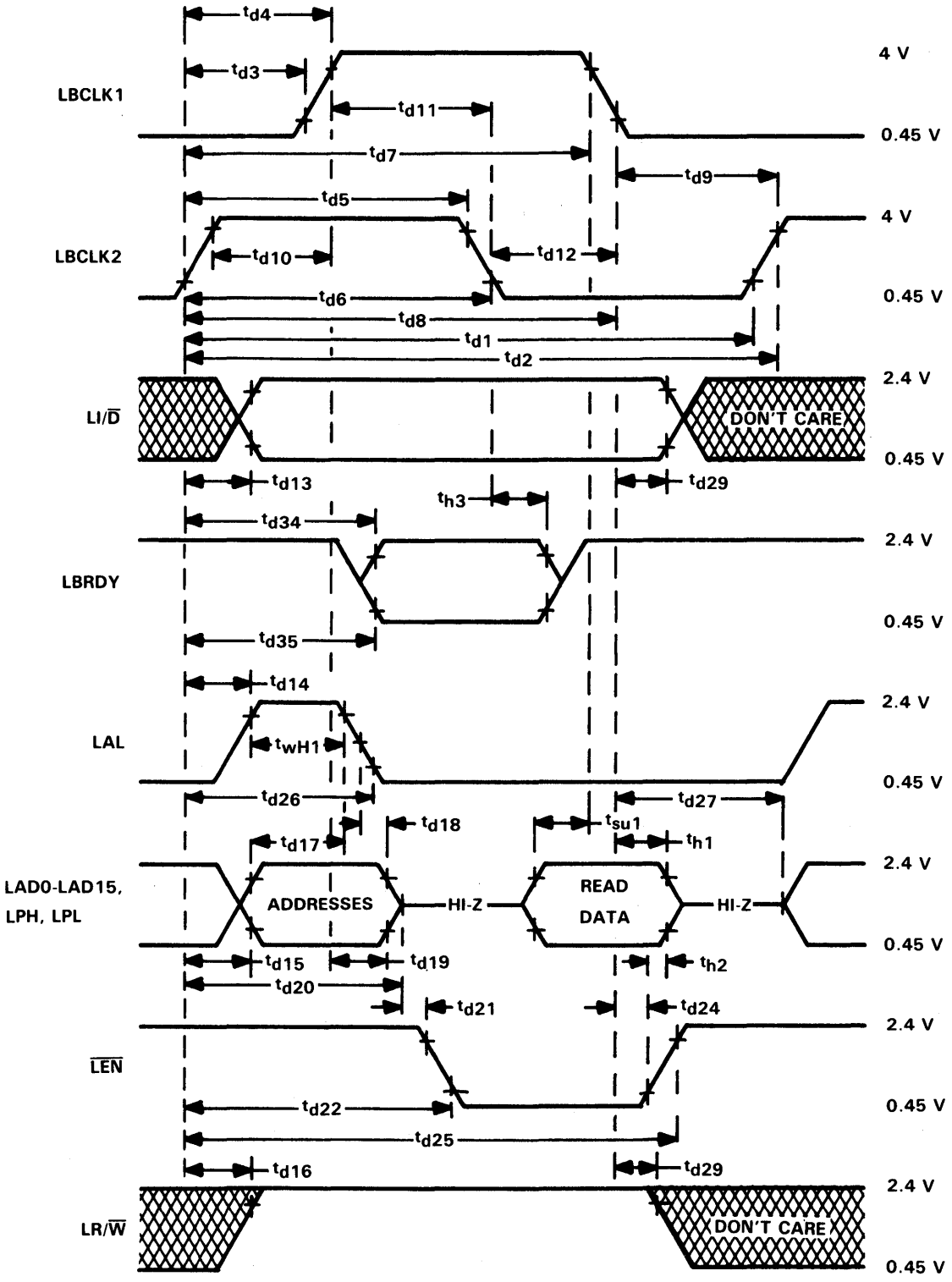
NOTE 8: R_L and V_L are chosen as follows:

$$R_L = \frac{V_{OH} - V_{OL}}{|I_{OL} - I_{OH}|} \qquad V_L = V_{OH} - (I_{OH})(R_L)$$

FIGURE 6. LOAD CIRCUIT

A

LAN Adapter bus read timing

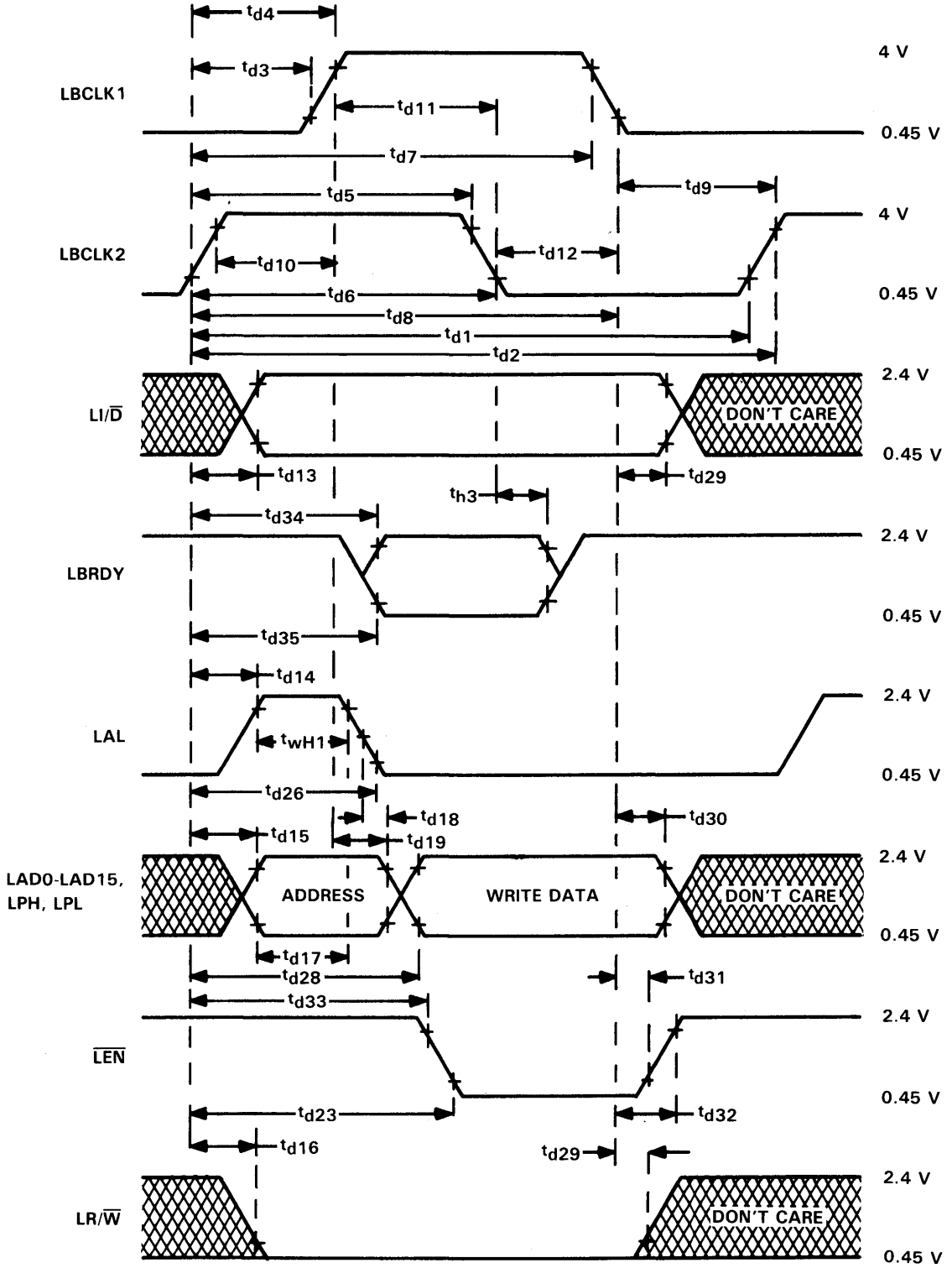


NOTE 9: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN Adapter bus write timing



NOTE 9: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS ARBITRATION PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 6)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d36}	Delay of $\overline{\text{LBRQP}}$ from LBCLK1 low		48	ns
t_{d37}	Delay of $\overline{\text{LBRQP}}$ after LBCLK1 high	0		
t_{d38}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer high impedance by TMS38020	2Q – 9		
t_{d39}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL driven low by TMS38020		3Q – 15	
t_{d40}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ no longer high impedance by TMS38020	80		
t_{d41}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ driven high by TMS38020		74	
t_{d42}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$, LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL no longer high impedance by TMS38020	80		

NOTE 7: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

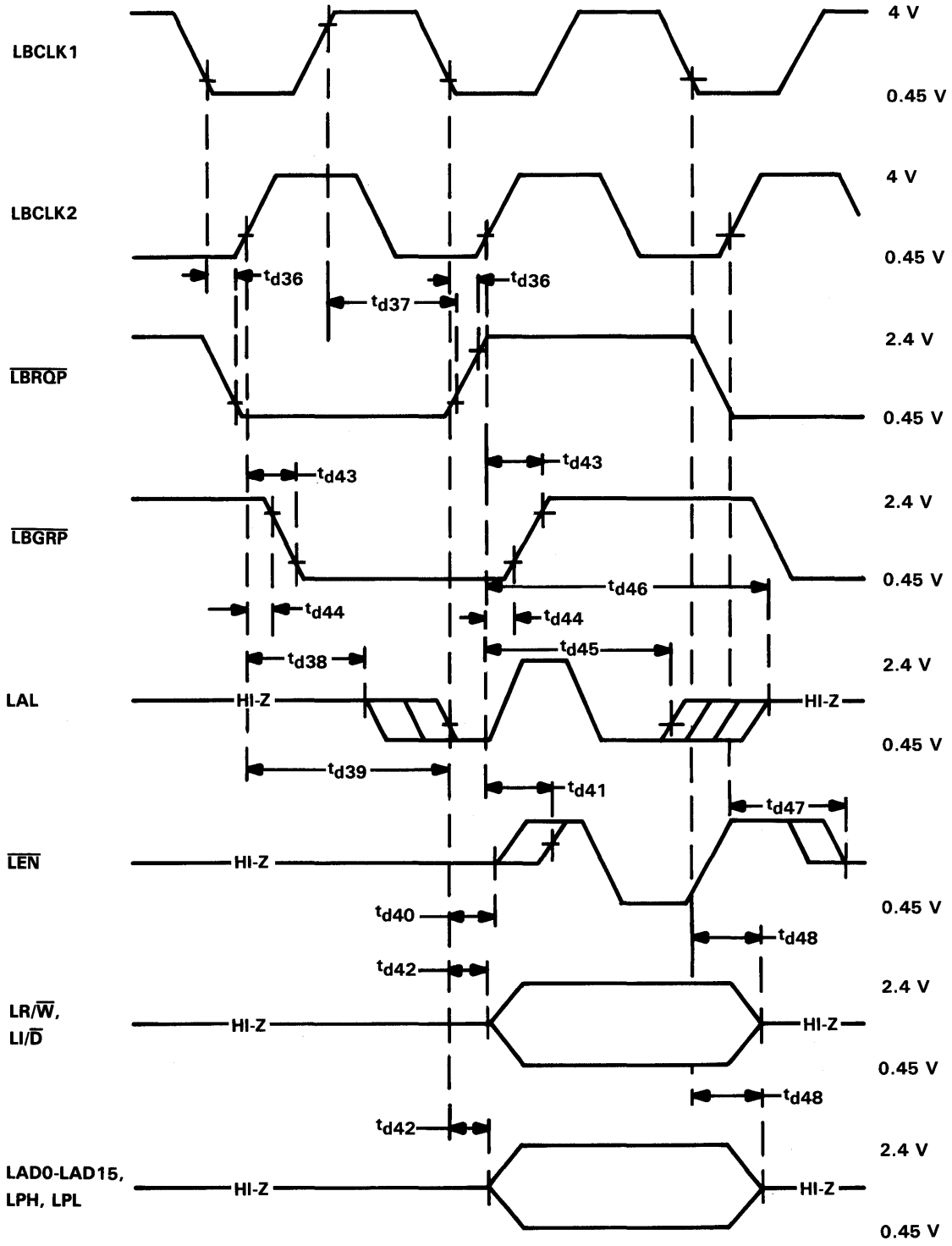
	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d43}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LBGRP}}$ valid		2Q – 73	ns
t_{d44}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LBGRP}}$ no longer valid	– 6		
t_{d45}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer driven low from old bus master	3Q – 15		
t_{d46}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high impedance from old bus master		4Q – 2	
t_{d47}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ high impedance from old bus master		74	
t_{d48}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$, LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$ LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL high impedance from old bus master		80	

NOTE 7: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN Adapter bus arbitration



NOTE 10: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V.

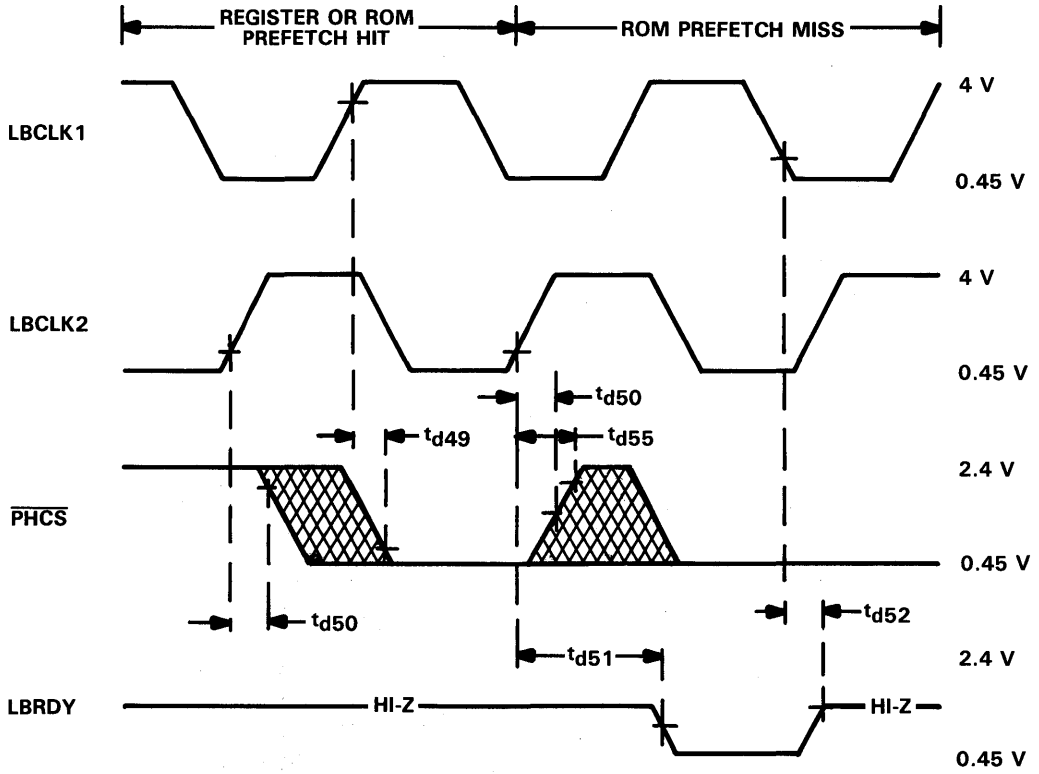
MISCELLANEOUS LAN ADAPTER BUS PARAMETERS

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d49}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to $\overline{PHCS}$ low		10	ns
t_{d50}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{PHCS}$ no longer valid	0		
t_{d51}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY driven low in ROM prefetch miss		145	
t_{d52}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LBRDY high impedance after ROM prefetch miss		45	
t_{d53}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{PIRQ}$ valid		60	
t_{d54}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{PIRQ}$ no longer valid	0		
t_{d55}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{PHCS}$ high		Q-3	

NOTE 7: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

$\overline{PHCS}$ and LBRDY timing

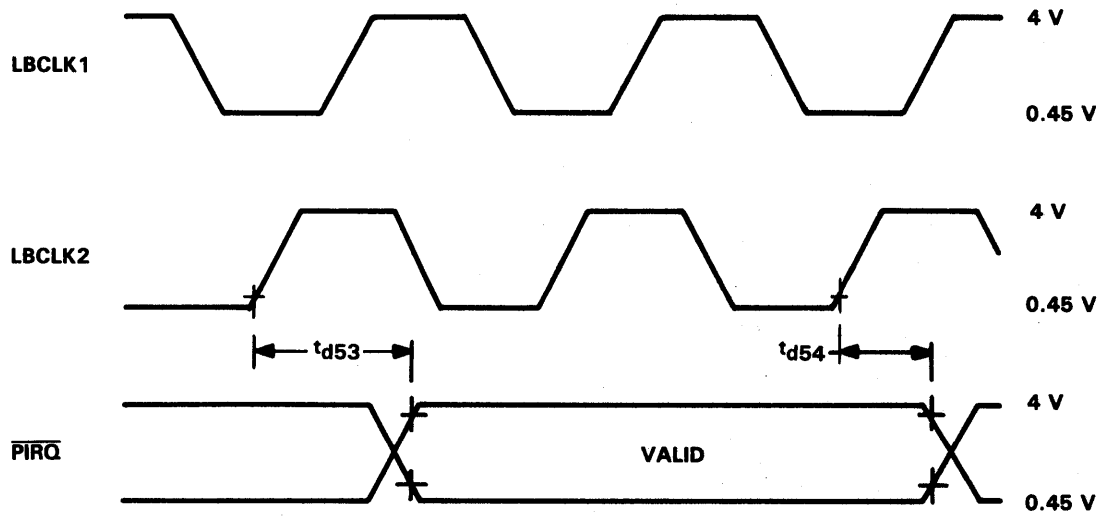


NOTE 10: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

interrupt timing

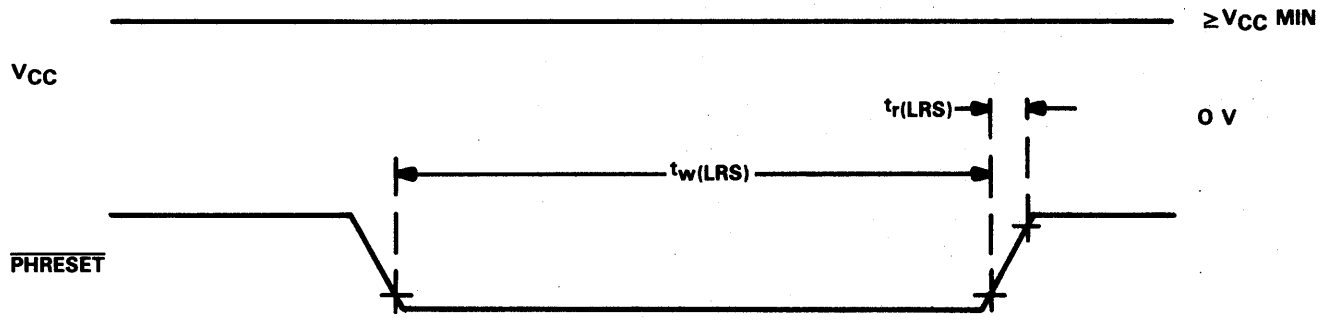


MISCELLANEOUS TIMING PARAMETERS

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

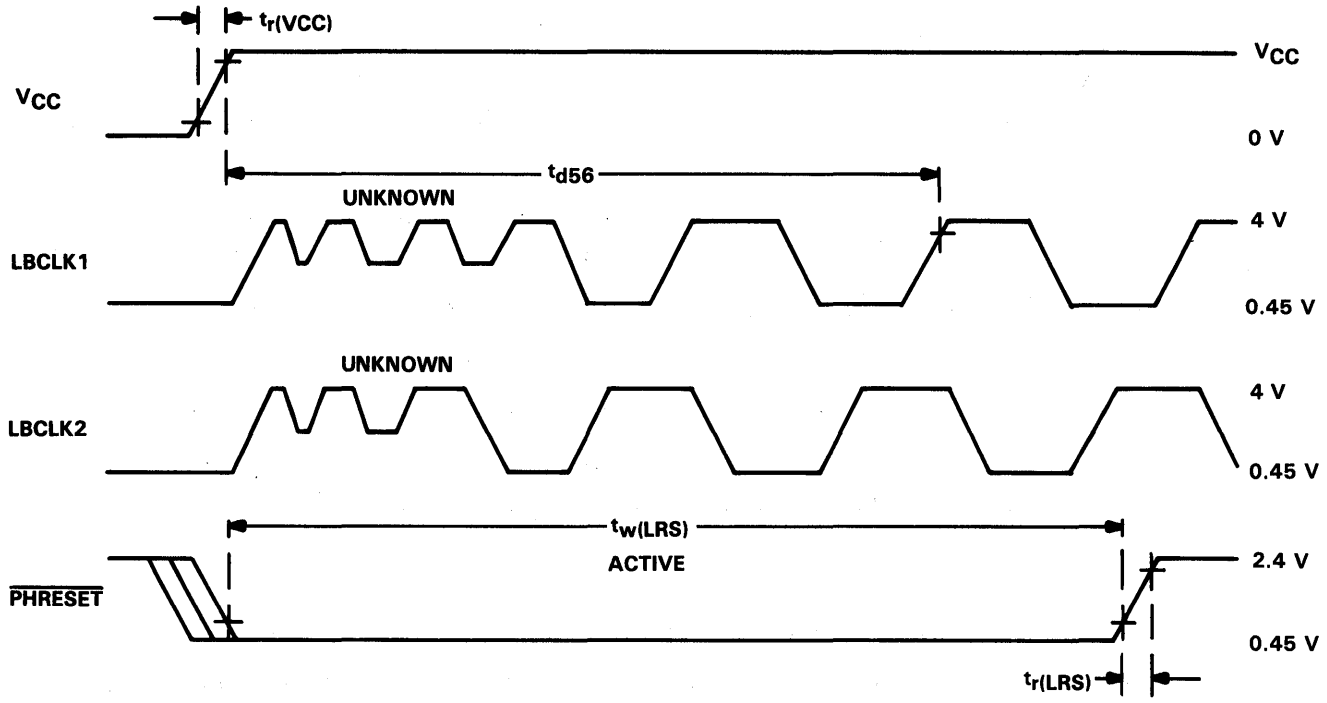
	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{w(LRS)}$	$\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ pulse duration, asserted with minimum V_{CC} or greater applied	14		μs
$t_{r(LRS)}$	$\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ rise time		100	ns
$t_{r(VCC)}$	V_{CC} rise time from 1.2 V to V_{CC} minimum	1		ms
t_{d56}	Delay from reading minimum V_{CC} during power-up to valid LBCLK1, LBCLK2 with $\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ active		90	ms

$\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ timing



A

power-up, LBCLK, and $\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ timing



NOTE 11: The timing reference points for V_{CC} are 4.5 V and 1.2 V. The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for $\overline{\text{PHRESET}}$ are 2 V and 0.8 V.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

RING INTERFACE TIMING PARAMETERS

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{c(RC)}$	RCLK cycle time (Note 14)	124.875	125.125	ns
$t_{c(PX)}$	PXTALIN cycle time	124.875	125.125	
$t_{w(RCL)}$	Pulse duration, RCLK and PXTALIN low (Notes 15, 16, 17)	46		
$t_{w(RCH)}$	Pulse duration, RCLK and PXTALIN high (Notes 15, 16, 17)	35		
$t_{su(RCVR)}$	Setup time, RCVR valid before RCLK no longer low	20		
$t_{h(RCVR)}$	Hold time, RCVR valid after RCLK high	20		
$t_{t(RC)}$	Transition time, RCLK and PXTALIN		16	

NOTES: 14. The nominal value for $t_{c(RC)}$ is 125 ns ± 0.1%.
15. The nominal value for $t_{w(RCL)}$ and $t_{w(RCH)}$ is 62.5 ns.
16. RCVR and RCLK are driven to a high level of 2.8 V and a low level of 0.45 V during parametric tests. Timing parameters are measured from a high level of 2.6 V and a low level of 0.6 V except where shown otherwise.
17. PXTALIN is driven to a high level of 2.4 V and a low level of 0.45 V during parametric tests. Timing parameters are measured from a high level of 2 V and a low level of 0.8 V.

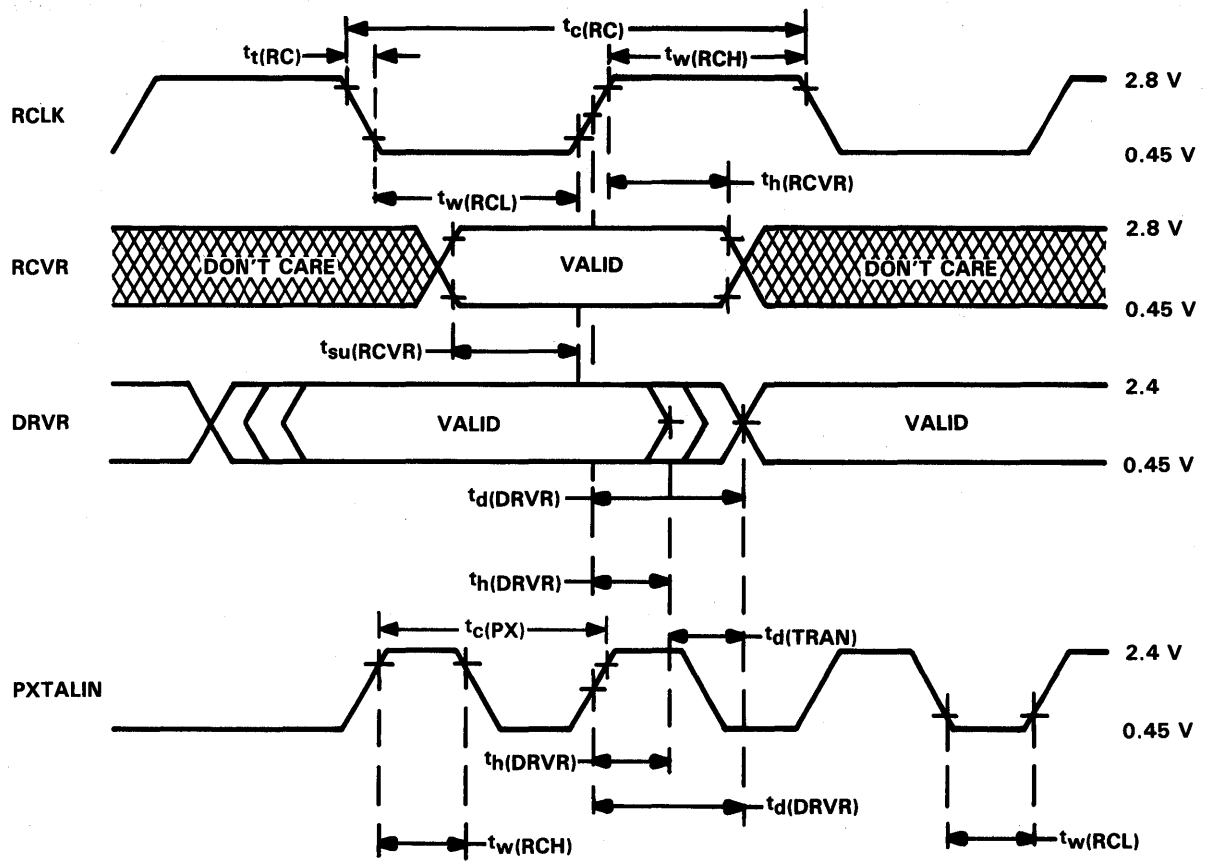
switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{h(DRVR)}$	Hold time, DRVR after RCLK or PXTALIN to 1.5 V level (Note 18)	12		ns
$t_{d(DRVR)}$	Delay time, RCLK or PXTALIN at 1.5 V level to DRVR at 1.5 V (Note 18)		40	
$t_{d(TRAN)}$	Delay time, data transition on DRVR ($t_{d(DRVR)} - t_{h(DRVR)}$)		5	

NOTE 18: Timing parameters of DRVR are measured from a 1.5 V level on RCLK or PXTALIN to a 1.5 V level on DRVR.

A

ring interface timing



NOTE 19: The timing reference points for RCVR and RCLK are 2.6 V and 0.6 V. The timing reference points for PXTALIN are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for RCLK and DRVR is 1.5 V.

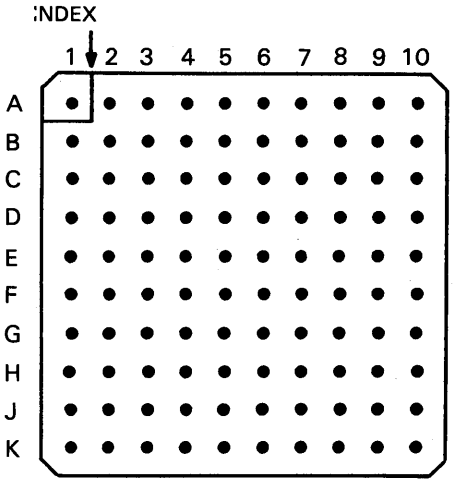
A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

SEPTEMBER 1985 - REVISED MAY 1986

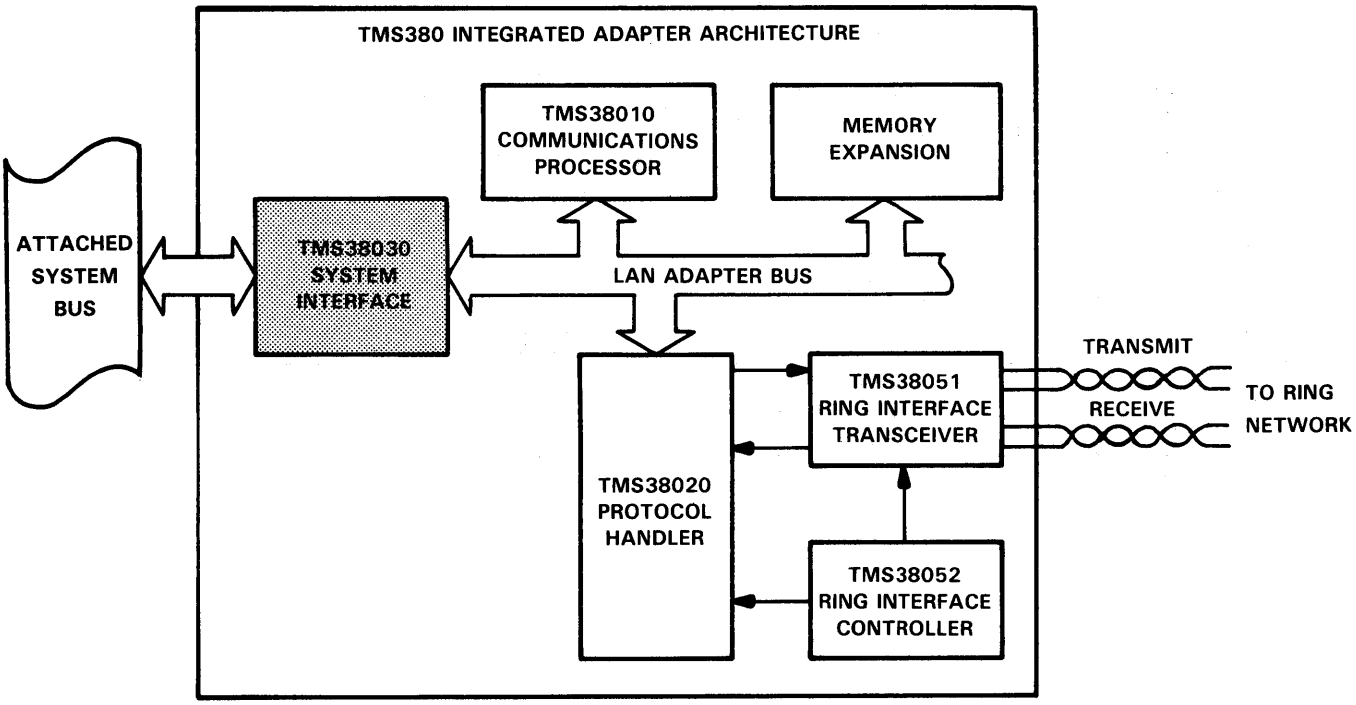
- **Connects Two High-Speed Asynchronous Buses**
  - **—Up to 5M Bytes/Second DMA on Host System Bus**
  - **—6M Bytes/Second DMA on LAN Adapter Bus**
- **Provides Dual-Port DMA and Direct I/O Transfer Between Buses**
- **Selectable Host System Bus Options**
  - **—808X- or 680XX-Type Bus and Memory Organization**
  - **—8- or 16-Bit Data Bus for 808X-Type Buses**
  - **—Optional Parity Checking**
- **Provides Direct Control of Latches and Drivers on Host System Bus Interface**
- **Test Pin for Hi-Z, Module-In-Place Testing**
- **Single 5-V Supply**
- **100-Pin Ceramic Grid Array Package**
- **Low-Power Scaled-NMOS Technology**

GB PACKAGE†
(TOP VIEW)



†See pin description table (Page 2) for location and description of all pins.

token ring LAN application diagram



A

pin descriptions

NAME	PIN	I/O	DESCRIPTION
			SYSTEM BUS ADDRESS/DATA PINS
SADH0	H7	I/O	System address/Data bus — High Byte. SADH0 is the most-significant bit
SADH1	K10	I/O	and SADH7 is the least-significant bit.
SADH2	J8	I/O	
SADH3	J7	I/O	
SADH4	K6	I/O	
SADH5	J6	I/O	
SADH6	K9	I/O	
SADH7	K8	I/O	
SADL0	J5	I/O	System Address/Data bus — Low Byte. SADL0 is the most-significant bit and SADL7
SADL1	H5	I/O	is the least-significant bit.
SADL2	G5	I/O	
SADL3	K4	I/O	
SADL4	F5	I/O	
SADL5	J4	I/O	
SADL6	H4	I/O	
SADL7	K3	I/O	
SPH	K7	I/O	System Parity High Byte
SPL	K5	I/O	System Parity Low Byte
			SYSTEM BUS CONTROL PINS
SI/$\overline{M}$	H8	I	808X/680XX Mode Select
S8/$\overline{16}$	H9	I	8/16-Bit Data Bus Select
$\overline{SRESET}$	H10	I	System Reset
$\overline{SCS}$	J2	I	Chip Select
SRS0	K2	I	Register Select 0 (MSB)
SRS1	H3	I	Register Select 1
SRS2	G4	I	Register Select 2 (LSB)
$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW	K1	I/O	Byte High Enable (808X mode)/Read Not Write (680XX mode)
$\overline{SWR}$/$\overline{SLDS}$	H1	I/O	Write Strobe (808X mode)/Lower Data Strobe (680XX mode)
$\overline{SRD}$/$\overline{SUDS}$	G1	I/O	Read Strobe (808X mode)/Upper Data Strobe (680XX mode)
SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$	G3	I/O	Register Address Strobe (808X mode)/Memory Address Strobe (680XX mode)
$\overline{SRDY}$/$\overline{SDTACK}$	J1	I/O	Bus Ready (808X mode)/Data Transfer Acknowledge (680XX mode)
SALE	D3	O	Address Latch Enable
SXAL	D2	O	Extended Address Latch Enable
SBCLK	E2	I	System Bus Clock
			SYSTEM BUS DRIVER/RECEIVER CONTROL PINS
SDDIR	C2	O	Data Direction
$\overline{SDBEN}$	C1	O	Data Bus Enable
$\overline{SOWN}$	E5	O	System Bus Owned

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

pin descriptions (continued)

NAME	PIN	I/O	DESCRIPTION
SYSTEM BUS ARBITRATION/DMA CONTROL PINS			
SHRQ/$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$	H2	O	Hold Request (808X mode)/Bus Request (680XX mode)
SHLDA/$\overline{\text{SBGR}}$	F1	I	Hold Acknowledge (808X mode)/Bus Grant (680XX mode)
$\overline{\text{SBBSY}}$	G2	I	Bus Busy
$\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$	B2	I	Bus Release
$\overline{\text{SBERR}}$	F2	I	Bus Error
SYSTEM BUS INTERRUPT CONTROL PINS			
SINTR/$\overline{\text{SIRQ}}$	D4	O	Interrupt Request (808X mode)/Interrupt Request (680XX mode)
$\overline{\text{SIACK}}$	D1	I	Interrupt Acknowledge
LAN ADAPTER BUS ADDRESS/DATA PINS			
LAD0	B8	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Address/Data Bus. LAD0 is the most-significant bit and LAD15 is the least-significant bit.
LAD1	A8	I/O	
LAD2	C7	I/O	
LAD3	B7	I/O	
LAD4	A7	I/O	
LAD5	D6	I/O	
LAD6	C6	I/O	
LAD7	B6	I/O	
LAD8	A3	I/O	
LAD9	A2	I/O	
LAD10	B5	I/O	
LAD11	A5	I/O	
LAD12	B4	I/O	
LAD13	B3	I/O	
LAD14	A1	I/O	
LAD15	C4	I/O	
LPH	A6	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Parity High Byte
LPL	A4	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Parity Low Byte
LAN ADAPTER BUS CONTROL PINS			
LBCLK1	B10	I	LAN Adapter Bus Clock 1
LBCLK2	C10	I	LAN Adapter Bus Clock 2
LAL	D9	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Address Latch Enable
LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$	D8	I	LAN Adapter Bus Instruction/Data Bus Status Code
$\overline{\text{LEN}}$	C9	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Data Enable
LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$	E7	I/O	LAN Adapter Bus Read/Not Write
LBRDY	A9	I	LAN Adapter Bus Ready

A

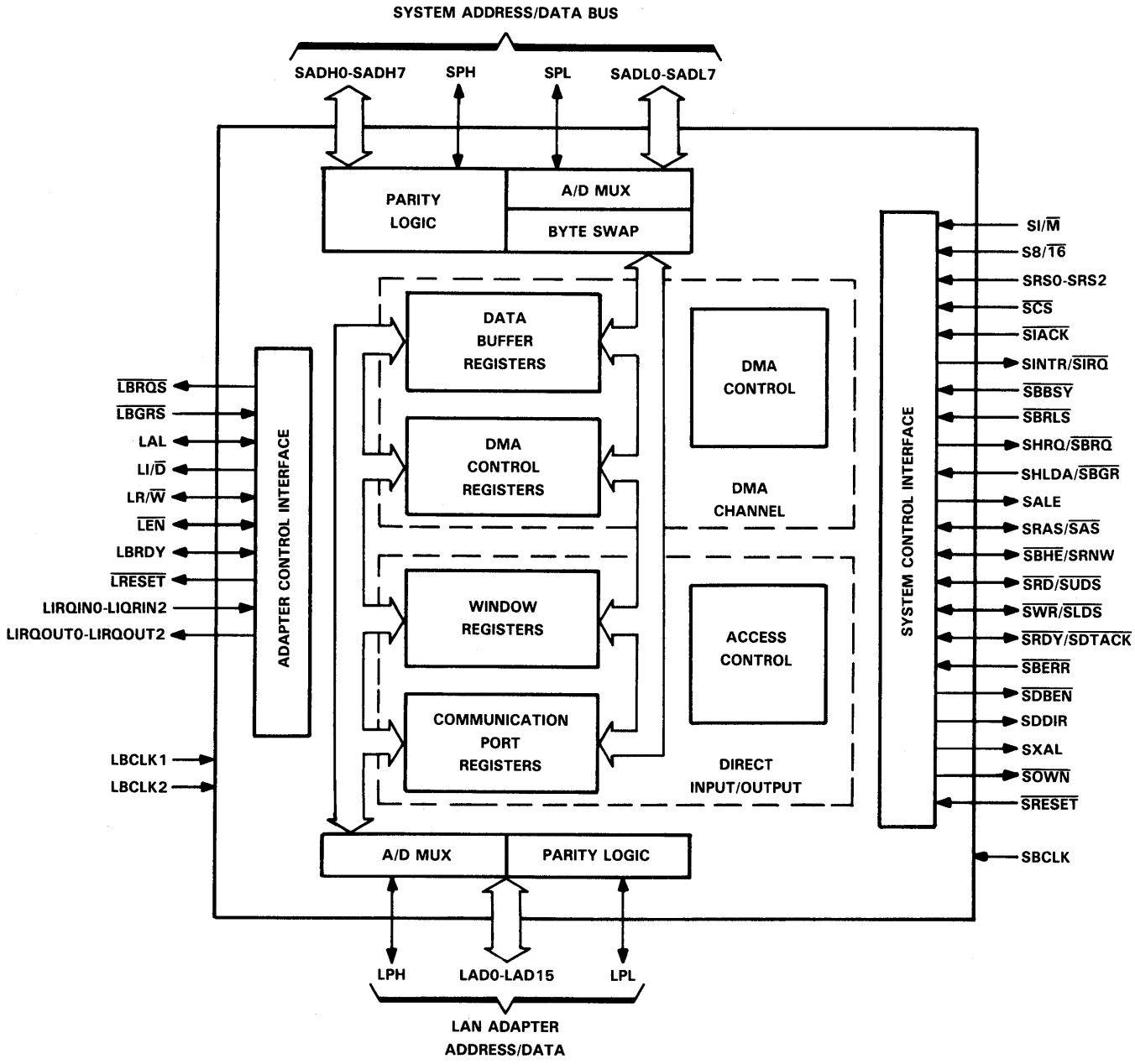
pin descriptions (concluded)

NAME	PIN	I/O	DESCRIPTION
			LAN ADAPTER BUS INTERRUPT PINS
LIRQIN0	G10	I	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request 0 Input
LIRQIN1	F7	I	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request 1 Input
LIRQIN2	F8	I	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request 2 Input
LIRQOUT0	F6	O	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request Output 0
LIRQOUT1	F10	O	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request Output 1
LIRQOUT2	F9	O	LAN Adapter Bus Interrupt Request Output 2
$\overline{\text{LRESET}}$	G9	O	LAN Adapter Bus Reset
			LAN ADAPTER BUS ARBITRATION PINS
$\overline{\text{LBRQS}}$	A10	O	LAN Adapter Bus Request
$\overline{\text{LBGRS}}$	C8	I	LAN Adapter Bus Grant
			MISCELLANEOUS PINS
$\overline{\text{CHPTST}}$	J10	I	This pin is reserved and should be left unconnected.
$\overline{\text{TEST}}$	G8	I	Module-in-Place Test Mode Select
V_{BB}	D10		This pin is reserved and should be left unconnected.
NC	E6		This pin is reserved and should be left unconnected.
			POWER PINS
V_{CC}	J3		5-V power supply (All pins must be connected.)
V_{CC}	J9		
V_{CC}	E9		
V_{CC}	D7		
V_{CC}	D5		
V_{CC}	E3		
V_{SS}	C3		Ground pins (All pins must be connected.)
V_{SS}	E4		
V_{SS}	E1		
V_{SS}	F3		
V_{SS}	F4		
V_{SS}	H6		
V_{SS}	G6		
V_{SS}	G7		
V_{SS}	E8		
V_{SS}	E10		
V_{SS}	B9		
V_{SS}	C5		
V_{SS}	B1		

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

functional block diagram†



A

†For signal names separated by a slash (/), the first signal name given is for the 808X mode and the second signal name is for the 680XX mode.

description

The TMS38030 System Interface (SIF) connects two high-speed buses and provides DMA and direct I/O (DIO) transfer between these buses. The TMS38030 features a dual-port DMA channel and DIO registers that connect a host system bus transferring data up to 5 megabytes per second to the LAN Adapter bus operating at a 6 megabyte per second transfer rate. For added flexibility the host system bus can be pin-strap selected to either an 808X-type or 680XX-type bus allowing the designer to choose the bus configuration which best meets his application. When in 808X mode, the TMS38030 automatically handles byte swapping to meet the requirements of the 808X processor memory conventions. Four DIO registers on the host system bus are available for handshaking between the host system CPU and the LAN Adapter CPU. Full control of the TMS38030 is provided by nine 16-bit registers accessible from the LAN Adapter bus interface. Control lines on the host system bus interface reduce interface logic requirements by providing direct control of latches and drivers.

The TMS38030, when coupled with the TMS38010 Communications Processor, the TMS38020 Protocol Handler, and the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface Circuits, forms a complete integrated Token Ring local area network adapter fully compatible with IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Ring Access and Physical Layer Specifications for Token Ring Networks.

architecture

The TMS38030 may be conceptually viewed as shown in Figure 1. The DMA controller differs from conventional DMA controllers in that DMA transfers occur from the memory of one bus to the memory of another bus versus DMA transfers on the same bus. The two buses are independent of each other in that timing of one bus may be asynchronous to the timing of the other. A direct I/O (DIO) (or memory-mapped I/O) interface on the host system bus may be used as a low-level handshake between the two CPUs as well as for posting interrupts from one CPU to the other.

The TMS38030 also contains an interrupt priority encoder for prioritizing up to seven interrupt levels for presentation to the LAN Adapter bus CPU (TMS38010 Communications Processor).

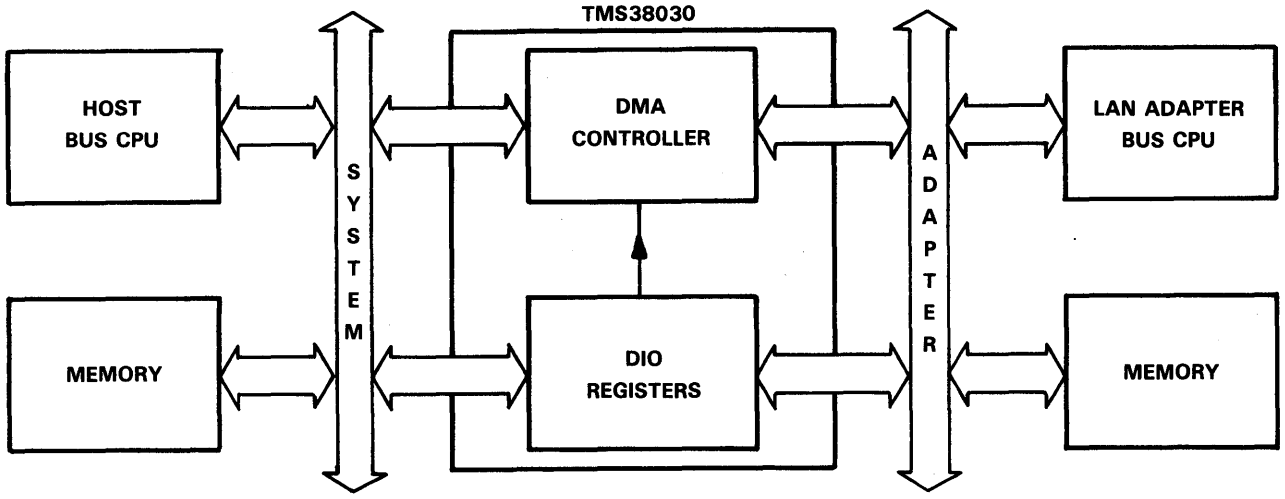


FIGURE 1. TMS38030 DMA CONTROL—CONCEPTUAL REPRESENTATION

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

system bus interface

interface modes

The TMS38030 system-side interface may be pin strap selected, via the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin, to provide pin personalities compatible with 808X-type and 680XX-type processor buses. When the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin is tied high, the system interface pins assume 808X-type personalities. When the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin is tied low, the system interface pins assume 680XX-type personalities. The system designer has the option to choose the bus type which best supports his intended hardware environment.

The S8/$\overline{16}$ pin may be used to select either an 8-bit or 16-bit wide system data bus when the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin is strapped high (808X mode). When 8-bit mode is selected, the SI/$\overline{M}$ pin must not be strapped low (680XX mode). When in 8-bit mode, the data is transferred on the SADL0-SADL7 pins while the SADH0-SADH7 pins are either ignored during data read or high impedance during data write.

direct I/O registers

Located on the system bus are four 16-bit registers. One register, called the Interrupt Register, is dedicated to bit-level status and control information handshaking between the host system processor and the LAN Adapter bus processor (the TMS38010 Communications Processor). The remaining three registers are used by the host system processor to access memory locations within the LAN Adapter bus address space. These registers are the Address Register, Data Register, and Data Register with Autoincrement (of the Address Register). These registers are selected by the SRS0-SRS2 register select pins as shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1. TMS38030 SYSTEM BUS REGISTERS

SRS0	SRS1	SRS2	REGISTER
L	L	Note 1	Data Register
L	H	Note 1	Data Register with Autoincrement
H	L	Note 1	Address Register
H	H	Note 1	Interrupt Register

NOTE 1: SRS2 is used to address the upper/lower byte of the register when in 8-bit mode (S8/$\overline{16}$ high).

interrupt register

The Interrupt Register is used to pass bit-level control and status information between the host system processor and the LAN Adapter processor (TMS38010). The Interrupt Register is also used to clear the TMS38030-to-host interrupt (SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$) and to post interrupts to the LAN Adapter bus CPU through the TMS38030 interrupt prioritizer. The bit functions of the Interrupt Register are shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2. INTERRUPT REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS — SYSTEM SIDE

BITS	READ/WRITE	FUNCTION
0 (MSB)	Write	1 = set bit and interrupt LAN Adapter Bus CPU. 0 = no effect.
	Read	Read value of bit.
1-7	Write	1 = sets bit value to 1. 0 = no effect.
	Read	Read value of bit.
8	Write	1 = no effect. 0 = reset. SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$ to inactive high.
9-15	Write	No effect. These bits cannot be set/reset by the host processor.
	Read	Read value of bits.

A

address register

The Address Register provides a pointer into LAN Adapter bus memory address space with which the host system processor may access data through either the Data Register or the Data Register with Autoincrement. Bits 5 through 14 may be set to any value by the host processor by writing the appropriate value to this register. Bits 0-4 and bit 15 may only be set/reset by the LAN Adapter bus CPU. This allows the LAN Adapter bus CPU to control host access to the LAN Adapter bus memory space within a 2K-byte window as defined by the setting of bits 0 through 4. Bit 15 is always set to zero as all data transfers on the LAN Adapter bus are 16-bit transfers (even addresses).

data registers

Two data registers provide read/write capability to the LAN Adapter bus memory address location pointed to by the Address Register. The host processor does not access these locations directly however, the TMS38030 performs LAN Adapter bus DMA operations to read or write the memory location as necessary.

When read, the Data Register returns the value found in the memory location pointed to by the Address Register. The TMS38030 will perform a DMA read of this location when this occurs. Writing to the Data Register will cause the data to be written to the LAN Adapter bus memory location as pointed to by the Address Register when the IOWEN bit of the SIF Control (SIFCTL) Register is set to one. The TMS38030 will perform a DMA write to this location when this occurs.

The Data Register with Autoincrement behaves identically to the Data Register; however, the Address Register is automatically incremented by two following each access (post increment). This feature is useful for the passing of parameter tables to sequential memory locations within the LAN Adapter bus memory space.

direct input/output

Read and write cycles to the direct I/O registers cannot occur simultaneously with DMA operation on the system bus because they share the same physical interface pins. However, a DIO access occurring between two successive bus cycles of a DMA cycle will not disrupt any DMA conditions existing within the TMS38030.

direct memory access

The direct memory access (DMA) channel of the system bus interface provides a full 24 bits of address with which to access up to 16 megabytes of system memory. The throughput capability of the DMA channel is matched to that of the host system through a host system supplied bus clock (SBCLK). The maximum DMA transfer rate corresponds to one word per four user system clock periods. DMA on the system bus may occur concurrently and asynchronously to DMA on the LAN Adapter bus.

When configured in 808X mode, the TMS38030 performs automatic byte swapping on data passed between the LAN Adapter bus and the host system bus. This is to compensate for the differing byte ordering conventions between the 808X-type processor and the LAN Adapter bus CPU. The LAN Adapter bus memory organization defines byte 0 of a 16-bit memory word to be the most-significant byte and byte 1 to be the least-significant. The 808X-type processor defines byte 0 of a 16-bit memory word to be the least-significant byte and byte 1 to be the most-significant. Byte swapping automatically corrects for this difference in convention. Byte swapping is not performed on DIO accesses.

The system bus DMA is controlled by the LAN Adapter bus CPU through the registers resident on the Adapter bus. The system bus DMA may be configured for system bus starting address, DMA length, burst or cycle-steal mode of operation and parity checking on DMA reads.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

Since only 16 bits of address can be output at any instant on the 16 address/data pins, the 8 most-significant address bits must be multiplexed onto the address/data pins. These are called the extended address bits. Two separate latch enable signals (SALE and SXAL) are provided for the demultiplexing of the address. The extended address portion is updated only when the TMS38030 increments an address such that a carry out from the low-order 8 bits is generated. The updating of the extended address is done during an extra phase of the system bus memory transfer cycle. This extra phase is termed the TX cycle. For systems only requiring 16-bits of address, the extended address latches are not required. The TMS38030 performs a TX cycle every time it acquires the system bus. In cycle steal mode, then, the TMS38030 will always perform a TX cycle; in burst mode, the TMS38030 will perform a TX cycle on the first memory cycle and thereafter only when the most-significant 16 bits of address are changed due to a carry propagated from the lower 8 bits. Detailed timing of system DMA operations for both 808X mode and 680XX mode may be found in the Electrical Specifications.

LAN adapter bus interface

The LAN Adapter bus interface provides the ability of the TMS38030 to transfer data between the LAN Adapter bus environment and the system bus. This high-speed bus is used by the TMS380 family to connect the TMS38010 Communications Processor and TMS38020 Protocol Handler. In expanded configurations, the LAN Adapter bus can interface to expansion memory. The timing of LAN Adapter bus memory mapped I/O and direct memory access cycles is provided in the Electrical Specifications.

LAN Adapter bus registers

The TMS38030 contains nine registers accessible from the LAN Adapter bus side. These registers are used to control the DMA operation on the system bus side, the DMA operation on the LAN Adapter bus side, direct I/O for the system bus side, and the system interrupt vector driven onto the system bus side during an interrupt acknowledge cycle. These registers, their function and LAN Adapter bus memory location are shown in Figure 2.

	BITS				
ADDRESS	0	7	8	15	DESCRIPTION
>0080	SIFCTL				SYSTEM INTERFACE CONTROL
>0082	SIFACT				SYSTEM INTERFACE ACTIVITY
>0084	SIFINT				INTERRUPT REGISTER
>0086	SIFADR				SYSTEM DIO ADAPTER BUS ADDRESS
>0088	SDMALEN				SYSTEM DMA LENGTH
>008A	00		SDMAX		SYSTEM ADDRESS EXTENDED BYTE
>008C	SDMAH		SDMAL		SYSTEM ADDRESS HIGH/LOW BYTES
>008E	LDMAADR				ADAPTER BUS DMA ADDRESS
>0090	00		SIFVEC		SYSTEM INTERRUPT VECTOR

FIGURE 2. TMS38030 LAN ADAPTER BUS REGISTERS

A

SIFCTL register

The SIFCTL register controls all TMS38030 peripheral functions. Certain values are loaded to the bits of SIFCTL when the LAN Adapter bus CPU writes to address >0080. The current value of the bits are returned by reading the word at this location. Changes made to DMADIR, DMABURST, SPIEN, and SLPIEN bits have no effect on DMA operations already in progress. Such changes affect subsequent DMA operation. All bits of SIFCTL are set to zero when $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ is activated. The bits of SIFCTL are summarized in Table 3.

TABLE 3. SIFCTL REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0	DMADIR	System DMA Direction
1	DMAENB	System DMA Enable
2	DMABURST	System DMA Burst Mode
3	DMAHALT	System DMA Halt
4	DMAIEN	System DMA Interrupt Enable
5	SPIEN	System Parity Interrupt Enable
6	SPTST	System Parity Test
7	SLPIEN	System Local Parity Enable
8	IOWEN	DIO Write Enable
9-15		Reserved

SIFACT register

The SIFACT register contains the system bus error flag, LAN Adapter bus and system bus parity error flags, and the DMA halt interrupt request bit. All bits of SIFACT are reset to zero at system reset. Table 4 summarizes the bit functions of the SIFACT register.

TABLE 4. SIFACT REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS

BIT	NAME	DESCRIPTION
0		Reserved
1		Reserved
2	DIRQ	System DMA Halt Interrupt Request
3	SPE	System Parity Error - DIO
4	SDPE	System Parity Error - DMA
5	SDBE	System DMA Bus Error
6	LPEXM	LAN Adapter Bus Parity Error - External Master
7	LPESM	LAN Adapter Bus Parity Error - TMS38030 Master
8-15		Reserved

A

SIFINT register

The SIFINT register is the Interrupt register which is accessible from both the host system bus side and the LAN Adapter bus side. However, the restrictions on setting/clearing these bits is different than when accessed from the LAN Adapter bus side. These are illustrated in Table 5. Table 2 illustrates the function of these bits as viewed from the host system bus side.

TABLE 5. INTERRUPT REGISTER BIT FUNCTIONS - LAN ADAPTER BUS SIDE

BITS	READ/WRITE	FUNCTION
0 (MSB)	Write	1 = no effect. 0 = clear interrupt.
	Read	Read value of bit.
1-7	Write	1 = no effect. 0 = reset bit to zero.
	Read	Read value of bit.
8	Write	1 = set SINT/$\overline{\text{SIRQ}}$ active. 0 = no effect.
9-15	Write	Modify current contents.
	Read	Read value of bits.

SIFADR Register

The SIFADR (SIF Address) register is the Address register which is accessible from both the host system bus and the LAN Adapter bus. Bits 0-4 and bit 15 can only be set/reset from the LAN Adapter bus side of the TMS38030. The remaining bits (5-14) can only be set/reset from the host system side of the TMS38030.

SDMALEN Register

The SDMALEN (System DMA length) register contains the byte count length of a DMA transfer. A maximum length transfer can be 65,535 bytes. A zero loaded into SDMALEN will limit DMA to transferring zero bytes.

SDMAX, SDMAH, and SDMAL Registers

These three register fields contain the 24-bit system address where DMA is to begin. SDMAX contains the most-significant eight bits, SDMAH the middle eight bits, and SDMAL the least-significant eight bits.

LDMAADR Register

The LDMAADR (LAN Adapter bus DMA address) register contains the 16-bits of LAN Adapter bus address location where DMA is to begin. This address space is always in the data space of the LAN Adapter bus (the TMS38030 always drives LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$ low). The DMA length is controlled by SDMALEN.

SIFVEC Register

The SIFVEC (SIF vector) register contains the 8-bit interrupt vector which is output onto the system data bus during an interrupt acknowledge cycle.

interrupts

The TMS38030 contains an interrupt prioritizer for other devices on the LAN Adapter bus for presentation of interrupts to the TMS38010 Communications Processor. Other devices assert an interrupt on the TMS38030's LIRQIN0 through LIRQIN2 (LAN Adapter Bus Request In) inputs. The TMS38030 prioritizes the requests and presents an interrupt priority code to the TMS38010 on output pins LIRQOUT0 through LIRQOUT2. The relation between the levels on LIRQIN0 through LIRQIN2 and priority level is given in Table 6.

A

TABLE 6. INTERRUPT REQUEST CODES

LIRQIN0	LIRQIN1	LIRQIN2	MEANING
0	0	0	Level-1 Interupt Request
0	0	1	Level-2 Interrupt Request
0	1	0	Level-3 Interrupt Request
0	1	1	Level-4 Interrupt Request
1	0	0	Level-5 Interrupt Request
1	0	1	Level-6 Interrupt Request
1	1	0	Level-7 Interrupt Request
1	1	1	No request

TMS38030 Generated Interrupts

The TMS38030 will assert an interrupt on the LIRQOUT0 through LIRQOUT2 pins as follows:

1. LAN Adapter bus or system bus parity errors are asserted on level 2.
2. The system DMA complete interrupt is asserted on level 6.
3. The interrupt request from the system bus (MSB of the interrupt register is set to one) is asserted on level 7.

test mode

The TMS38030 features a module-in-place test mode for board level testing with the TMS38030 in circuit. This facilitates testing by bed-of-nails testers. This test mode is enabled by tying the $\overline{\text{TEST}}$ pin to ground. This has the effect of driving all outputs of the TMS38030 to a high-impedance state. When not used for testing purposes, this pin should be left unconnected. An internal pullup drives the $\overline{\text{TEST}}$ pin high when not externally connected.

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)†

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 2) . . . . . 7 V
Input voltage range . . . . . −0.3 V to 20 V
Output voltage range . . . . . −2 V to 7 V
Operating free-air temperature range (see Note 3) . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . −65°C to 150°C

†Stresses beyond those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions beyond those indicated in the "Recommended Operating Conditions" section of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute-maximum-rated conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

NOTES: 2. Voltage values are with respect to V_{SS}.
3. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 85°C.

A

recommended operating conditions

			MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
V_{CC}	Supply voltage		4.5	5	5.5	V
V_{SS}	Supply voltage		0	0	0	V
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage	$\overline{TEST}$	V_{CC}			V
		LBCLK1, LBCLK2	3.8			V
		All other inputs	2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	$\overline{TEST}$			V_{SS}	V
		LBCLK1, LBCLK2			0.6	V
		All other inputs			0.8	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}/\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}/\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$, SADH0-SADH7, SADL0-SADL7, SPH, SPL SHRQ/$\overline{SBRQ}$, SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$, $\overline{SDBEN}$, SDDIR, SALE, SXAL, $\overline{SOWN}$			0.4	mA
		$\overline{LBRQS}$, $\overline{LRESET}$, LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2, LAL $\overline{LEN}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, LPL			0.15	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}/\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}/\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$, SHRQ/$\overline{SBRQ}$, SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$			−2	mA
		SADH0-SADH7, SADL0-SADL7, SPH, SPL, SDDIR			−2.5	mA
		SALE, SXAL			−3.5	mA
		$\overline{SDBEN}$			−5	mA
		$\overline{SOWN}$			−5.5	mA
		$\overline{LBRQS}$, $\overline{LRESET}$, LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2, LAL $\overline{LEN}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, LPL			−1.7	mA
C_L	Load capacitance	All outputs			100	pF
T_A	Operating free-air temperature (Note 3)		0		70	°C

NOTE 3: Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperatures should be maintained at or below 85°C.

A

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, I_{OH} = max	2.4			V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	All outputs	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, I_{OL} = max			0.45	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}$/$\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}$/$\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}$/$\overline{SDTACK}$, SADH0-SADH7, SADL0-SADL7, SPH, SPL, SHRQ/$\overline{SBRQ}$ SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$, $\overline{SDBEN}$, SDDIR, SALE, SXAL, $\overline{SOWN}$	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, V_{OH} = 2.4 V			400	μA
		$\overline{LBRQS}$, $\overline{LRESET}$, LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2, LAL, $\overline{LEN}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, LPL				150	μA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}$/$\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}$/$\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}$/$\overline{SDTACK}$, SHRQ/$\overline{SBRQ}$, SINTR/$\overline{SIRQ}$	V_{CC} = 4.5 V, V_{OL} = 0.45 V			−2	mA
		SADH0-SADH7, SADL0-SADL7, SPH, SPL, SDDIR				−2.5	mA
		SALE, SXAL				−3.5	mA
		$\overline{SDBEN}$				−5	mA
		$\overline{SOWN}$				−5.5	mA
		$\overline{LBRQS}$, $\overline{LRESET}$, LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2, LAL, $\overline{LEN}$, LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, LPL				−1.7	mA

Continued next page.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (concluded)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
I_{OZL}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with low-level voltage applied (outputs only)		V_O = 0.45 V			−20	μA
I_{OZH}	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current with high-level voltage applied (outputs only)		V_O = 2.4 V			20	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	$\overline{TEST}$, LIRQIN0-LIRQIN2	V_I = 0.45 V			−700	μA
		$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}$/$\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}$/$\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}$/$\overline{SDTACK}$, $\overline{SBSSY}$				−450	μA
		All other inputs and I/O's				−20	μA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	$\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW, $\overline{SWR}$/$\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SRD}$/$\overline{SUDS}$, SRAS/$\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SRDY}$/$\overline{SDTACK}$, $\overline{SBBSY}$	V_I = 2.4 V	−100			μA
		All other inputs and I/O's	V_I = V_{CC}			20	μA
I_{CC}	Supply current		V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C		190		mA
			V_{CC} = 5.5 V, T_A = 0°C			240	mA
			V_{CC} = 5.5 V, T_C = 85°C			200	mA
C_I	Input capacitance	SBCLK	f = 1 MHz, All other inputs at 0			25	pF
		LBCLK1, LBCLK2 (Note 4)				20	pF
		All other inputs				15	pF

NOTE 4: Input capacitance difference between LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 will not exceed 3 pF.

LAN ADAPTER BUS CLOCK PARAMETERS

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

PARAMETER		MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{c(LA)}$	LAN adapter bus cycle time (Note 5)	333	333.7	ns
t_{d1}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK2 no longer low in next cycle	4Q−2	4Q+2	
t_{d2}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 high in next cycle		4Q+9	
t_{d3}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer low	Q−3	Q+3	
t_{d4}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 high		Q+9	
t_{d5}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK2 no longer high	2Q−2	2Q+7	
t_{d6}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK2 low		2Q+12	
t_{d7}	Delay time, LBCLK2 no longer low to LBCLK1 no longer high	3Q−15	3Q−1	
t_{d8}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBCLK1 low		3Q	
t_{d9}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LBCLK2 high	Q		
t_{d10}	Delay time, LBCLK2 high to LBCLK1 high	Q−4		
t_{d11}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to LBCLK2 low	Q−4		
t_{d12}	Delay time, LBCLK2 low to LBCLK1 low	Q−16		

NOTES: 5. The LAN Adapter bus cycle time is 333.3 ns ±0.1%. This value shall be used for calculations requiring the time between successive rising edges of LBCLK2.
6. Q = 0.25 $t_{c\ (LA)}$.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS READ AND WRITE PARAMETERS

switching characteristics/timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d13}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LI/$\overline{D}$ valid		47	ns
t_{d14}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high		47	
t_{d15}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to address valid		47	
t_{d16}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LR/$\overline{W}$ valid		47	
t_{wH1}	Pulse duration, LAL high	Q-50		
t_{d17}	Delay time, address valid to LAL no longer high	Q-50		
t_{d18}	Delay time, LAL fall to 1.3 V to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d19}	Delay time, LBCLK1 high to address no longer valid	7		
t_{d20}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance in read cycle		Q+74	
t_{d21}	Delay time, LAD, LPH, LPL high impedance to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in read cycle	0		
t_{d22}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in read cycle		Q+84	
t_{d23}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ low in write cycle		Q+47	
t_{d24}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in read cycle	0		
t_{d25}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ high in read cycle		3Q+47	
t_{d26}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL low		2Q−12	
t_{d27}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LAD, LPH, LPL no longer high impedance in next cycle	80		
t_{d28}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to write data valid		3Q−70	
t_{d29}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LI/$\overline{D}$, LR/$\overline{W}$ no longer valid	20		
t_{d30}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to write data no longer valid	20		
t_{d31}	Delay time LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low in write cycle	20		
t_{d32}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{LEN}$ high in write cycle		80	
t_{d33}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{LEN}$ no longer high in write cycle	Q−4		
t_{su1}	Setup time, Read data valid to LBCLK1 no longer high	20		
t_{h1}	Hold time, read data valid after LBCLK1 low if t_{h2} not met	15		
t_{h2}	Hold time, read data valid after $\overline{LEN}$ no longer low if t_{h1} not met	0		
t_{d34}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY high		2Q−41	
t_{d35}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LBRDY low		2Q−21	
t_{h3}	Hold time, LBRDY valid after LBCLK2 low	80		

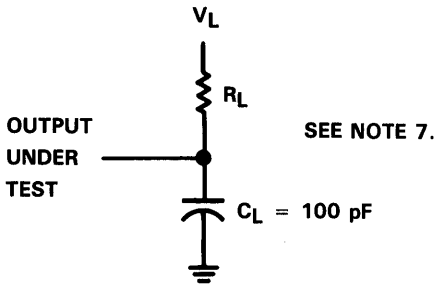
†This table is entitled switching characteristics/timing requirements because several of the parameters specified can be classified as characteristics or requirements depending on the mode of operation: bus slave or bus master (DMA). The values given are valid for both modes.

NOTE 6: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

PARAMETER MEASUREMENT INFORMATION



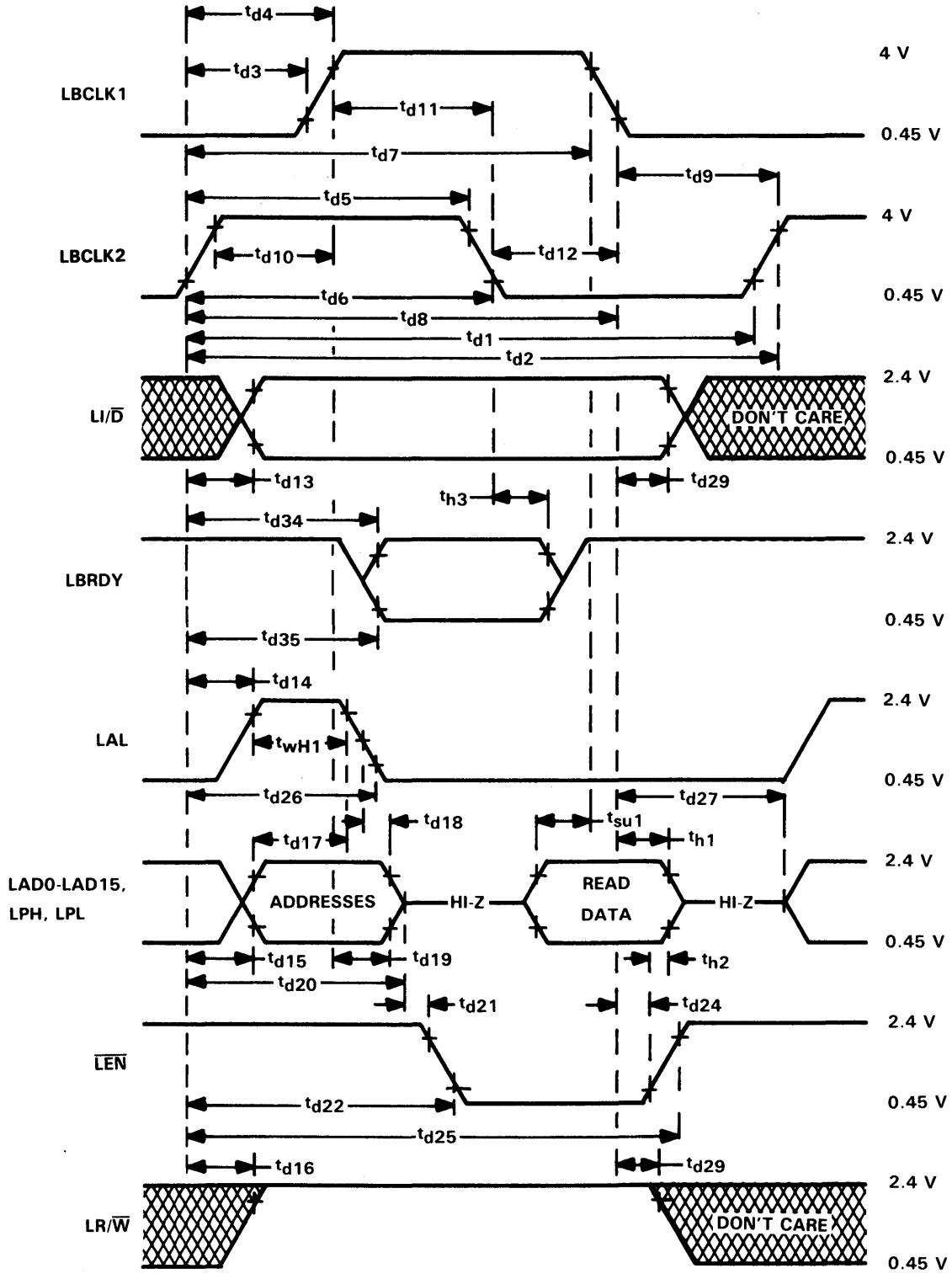
NOTE 7: R_L and V_L are chosen as follows:

$$R_L = \frac{V_{OH} - V_{OL}}{|I_{OL} - I_{OH}|} \qquad V_L = V_{OH} - (I_{OH})(R_L)$$

FIGURE 3. LOAD CIRCUIT

A

LAN adapter bus read timing

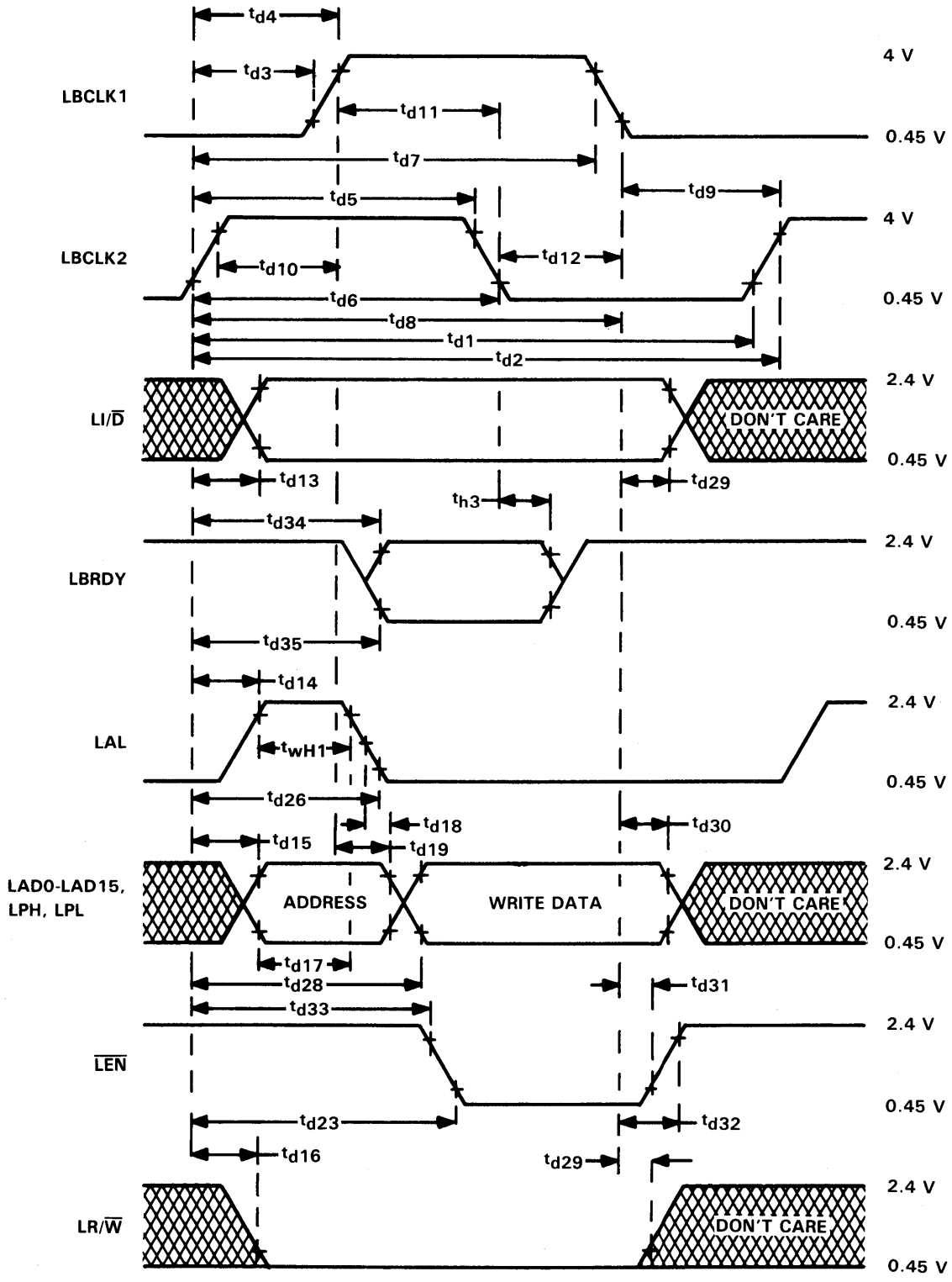


NOTE 8: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN adapter bus write timing



NOTE 8: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V. The intermediate reference point for LAL is 1.3 V.

A

LAN ADAPTER BUS ARBITRATION PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d36}	Delay of $\overline{\text{LBRQS}}$ from LBCLK1 low		48	ns
t_{d37}	Delay of $\overline{\text{LBRQS}}$ after LBCLK1 rise	0		
t_{d38}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer high impedance by TMS38030	2Q – 9		
t_{d39}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL driven low by TMS38030		3Q – 15	
t_{d40}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ no longer high impedance by TMS38030	80		
t_{d41}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ driven high by TMS38030		74	
t_{d42}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$, LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL no longer high impedance by TMS38030	80		

NOTE 6: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

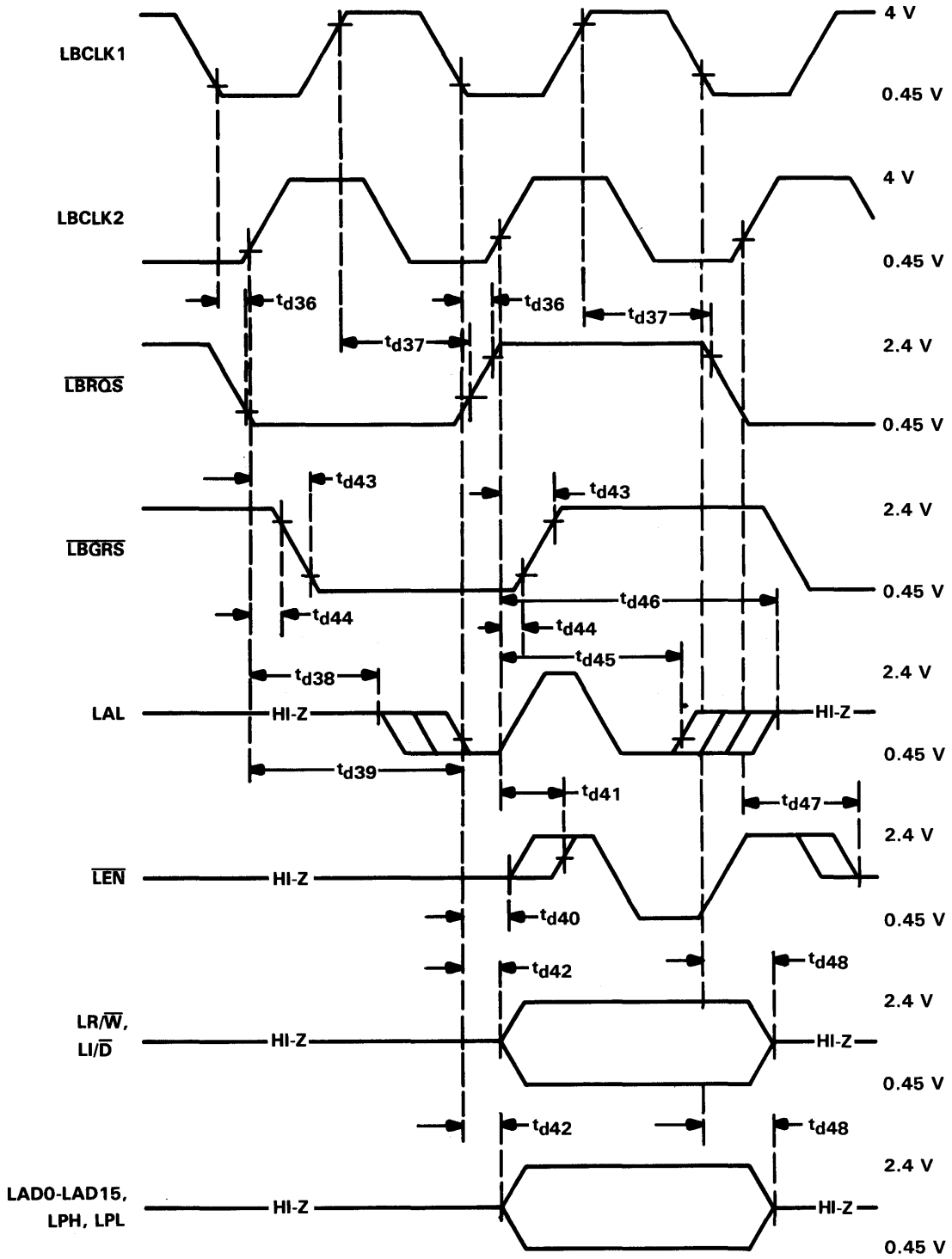
	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d43}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LBGRS}}$ valid		2Q – 73	ns
t_{d44}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LBGRS}}$ no longer valid	–6		
t_{d45}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL no longer driven low from old bus master	3Q – 15		
t_{d46}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to LAL high impedance from old bus master		4Q – 2	
t_{d47}	Delay time, LBCLK2 rise to $\overline{\text{LEN}}$ high impedance from old bus master		74	
t_{d48}	Delay time, LBCLK1 low to LR/$\overline{\text{W}}$, LI/$\overline{\text{D}}$, LAD0-LAD15, LPH, and LPL high impedance from old bus master		80	

NOTE 6: Q = 0.25 $t_{c(LA)}$.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

LAN adapter bus arbitration



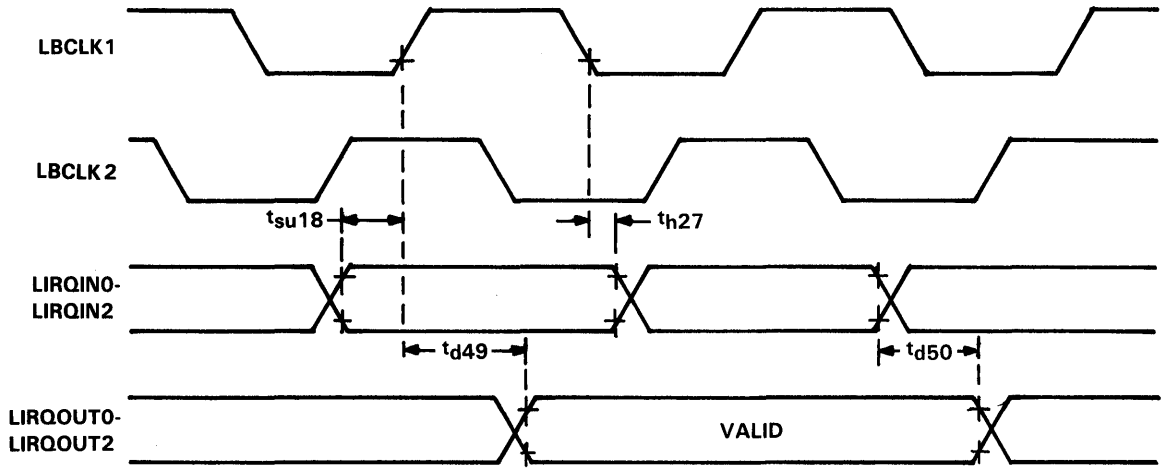
NOTE 9: The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for the other waveforms are 2 V and 0.8 V.

MISCELLANEOUS LAN ADAPTER BUS PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d49}	Delay time, LBCLK1 rise to LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2 valid		140	ns
t_{su18}	LIRQIN0-LIRQIN2 setup before LBCLK1 rise	0		
t_{h27}	Hold time, LIRQIN0-LIRQIN2 after LBCLK1 low	0		
t_{d50}	Delay time, LIRQIN0-LIRQIN2 no longer valid to LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2 no longer valid	0		

interrupt timing



NOTE 10: LIRQOUTs may not follow LIRQINs because the TMS38030 prioritizes LIRQOUT0-LIRQOUT2 outputs between internal TMS38030 interrupts and LIRQIN0-LIRQIN2.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

SYSTEM DMA TIMING PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{wH2}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, and $\overline{SLDS}$ high	$t_{c(SC)}+t_{w(SCL)}-40$		ns
t_{d51}	Delay from T1 high to $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ active (read cycle only) (Note 11)		55	
t_{d52}	Delay from T2 high to $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ active (write cycle only) (Note 11)		55	
t_{d53}	Delay of output data valid to $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ no longer high	$t_{w(SCL)}-40$		
t_{d54}	Delay from SBCLK low to address valid (Note 11)		45	
t_{d55}	Delay from T1 low to SAD HI-Z		45	
t_{wH3}	Pulse duration, SALE and SXAL high	$t_{c(SC)}-70$		
t_{d56}	Delay from SBCLK high to SALE or SXAL high (Note 11)		70	
t_{h4}	Hold of SALE or SXAL low after $\overline{SRD}$, $\overline{SWR}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$, and $\overline{SAS}$ high	$t_{w(SCL)}-40$		
t_{d57}	Delay from T1 high to SALE low or TX high to SXAL low (Note 11)		45	
t_{h5}	Hold of address valid after SALE, SXAL low	$t_{w(SCH)}-30$		
t_{d58}	Delay from T1 low to output data and parity valid		50	
t_{d59}	Delay from T4 low to SAD, SPL, SPH, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$ HI-Z, bus release		100	
t_{h6}	Hold of output data, parity valid after write strobe high	$t_{c(SC)}-60$		
t_{d60}	Delay from SBCLK high to $\overline{SAS}$ low		55	
t_{d61}	Delay from T4 low to $\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW high, bus release		75	
t_{d62}	Delay from T4 low to $\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW HI-Z		145	
t_{d63}	Delay from T3 low to $\overline{SRD}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SAS}$ high on read cycle (Note 12)		60	
t_{d64}	Delay from SBCLK low to $\overline{SWR}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, $\overline{SLDS}$, $\overline{SAS}$ high on write cycle		60	
t_{d65}	Delay from SBCLK high in cycle before T1/TX to $\overline{SOWN}$ low (Note 13)		75	
t_{d66}	Delay from SBCLK high in 2nd cycle after T4 to $\overline{SOWN}$ high (Note 11)		75	
t_{d67}	Delay from TX high to SDDIR low in DMA read cycle (Note 11)		75	
t_{d68}	Delay from T4 low in last read cycle to SDDIR high (Note 11)		75	
t_{d69}	Delay from T3 low to $\overline{SDBEN}$ high, read cycle (Note 11)	Note 12	75	
t_{d70}	Delay from T4 high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ high, write cycle (Note 11)		60	
t_{h7}	Hold of $\overline{SDBEN}$ low after write data strobe high	$t_{w(SCL)}-40$		
t_{d71}	Delay from SAD HI-Z to $\overline{SRD}$ low	0		
t_{d72}	Delay from T1 low to $\overline{SRD}$ low		70	
t_{d73}	Delay from T1 low to $\overline{SWR}$ low		55	
t_{h8}	Hold of SAD HI-Z after T4 low	0		

Continued next page.

NOTES: 11. Unless otherwise specified, for all signals specified as a maximum delay from the end of an SBCLK transition to the signal valid, the signal is also specified to hold its previous value (including HI-Z) until the start of that SBCLK transition.
12. On read cycle, the read strobe remains active until the internal sample of incoming data is complete. Input data may be removed when either the read strobe or $\overline{SDBEN}$ becomes no longer active.
13. While SIF DMA controls are active (i.e., $\overline{SOWN}$ is asserted), the $\overline{SCS}$ input is disabled.

A

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3) (concluded)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{d74}	Delay from SBCLK high to bus request valid (Note 11)		60	ns
t_{wL1}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SRD}$ low	$2t_{c(SC)}-40$		
t_{wL2}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SWR}$ low	$2t_{c(SC)}-40$		
t_{su2}	Setup of address valid before SALE, SXAL no longer high	$t_{w(SCL)}-43$		
t_{su3}	Setup of address valid before $\overline{SAS}$ no longer high	$t_{w(SCL)}-32$		
t_{d75}	Delay from T2 high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ low in read cycle (Note 11)		80	
t_{d76}	Delay from T1 high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ low in write cycle (Note 11)		60	
t_{wL3}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SAS}$ on read and write; pulse duration, $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ on read	$2t_{c(SC)}+t_{w(SCH)}-50$		
t_{su4}	Setup of control signals HI-Z before $\overline{SOWN}$ no longer low	0		
t_{d77}	Delay from TX high to data strobes high, bus acquisition (Note 11)		70	
t_{h9}	Hold of data strobe HI-Z after $\overline{SOWN}$ low, bus acquisition	$t_{c(SC)}-70$		
t_{wL4}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SUDS}$ and $\overline{SLDS}$ on write	$t_{c(SC)}+t_{w(SCH)}-50$		
t_{d78}	Delay from $\overline{SRESET}$ low to $\overline{LRESET}$ low, V_{CC} at V_{CC} min		100	
t_{d79}	Delay from $\overline{SRESET}$ high to $\overline{LRESET}$ high		200	
t_{d80}	Delay from reaching minimum V_{CC} during power-up to valid SBCLK, LBCLK1, LBCLK2		90	ms

NOTE 11: Unless otherwise specified, for all signals specified as a maximum delay from the end of an SBCLK transition to the signal valid, the signal is also specified to hold its previous value (including HI-Z) until the start of that SBCLK transition.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

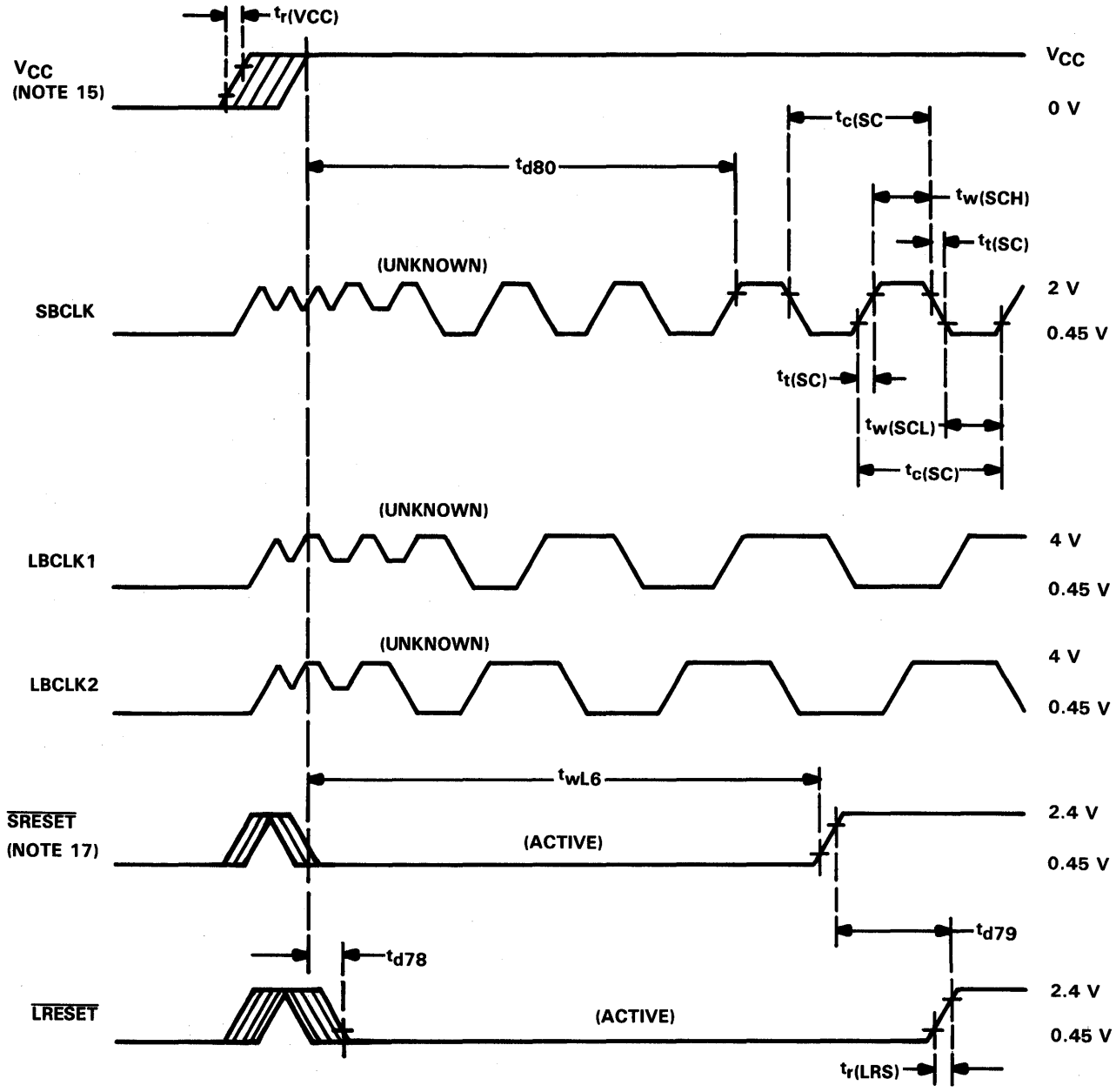
PARAMETER			MIN	MAX	UNIT
$t_{c(SC)}$	Cycle time of SBCLK (Note 14)	TMS38030-6	166	500	ns
		TMS38030-8	125	500	
		TMS38030-10	100	500	
$t_{w(SCL)}$	Pulse duration, SBCLK low	TMS38030-6	65		ns
		TMS38030-8	55		
		TMS38030-10	45		
$t_{w(SCH)}$	Pulse duration, SBCLK high	TMS38030-6	65		ns
		TMS38030-8	55		
		TMS38030-10	45		
$t_{t(SC)}$	Transition time of SBCLK			10	ns
t_{su5}	Setup of input data valid before T3 no longer high		15		ns
t_{h10}	Hold of input data valid after T3 low, if t_{h11} and t_{h12} not met		40		ns
t_{h11}	Hold of input data valid after data strobe no longer low		0		ns
t_{h12}	Hold of input data valid after $\overline{SDBEN}$ no longer low		0		ns
t_{su6}	Setup of asynchronous input before SBCLK no longer high to guarantee recognition		20		ns
t_{h13}	Hold of asynchronous input after SBCLK low to guarantee recognition		40		ns
t_{h14}	Hold of $\overline{SBRLS}$ low after $\overline{SOWN}$ high		0		ns
t_{su7}	Setup of $\overline{SBERR}$ low before $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ no longer high, if t_{su6} not met		65		ns
t_{su8}	Setup of $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ low before data valid if t_{su6} not met			45	ns
t_{wL5}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SRESET}$ and $\overline{LRESET}$ asserted with minimum V_{CC} or greater applied and valid LBCLKs		14		μs
t_{wL6}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SRESET}$ asserted after V_{CC} above V_{CC} (min) at power-up		100		ms
$t_{r(LRS)}$	Rise time of $\overline{LRESET}$			100	ns
$t_{r(VCC)}$	Rise time from 1.2 volts to V_{CC} minimum, at the V_{CC} pins		1		ms

NOTE 14: The MXTALOUT signal output of the TMS38010 cannot be used as the SBCLK input.

A

power-up, SBCLK, LBCLK, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$, and $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ timing

power on



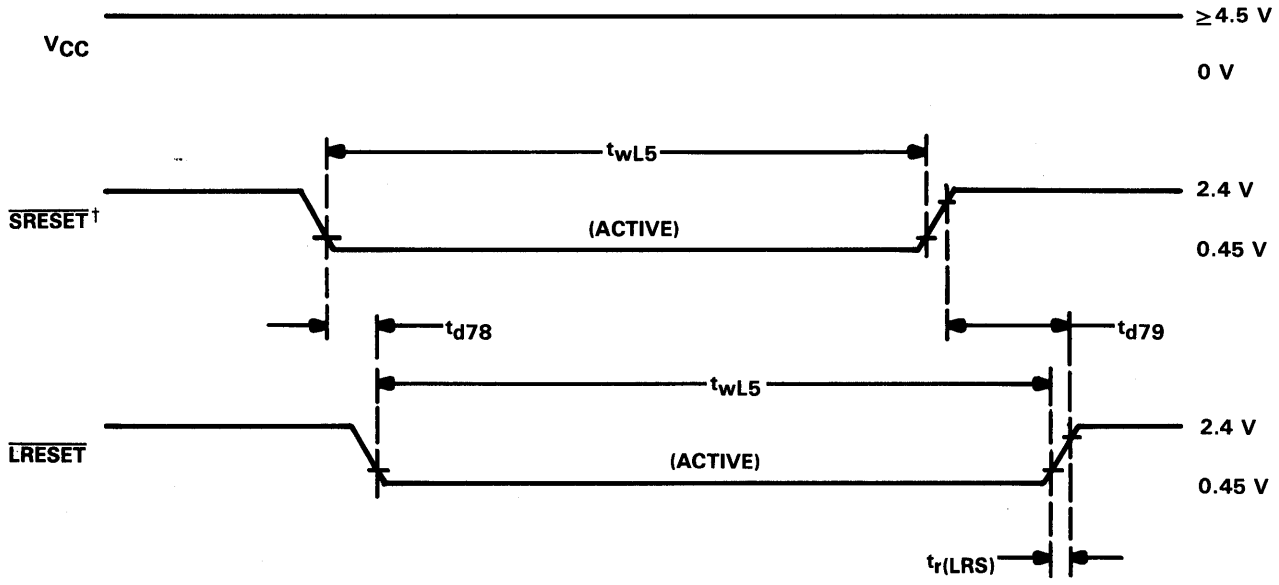
NOTES: 15. A minimum one second interval between power off and power on is required for correct initialization of the TMS38030.
16. The timing reference points for LBCLK1 and LBCLK2 are 3 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for SBCLK, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$, and $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ are 2 V and 0.8 V. The timing reference points for V_{CC} are 4.5 V and 1.2 V.
17. During power-up, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ is undefined (asserted) prior to 1.2 V applied to the V_{CC} pins of the TMS38030. $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ must remain asserted from V_{CC} = 1.2 V to V_{CC} minimum. The TMS38030 must not be accessed from either the system or LAN Adapter bus interface within 3 μs of the de-assertion of $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$. This is primarily a test limitation since currently available processors cannot violate this condition.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

$\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ and $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ timing

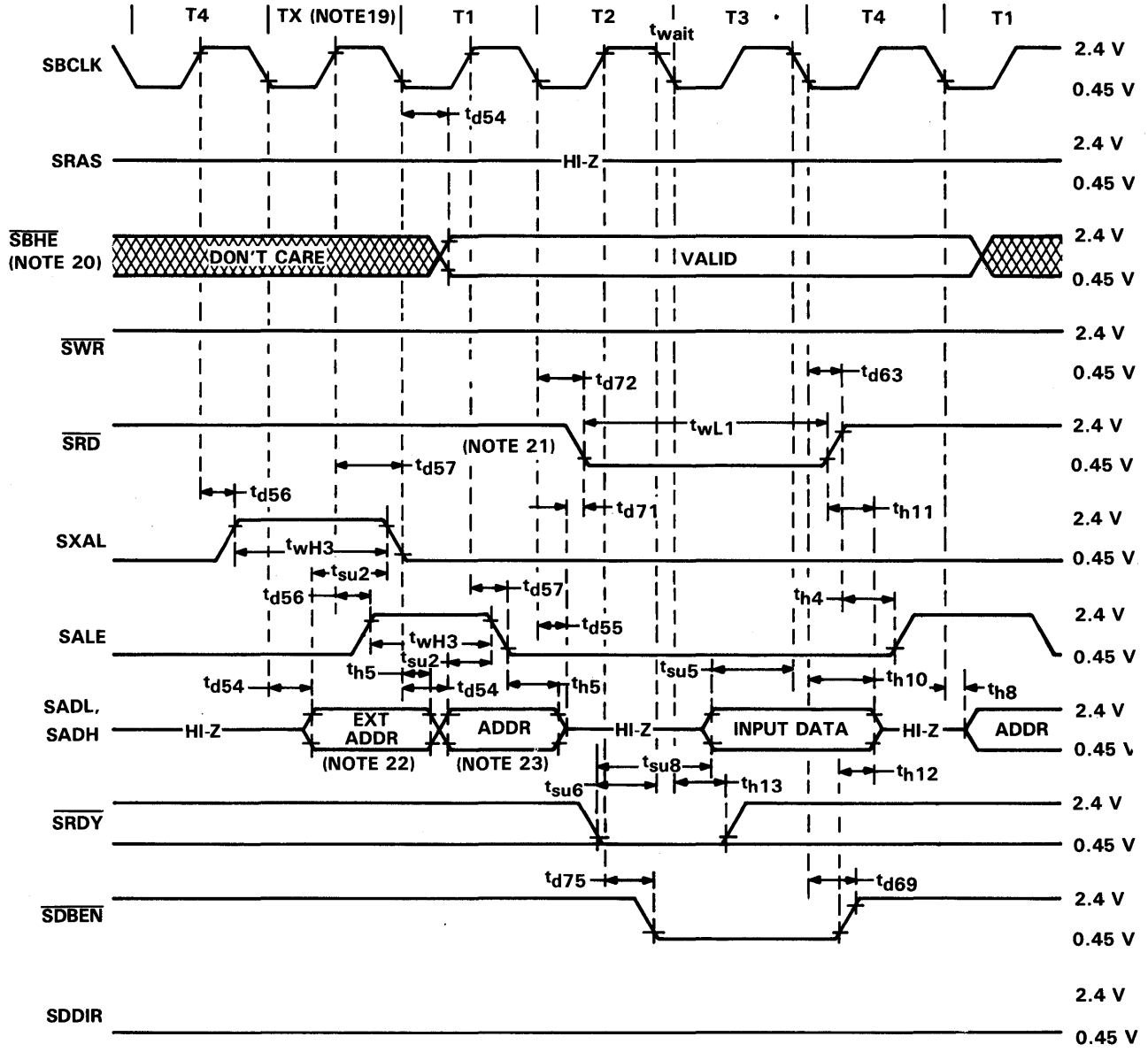
operational



NOTE 18: The timing reference points for $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ and $\overline{\text{LRESET}}$ are 2 V and 0.8 V.
†Following a low-to-high transition of $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ must remain high for a minimum of 20 milliseconds before again driven low.

A

808X mode DMA read timing

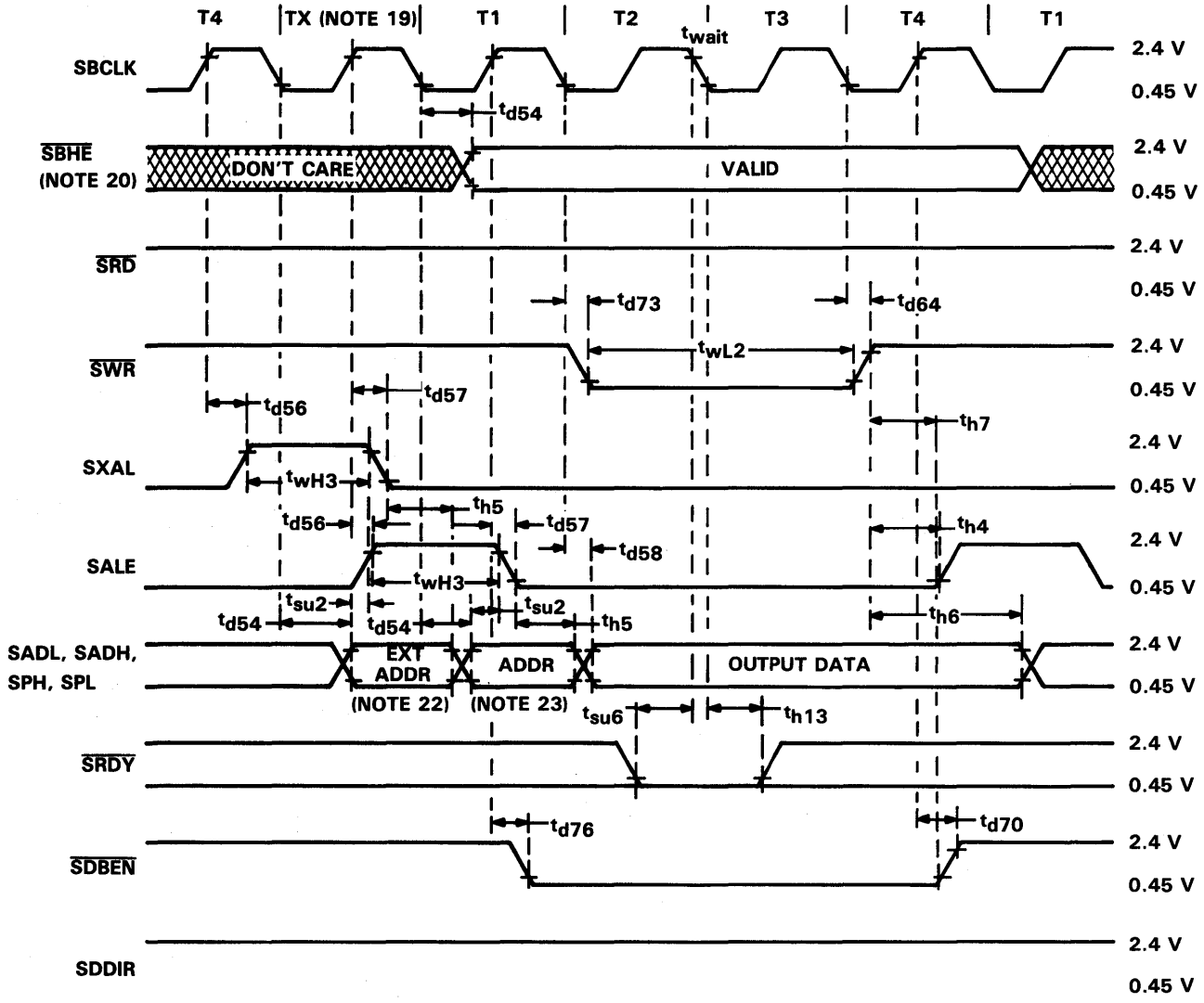


NOTES: 19. In cycle-steal mode, state TX is present on every system bus transfer. In burst mode, state TX is present on the first bus transfer, and whenever the increment of the address carries beyond the least-significant 8 bits.
20. In 8-bit 808X Mode, $\overline{SBHE}$/SRNW is a don't care input during DIO and an inactive (high) output during DMA.
21. If the TX state is not present, $\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, and $\overline{SLDS}$ are asserted in the T1 state.
22. In state TX, SADH continues to output the most-significant byte of the address.
23. In 8-bit mode, the most-significant byte of the address is maintained on SADH for T2, T3, and T4. The address is maintained according to t_{h6}, i.e., held after T4 high.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

808X mode DMA write timing

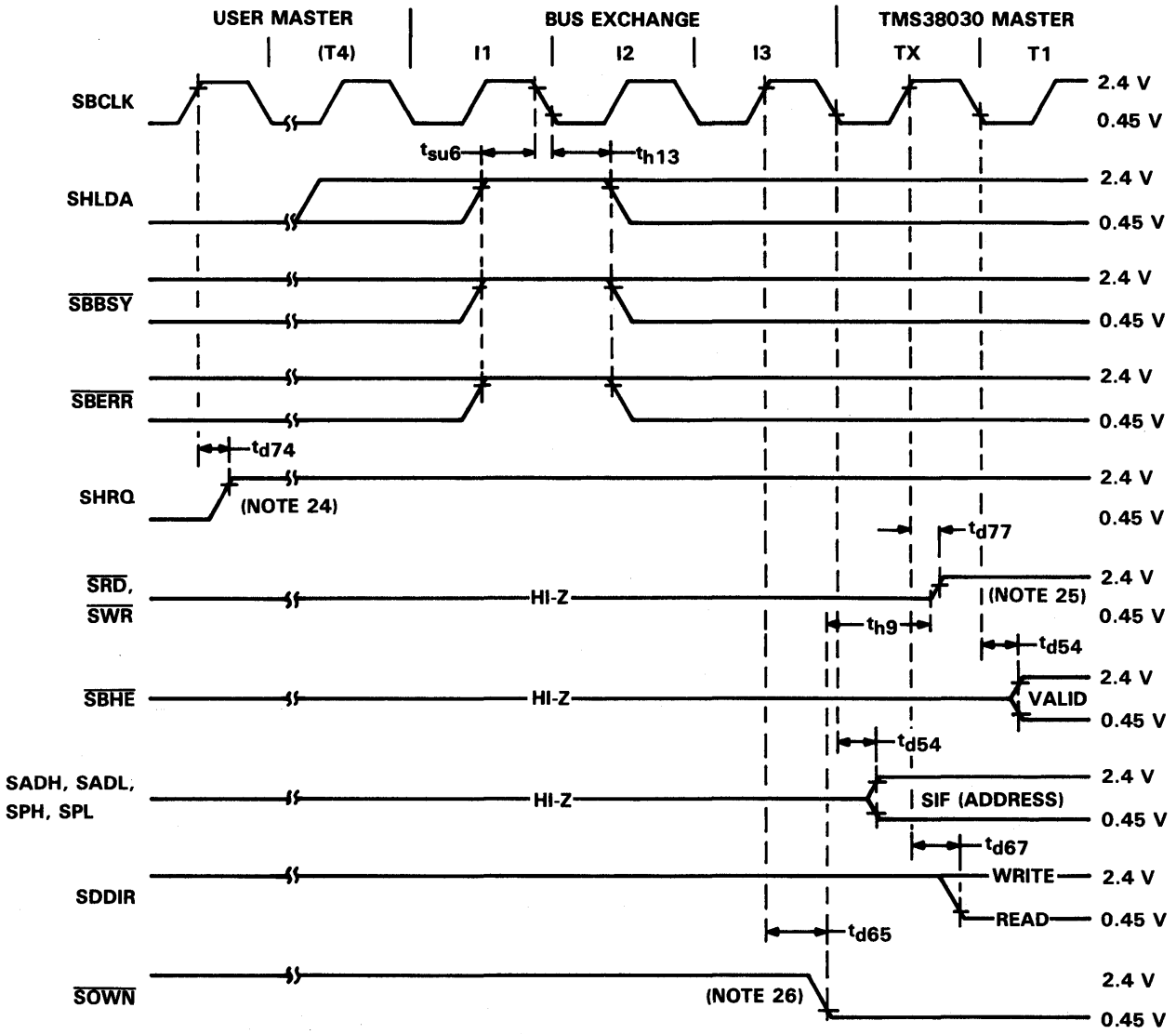


NOTES: 19. In cycle-steal mode, state TX is present on every system bus transfer. In burst mode, state TX is present on the first bus transfer, and whenever the increment of the address carries beyond the least-significant 8 bits.
20. In 8-bit 808X Mode, $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$/SRNW is a don't care input during DIO and an inactive (high) output during DMA.
22. In state TX, SADH continues to output the most-significant byte of the address.
23. In 8-bit mode, the most-significant byte of the address is maintained on SADH for T2, T3, and T4. The address is maintained according to t_{h6}, i.e., held after T4 high.

A

808X mode bus arbitration timing

TMS38030 takes control of system bus from user processor



NOTES: 24. SHLDA/$\overline{\text{SBGR}}$ must be sampled in its deasserted state on the falling edge of SBCLK. The TMS38030 will then assert SHRQ/$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ on the second subsequent rising edge of SBCLK.

25. When taking over the system bus, the TMS38030 drives all data strobes high for the time between T1 high and the edge at which the strobes are driven low. The logical value of the strobes in this period is not defined.

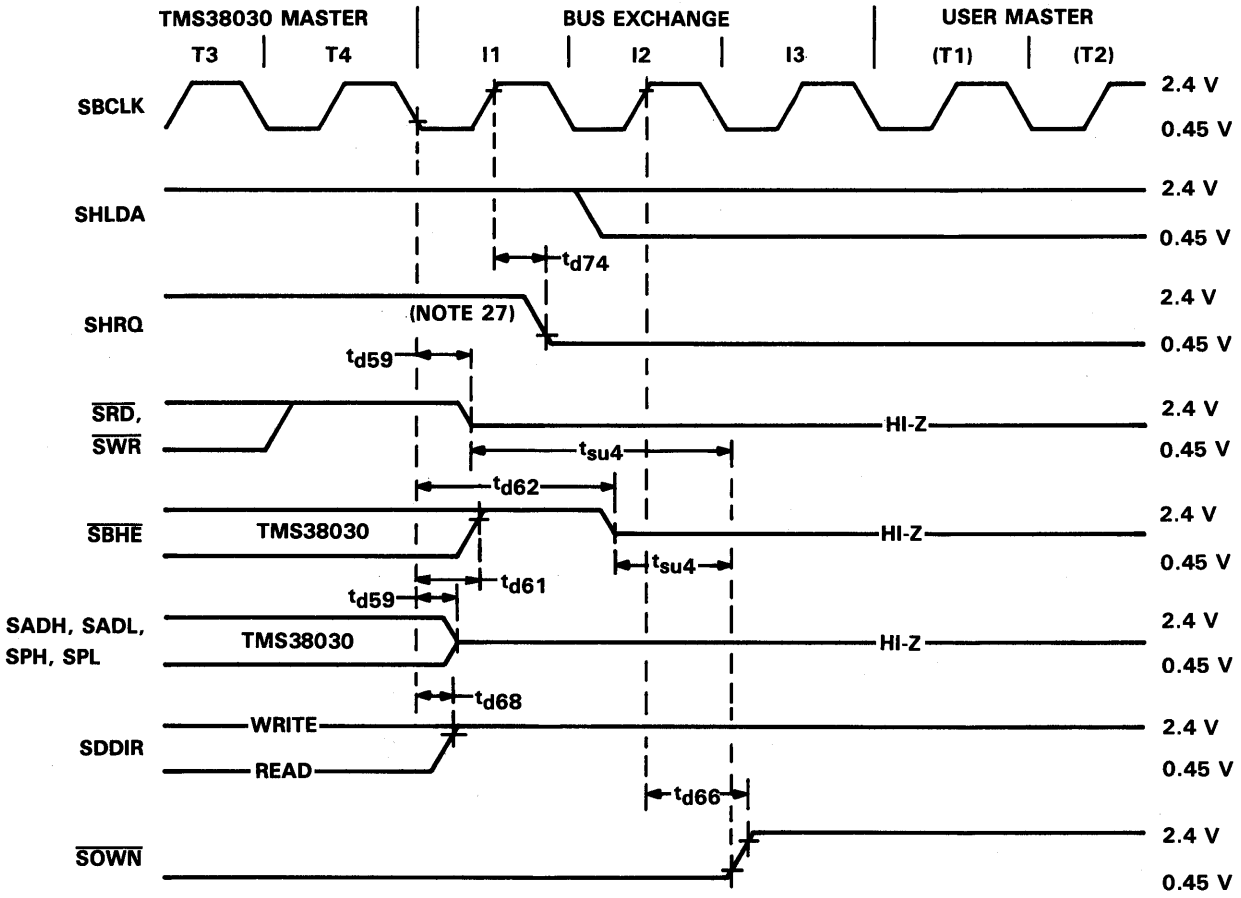
26. While TMS38030 DMA controls are active (i.e., $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ is asserted), the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ input is disabled.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

808X mode bus arbitration timing

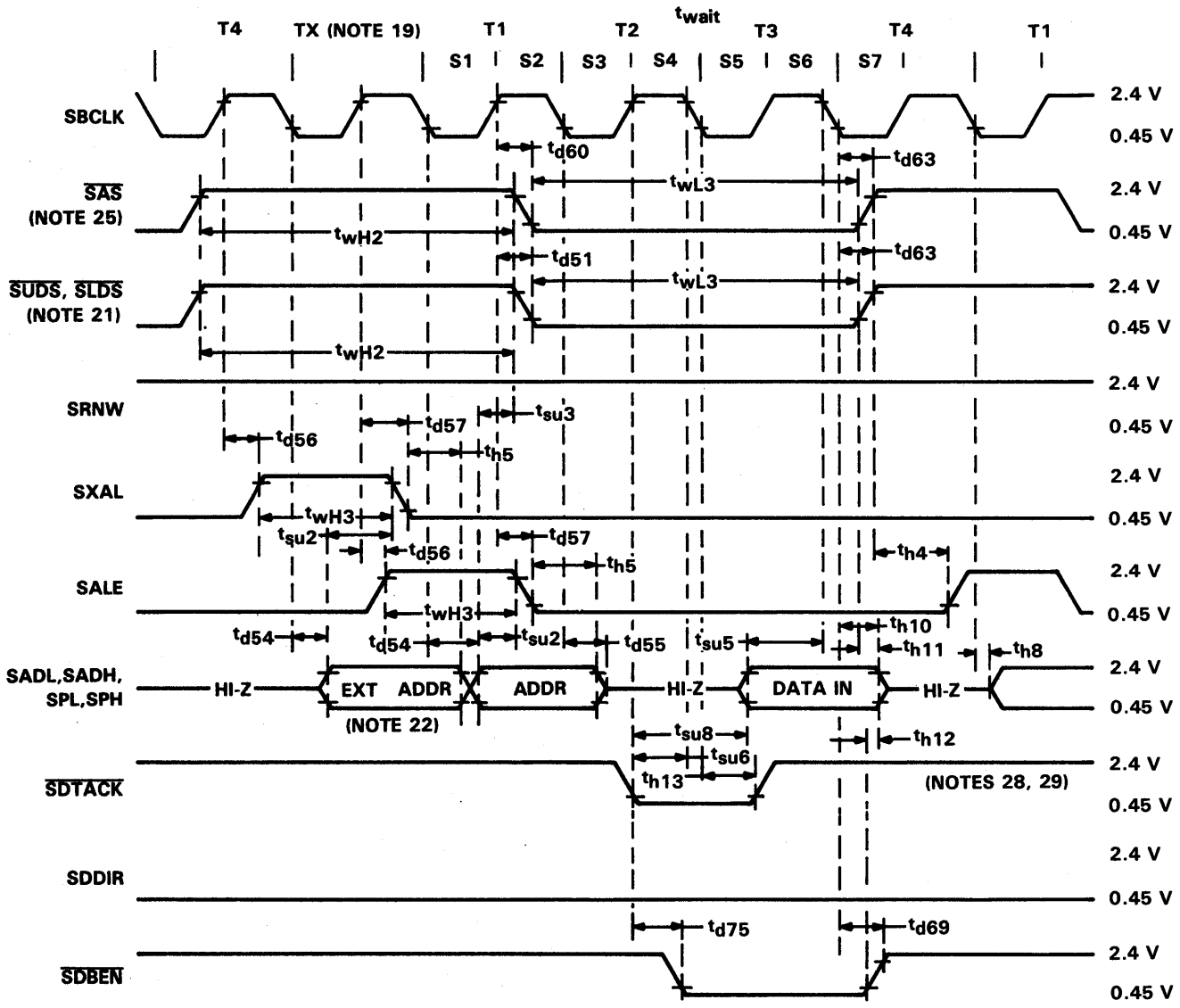
TMS38030 returns control to user processor



NOTE 27: In 808X Mode, the TMS38030 deasserts SHRQ on the rising edge of SBCLK following the T4 state of the last system bus transfer it controls. In 680XX Mode, the TMS38030 deasserts $\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ on the rising edge of SBCLK in state T2 of the first system bus transfer it controls.

A

680XX mode DMA read timing

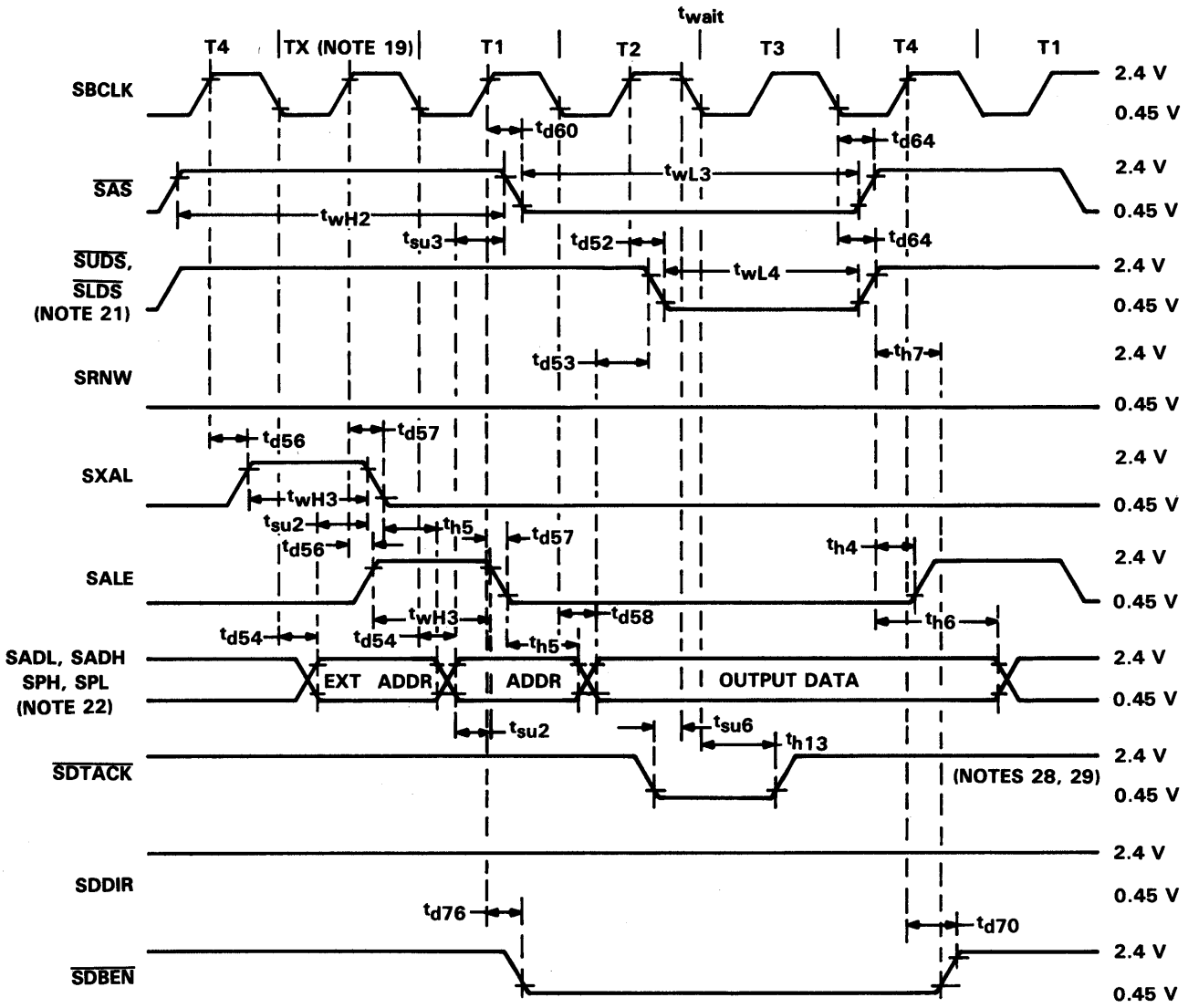


NOTES: 19. In cycle-steal mode, state TX is present on every system bus transfer. In burst mode, state TX is present on the first bus transfer, and whenever the increment of the address carries beyond the least-significant 8 bits.
21. If the TX state is not present, $\overline{SAS}$, $\overline{SUDS}$, and $\overline{SLDS}$ are asserted in the T1 state.
22. In state TX, SADH continues to output the most-significant byte of the address.
28. $\overline{SDTACK}$ is not sampled to verify that it is deasserted.
29. 680XX-style bus slaves hold $\overline{SDTACK}$ active until the bus master deasserts $\overline{SAS}$. In this case, the slave still meets t_{h13}.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

680XX mode DMA write timing



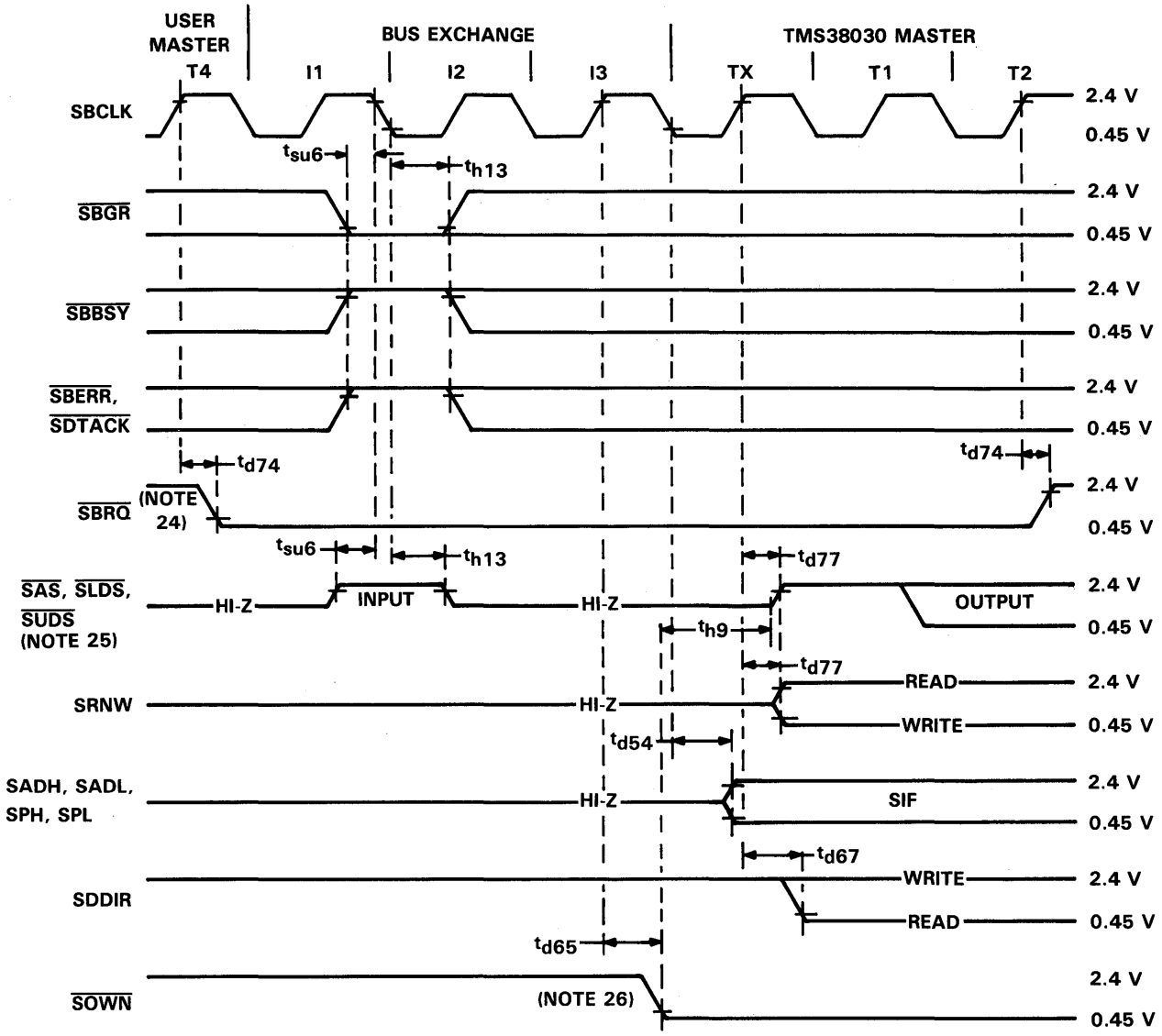
NOTES: 19. In cycle-steal mode, state TX is present on every system bus transfer. In burst mode, state TX is present on the first bus transfer, and whenever the increment of the address carries beyond the least-significant 8 bits.

21. If the TX state is not present, $\overline{SAS}$,$\overline{SUDS}$, and $\overline{SLDS}$ are asserted in the T1 state.
22. In state TX, SADH continues to output the most-significant byte of the address.
28. $\overline{SDTACK}$ is not sampled to verify that it is deasserted.
29. 680XX-style bus slaves hold $\overline{SDTACK}$ active until the bus master deasserts $\overline{SAS}$. In this case, the slave still meets t_{h13}.

A

680XX mode bus arbitration timing

TMS38030 takes control of system bus from user processor



NOTES: 24. SHLDA/$\overline{\text{SBGR}}$ must be sampled in its deasserted state on the falling edge of SBCLK. The TMS38030 will then assert SHRQ/$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ on the second subsequent rising edge of SBCLK.

25. When taking over the system bus, the TMS38030 drives all data strobes high for the time between T1 high and the edge at which the strobes are driven low. The logical value of the strobes in this period is not defined.

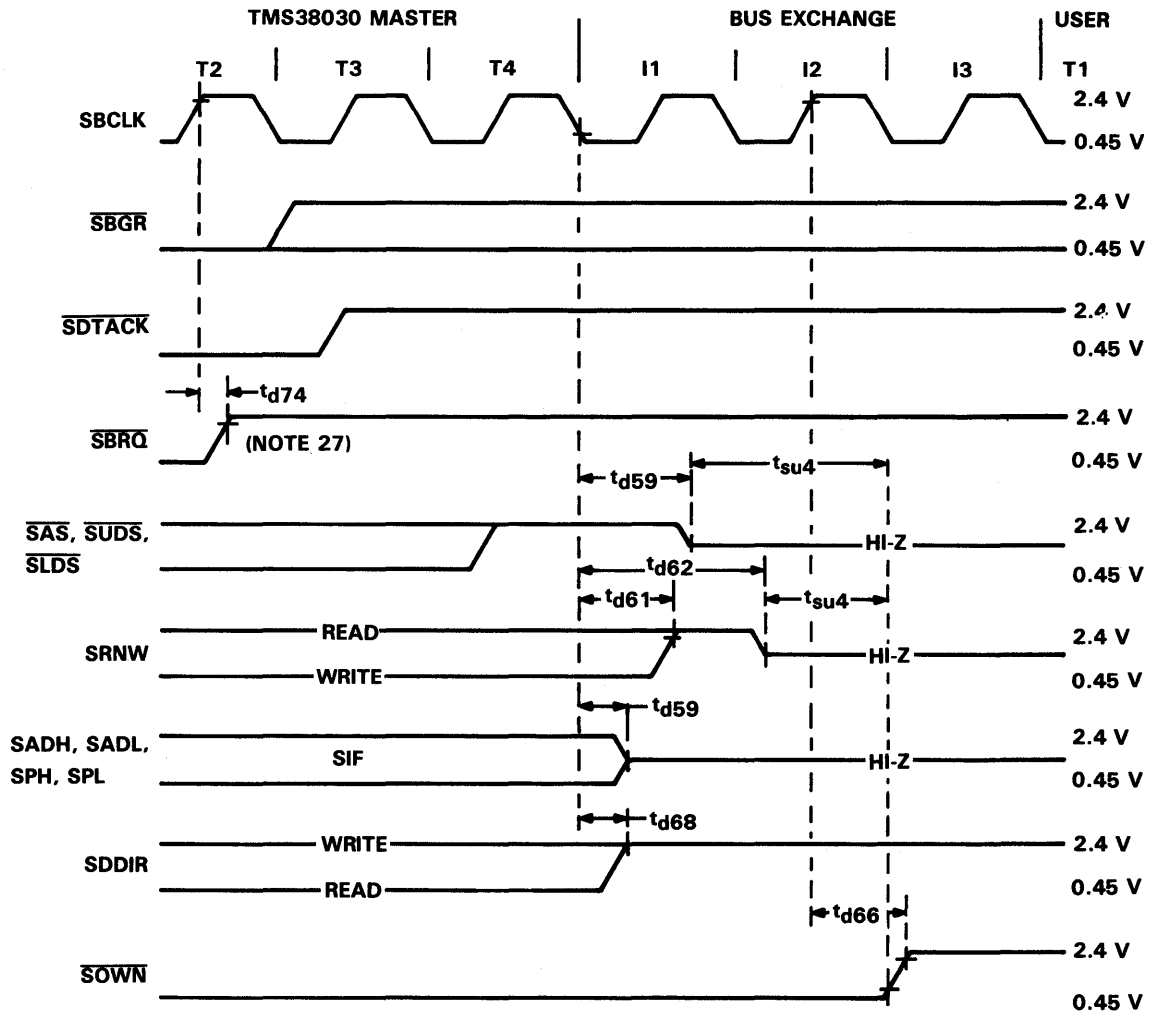
26. While TMS38030 DMA controls are active (i.e., $\overline{\text{SOWN}}$ is asserted), the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ input is disabled.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

680XX mode bus arbitration timing

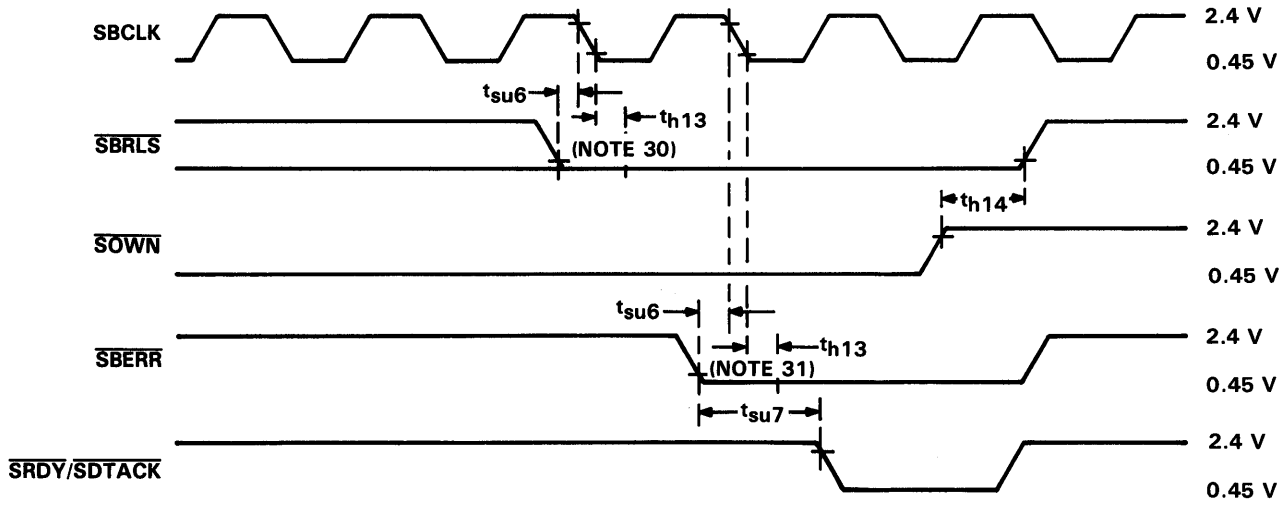
TMS38030 returns control to user processor



NOTE 27: In 808X Mode, the TMS38030 deasserts SHRQ on the rising edge of SBCLK following the T4 state of the last system bus transfer it controls. In 680XX Mode, the TMS38030 deasserts $\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ on the rising edge of SBCLK in state T2 of the first system bus transfer it controls.

A

bus release and error timing



NOTES: 30. The TMS38030 ignores the assertion of $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ if it does not own the system bus. If it does own the system bus, then when it detects the assertion of $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ it will complete any internally started DMA cycle and relinquish control of the bus. If no DMA transfer has internally started, then the TMS38030 will release the bus before starting another.

If $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ is asserted prior to state T1, then that DMA cycle will be the last cycle before the TMS38030 releases the bus. If $\overline{\text{SBRLS}}$ is asserted after state T1 in a DMA cycle, the TMS38030 will complete the current cycle and the next cycle before releasing the system bus.

The TMS38030 will deassert SHRQ/$\overline{\text{SBRQ}}$ during state I1 of the bus exchange cycle. SHLDA/$\overline{\text{SBGR}}$ must be deasserted to cause the TMS38030 to re-request the bus.

31. If $\overline{\text{SBERR}}$ is asserted when the TMS38030 controls the system bus, then the current bus transfer is completed, regardless of the value of $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$/$\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$. In this case, the TMS38030 will then release control of the system bus. The TMS38030 ignores $\overline{\text{SBERR}}$ if it is not performing a DMA cycle. When $\overline{\text{SBERR}}$ is properly asserted, however, the TMS38030 releases the bus upon completion of the current bus transfer and halts all further DMA on the system side. The error is synchronized to the LAN Adapter bus and DMA stops on the LAN Adapter bus side. The value of SDMAADR, LDMAADR, and SDMALEN registers in the TMS38030 are not defined after a system bus error.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

SYSTEM DIO TIMING PARAMETERS

switching characteristics over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range (see Figure 3)

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{h15}	Hold of SAD HI-Z after read strobe no longer high	0		ns
t_{su9}	Setup of output data valid before $\overline{SRDY}$/SDTACK no longer HI-Z	25		ns
t_{d81}	Delay from read strobe high to SAD HI-Z		80	ns
t_{h16}	Hold of output data valid after read strobe or $\overline{SCS}$ no longer low	0		ns
t_{d82}	Delay from data strobe or $\overline{SCS}$ high to $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ high		60	ns
t_{d83}	Delay from SBCLK edge high at which $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ driven in first DIO access to SIFD or SIFADR register to $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ low in immediately following access to SIFD or SIFADR		4.9 μs $+t_{c(SC)}$	μs
t_{h17}	Hold of $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ HI-Z after SBCLK no longer low, read cycle (Note 32)	0		ns
t_{h18}	Hold of $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ HI-Z after $\overline{SDBEN}$ high, write cycle (Note 32)	0		ns
t_{d84}	Delay from SBCLK high to $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ low, read cycle (Note 32)		80	ns
t_{d85}	Delay from SBCLK high to $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ low, write cycle (Note 32)		130	ns
t_{d86}	Delay from data strobe high to $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ HI-Z (Note 33)		100	ns
t_{d87}	Delay from write strobe low to SDDIR low (Note 34)		80	ns
t_{d88}	Delay from write strobe high to SDDIR high (Note 34)		80	ns
t_{h19}	Hold of SDDIR low after write data strobe no longer low	0		ns
t_{d89}	Delay from read strobe low to $\overline{SDBEN}$ low (Note 34)		80	ns
t_{d90}	Delay from read strobe high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ high (Note 34)		75	ns
t_{d91}	Delay from SBCLK high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ high, write cycle (Note 32)		70	ns
t_{d92}	Delay from SBCLK high to $\overline{SDBEN}$ low in write cycle		55	ns
t_{su10}	Setup of SDDIR low to $\overline{SDBEN}$ no longer high	$2t_{c(SC)}+$ $t_{w(SCL)}-125$		ns

NOTES: 32. On DIO read cycles, the cycle begins with a "sample point" which is the falling edge of SBCLK at which the TMS38030 recognizes the assertion of $\overline{SCS}$, the assertion of a read data strobe, and the deassertion of an internal "busy" signal. The TMS38030 asserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ asynchronously when $\overline{SCS}$, the read data strobe, and the internal busy signal are at the appropriate level.

On DIO write cycles, the sample point is defined as the falling edge of SBCLK at which the TMS38030 recognizes that $\overline{SCS}$ is asserted, the write data strobe is asserted, and the internal DIO "busy" signal is deasserted. The TMS38030 asserts $\overline{SDBEN}$ on the third rising edge after the sample point.

33. Internal logic will drive $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ high and verify that it has reached a valid high level before tristating the signal.
34. For 680XX mode, skew between $\overline{SLDS}$ and $\overline{SUDS}$ must not exceed 10 ns. Providing this limitation is observed, all events referenced to a data strobe edge are to the later occurring edge. Events defined by two data strobe edges, parameter t_{wH4}, are measured between latest and earlier edges.

A

timing requirements over recommended supply voltage range and operating free-air temperature range

	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNIT
t_{wH4}	Pulse duration, data strobe high between DIO accesses	100		ns
t_{su11}	Setup of asynchronous input to SBCLK no longer high in order to guarantee recognition (Note 34)	35		
t_{h20}	Hold of asynchronous input after SBCLK low to guarantee strobe not recognized.	45		
t_{h21}	Hold of $\overline{SCS}$ or data strobe low after $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ no longer HI-Z (Note 35)	0		
t_{d93}	Delay from $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ low to either $\overline{SCS}$ or data strobe high (Note 36)		1000	
t_{wH5}	Pulse duration, SRAS high	40		
t_{su12}	Setup of write data valid before SBCLK no longer low (Note 37)	105		
t_{d94}	Delay from write strobe low to input write data valid (Note 37)		$4t_{c(SC)} + t_{w(SCL)} - 150$	
t_{h22}	Hold of write data valid after $\overline{SDBEN}$ NO LONGER LOW (Note 38)	0		
t_{su13}	Setup of SRS0-SRS2, $\overline{SCS}$ (not shown) and $\overline{SBHE}$ to SRAS no longer high	18		
t_{h23}	Hold of SRS0-SRS2, $\overline{SCS}$ (not shown) and $\overline{SBHE}$ after SRAS low	20		
t_{su14}	Setup of SRAS high to data strobe no longer high	42		
t_{su15}	Setup of register address before data strobe no longer high	20		
t_{h24}	Hold of register address valid after $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ no longer HI-Z (Note 35)	0		
t_{su16}	Setup of SRNW before data strobe no longer high	40		
t_{su17}	Setup of inactive data strobe high to active data strobe no longer high	100		
t_{h25}	Hold of SRNW after $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ no longer HI-Z (Note 38)	0		
t_{h26}	Hold of inactive data strobe high after active data strobe high	100		
t_{wH6}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SCS}$ and $\overline{SIACK}$ both high	100		
t_{wL7}	Pulse duration, $\overline{SIACK}$ low on first pulse of two pulses in 808X Mode	150		

NOTES: 34. For 680XX mode, skew between $\overline{SLDS}$ and $\overline{SUDS}$ must not exceed 10 ns. Providing this limitation is observed, all events referenced to a data strobe edge are to the later occurring edge. Events defined by two data strobe edges, parameter t_{wH4}, are measured between latest and earlier edges.

35. In 808X Mode, SRAS may be used to strobe the values of $\overline{SBHE}$, SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{SCS}$. When used to do so, SRAS must meet parameter t_{su14} and $\overline{SBHE}$, SRS0-SRS2, and $\overline{SCS}$ must meet parameter t_{su13}. If SRAS is strapped high, then parameters t_{su14} and t_{su13} are irrelevant.

36. The system must provide sufficient delay between TMS38030's assertion of $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ and the system's deassertion of the data strobe(s) in order to allow the TMS38030 to hold SDDIR valid after $\overline{SDBEN}$ is inactive.

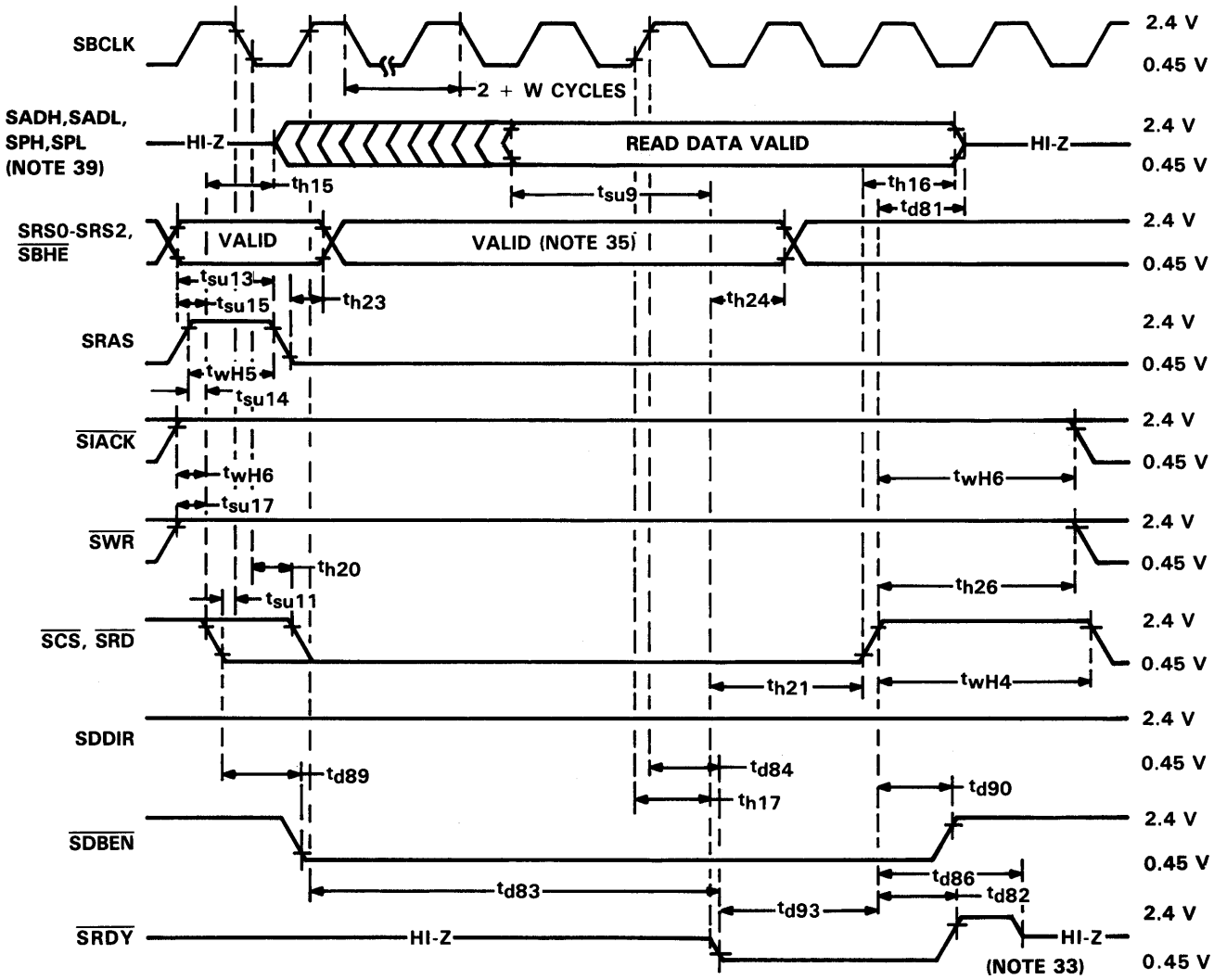
37. Write data is sampled on the fifth rising edge of SBCLK following the recognition of a write data strobe on a falling edge of SBCLK.

38. Since $\overline{SDBEN}$ is deasserted before $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ is asserted, external logic may remove write data when $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ is asserted. Register addresses and SRNW may also be deasserted when $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ is asserted. For testing purposes, the timing point "$\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ no longer HI-Z" refers to the 2 V point of the falling edge of the $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ signal with a 10 kΩ pullup to V_{CC}.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

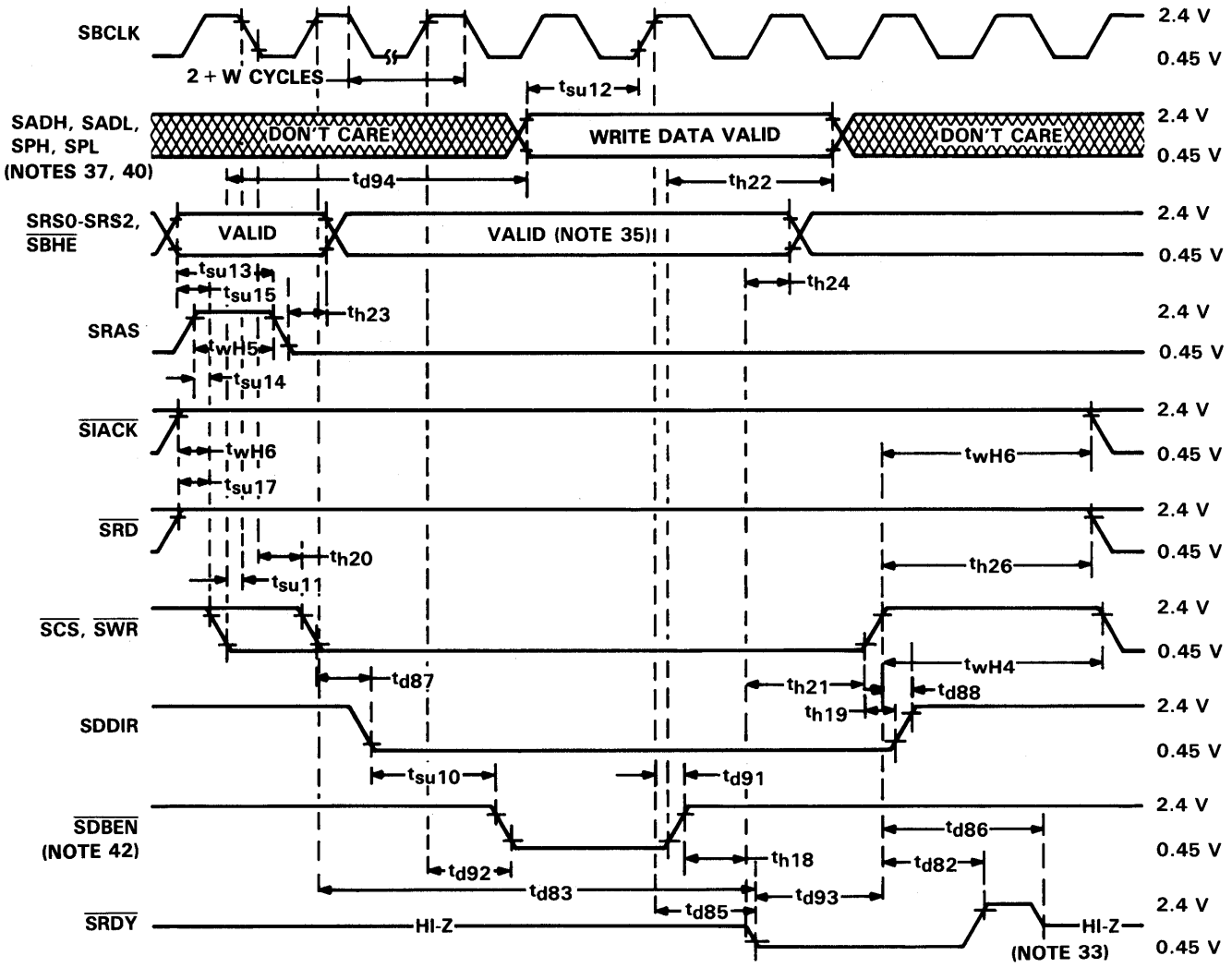
808X mode DIO read timing



NOTES: 33. Internal logic will drive $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$/$\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$ high and verify that it has reached a valid high level before tristating the signal.
35. In 808X Mode, SRAS may be used to strobe the values of $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$, SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$. When used to do so, SRAS must meet parameter t_{su14} and $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$, SRS0-SRS2, and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ must meet parameter t_{su13}. If SRAS is strapped high, then parameters t_{su14} and t_{su13} are irrelevant.
39. In 8-bit mode DIO reads, the SADH lines will be tristated during the data portion of the cycle.

A

808X mode DIO write timing

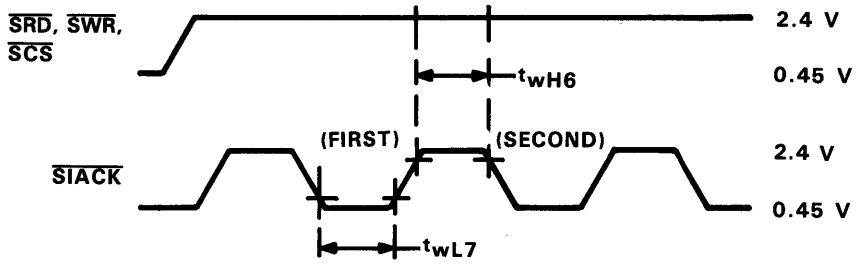


NOTES: 33. Internal logic will drive $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$/$\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$ high and verify that it has reached a valid high level before tristating the signal.
35. In 808X Mode, SRAS may be used to strobe the values of $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$, SRS0-SRS2 and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$. When used to do so, SRAS must meet parameter t_{su14} and $\overline{\text{SBHE}}$, SRS0-SRS2, and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ must meet parameter t_{su13}. If SRAS is strapped high, then parameters t_{su14} and t_{su13} are irrelevant.
37. Write data is sampled on the fifth rising edge of SBCLK following the recognition of a write data strobe on a falling edge of SBCLK.
40. In 8-bit mode DIO writes, the value placed on SADH is a don't care.
42. In a write cycle, $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ is asserted on the third rising edge of SBCLK following the sample of a write data strobe.

A

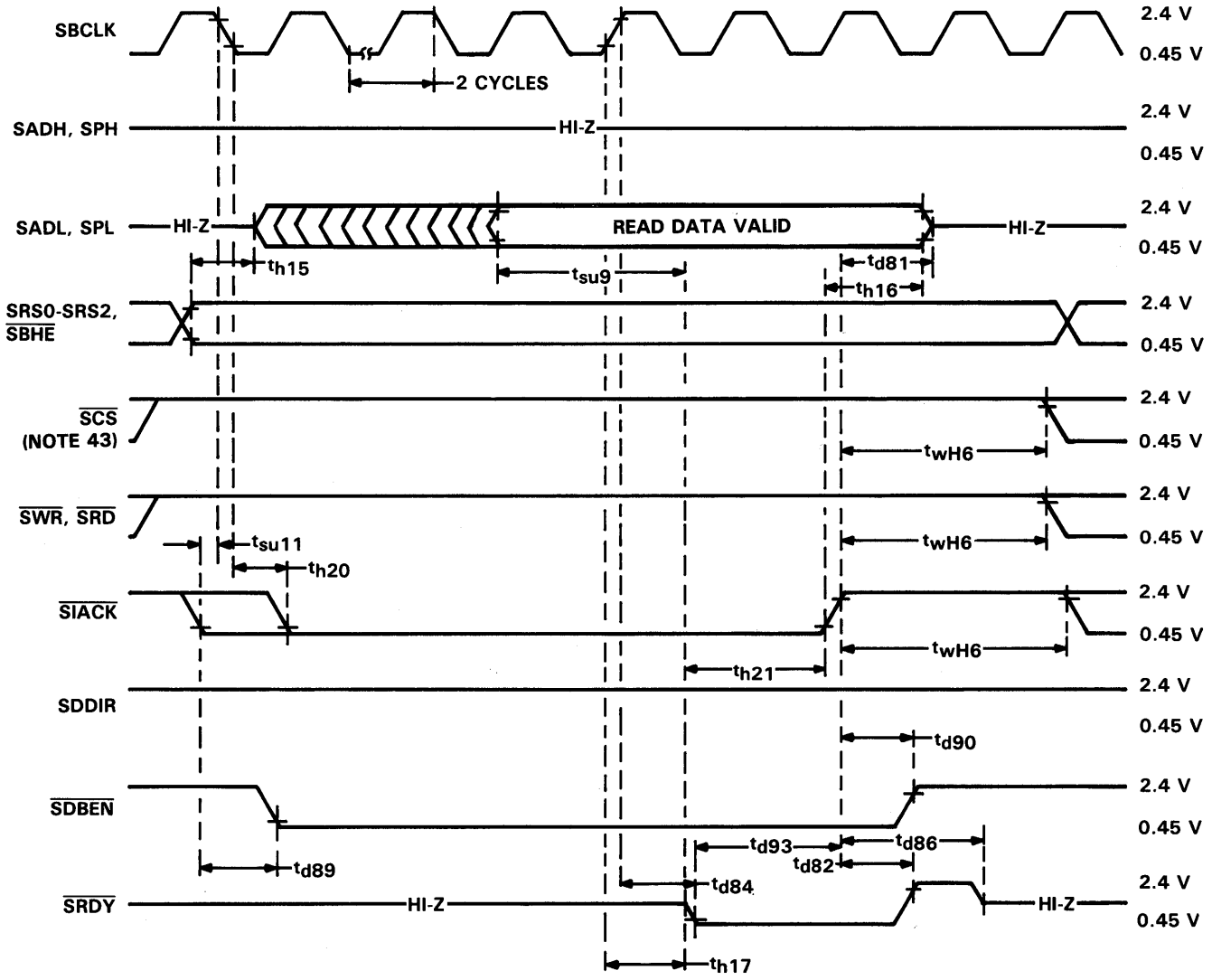
808X mode interrupt acknowledge timing—first $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ pulse

808X reads interrupt vector from TMS38030.



808X mode interrupt acknowledge timing—second $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ pulse

808X master reads interrupt vector from TMS38030.

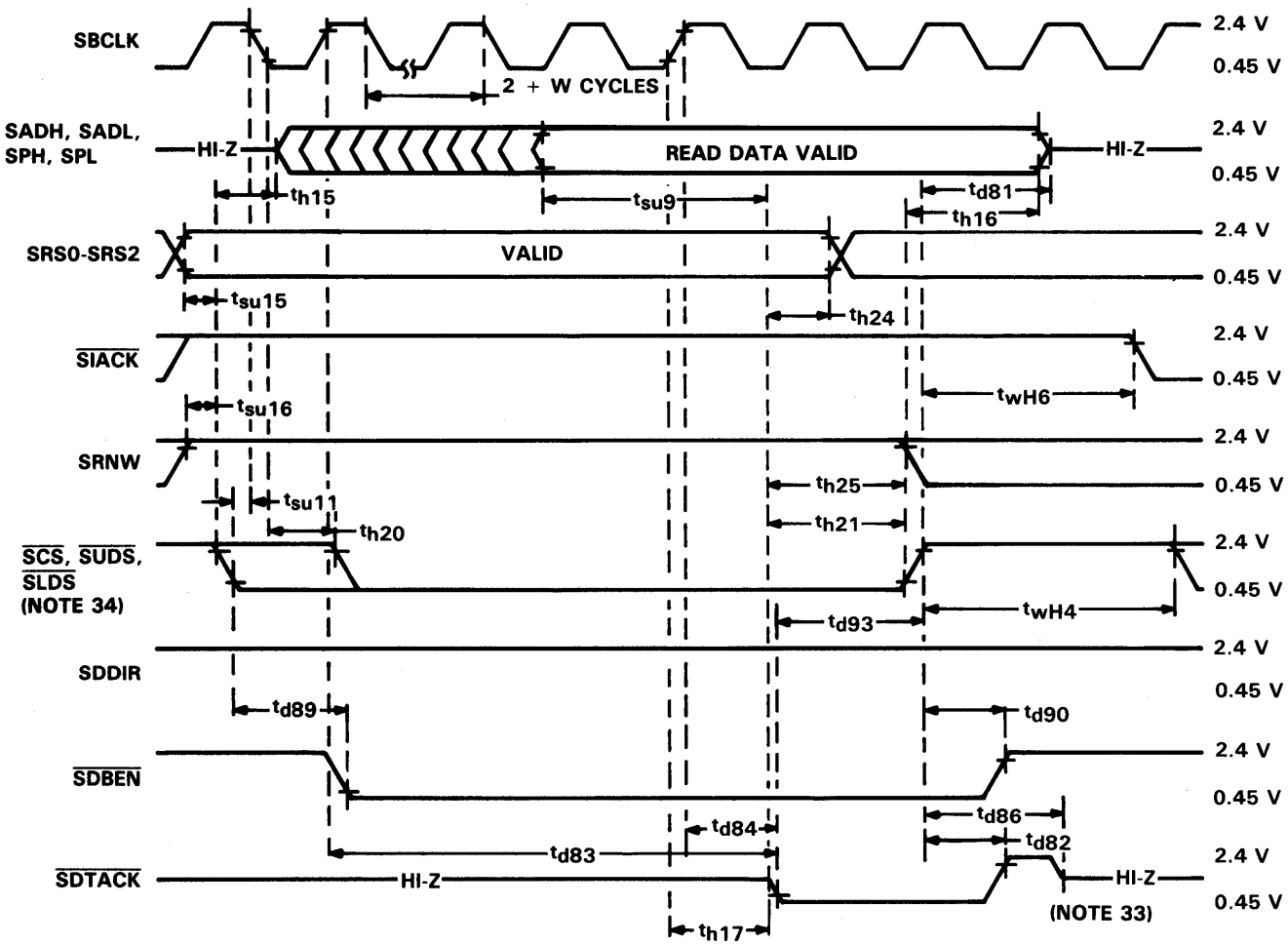


NOTE 43: The "inactive" chip select is SIACK in DIO read and DIO write cycles, and SCS in interrupt acknowledge cycles.

A

680XX mode DIO read timing

680XX master reads TMS38030 DIO register



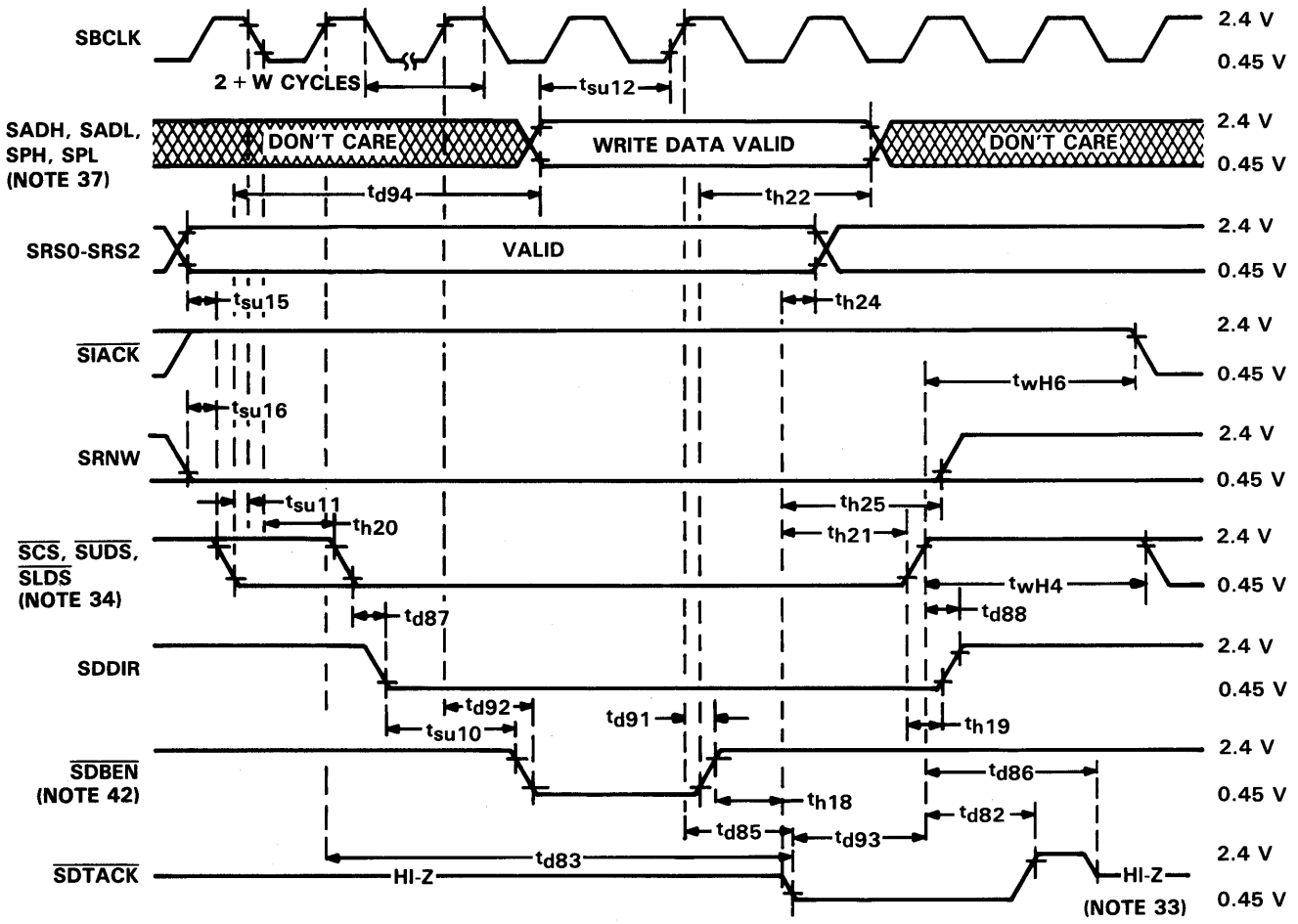
NOTES: 33. Internal logic will drive $\overline{SRDY}/\overline{SDTACK}$ high and verify that it has reached a valid high level before tristating the signal.
34. For 680XX mode, skew between $\overline{SLDS}$ and $\overline{SUDS}$ must not exceed 10 ns. Providing that limitation is observed, all events referenced to a data strobe edge are to the later occurring edge. Events defined by two data strobe edges, parameter t_{wH4}, are measured between latest and earlier edges.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

680XX mode DIO write timing

680XX master writes to TMS38030 DIO register

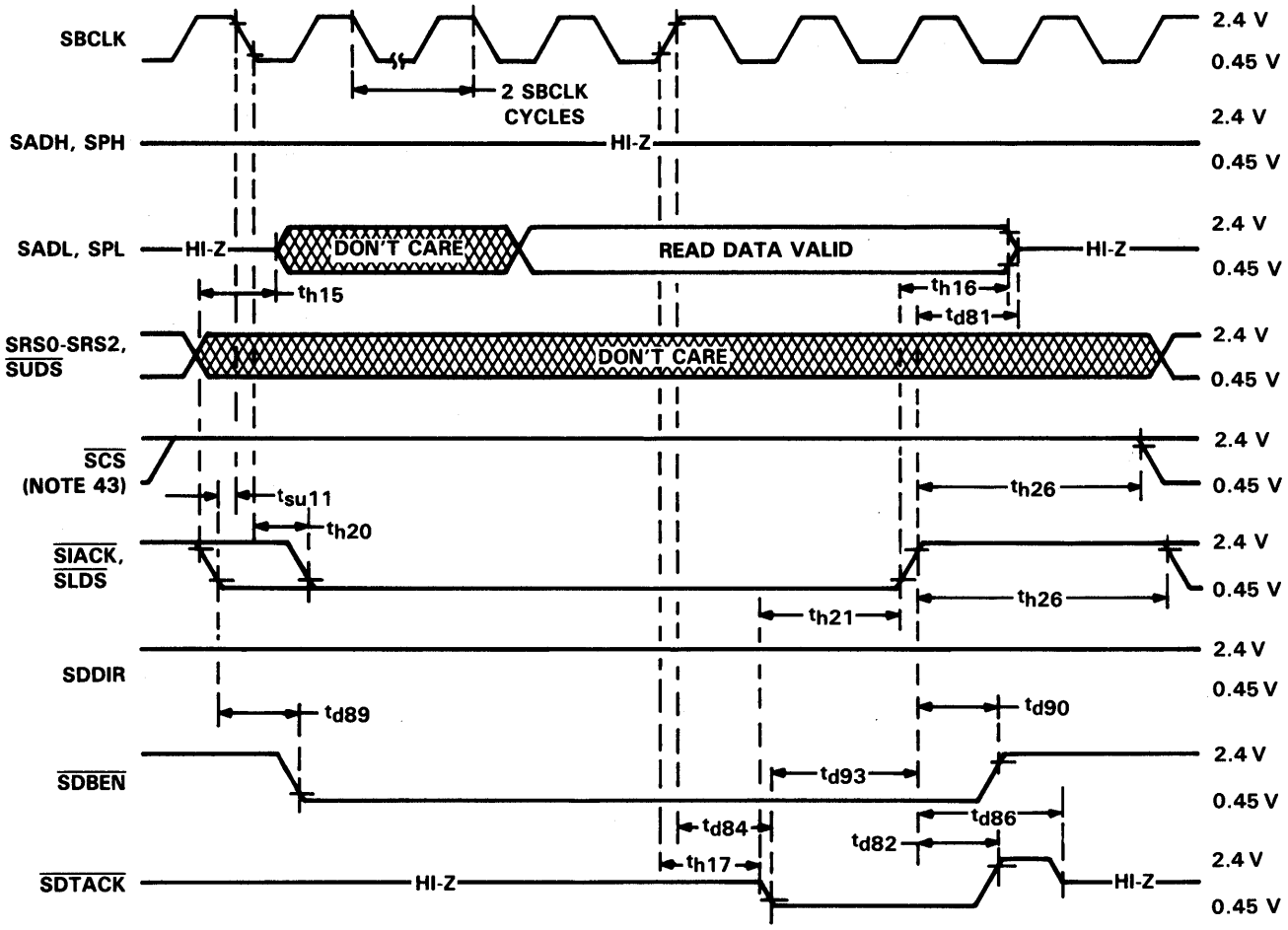


NOTES: 33. Internal logic will drive $\overline{\text{SRDY}}/\overline{\text{SDTACK}}$ high and verify that it has reached a valid high level before tristating the signal.
34. For 680XX mode, skew between $\overline{\text{SLDS}}$ and $\overline{\text{SUDS}}$ must not exceed 10 ns. Providing that limitation is observed, all events referenced to a data strobe edge are to the later occurring edge. Events defined by two data strobe edges, parameter t_{wH4}, are measured between latest and earlier edges.
37. Write data is sampled on the fifth rising edge of SBCLK following the recognition of a write data strobe on a falling edge of SBCLK.
42. In a write cycle, $\overline{\text{SDBEN}}$ is asserted on the third rising edge of SBCLK following the sample of a write data strobe.

A

680XX mode interrupt acknowledge cycle timing

680XX master reads interrupt vector from TMS38030



NOTE 43: The "inactive" chip select is $\overline{\text{SIACK}}$ in DIO read and DIO write cycles, and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ in interrupt acknowledge cycles.

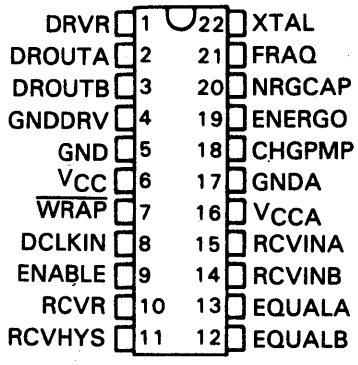
A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

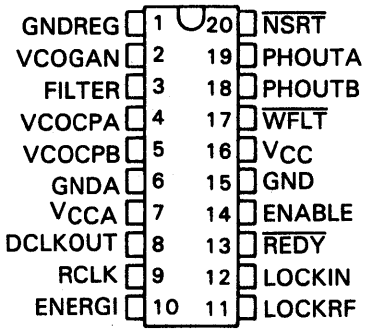
SEPTEMBER 1985 – REVISED MAY 1986

- Token Ring Electrical Connection
- Compatible with Electrical Interface of IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Ring Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications
- Phase-Lock Loop for Clock Generation from Data Signal
- 4 Megabit per Second Differential Manchester-Encoded Data Rate
- Independent Transmit and Receive Channels
- Phantom Drive for Physical Insertion into Ring
- Cable Wire-Fault Indication
- Receive Data-Loss Detection
- Receiver Frequency Equalization and Low-Level Hysteresis Circuit
- Loop Back (Wrap Mode) for Self-Test Diagnostics
- Two Chip Set
  - —TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver (22 Pin)
  - —TMS38052 Ring Interface Controller (20 Pin)
- Single 5-V Supply
- Low-Power Schottky Technology

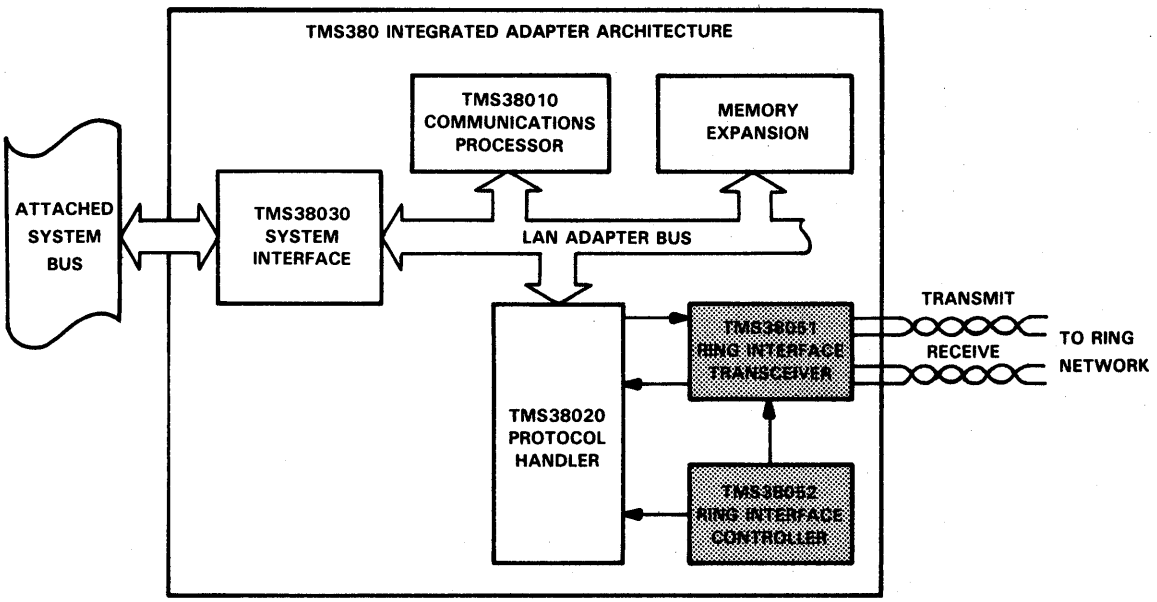
TMS38051 . . . N PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



TMS38052 . . . N PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



token ring LAN application diagram



A

pin descriptions

TMS38051

NAME	I/O	DESCRIPTION
RCVINA	I	Receiver Input A
RCVINB	I	Receiver Input B
EQUALA	I	Equalization/Gain Point A
EQUALB	I	Equalization/Gain Point B
RCVHYS	I	Receiver Hysteresis Resistor
RCVR	O	Receive Data
DRVR	I	Driver Data Input
DROUTA	O	Driver Output A
DROUTB	O	Driver Output B
CHGPMP	O	Charge-Pump Output
DCLKIN	I	Data-Latch Clock
NRGCAP	I	Energy-Detect Capacitor
ENERGO	O	Energy-Detect Output Signal to TMS38052
$\overline{\text{WRAP}}$	I	Internal Wrap-Mode Control
ENABLE	I	Output-Enable Control
FRAQ	I	Frequency Acquisition Control
XTAL	I	Crystal-Oscillator Input
V_{CC}		General 5-V Power
V_{CCA}		Analog 5-V Power
GND		General Ground
GNDDRV		Ground for Driver Output
GNDA		Analog Ground

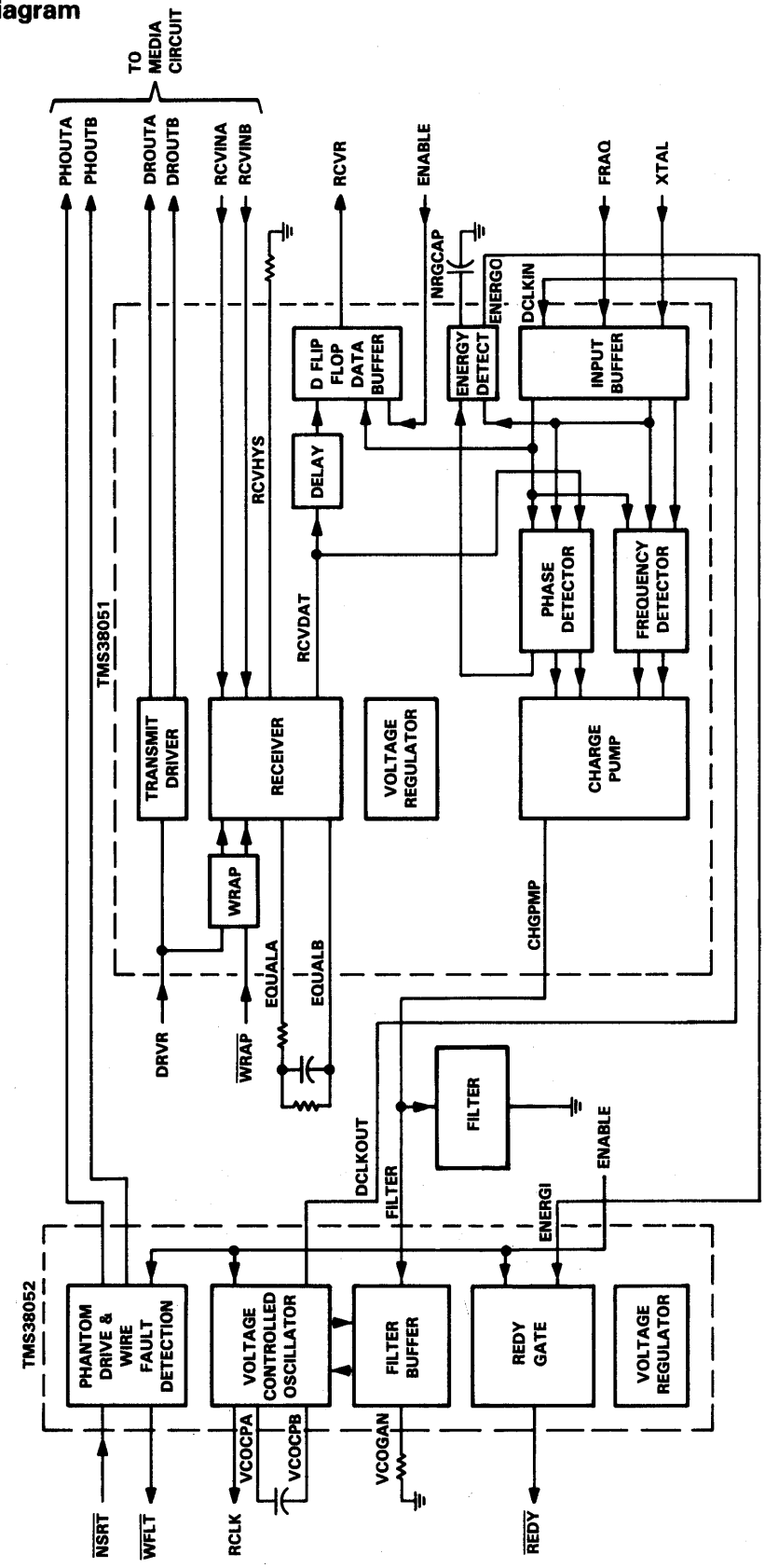
TMS38052

NAME	I/O	DESCRIPTION
$\overline{\text{NSRT}}$	I	Phantom-Driver Control
PHOUTA	O	Phantom-Driver Output A
PHOUTB	O	Phantom-Driver Output B
$\overline{\text{WFLT}}$	O	Wire-Fault Indicator
FILTER	I	Filter-Buffer Input
VCOGAN	I	VCO-Gain Resistor
VCOCPA	I	VCO Timing Capacitor Pin A
VCOCPB	I	VCO Timing Capacitor Pin B
RCLK	O	Recovered Clock
DCLKOUT	O	Data-Latch Clock
LOCKIN	I	Reserved, must be tied to ground.
LOCKRF	I	Reserved, must be tied to ground.
ENERGI	I	Energy-Detect Input Signal
$\overline{\text{REDY}}$	O	Ready Signal
ENABLE	I	Output-Enable Control
V_{CC}		General 5-V Power
V_{CCA}		Analog 5-V Power
GND		General Ground
GNDREG		Ground for Voltage Regulator
GNDA		Analog Ground

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

functional block diagram



A

description

The TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver and the TMS38052 Ring Interface Controller combine with passive components (Figure 1) to form a full duplex electrical interface compatible with IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Ring Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications. A 4 megabit per second Differential-Manchester-encoded data stream is received by the TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver and phase aligned using an on-chip phase-lock loop. Both the recovered clock and data are passed to the TMS38020 Protocol Handler for serial-to-parallel conversion. On transmit, the TMS38020 Protocol Handler provides the TMS38051 a TTL-level signal which is converted to the appropriate levels for transmission on the wiring media.

The TMS38052 contains the Voltage-Controlled Oscillator (VCO) for the Phase-Lock Loop (PLL), the phantom drive for control of relays contained within a Trunk-Coupling Unit (TCU), and error detection for wire faults in the cable connected to the TCU.

The TMS38051 and TMS38052, when coupled with the TMS38010 Communications Processor, the TMS38020 Protocol Handler, and the TMS38030 System Interface, form a highly integrated Token Ring LAN Adapter compatible with IEEE Std 802.5-1985 Token Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications.

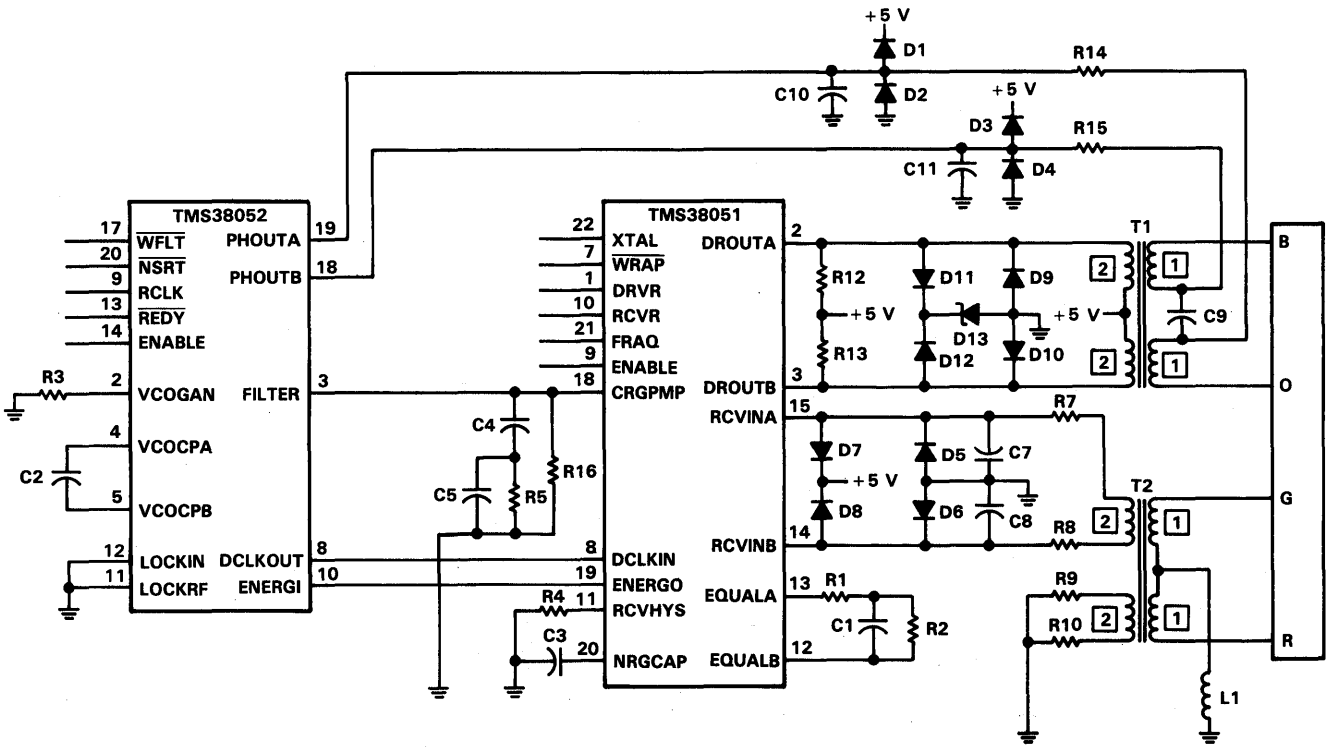


FIGURE 1. TOKEN RING INTERFACE CIRCUIT

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

TABLE 1. TYPICAL COMPONENT VALUES FOR FIGURE 1

SYMBOL(S)	VALUE/TYPE	FUNCTION	SYMBOL(S)	VALUE/TYPE	FUNCTION
C1	180 pF 5%	Equalizer	L1	56 μH 10%	Phantom Return
C2	200 pF 5%	VCO	R1	121 Ω 1%	Equalizer
C3	6800 pF 10%	Energy Detect	R2	604 Ω 1%	Equalizer
C4	8.2 μF 10%	PLL Filter	R3, R4	2.49 kΩ 1%	VCO and Hysteresis
C5	680 pF 10%	PLL Filter	R5	825 Ω 1%	PLL
C7, C8	62 pF 5%	Filter	R7, R8	121 Ω 1%	Receive Filter
C9	0.1 μF 10%	Wire Fault Isolation	R9, R10	75 Ω 1%	Impedance Match
C10, C11	8.2 μF 20%	Phantom Drive Noise Isolation	R12, R13	300 Ω 5%	Transmit Termination
D1-D4	1N4004	Phantom Surge Suppression	R14, R15	50 Ω 5%	Phantom Drive
D5-D8	1N4148	Receiver Surge Suppression	R16	330 kΩ 5%	Jitter Compensation
D9-D12	1N4148	Driver Surge Suppression	T1, T2	TNI2837	Transformer
D13	1N5347B	Driver Surge Suppression		or	
				PE63838-001	

architecture

The major functional blocks of the TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver are the receiver, data buffer, transmit driver, wrap function, voltage regulator, phase and frequency detectors, charge pump, and energy detector.

The major blocks of the TMS38052 Ring Interface Controller are the phantom drive, wire-fault detector, voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO), VCO-filter buffer, and voltage regulator.

These blocks are described in the paragraphs that follow.

receiver function

The receiver circuit provides DC bias for the differential input (RCVINA and RCVINB), clamping of large signal swings, amplification, equalization, definition of thresholds and hysteresis for data detection. Gain (and consequently input threshold values) is set by the equalizer impedance. Equalization characteristics are determined by the external equalization resistors (R1 and R2) and the equalization capacitor (C1). Hysteresis is set by the hysteresis resistor (R4). The circuit is suitable for Differential-Manchester-encoded data up to four megabits per second. In the internal-wrap mode, provided for self test of the chip, the normal input path is disabled by removing the bias voltage from the input circuit and enabling the wrap path. The wrap function is enabled by pulling $\overline{\text{WRAP}}$ active-low. Receiver gain, thresholds, equalization and hysteresis are unchanged in the internal-wrap mode.

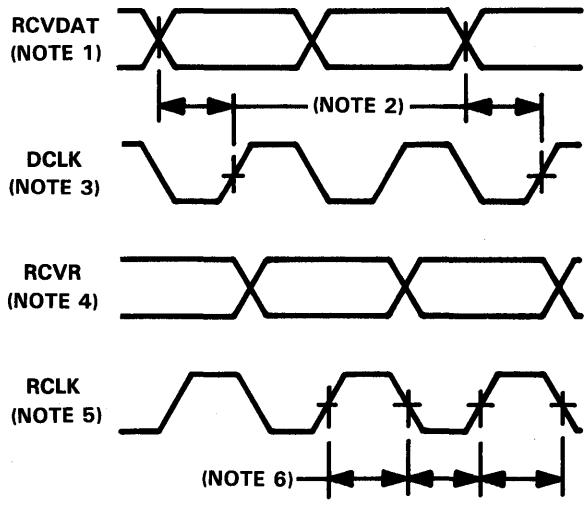
Each of the differential inputs, RCVINA and RCVINB, are independently biased to half the supply voltage and have a series resistor, nominal value 1 kΩ internally. Large transients are clamped by two external diode strings, each of two diodes series connected back to back (see Figure 1). The low frequency gain is set by the sum of the two equalization resistors, R1 + R2, connected from pin EQUALA to pin EQUALB in the emitter circuit of the differential input stage. High-frequency gain is set by resistor R1 because R2 is bypassed by the equalization capacitor C1. The frequency at which equalization becomes effective is determined by the values of R1 and C1. Hysteresis is set by external resistor R4 connected from pin RCVHYS to ground. Equalization is effective at low signal amplitudes. At larger signal levels, nonlinear effects reduce the effective equalization. The signal level where saturation occurs is determined by the impedance between EQUALA and EQUALB.

A

data buffer

The output of the receiver (the internal TMS38051 signal named RCVDAT) drives two internal circuits: a D-type flip-flop data buffer clocked by the VCO (DCLKIN) to sample the received data at the optimum time to generate the signal RCVR, and the phase detector used to control the VCO. RCVR is the retimed received data signal sent to the TMS38020 Protocol Handler for decoding of the Differential-Manchester-encoded data. RCLK is the clock used by the TMS38020 to sample RCVR. Logic state changes at RCVR occur at the rising edges of DCLK. Data is stable and may be sampled at the rising edges of RCLK. Data is delayed by the propagation delay of the receiver and data buffer plus one-half of an 8 MHz clock period from the receiver inputs to pin RCVR. The relative timing of these signals is indicated in Figure 2.

Static-timing offset is defined as the delay from a rising data transition (internally at RCVDAT) to the time data is sampled (rising transition at DCLKIN after buffering), minus 62.5 ns. At 4 megabits per second (8 MHz clock), an offset of zero is optimum sampling as this places the rising edge of the sampling clock in the middle of the data pulse. A positive offset represents late sampling.



NOTES: 1. Output of the receiver (internal signal derived from RCVIN pins)
2. PLL Static timing offset plus 62.5 ns
3. VCO clock to detectors and D-type flip-flop
4. Output of data buffer D-type flip-flop
5. Inverted clock to sample RCVR
6. Half clock period delays caused by internal latching.

FIGURE 2. RECEIVE DATA TIMING

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

transmit driver

The transmit driver provides differential current drive at a suitable level for driving the ring. Both outputs (DROUTA and DROUTB) are open collector, intended to drive a center-tapped transformer, with the center tap connected to V_{CC}. The output stage steers a fixed current between the two outputs, under the control of the driver data input (DRVR), with as little skew as possible. Transmitted data is not retimed within the TMS38051. Consequently, low skew in the transmitter is important in order to avoid degrading the waveform. The transmitter-drive outputs are not affected by the ENABLE signal. The driver data input (DRVR), when high, directs the output current to driver output DROUTA and, when low, to output DROUTB.

wrap function

The wrap function is designed to provide a signal path used for system self-test diagnostics. When the internal wrap-mode control input ($\overline{\text{WRAP}}$) is taken low, the transmitter outputs are disabled and the receiver inputs are ignored. An attenuating path is provided from the transmitter output circuitry to the receiver input circuitry through the wrap circuit. There is then a signal path from the transmitter input DRVR back to the data buffer output RCVR. The path to RCVR is inverting with an added delay of an 8 MHz one-half clock period. In the internal-wrap mode, attenuation can be checked by observing the signal amplitude at the equalization pins EQUALA and EQUALB. Equalization will be active at this signal level although the signal will not exhibit the high-frequency attenuation effects for which equalization is intended to compensate.

phantom driver and wire-fault detector

The phantom-drive circuit under control of the $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ input generates a dc signal on both of the two drive outputs, PHOUTA and PHOUTB. This signal is sent over the transmit-signal wire pair to the Trunk-Coupling Unit (TCU) to request that the station be inserted into the ring. The signal current is detected at the TCU causing the external-wrap path from the transmitter outputs back to the receiver inputs to be broken, the ring to be broken, and a connection to be made from the ring to the receiver inputs and from the transmitter outputs to the ring. The phantom-drive outputs are short circuit protected and will detect a short circuit from either output to ground or an abnormally low load current at either output corresponding to an open circuit in the signal or TCU wiring. Either type of fault results in the wire-fault indicator output ($\overline{\text{WFLT}}$) to be driven low. The logic state of $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ will go high when $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ is high. All three outputs, PHOUTA, PHOUTB and $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$, are in a high-impedance state when the output-enable control (ENABLE) is low.

voltage regulator

The internal voltage regulator is used to make the performance of both the TMS38051 and TMS38052 less dependent on the supply voltage. The regulator consists of a "band gap" reference, scaled up to a nominal 3.9 V, with a temperature coefficient designed to compensate for coefficients in circuits referenced to the voltage regulator.

phase-lock loop

The TMS38051 and TMS38052 together implement a phase-lock loop (PLL) for recovering a data clock from the received bit stream. The elements of the phase-lock loop are: phase and frequency detectors, a charge pump, an external filter, a filter buffer and a voltage-controlled oscillator. Figure 3 illustrates these blocks and their partition between the TMS38051 and TMS38052. The following paragraphs describe the PLL elements.

A

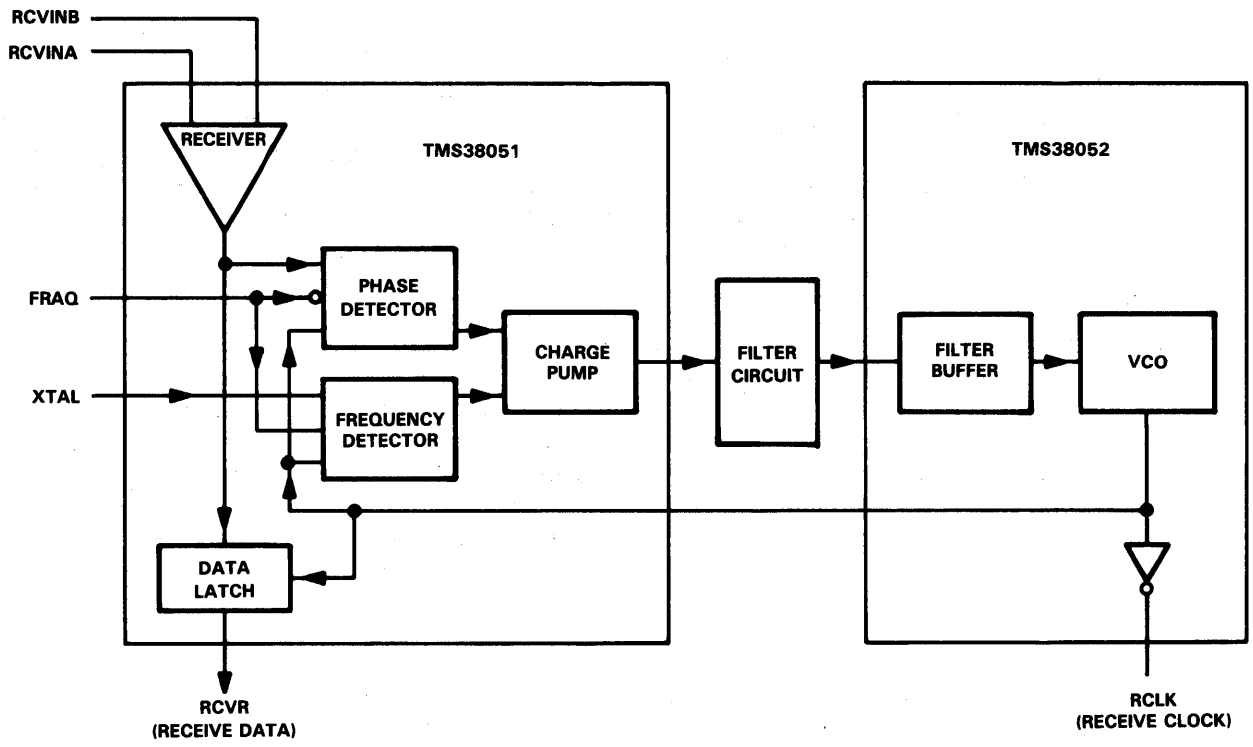


FIGURE 3. PHASE LOCK LOOP

phase and frequency detectors

The phase and frequency detectors are blocks of logic that generate control signals suitable for controlling the charge pump. The frequency detector will cause the voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO) frequency to be the same as the crystal-oscillator input, XTAL. The phase detector provides more accurate phase discrimination but could indicate a false lock where one frequency is a multiple of the other.

A multiplexer selects the required detection mode during insertion into the ring. The frequency-detection mode is selected by taking FRAQ high and the phase-detection mode is selected by taking FRAQ low. The phase or frequency detectors supply the necessary "charge" and "discharge" control signals to the charge pump. All gates not required for normal operation in either mode are prevented from switching to minimize the noise that might be coupled into the PLL.

charge pump

The output of either the phase detector or frequency detector drives the charge pump as selected by the FRAQ input. The charge pump drives the external filter (passive components R5, C4, and C5) and the filter-buffer input (FILTER). The charge pump has the ability to supply charge ("up" current into the filter) and to remove charge ("down" current out of the filter into the charge pump). A small amount of charge is required to provide the filter-buffer input current and any leakage in the external filter. Additional net charge affects the filter voltage. If the up current exceeds the down current, the voltage on the filter will increase, increasing the "controlled voltage" and the frequency of the VCO. The charge pump has two inputs so there are four possible states for the charge pump.

1. Pump up—current into the filter increasing the voltage.
2. Pump down—current out of the filter reducing the voltage.
3. No pump—high-impedance state, holding the voltage on the filter.
4. Pump up and pump down—both currents on, not allowed by the detector logic.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

The charge-pump block has two constant current circuits operating continuously, one for pump up and one for pump down. They are designed to be stable and equal under all operating conditions. Charge-pump circuitry determines which, if either, of the two currents is connected to pin FILTER and the external PLL filter. The magnitude of the charge-pump currents affects the loop gain and damping which affects static-timing offset. Leakage in the "no pump" state affects jitter.

external filter

The external filter consists of three external components, two capacitors (C4 and C5) and one resistor (R5) connected from the FILTER pin to ground.

filter buffer

The filter-buffer amplifier is designed to present a high impedance to the filter and to convert the filter voltage into two equal currents, proportional to the filter voltage, for use in the voltage-controlled oscillator. The current level or constant of proportionality is set by the external resistor (R3) to ground connected at pin VCOGAN. This constant is critical to loop gain and damping. The filter voltage range over which the current level tracks the voltage determines the pull-in range of the VCO. The bandwidth must be adequate to ensure that the filter-buffer amplifier has no significant effect on the loop characteristics.

voltage-controlled oscillator

The voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO) is an emitter-coupled astable multivibrator. The frequency is set by internal circuit parameters, the currents from the filter buffer (set by the filter voltage and resistor R3 from the VCOGAN pin to ground), and the VCO timing capacitor C2 connected between the VCOCPA and VCOCPB pins. Symmetrical circuit design helps ensure symmetrical waveforms. The VCO is buffered and converted to TTL-signal levels at the DCLKOUT pin. DCLKOUT is used to drive the frequency and phase detectors, clock the data buffer D-type flip-flop, and after an extra inversion at pin RCLK, is passed on to the TMS38020 Protocol Handler for processing of the received data.

energy detect

The energy detect circuit distinguishes between potentially valid data at the receiver input and a quiet condition (or absence of data). Normally, the data transitions occur between a rate of 2 MHz and 4 MHz. Each rising data transition results in a current pulse into the integrating capacitor C3 connected at the NRGCAP pin. The energy detector is reset (the capacitor is discharged) whenever the input FRAQ is switched in either direction.

The value of the capacitor (C3) determines how rapidly a change in signal condition will be reflected in a change in $\overline{\text{REDY}}$. A value of capacitance too small results in $\overline{\text{REDY}}$ being asserted before the PLL has obtained frequency lock (approximately 2 μs worst case). A large value of capacitance reduces $\overline{\text{REDY}}$ response time. Based upon system ring verification, a value of 6800 pF (10%) has been selected.

Although an energy detect capacitor (C3) value is chosen to be 6800 pF, the energy detect circuit is tested with a capacitor value of 1000 pF. The following signal conditions are met by the energy detect circuit for C3 = 1000:

1. ENERGO will remain asserted if there are at least 24 rising transitions in a 16 μs interval. This transition rate allows a dropped baud every 2 μs for a minimum transition pattern of all "1's."
2. ENERGO will remain de-asserted if there are less than 3 rising transitions in a 16 μs interval.
3. In a transition from no signal (less than 3 rising transitions in 16 μs) to signal (at least 24 rising transitions in a 16 μs interval) ENERGO transition time ($\overline{\text{REDY}}$ asserted) is 0.75 μs minimum to 100 μs maximum.

A

4. In a transition from signal (at least 24 rising transitions in a 16 μs interval) to no signal (less than 3 rising transitions in 16 μs), the ENERGO transition time to a de-asserted state ($\overline{\text{REDY}}$ de-asserted) is 16 μs.

Note that for proper operation of the $\overline{\text{REDY}}$ output, the LOCKIN and LOCKRF pins must be tied together and grounded such that no more than ± 2 mV of differential signal occurs between these two pins.

test mode

The TMS38051 and TMS38052 feature a test mode for board-level testing with the components in circuit. This facilitates testing by board-of-nails testers. This test mode is enabled by tying the ENABLE pin to ground. This has the effect of driving all the TTL outputs and the phantom-drive outputs to a high-impedance state. The media-driver outputs (DROUTA and DROUTB) are not affected by this function. When the ENABLE pin is high, the TMS38051 and TMS38052 operate normally. When this pin is low, the circuit will continue to operate except that pins PHOUTA, PHOUTB, RCVR, $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$, RCLK and DCLKOUT are driven to the high-impedance state, and pin $\overline{\text{REDY}}$ is driven to the high state. Pin ENERGO is not affected by ENABLE.

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)†

Supply voltage range V_{CC} . . . . . −0.5 V to 7 V
Input voltage range (Note 7) . . . . . −0.5 V to 7 V
Output voltage range: Driver outputs . . . . . −0.5 V to 11 V
All other outputs (Note 8) . . . . . −0.5 V to 7 V
Power dissipation (Note 9) . . . . . 0.8 W
Operating free-air temperature range (Note 10) . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . −65°C to 150°C

†Stresses beyond those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions beyond those indicated in the "Recommended Operating Conditions" section of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute-maximum-rated conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

NOTES: 7. Inputs may be taken to more negative voltages if the current is limited to 20 mA.
8. These outputs may not be taken more than 0.5 V above the V_{CC} pins.
9. Maximum power dissipation per package.
10. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperature should be maintained at or below 80°C for the TMS38051 and 75°C for the TMS38052.

recommended operating conditions

				MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
V_{CC}	Supply Voltage			4.5	5	5.5	V
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, DCLKIN, FRAQ, XTAL, ENERGI, $\overline{INSRT}$		2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, DCLKIN, FRAQ, XTAL, ENERGI, $\overline{NSRT}$				0.8	V
	Receiver input bias voltage (Note 11)			0.5 V_{CC}−1		0.5 V_{CC}+1	V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	RCVR, $\overline{WFLT}$, RCLK, DCLKOUT				−0.4	mA
		ENERGO, $\overline{REDY}$				−0.1	mA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	V_{OL} <0.5 V	RCVR, $\overline{WFLT}$, RCLK, DCLKOUT, $\overline{REDY}$			4	mA
		V_{OL} <0.4 V				1	mA
		V_{OL} <0.5 V	ENERGO			0.5	mA
T_A	Operating free-air temperature (Note 10)			0		70	°C

†"Recommended Operating Conditions" indicate the conditions that must be met to ensure that the device will function as intended and meet the detailed electrical specifications. Unless otherwise noted, all electrical specifications apply for all recommended operating conditions. Voltages are measured with respect to the device ground pins. Currents into the device are considered to be positive.

NOTES: 10. Devices are tested in an environment in excess of 70°C to guarantee operation at 70°C. Case temperature should be maintained at or below 80°C for the TMS38051 and 75°C for the TMS38052.
11. Input bias voltage must be between 0.5 V_{CC} − 1 V and 0.5 V_{CC} + 1 V, or the self-generated bias may be used.

A

electrical characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (unless otherwise noted)

TTL input

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
I_{IH}	High-level input current	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, FRAQ, XTAL, ENERGI, $\overline{NSRT}$, DCLKIN, FILTER	V_I = 2.7 V			20	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, FRAQ, XTAL, ENERGI, $\overline{NSRT}$, DCLKIN, FILTER	V_I = 0.4 V			−0.4	mA
V_{IK}	Input clamp voltage	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, FRAQ, XTAL, ENERGI $\overline{NSRT}$, DCLKIN, FILTER	I_I = −12 mA			−1.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	DRVR, $\overline{WRAP}$, ENABLE, FRAQ, XTAL, $\overline{NSRT}$ DCLKIN, FILTER	V_I = 7 V			100	μA
		ENERGI	V_I = 5.5 V			100	μA

TTL output

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	$\overline{WFLT}$, DCLKOUT	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	2.5			V
		RCVR, RCLK	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	2.8			V
		ENERGO, $\overline{REDY}$	I_{OH} = −0.1 mA	2.5			V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	RVCR, $\overline{WFLT}$, RCLK, DCLKOUT, $\overline{REDY}$	I_{OL} = 4 mA			0.5	V
			I_{OL} = 1 mA			0.4	V
		ENERGO	I_{OL} = 0.5 mA			0.5	V
I_{OZH}	Off-state output current with high-level voltage applied	RCVR, $\overline{WFLT}$ RCLK, DCLKOUT	V_O = 2.7 V			100	μA
		$\overline{REDY}$				−1.5	mA
I_{OZL}	Off-state output current with low-level voltage applied	RCVR, $\overline{WFLT}$ RCLK	V_O = 0.4 V			−100	μA
		DCLKOUT		100		−600	μA
		$\overline{REDY}$				−1.5	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current	RCVR, $\overline{WFLT}$, RCLK, DCLKOUT	V_O = 0	−20		−100	mA
		ENERGO, $\overline{REDY}$		−0.5		−2	mA

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

receiver input

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Rising input threshold voltage, V_{T+}			V_{IC} = V_{SB}, R4 = 2.49 kΩ, R_{tst} = 330 Ω, See Notes 12, 13, and 14			20	mV
Falling input threshold voltage, V_{T-}			V_{IC} = V_{SB}, R4 = 2.49 kΩ, R_{tst} = 330 Ω, See Notes 12, 13, and 14			−20	mV
Noise threshold voltage $\lvert V_{T+} - V_{T-} \rvert$			V_{IC} = V_{SB}, R4 = 2.49 kΩ, R_{tst} = 330 Ω, See Notes 12, 13, and 14	10			mV
Asymmetry threshold voltage $\lvert V_{T+} + V_{T-} \rvert$			V_{IC} = V_{SB}, R4 = 2.49 kΩ, R_{tst} = 330 Ω, See Notes 12, 13, and 14			14	mV
Common mode rejection voltage	$V_T + (V_{SB} + 0.5\ V)$ $-V_T + (V_{SB} - 0.5\ V)$	RCVINA, RCVINB	R_{tst} = 330 Ω, R4 = 2.49 kΩ, See Notes 12, 13, and 14			10	mV
	$V_T - (V_{SB} + 0.5\ V)$ $-V_T - (V_{SB} - 0.5\ V)$					10	mV
Receiver input current			R_{tst} = 330 Ω, V_{CC} = 5 V, Both inputs at 2.5 V	−28		56	μA
			R_{tst} = 330 Ω, V_{CC} = 5 V, Input under test at 3.5 V, other input at 1.5 V	300		750	μA
			R_{tst} = 330 Ω, V_{CC} = 5 V, Input under test at 1.5 V, other input at 3.5 V	−200		−650	μA
Equalizer bias current			RCVINA and RCVINB open, EQUALA and EQUALB at 3 V	1.125		1.875	mA

NOTES: 12. R_{tst} is a resistor connected between pins 12 and 13; it replaces R1, R2, and C1 (Figure 2).
13. V_{IC} is the common mode voltage applied to RCVINA and RCVINB.
14. V_{SB} is the self-bias point for pins RCVINA and RCVINB. The exact value varies from device to device but is approximately $V_{CC}/2$.

transmitter

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Output current, on	DROUTA, DROUTB	R_L = 75 Ω load to V_{CC}	20		30	mA
Output current, off	DROUTA, DROUTB	V_O = 8 V			100	μA

A

phantom driver

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	I_{OH} = −1 mA	4.1			V
			I_{OH} = −2 mA	3.8			V
I_{OS}	Short curcuit output current	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	V_O = 0, $\overline{NSRT}$ = V_{IL}	−4		−20	mA
I_{OH}	High-level output current	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	V_O = V_{CC}, $\overline{NSRT}$ = V_{OH}			100	μA
I_{OL}	Low-level output current	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	V_O = 0, $\overline{NSRT}$ = V_{IH}			−100	μA
I_{OZH}	Off-state output current with high-level voltage applied	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	V_O = 5.5 V, ENABLE = V_{IL}			100	μA
I_{OZL}	Off-state output current with low-level voltage applied	PHOUTA, PHOUTB	V_O = 0, ENABLE = V_{IL}			−100	μA

wire fault (see Note 15)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Output-normal condition	$\overline{WFLT}$	2.9 kΩ ≤ R_{L1} ≤ 5.5 kΩ, 2.9 kΩ ≤ R_{L2} ≤ 5.5 kΩ, See Note 16	2.5			V
Output-open condition	$\overline{WFLT}$	9.9 kΩ ≤ R_{L1}, 2.9 kΩ ≤ R_{L2} ≤ 5.5 kΩ, See Note 16			0.5	V
Output-short condition	$\overline{WFLT}$	R_{L1} ≤ 0.1 kΩ, 2.9 kΩ ≤ R_{L2} ≤ 5.5 kΩ, See Note 16			0.5	V

NOTES: 15. The wire-fault logic will recognize a load condition corresponding to greater than 9.9 kΩ to ground as an open-circuit fault, but will not recognize a load condition less than 5.5 kΩ to ground as an open. The wire-fault logic will recognize a load condition corresponding to less that 100 Ω to ground as a short-circuit fault, but will not recognize a load condition corresponding to greater than 2.9 kΩ to ground as a short. Figure 4 illustrates this with R_{L1} connected from PHOUTA to ground and R_{L2} connected from PHOUTB to ground.

16. R_{L1} is connected from pin 19 to ground; R_{L2} is connected from pin 18 to ground.

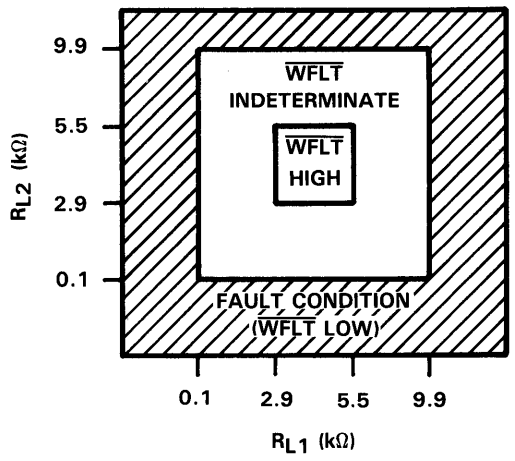


FIGURE 4. WIRE-FAULT PIN TEST

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

charge pump

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
I_{PU}	Pump-up current	CHGPMP at 2 V–3 V, See Figures 5 and 6	−340		−460	μA
I_{PD}	Pump-down current		340		460	μA
I_{PU}-I_{PD}	Pump current matching				±20	μA
I_{PO}	Pump-off input current		0.5		−1.5	μA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current	V_O = 0			−3	mA

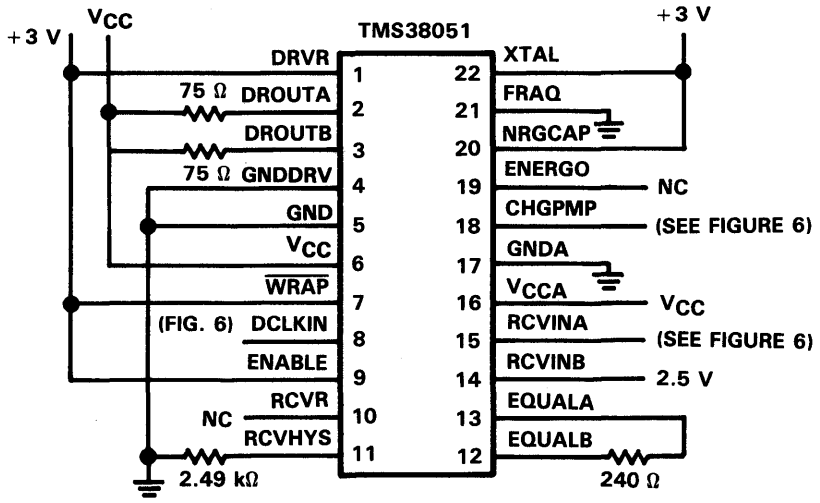


FIGURE 5. CHARGE-PUMP TEST CIRCUIT

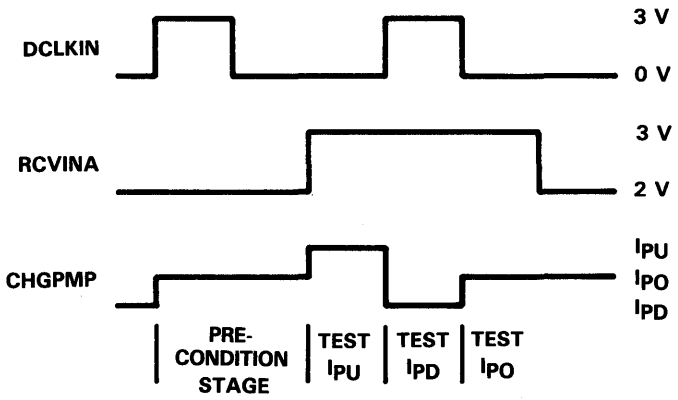


FIGURE 6. WAVEFORMS FOR CHARGE-PUMP TEST CIRCUIT

A

filter buffer

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Input current at FILTER	FILTER at 2 V – 3 V	–0.5		1.5	μA

energy detect

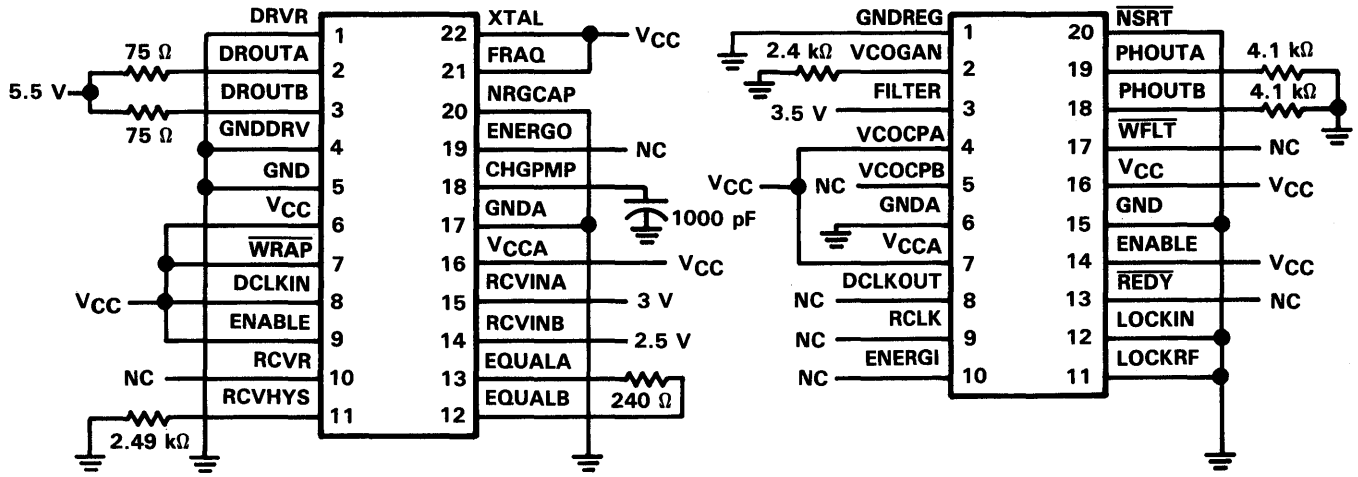
PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	NRGCAP	ENERGO low	0.5			V
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage	NRGCAP	ENERGO high			2	V
V_{HYS}	Energy detect hysteresis	NGRCAP	$V_{HYS} = V_{IH} = V_{IL}$	0.1			V
t_d	Delay time, ENERGI valid to $\overline{REDY}$ valid	ENERGI, REDY				1	μS

supply current

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
I_{CC}	Supply current	TMS38051	See Figure 7(a)			93	mA
			See Figure 7(a), V_{CC} = 5.5 V, t_c = 80°C			88	mA
		TMS38052	See Figure 7(b)			59	mA
			See Figure 7(b), V_{CC} = 5.5 V, t_c = 75°C			53	mA

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001



(a) TMS38051 (b) TMS38052

NOTE 17: V_{CC} at 5.5 V.

FIGURE 7. I_{CC} TEST CIRCUITS

switching characteristics over full range of recommended operating conditions (unless otherwise noted)†

TTL output

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
t_r Output rise time	RCLK, RCVR	See Figures 10 and 14			16	ns
t_f Output fall time	RCLK, RCVR	See Figures 10 and 14			16	ns
t_r Output rise time	DCLKOUT	See Figure 14			12	ns
t_f Output fall time	DCLKOUT	See Figure 14			12	ns

data buffer

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Static timing offset	See Note 18	8		−13	ns

†All parameters assume a load capacitance of 30 pF which includes probe and jig capacitance.

NOTE 18: Static timing offset may be measured indirectly by decreasing the duty cycle of a 4 MHz data signal at the receiver inputs (high time at RCVINA reduced, low time increased) until the TMS38051 recognizes a '0000' pattern in place of a '1010' pattern. Static offset is the high time at the point of transition minus 62.5 ns. Static timing offset may be determined by adjusting the duty cycle of a 4 MHz input signal (an all zeros data pattern) fed to the receiver inputs. Starting with a 50% duty cycle, the VCO will synchronize to the rising edge of the test waveform and the data buffer flip-flop will recognize a '10' pattern for each full cycle of 4 MHz signal. The high time of the input signal is reduced until, at about 25% duty cycle, the data buffer flip-flop is at the point of recognizing a '00' pattern. The static timing offset is this input signal high time less 62.5 ns. The input signal should be coupled into pin RCVINA with high and low levels of 0.5 V_{CC} ± 0.5 V, pin RCVINB held at 0.5 V_{CC}, with high time measured at the point where the differential input voltage is zero.

A

transmitter

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Output rise time, t_r		DROUTA, DROUTB	V_L = V_{CC}, See Figures 9 and 11			20	ns
Output fall time, t_f						20	ns
Output asymmetry time, $t_A - t_B$		DROUTA, DROUTB	V_L = V_{CC}, See Figures 12 and 16			11	ns
Output skew time	$t_2 - t_1$ / $t_3 - t_4$	DROUTA, DROUTB	$V_L = V_{CC}$, See Figures 12 and 16			5	ns

internal wrap

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
V_1	Signal-to-receiver voltage swing	DRVR = V_{IL} to V_{IH}, $\overline{WRAP}$ = V_{IL}, See Note 19 and Figures 8 and 9	150		500	mV
V_2	Noise signal voltage at driver	DRVR = V_{IL} to V_{IH}, $\overline{WRAP}$ = V_{IL}, See Note 20 and Figure 9			10	mV
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay, high-to-low-level output	DRVR = V_{IL} to V_{IH}, $\overline{WRAP}$ = V_{IL}, See Figures 9 and 15			45	ns
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay, low-to-high-level output	DRVR = V_{IL} to V_{IH}, $\overline{WRAP}$ = V_{IL}, See Figures 9 and 15			45	ns

NOTES: 19. Peak-to-peak voltage swing between EQUALA and EQUALB. The differential between RCVINA and RCVINB is held at 0.5 V to assure that the receiver signal does not affect wrap mode.
20. Peak-to-peak voltage swing between DROUTA and DROUTB. The differential between RCVINA and RCVINB is held at 0.5 V to assure that the receiver signal does not affect wrap mode.

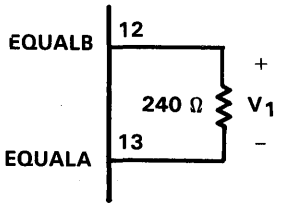


FIGURE 8

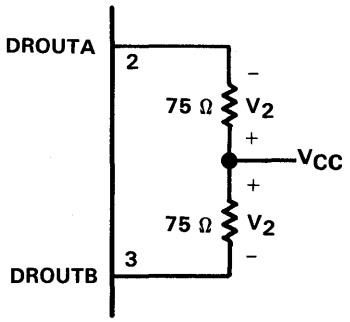


FIGURE 9

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

data buffer

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Propagation delay, high-to-low-level output, t_{PHL}	R_{L2} = 75 Ω, DCLKIN = V_{IL} to V_{IH}, $\overline{WRAP}$ = V_{IH}, See Figures 9, 17 and Note 21			35	ns
Propagation delay, low-to-high-level output, t_{PLH}				35	ns
Output skew time				5	ns

NOTE 21: Output skew time = $|t_{PLH} - t_{PHL}|$

voltage-controlled oscillator

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Center frequency, fc	R3 = 2.49 kΩ, C2 = 200 pF, FILTER at 2.5 V See Figure 1	7.2	8	8.8	MHz
VCO gain	R3 = 2.49 kΩ, C2 = 200 pF, FILTER at 2 V-3 V See Figure 1	2.77	3.19	3.53	MHz/V
DCLKOUT asymmetry	f = 8 MHz, See Note 22 and Figure 13			8	%
RCLK asymmetry	f = 8 MHz, See Note 22 and Figure 13			10	%
Pulse duration, RCLK low, t_{wL2}	See Figure 18	46			ns
Pulse duration, RCLK high, t_{wH2}	See Figure 18	35			ns

NOTE 22: Asymmetry is defined as 100 $(t_{wH}-t_{wL})/(t_{wH} + t_{wL})$ where t_{wH} and t_{wL} represent the time above and below the 1.5-V level (see Figure 13). The filter voltage for nominal 8 MHz VCO frequency is predicted from the frequency measurements with FILTER at 2 V, 2.5 V, and 3 V assuming linear interpolation between these data points.

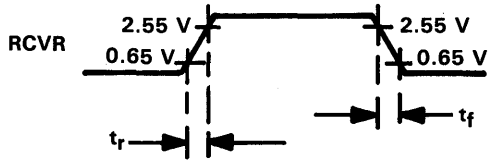


FIGURE 10. RCVR RISE AND FALL TIMES

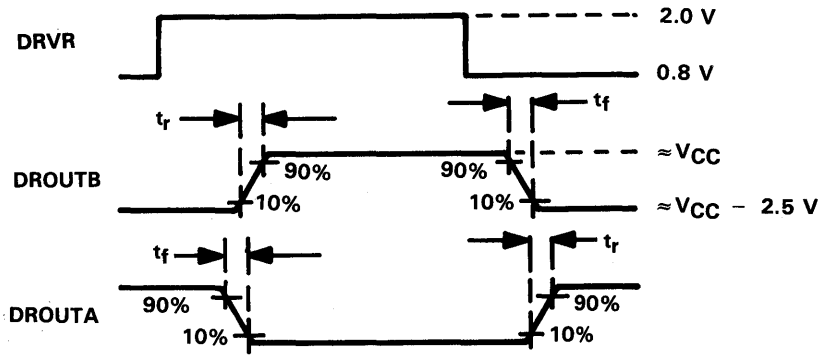
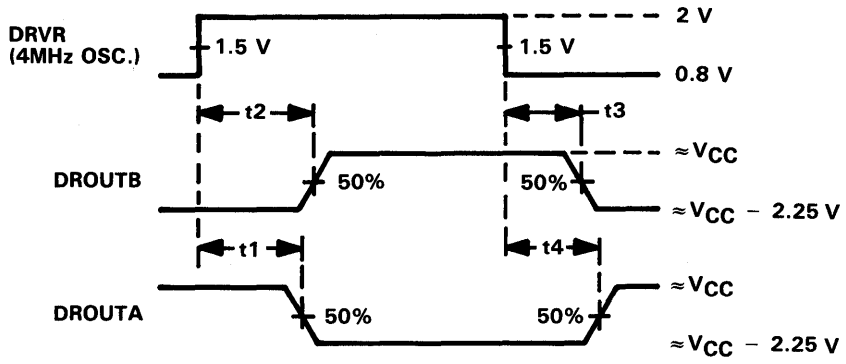


FIGURE 11. DROUTA AND DROUTB RISE AND FALL TIMES

A



t_A	$\frac{t_1 + t_2}{2}$
t_B	$\frac{t_3 + t_4}{2}$

FIGURE 12. SKEW AND ASYMMETRY FROM DRVR TO DROUTA AND DROUTB

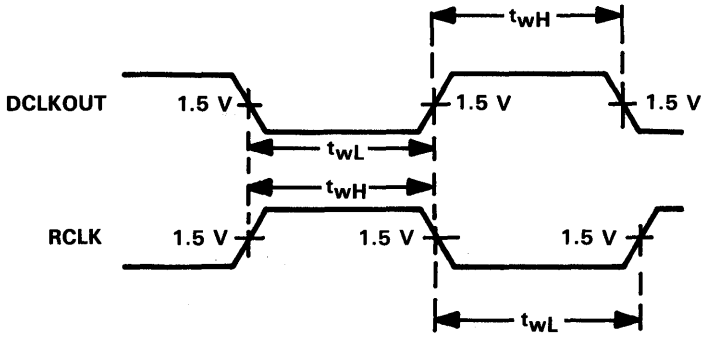


FIGURE 13. VCO ASYMMETRY

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

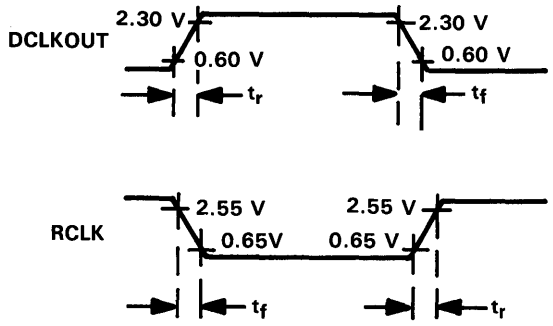


FIGURE 14. RCLK AND DCLK RISE AND FALL TIMES

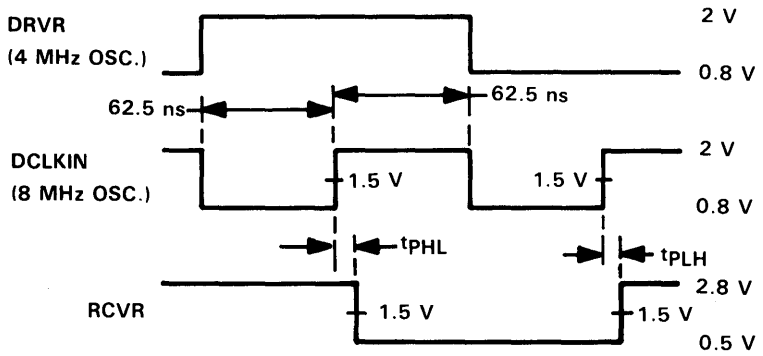
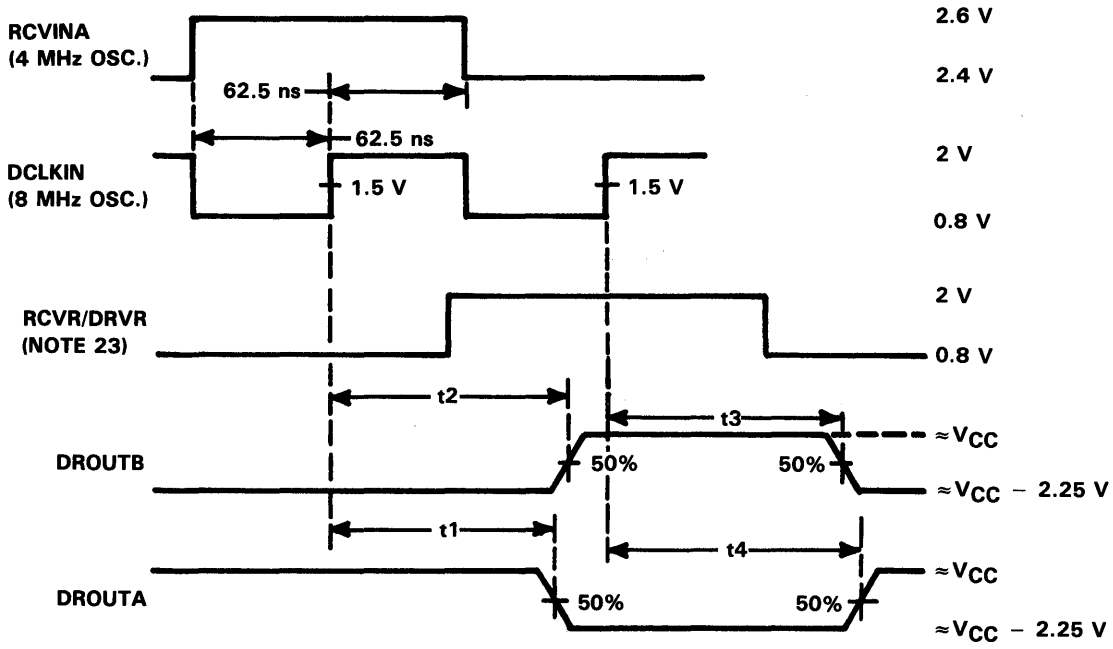


FIGURE 15. PROPAGATION DELAYS FROM DCLKIN TO RCVR WITH INTERNAL WRAP MODE

A



NOTE 23: For this test the RCVR output is tied directly to the DRVR input to test the asymmetry of the transmitter in a repeater configuration.

t_A	$\frac{t_1 + t_2}{2}$
t_B	$\frac{t_3 + t_4}{2}$

FIGURE 16. SKEW AND ASYMMETRY FROM DCLKIN TO DROUTA AND DROUTB

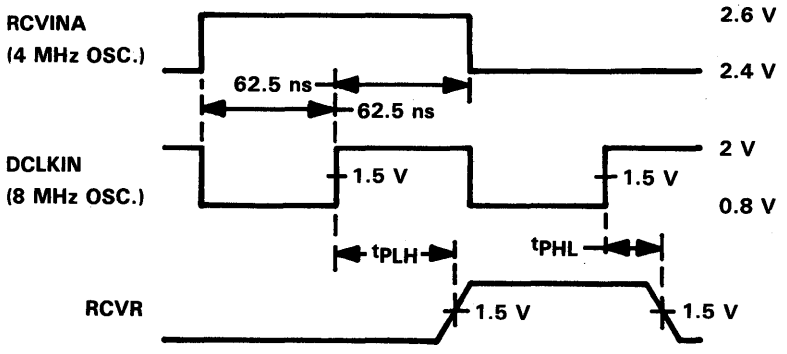


FIGURE 17. PROPAGATION DELAYS FROM DCLKIN TO RCVR

A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
POST OFFICE BOX 1443 • HOUSTON, TEXAS 77001

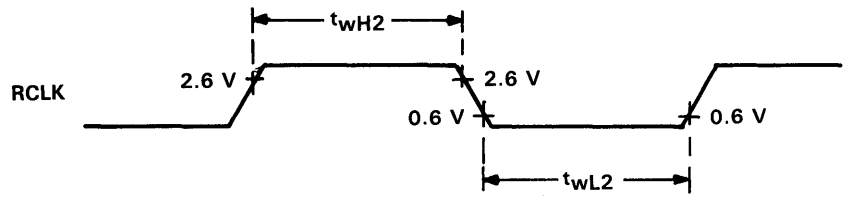


FIGURE 18. RCLK PULSE DURATIONS

A

B.1 MAC Frame Summary

This appendix provides a summary of the MAC frames discussed in this User's Guide.

The key to the letter symbols used in the following tables is provided below.

RS = ring station
REM = ring error monitor
RPS = ring parameter server
NM = network manager
F(REM) = ring error monitor functional address
F(RPS) = ring parameter server functional address
F(NM) = network manager functional address
target = a specific destination address
A = subvector always transmitted
O = optional subvector
R = required subvector
All Stations = all stations address (broadcast)
N = subvector not syntax checked
ACK = frame elicits Response MAC frame
(NACK) = frame sends response only if error found in syntax checking.
UNA = upstream neighbor's address

TABLE B-1. MAC FRAME MAJOR VECTORS

M-V CMD	M-V (FRAME) NAME AND XMIT TYPE	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
					R/O		NAME
					XMT	RCV	
>00	Response (Type = Resp.)	Source Class of received frame	>0	Source Address of received frame	A A	N N	Correlator Response Code
>02	Beacon (Type = Orig.) FC = >02	>0	>0	All Stations	A A A	R O R	Beacon Type Phys. Drop Number UNA
>03	Claim Token (Type = Orig.) FC = >03	>0	>0	All Stations	A A	O R	Phys. Drop Number UNA
>04	Ring Purge (Type = Orig.) FC = >04	>0	>0	All Stations	A A	O R	Phys. Drop Number UNA

B

TABLE B-1. MAC FRAME MAJOR VECTORS (continued)

M-V CMD	M-V (FRAME) NAME AND XMIT TYPE	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
					R/O		NAME
					XMT	RCV	
>05	Active Monitor Present (AMP) FC = >05	>0	>0	All Stations	A A	O R	Phys. Drop Number UNA
>06	Standby Monitor Present (SMP) (Type = Resp.) FC = >06	>0	>0	All Stations	A A	O R	Phys. Drop Number UNA
>07	Duplicate Address Test (Type = Orig.)	>0	>0	Target			None
>08	Lobe Media Test (Type = Orig.)	>0	>0	Zero	A	N	Wrap Data
>09	Transmit Forward	>0	any	Target		R	Frame Forward
>0B	Remove Ring Station FC = >01	>0	>4	Target			None
>0C	Change Parameters (ACK)	>0	>4	Target		O O O O O O	Correlator Local Ring Number Assign Phys. Drop Number Soft Error Report Timer Value Enabled Function Classes Allowed Access Priority

TABLE B-1. MAC FRAME MAJOR VECTORS (continued)

M-V CMD	M-V (FRAME) NAME AND XMIT TYPE	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
					R/O		NAME
					XMT	RCV	
>0D	Initialize Ring Station (ACK)	>0	>5	Target		O O O O	Correlator Local Ring Number Assigned Physical Drop Number Soft Error Report Timer Value
>0E	Request Station Address	>0	>4	Target		O	Correlator
>0F	Request Station State	>0	>4	Target		O	Correlator
>10	Request Station Attachment	>0	>4	Target		O	Correlator
>20	Request Initialization (Type = Orig.)	>5	>0	F(RPS)	A A A		Adapter Software Level UNA Product ID
>22	Report Station Address (Type = Resp.)	>4	>0	Source Address of Received Request Frame	A A A A A		Correlator Phys. Drop Number UNA Group Address Functional Addr.
>23	Report Station State (Type = Resp.)	>4	>0	Source Address of Received Request Frame	A A A		Correlator Adapter Software Level Adapter Status Vector

TABLE B-1. MAC FRAME MAJOR VECTORS (concluded)

M-V CMD	M-V (FRAME) NAME AND XMIT TYPE	DESTINATION CLASS	SOURCE CLASS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SUBVECTORS		
					R/O		NAME
					XMT	RCV	
>24	Report Station Attachment (Type = Resp.)	>4	>0	Source Address of Received Request Frame	A A A A A		Correlator Product ID Functional Address Authorized Function Class Authorized Access Priority
>25	Report New Monitor (Type = Orig.)	>4	>0	F(NM)	A A A		Phys. Drop Number UNA Product ID
>26	Report SUA Change (Type = Resp.)	>4	>0	F(NM)	A A		Phys. Drop Number UNA
>27	Report Ring Poll Failure (Type = Orig.) FC = >01	>6	>0	F(REM)	A		Address of Last Ring Poll
>28	Report Monitor Error (Type = Orig.)	>6	>0	F(REM)	A A A		Physical Drop No. UNA Error Code: -Monitor Error -Duplicate Monitor -Duplicate Address
>29	Report Error (Type = Orig.)	>6	>0	F(REM)	A A A A		Physical Drop No. UNA Isolating Error Counts Non-isolating Error Counts
>2A	Report Transmit Forward	>4	>0	F(NM)	A		Transmit Status Code

TABLE B-2. MAC FRAME SUBVECTORS

TYP	LEN†	SUBVECTOR NAME	VALUE
>01	>04	Beacon Type	Reason for beaconing: >0001 Set recovery mode. >0002 Ring signal loss detected. >0003 Monitor contention failed; no contention frames received. >0004 Monitor contention failed; contention frame(s) received.
>02	>08	UNA	Station's UNA-Specific Address (all zeroes if unknown).
>03	>04	Local Ring No.	Local ring number of sending Adapter
>04	>06	Assign Physical Drop Number	Physical drop number to be set in the receiving Adapter
>05	>04	Soft Error Report Timer Value	Timeout value (in units of 10 milliseconds) for the Adapter's soft error report timer. Valid range is >0000 to >FFFF. The value >0000 sets the time-out value to >10000 units of 10 ms.
>06	>04	Enabled Function Classes	Source classes for which the attached product is enabled to transmit. Valid range is b'0000 0000 0000 0000' to b'1111 1111 1111 1111'. Each bit 0 to 15 corresponds to function class b'0000' to b'1111'(0 to 15). Bit values of b'1' means function class is enabled. Classes 0 and 5 cannot be enabled. Classes 1 and 4 cannot be disabled.
>07	>04	Allowed Access Priority	Maximum allowed token priority with which the attached product is allowed to transmit is b'xxxx xxxx xxxx xxvv'. The x values are ignored and the vv value is the maximum access priority (0 to 3).
>09	>04	Correlator	Correlator used to relate frames.
>04	>08	Address of Last Ring Poll	Source Address of last AMP or SMP MAC frame before the poll cycle failed.
>0B	>06	Physical Drop Number	Physical drop number of the sending Adapter (zero if not set).
>20	>06	Response Code	See Section 3.6
>21	>04	Reserved	This subvector type is reserved and is equal to zero.
>22	>14	Product ID	Product ID. This value is not examined by the Adapter.

†Length in bytes of subvector value.

TABLE B-2. MAC FRAME SUBVECTORS (concluded)

TYP	LEN†	SUBVECTOR NAME	VALUE
>23	>0C	Adapter Software Level	Level of the sending Adapter's software. Bytes 0-4: Feature Code Bytes 5-9: EC Level
>26	>xx	Wrap Data	Wrap Data (xx = variable length)
>27	>xx	Frame Forward	Frame to be forwarded. Includes: Access Control through last information byte.
>29	>08	Adapter Status Vector	Indication of the current state of the sending Adapter's software. (note 1)
>2A	>04	Transmit Status Code	Code indicating the strip status of a transmitted frame.
>2B	>06	Group Address	Group Address set in sending station. (Zero if not set)
>2C	>06	Functional Address	Functional Address Field set in the sending station.
>2D	>08	Isolating Errors	Byte 0 - Line Error 1 - Reserved 2 - Burst Error 3 - ARI/FCI Error 4 - Reserved 5 - Reserved
>2E	>08	Non-isolating Errors	Byte 0 - Lost Frame 1 - Receive Congestion 2 - Frame Copied Error 3 - Reserved 4 - Token Error 5 - Reserved
>30	>04	Error Code	Error Code defining the error condition. >0001 - Monitor Error >0002 - Duplicate Monitor >0003 - Duplicate Address

†Length in bytes of subvector value.

Note 1: The Adapter Status Vector has the following decode:

Byte	Bit	Definition
0		SIF Task Status
	0	SIF Initialized
	1	SSB Busy
	2	SSB Queued
	3	Adapter Open
	5	Receive Command
	6	Transmit Command
1	0	SSB Wait SCB Clear
	1	SSB Wait Ring Status
	2	SSB Wait Command Completion
	3	SSB Wait Receive
	4	SSB Wait Transmit
2		SIF Transmit Status
	0	Subtask not Ready
	1	Wait Xmit Complete
	2	Wait Validation
	4	Xmit Halt Enabled
	5	Expecting SOF list
	6	List Error
3	0	CSTAT Valid Bit
	2	CSTAT SOF Bit
	3	CSTAT EOF Bit
4		SIF Receive Status
	0	Subtask Not Ready
	1	Waiting for continue
	2	Waiting for Validation
5	0	Expecting SOF List
	1	RI-pad Escape

B.2 Burned-In Addressing Technique

This section describes the technique for programming a 512 x 4 PROM with a burned-in address. This address provides the Adapter with a 48-bit node address if a node address is not passed during the OPEN commamd.

B.2.1 Burned-in Address Format

The burned-in address must conform to that shown in the figure below. Note that bits 0 and 1 of byte 0 must be 01 as shown. If the burned-in address does not conform to this requirement, the OPEN command is abnormally terminated with a node address error.

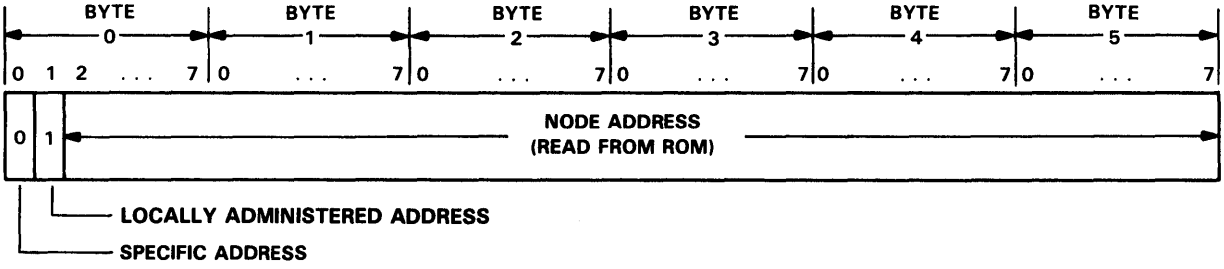


FIGURE B-1. BURNED-IN ADDRESS FORMAT

B.2.2 Burned-in Address Circuit

The burned-in address circuit consists of a 74LS164 8-bit shift register and a 512 x 4 bit Fuse Programmable ROM. This circuit, which resides between the Protocol Handler and the Ring Interface circuit, is shown in Figure B-2. The two devices should be located as close to the Ring Interface and Protocol Handler as possible to minimize the capacitive loading on the signal lines.

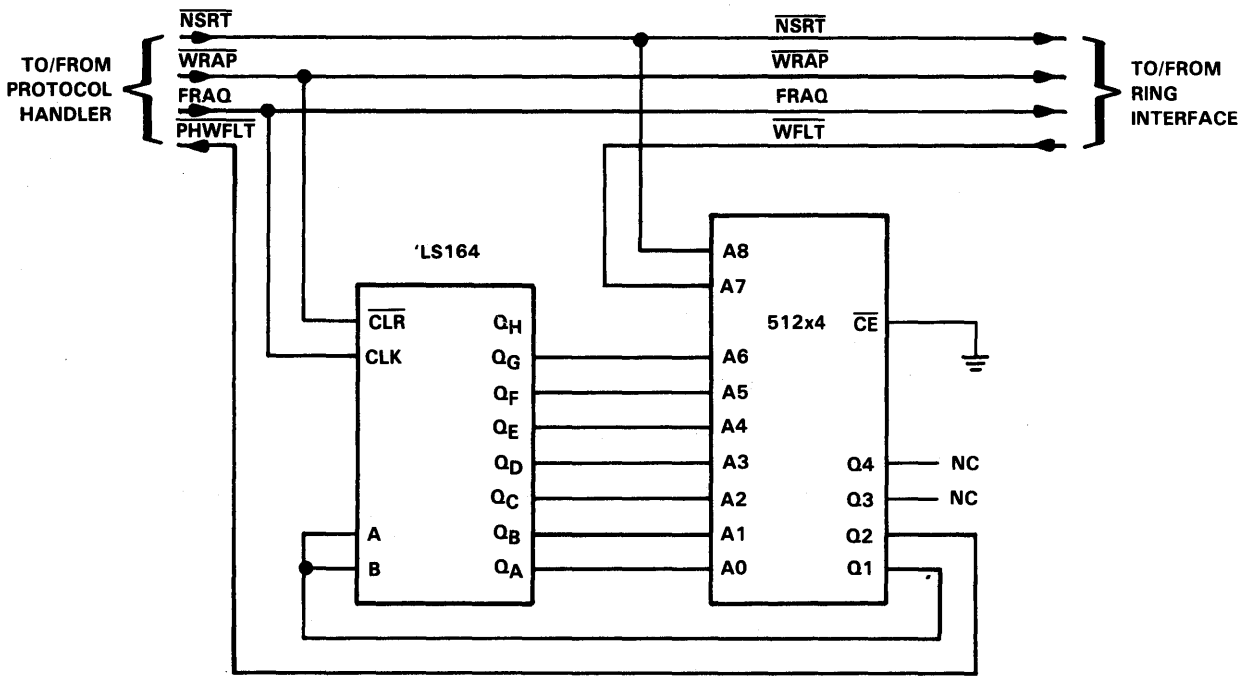


FIGURE B-2. BIA CIRCUIT

B.2.3 BIA Operation

Locating the Adapter's node address in ROM is called "burned-in addressing" because the address is non-changeable being "burned" into an on-board PROM. The PROM may be visualized as vertical columns with the address "burned" into the column connected to the Q2 output of the PROM. The columns of bits at Q3 and Q4 are programmed to all ones as these outputs are not connected to any external circuitry. Column Q1 is fed back to the serial inputs of the shift register to create the seven low-order address bits for the PROM.

When the TMS38020 Protocol Handler holds the $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ signal low, the address to the PROM is held to the first 256 locations of the PROM. As can be seen in Table B-1, no burned-in address bits are encoded in the first 256 locations. When the $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ line from the Ring Interface is low and the $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ signal is low, the value returned to the Protocol Handler is zero (wire fault condition). When the $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ line from the Ring Interface is high and $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ is low, the $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ value returned to the Protocol Handler is high. Thus, when the Ring Interface is in an insert state ($\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ is low), the value of $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ from the Ring Interface is directly reflected to the Protocol Handler.

Whenever the Adapter is initialized, the TMS38010 Communications Processor will fetch the burned-in address from the BIA PROM. If the node address passed to the Adapter during the OPEN command is zero, the burned-in address will be used as the Adapter's Ring Station Address.

The Adapter software is configured to test to determine the presence of the burned-in address circuitry during each initialization sequence. This is done by attempting to read the PROM. The software provides a check to determine if the data represents the correct coding for a burned-in address PROM. It does not check the correctness of the address itself. An error in the address itself will cause the OPEN command to terminate with a node address error.

When this routine is executed, the Adapter is not inserted in the ring so $\overline{\text{NSRT}}$ is inactive-high. Thus, only the second 256 locations of the PROM will be addressed. Since during this time the $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$ line status is a "don't care" condition, the burned-in address and validation code must be put into the PROM twice. In Table B-1, two addresses are shown for each entry because of this condition.

B.2.4 PROM Address Programming

The Communications Processor reads the BIA through the Protocol Handler signal line $\overline{\text{WFLT}}$. Because this is an inverted input, the data outputs of the PROM must be inverted from their intended value for the address bits. The following table describes the content requirements for the BIA PROM.

TABLE B-3. BURNED-IN ADDRESS CONTENTS (1 of 5)

DECIMAL ADDR	PROM BINARY ADDRESS									ADDRESS	BURNED IN ADDRESS BIT	PROM OUTPUT				HEX OUTPUT
	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0			O4	O3	O2	O1	
	–	–	+	+	+	+	+	+	+					–	+	
			SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR			NOT USED	NOT USED	NEW WFLT	SERIAL ADDR	
	NSRT	WFLT	Q_G	Q_F	Q_E	Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A	SEQ						
0→127	0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	NA	NA	1	1	0	1	D
128→255	0	1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	NA	NA	1	1	1	1	F
256/384	1	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	$\overline{BIA0}$	1	1		1	
257/385	1	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2	$\overline{BIA1}$	1	1		0	
258/386	1	X	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	3	$\overline{BIA2}$	1	1		1	
259/387	1	X	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	89	BIA40	1	1		0	
260/388	1	X	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	54	BIA5	1	1		1	
261/389	1	X	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	4	$\overline{BIA3}$	1	1		0	
262/390	1	X	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	90	BIA41	1	1		0	
263/391	1	X	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	100	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
264/392	1	X	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	70	BIA21	1	1		1	
265/393	1	X	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	55	BIA6	1	1		1	
266/394	1	X	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	5	$\overline{BIA4}$	1	1		1	
267/395	1	X	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	25	$\overline{BIA24}$	1	1		0	
268/396	1	X	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	91	BIA42	1	1		1	
269/397	1	X	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	74	BIA25	1	1		1	
270/398	1	X	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	101	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
271/399	1	X	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	107	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
272/400	1	X	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	86	BIA37	1	1		0	
273/401	1	X	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	71	BIA22	1	1		1	
274/402	1	X	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	83	BIA34	1	1		0	
275/403	1	X	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	56	BIA7	1	1		1	
276/404	1	X	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	20	$\overline{BIA19}$	1	1		0	
277/405	1	X	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	6	$\overline{BIA5}$	1	1		0	
278/406	1	X	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	26	$\overline{BIA25}$	1	1		0	
279/407	1	X	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	32	$\overline{BIA31}$	1	1		0	

B

TABLE B-3. BURNED-IN ADDRESS CONTENTS (2 of 5)

DECIMAL ADDR	PROM BINARY ADDRESS									ADDR SEQ	BURNED IN ADDRESS BIT	PROM OUTPUT				HEX OUTPUT
	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0			O4	O3	O2	O1	
	–	–	+	+	+	+	+	+	+					–	+	
			SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR			NOT USED	NOT USED	NEW FLT	SER IAL ADDR	
	NSRT	WFLT	Q_G	Q_F	Q_E	Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A							
280/408	1	X	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	96	BIA47	1	1		0	
281/409	1	X	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	92	BIA43	1	1		1	
282/410	1	X	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	48	$\overline{\text{BIA47}}$	1	1		0	
283/411	1	X	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	75	BIA26	1	1		1	
284/412	1	X	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	102	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
285/413	1	X	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	59	BIA10	1	1		1	
286/414	1	X	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	108	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
287/415	1	X	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	114	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
288/416	1	X	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	87	BIA38	1	1		1	
289/417	1	X	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	52	BIA3	1	1		0	
290/418	1	X	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	23	$\overline{\text{BIA22}}$	1	1		1	
291/419	1	X	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	72	BIA23	1	1		0	
292/420	1	X	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	84	BIA35	1	1		0	
293/421	1	X	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	18	$\overline{\text{BIA17}}$	1	1		0	
294/422	1	X	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	46	$\overline{\text{BIA45}}$	1	1		1	
295/423	1	X	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	57	BIA8	1	1		0	
296/424	1	X	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	21	$\overline{\text{BIA20}}$	1	1		1	
297/425	1	X	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	16	$\overline{\text{BIA15}}$	1	1		0	
298/426	1	X	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	7	$\overline{\text{BIA6}}$	1	1		1	
299/427	1	X	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	9	$\overline{\text{BIA8}}$	1	1		0	
300/428	1	X	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	27	$\overline{\text{BIA26}}$	1	1		1	
301/429	1	X	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	11	$\overline{\text{BIA10}}$	1	1		0	
302/430	1	X	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	33	$\overline{\text{BIA32}}$	1	1		1	
303/431	1	X	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	39	$\overline{\text{BIA38}}$	1	1		0	
304/432	1	X	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	97	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
305/433	1	X	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	67	BIA18	1	1		0	
306/434	1	X	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	29	$\overline{\text{BIA28}}$	1	1		1	
307/435	1	X	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	93	BIA44	1	1		0	

TABLE B-3. BURNED-IN ADDRESS CONTENTS (3 of 5)

DECIMAL ADDR	PROM BINARY ADDRESS									ADDRESS SEQ	BURNED IN ADDRESS BIT	PROM OUTPUT				HEX OUTPUT
	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0			O4	O3	O2	O1	
	–	–	+	+	+	+	+	+	+					–	+	
			S	S	S	S	S	S	S			N	N	N	S	
			R	R	R	R	R	R	R			O	O	E	E	O
	N	W										T	T	W	R	U
	S	F	Q_G	Q_F	Q_E	Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A						I	T
	R	L										U	U	W	A	P
A	T	T								S		S	S	F	L	U
D										E		E	E	L		T
D										Q		D	D	T	A	
R															D	
															D	
															R	
308/436	1	X	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	49	BIA0	1	1		0	
309/437	1	X	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	13	$\overline{\text{BIA12}}$	1	1		0	
310/438	1	X	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	64	BIA15	1	1		0	
311/439	1	X	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	76	BIA27	1	1		0	
312/440	1	X	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	103	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
313/441	1	X	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	79	BIA30	1	1		0	
314/442	1	X	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	35	$\overline{\text{BIA34}}$	1	1		1	
315/443	1	X	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	60	BIA11	1	1		0	
316/444	1	X	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	109	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
317/445	1	X	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	41	$\overline{\text{BIA40}}$	1	1		0	
318/446	1	X	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	115	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
319/447	1	X	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	121	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
320/448	1	X	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	128	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
321/449	1	X	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	88	BIA39	1	1		1	
322/450	1	X	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	53	BIA4•	1	1		0	
323/451	1	X	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	99	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
324/452	1	X	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	69	BIA20	1	1		0	
325/453	1	X	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	24	$\overline{\text{BIA23}}$	1	1		1	
326/454	1	X	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	73	BIA24	1	1		1	
327/455	1	X	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	106	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
328/456	1	X	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	85	BIA36	1	1		0	
329/457	1	X	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	82	BIA33	1	1		0	
330/458	1	X	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	19	$\overline{\text{BIA18}}$	1	1		0	
331/459	1	X	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	31	$\overline{\text{BIA30}}$	1	1		1	
332/460	1	X	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	95	BIA46	1	1		0	
333/461	1	X	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	47	$\overline{\text{BIA46}}$	1	1		0	
334/462	1	X	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	58	BIA 9	1	1		1	

B

TABLE B-3. BURNED-IN ADDRESS CONTENTS (4 of 5)

DECIMAL ADDR	PROM BINARY ADDRESS									ADDRESS SEQ	BURNED IN ADDRESS BIT	PROM OUTPUT				HEX OUTPUT
	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0			O4	O3	O2	O1	
	–	–	+	+	+	+	+	+	+					–	+	
			S	S	S	S	S	S	S			N	N	N	S	
			R	R	R	R	R	R	R			O	O	E	E	
	N	W										T	T	W	R	
	S	F	Q_G	Q_F	Q_E	Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A						I	
	R	L										U	U	W	A	
	T	T										S	S	F	L	
												E	E	L		
												D	D	T	A	
															D	
															D	
															R	
335/463	1	X	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	113	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
336/464	1	X	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	51	BIA2	1	1		1	
337/465	1	X	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	22	$\overline{\text{BIA21}}$	1	1		0	
338/466	1	X	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	17	$\overline{\text{BIA16}}$	1	1		1	
339/467	1	X	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	45	$\overline{\text{BIA44}}$	1	1		0	
340/468	1	X	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	15	$\overline{\text{BIA14}}$	1	1		1	
341/469	1	X	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	8	$\overline{\text{BIA7}}$	1	1		1	
342/470	1	X	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	10	$\overline{\text{BIA9}}$	1	1		1	
343/471	1	X	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	38	$\overline{\text{BIA37}}$	1	1		1	
344/472	1	X	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	66	BIA17	1	1		1	
345/473	1	X	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	28	$\overline{\text{BIA27}}$	1	1		0	
346/474	1	X	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	12	$\overline{\text{BIA11}}$	1	1		1	
347/475	1	X	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	63	BIA14	1	1		0	
348/476	1	X	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	78	BIA29	1	1		1	
349/477	1	X	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	34	$\overline{\text{BIA33}}$	1	1		0	
350/478	1	X	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	40	$\overline{\text{BIA39}}$	1	1		1	
351/479	1	X	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	120	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
352/480	1	X	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	127	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
353/481	1	X	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	98	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
354/482	1	X	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	68	BIA19	1	1		0	
355/483	1	X	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	105	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
356/484	1	X	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	81	BIA32	1	1		1	
357/485	1	X	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	30	$\overline{\text{BIA29}}$	1	1		1	
358/486	1	X	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	94	BIA45	1	1		0	
359/487	1	X	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	112	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
360/488	1	X	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	50	BIA1	1	1		0	
361/489	1	X	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	44	$\overline{\text{BIA43}}$	1	1		1	
362/490	1	X	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	14	$\overline{\text{BIA13}}$	1	1		0	

TABLE B-3. BURNED-IN ADDRESS CONTENTS (5 of 5)

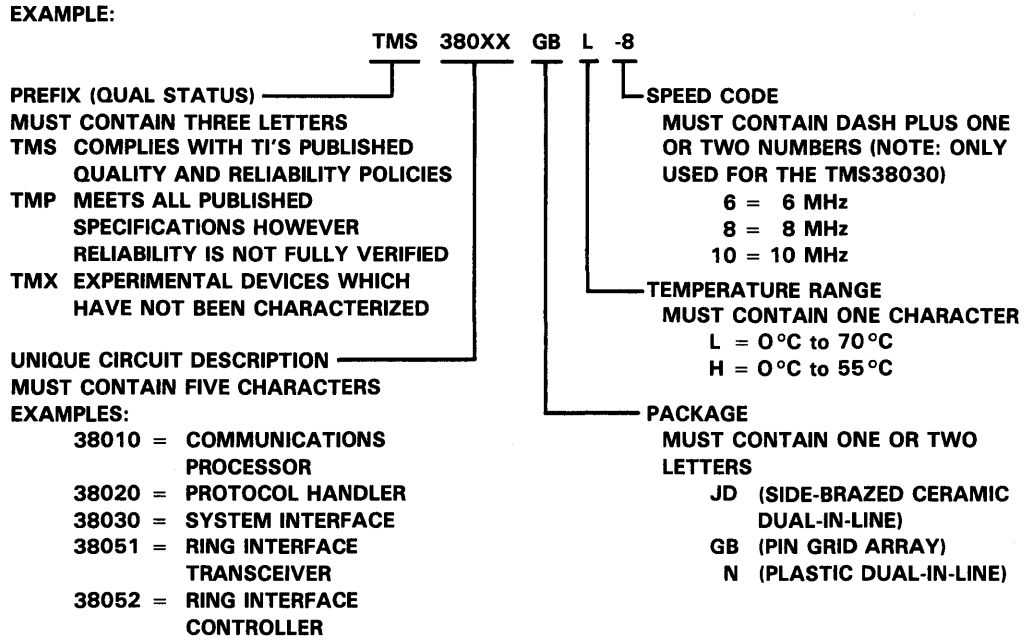
DECIMAL ADDR	PROM BINARY ADDRESS									ADDRESS SEQ	BURNED IN ADDRESS BIT	PROM OUTPUT				HEX OUTPUT
	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0			O4	O3	O2	O1	
	–	–	+	+	+	+	+	+	+					–	+	
			SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR	SR			NOT USED	NOT USED	NEW WFLT	SERIAL ADDR	
	NSRT	WFLT	Q_G	Q_F	Q_E	Q_D	Q_C	Q_B	Q_A							
363/491	1	X	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	37	$\overline{BIA36}$	1	1		1	
364/492	1	X	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	65	BIA16	1	1		0	
365/493	1	X	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	62	BIA13	1	1		1	
366/494	1	X	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	77	BIA28	1	1		0	
367/495	1	X	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	119	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
368/496	1	X	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	126	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
369/497	1	X	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	104	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
370/498	1	X	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	80	BIA31	1	1		0	
371/499	1	X	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	111	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
372/500	1	X	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	43	$\overline{BIA42}$	1	1		1	
373/501	1	X	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	36	$\overline{BIA35}$	1	1		1	
374/502	1	X	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	61	BIA12	1	1		1	
375/503	1	X	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	118	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
376/504	1	X	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	125	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
377/505	1	X	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	110	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
378/506	1	X	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	42	$\overline{BIA41}$	1	1		0	
379/507	1	X	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	117	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
380/508	1	X	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	124	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
381/509	1	X	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	116	CONST-0	1	1	0	1	D
382/510	1	X	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	123	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C
383/511	1	X	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	122	CONST-0	1	1	0	0	C

B.3 Ordering Information, Package, Thermal and Mechanical Data

B.3.1 Ordering Instructions

Electrical characteristics presented in the data sheets in this publication, unless otherwise noted, apply for the circuit type listed in the page heading regardless of package. The availability of a circuit function in a particular package is denoted by an alphabetical reference above the pin-connection diagram(s). These alphabetical references refer to mechanical outline drawings shown in this section.

Factory orders for circuits described in this publication should include either a four-part or five-part number as explained in the following example.



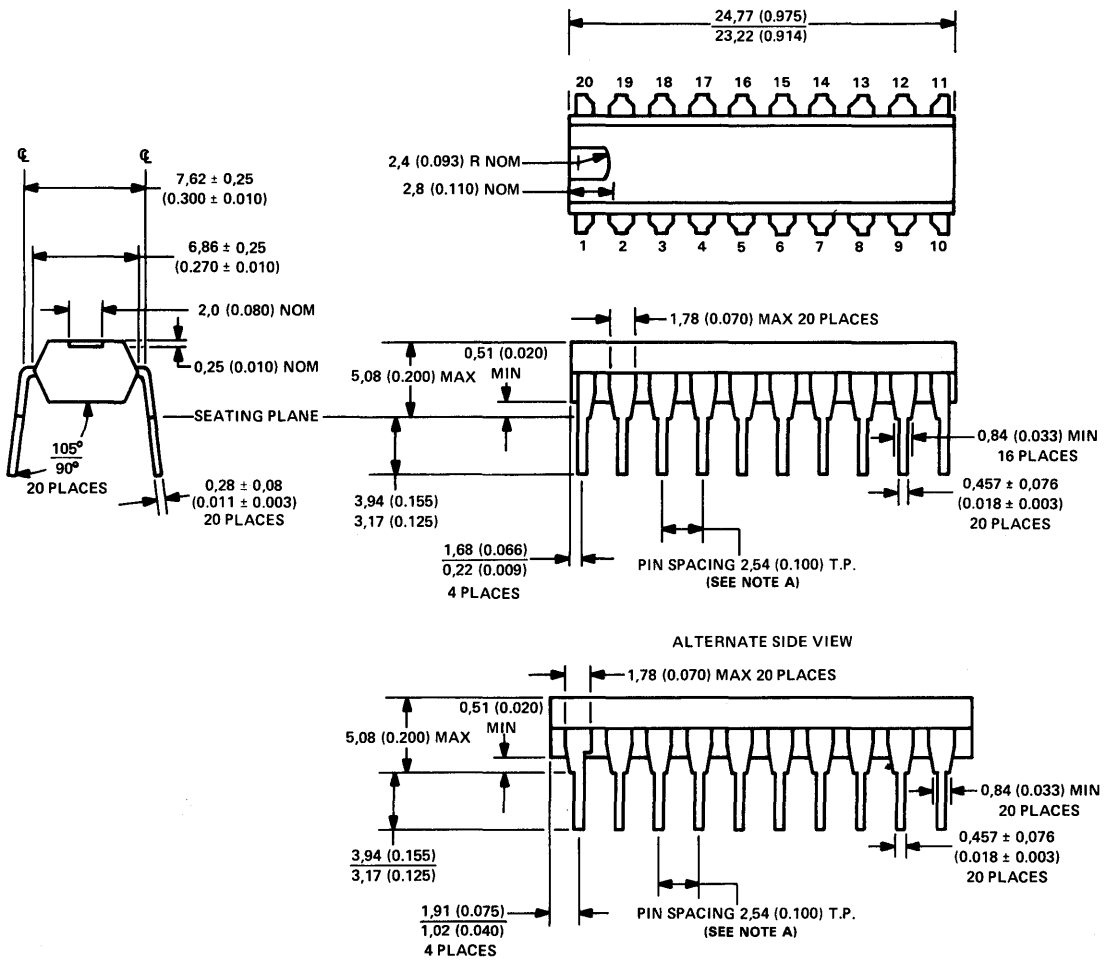
NOTE: The TMS38020 will include a ROM code level designator. (RC _ _ _ _).

B.3.2 Thermal Impedance Characteristics

PACKAGE	θ_{JA} (°C/W)	θ_{JC} (°C/W)
20-pin dual-in-line plastic package	76.6	33.0
22-pin dual-in-line plastic package	73.7	25.6
48-pin dual-in-line ceramic side-brazed package	40.5	8.8
100-pin pin grid array ceramic package	35.2	6.0

B.3.3 Mechanical Data

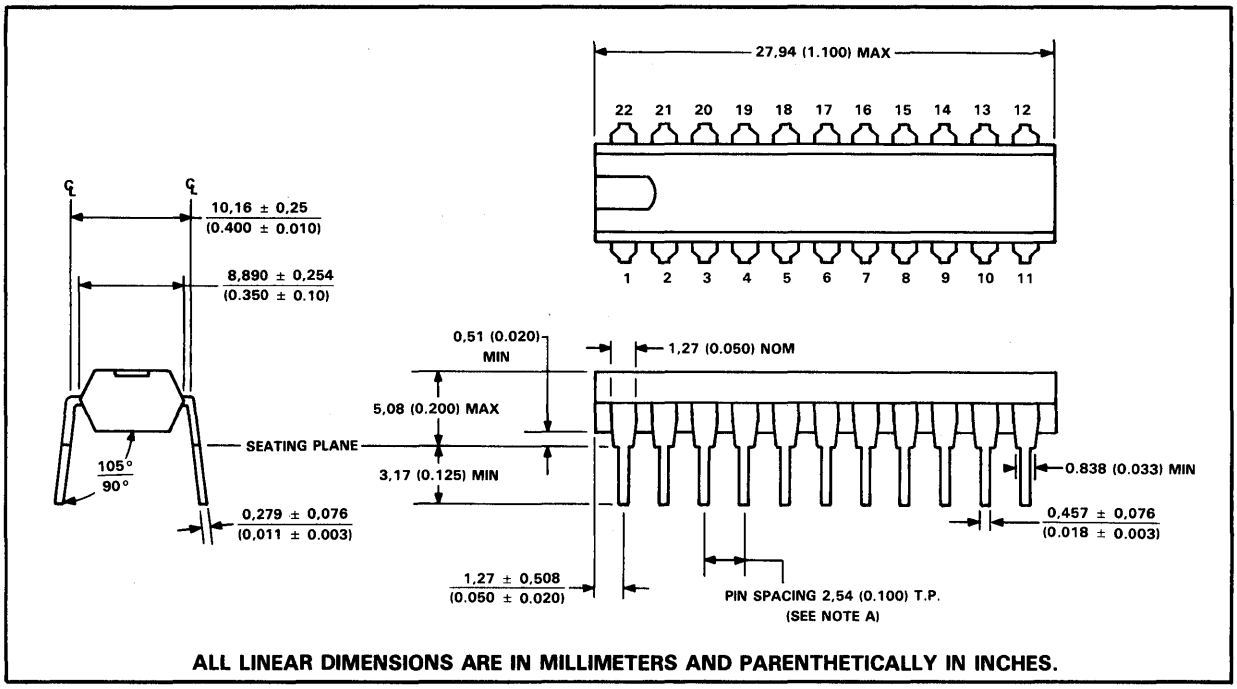
B.3.3.1 20-Pin Dual-in-Line Package (N Suffix)



ALL LINEAR DIMENSIONS ARE IN MILLIMETERS AND PARENTHETICALLY IN INCHES.
PARTS MAY BE SUPPLIED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE ALTERNATE SIDE VIEW AT THE OPTION OF TI.

NOTE A: Each pin centerline is located within 0,25(0.010) of its true longitudinal position.

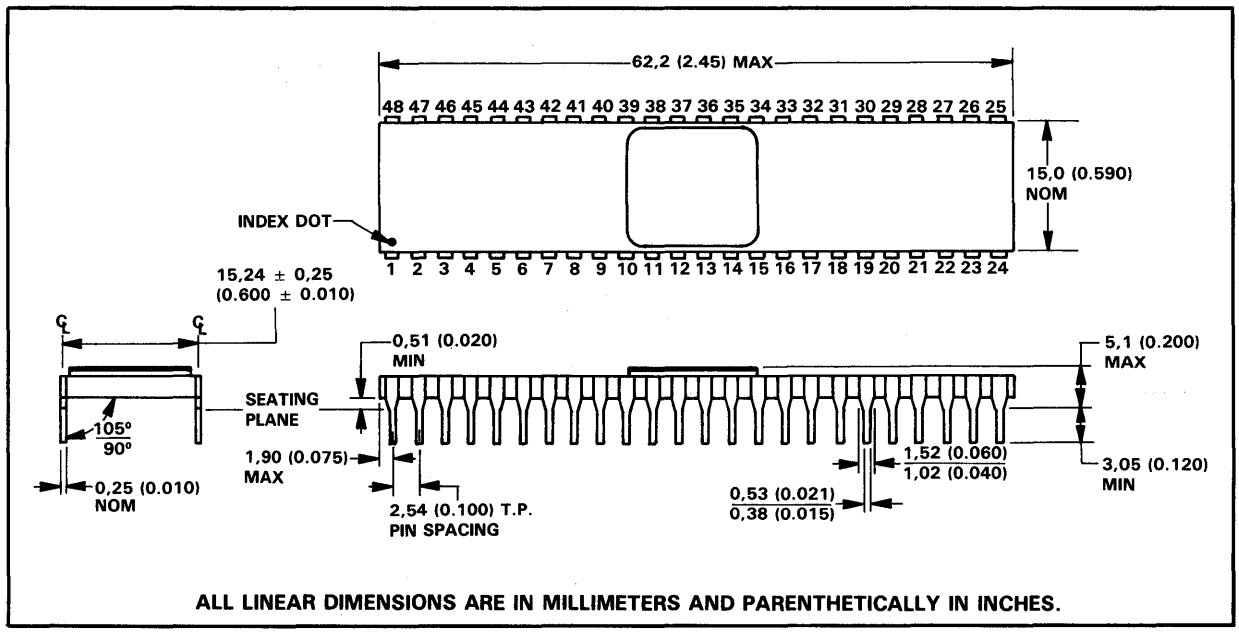
B.3.3.2 22-Pin Dual-in-Line Package (N Suffix)



ALL LINEAR DIMENSIONS ARE IN MILLIMETERS AND PARENTHETICALLY IN INCHES.

NOTE A: Each pin centerline is located within 0,25(0.010) of its true longitudinal position.

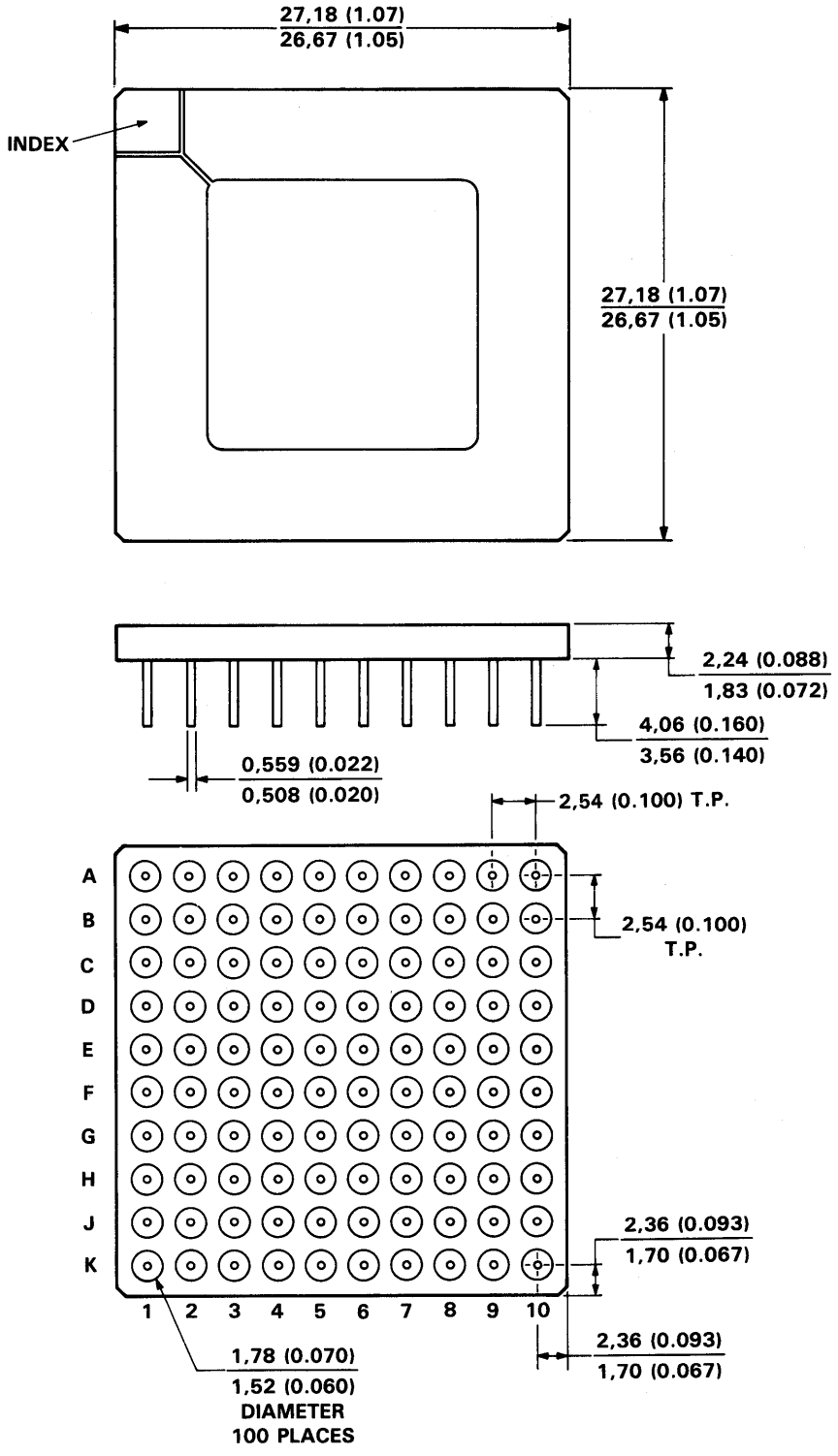
B.3.3.3 48-Pin Dual-in-Line Side-Brazed Package (JD Suffix)



ALL LINEAR DIMENSIONS ARE IN MILLIMETERS AND PARENTHETICALLY IN INCHES.

B

B.3.3.4 100 Pin GB Pin-Grid Array Ceramic Package



ALL LINEAR DIMENSIONS ARE IN MILLIMETERS AND PARENTHETICALLY IN INCHES

B.4 Glossary of Terms

ACCESS CONTROL
The Access Control (AC) field of a frame or token is the first octet of the Physical Control field. The AC contains the Priority Indicator (PI), Token Indicator (TI), Monitor Count (MC) and Priority Reservation (PR) fields of the frame or token.

ACCESS PRIORITY
The access priority of a frame enqueued for transmission is the maximum priority level of token that the Adapter will capture for transmission.

ACTIVE MONITOR
The active monitor is the Adapter responsible for providing clocking to the ring and other functions such as token error detection and recovery.

ADAPTER
The term "Adapter" refers to the Texas Instruments chip set consisting of the TMS38010 Communications Processor, TMS38020 Protocol Handler, TMS38030 System Interface, and TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface components.

ADAPTER SOFTWARE
Adapter software is software executed by the TMS38010 Communications Processor. This software provides IEEE 802.5 compatible Medium Access Control (MAC) services, network management support, and Adapter diagnostics. This software is in the ROM of the TMS38020 Protocol Handler.

ADDRESS
The logical location of a terminal, a peripheral device, node or any other unit or component in a network.

APPLICATION LAYER
A logical entity of the OSI model; the top of the seven-layer structure, generally regarded as offering an interface to, and largely defined by, the network user.

ATTACHED SYSTEM/ATTACHING PRODUCT
The attached system is the product which uses the Adapter to connect to the ring network; also referred to as the attaching product or the host system.

ATTENTION MAC FRAMES
Attention MAC frames are MAC frames received by the Adapter in which the attention field of the Frame Control field (FC) (bits 4-7) is greater than one. This condition causes an attention interrupt within the Adapter.

ATTENUATION
The difference (loss) between transmitted and received power, due to transmission loss through equipment lines or other communications devices.

ALLOWED ACCESS PRIORITY
The Allowed access priority is the highest access priority an attaching product may use when requesting a transmission.

ENABLED FUNCTION CLASSES
The Enabled Function Classes are the source classes a station is allowed to use in the transmission of MAC frames. These are the transmit Medium Access Control frames which may be passed from the attaching product to the Adapter for transmission.

BANDWIDTH
The range of frequencies that can pass over a given circuit. Generally, the greater the bandwidth, the more information that can be sent through the circuit in a given amount of time.

BASEBAND
Transmission of signals without modulation. In a baseband local area network, digital signals are inserted directly onto the cable as voltage pulses. The entire bandwidth of the cable is consumed by the signal.

BAUD
A measure of transmission speed; the reciprocal of the time duration of the shortest signal element in a transmission.

BRIDGE
Equipment which allows the interconnection of LANs, allowing communication between devices on separate networks using similar protocols.

BROADCAST
Delivery of a transmission to two or more stations at the same time.

COMMUNICATIONS PROCESSOR
The TMS38010 Communications Processor (CP) is a VLSI component of the Adapter chip set which contains a dedicated 16-bit CPU. The CP executes the Adapter software which controls the functions and processes of the Adapter.

CONTENTION
A "dispute" between two or more devices over the use of a common channel at the same time.

CSMA/CD
CARRIER SENSE MULTIPLE ACCESS WITH COLLISION DETECTION. A contention technique which allows multiple stations to successfully share a broadcast channel by avoiding contention via carrier sense and deference, and managing collisions via collision detection and frame retransmission. Defined by IEEE Standard 802.3.

CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK
CRC. A characteristic link-level feature of (typically) bit-oriented data communications protocols, wherein data integrity of a received frame is checked using a polynomial algorithm based on the content of the frame, and then matched with the result performed by the sender and included in a field appended to the frame.

DATA LINK
Any serial data communications transmission path; generally between two adjacent nodes or devices and without any intermediate switching nodes.

DATA LINK LAYER
The logical entity in the OSI Reference Model concerned with transmission of data between network nodes; the network processing entity that establishes, maintains, and releases data link connections between elements in a network; the second layer processed in the OSI Reference Model, between the Physical and the Network layers.

DATA RATE
A measure of the signalling rate of a data link.

DESTINATION
Station designated as the intended receiver of data.

DIRECT INPUT/OUTPUT
DIO. Direct I/O refers to direct reading or writing to the TMS38030 System Interface registers by the attached system's processor. This is also commonly called "memory-mapped I/O".

DIRECT MEMORY ACCESS
DMA. Direct Memory Access is a mode where a device other than the host processor contends for and receives mastership of the memory bus so that data transfers may take place independent of the host.

ERROR DETECTION
Code in which each data signal conforms to specific rules of construction so that departures from this construction in the received signals can be automatically detected.

FIBER OPTICS
A technology that uses light as an information carrier. Fiber optic cables are a direct replacement for conventional coaxial cable and wire pairs. The glass-based transmission facility occupies less physical volume for an equivalent transmission capacity, and the fibers are immune to electrical interference.

FLOW CONTROL
The capability of network nodes to manage buffering schemes in order to allow devices of differing data transmission speeds to communicate with each other.

FRAME
A collection of bits that contain both control information and data; the basic unit of transmission on a network. Control information is carried in the frame with the data to provide for such functions as addressing, sequencing, flow control and error control to the respective protocol levels. Can be of fixed or variable length.

FRAME CHECK SEQUENCE
The Frame Check Sequence (FCS) is a 32-bit field which follows the information field of a frame. This field contains a CRC value used to verify error-free transmission of the frame.

FRAME CONTROL
The Frame Control (FC) field of a frame or token is the second octet of the Physical Control field. The FC contains bits which define the frame as a MAC or non-MAC frame and the MAC frame attention code. This field is used by the TMS38020 Protocol Handler for frame processing.

FRAME FORMAT
The exact order and size of the various control and information fields of a frame, including header, address and data fields.

FRAME OVERHEAD
A measure of the ratio of the total frame bits occupied by control information to the number of bits of data, usually expressed as a percent.

FRAME STATUS
The Frame Status (FS) field of a frame is an octet appended after the ending delimiter of a frame which is used to indicate whether the destination address was recognized and whether the frame had been copied by the destination Adapter. This field is neither code-violation nor CRC-protected.

FUNCTIONAL ADDRESS
A form of group address which provides a "well known" address for network functions such as active monitor, ring error monitor, etc. Up to 31 unique functional addresses can be recognized by the TMS380 LAN Adapter.

GATEWAY
A special node that interfaces two or more dissimilar networks, providing protocol translation between the networks. A gateway is needed to connect two independent local area networks or to connect a local network to a long-haul network.

GROUP ADDRESS
An address which may be recognized by more than one node on the ring. A group address may be used for functions such as disk servers.

HOST
A product which uses the TMS380 token ring LAN Adapter to connect to the ring network; also referred to as the attached system or attaching product.

IEEE 802
Standards for the interconnection of local area networking computer equipment. The IEEE 802 standard deals with the Physical and Data Link layers of the ISO Reference Model for Open Systems Interconnection, as well as network management.

ISO
International Organization for Standardization.

LAYER
In the OSI Reference Model, referring to a collection of related network-processing functions that comprise one level of a hierarchy of functions.

LOBE
The lobe refers to the physical star wiring between the Adapter and the wiring concentrator.

LOCAL AREA NETWORK
LAN. A type of high-speed data communications arrangement wherein all segments of the transmission medium (typically, coaxial cable, twisted-pair wire, or optical fiber) are under the control of the network operator and operate in a localized geographic area (an office building, complex of buildings, or campus).

LOGICAL LINK CONTROL
LLC. A protocol developed by the IEEE 802.2 committee, common to all of its Physical and Medium Access Control standards, for data link-level transmission control; the upper sublayer of the IEEE layer 2 (Data Link layer) protocol that complements the MAC protocol.

MEDIUM ACCESS CONTROL
MAC. Medium Access Control refers to a set of services provided by the Adapter which are concerned with proper operation of the ring and the detection of and recovery from error conditions: a medium-specific access control protocol within IEEE 802 specifications and includes variations for the token ring, token bus, and CSMA/CD; the lower sublayer of the IEEE layer 2 (Data Link layer) which complements the Logical Link Control.

MAC FRAMES
A class of frames on the ring which carry out the processes of the Medium Access Control protocol of the token ring architecture. MAC frames are designated by bits 0 and 1 of the Frame Control field being set to '0' and '0' respectively. In many cases, the attached system will not be notified of the receipt or transmission of such frames.

MAJOR VECTOR
The Major Vector is the information field of a MAC frame. This field consists of a Major Vector ID and (optionally) one or more subvectors.

MAJOR VECTOR ID
The Major Vector ID (MV-ID) is defined as the class byte and command byte fields of a MAC frame Major Vector. It carries information on MAC frame type.

MEDIUM
Any material substance that can be, or is, used for the propagation of signals, usually in the form of modulated radio, light, or acoustic waves, from one point to another, such as optical fiber, cable, water, air, or free space.

NETWORK
An interconnected group of nodes; a series of points, nodes, or stations connected by communications channels; the assembly of equipment through which connections are made between data stations.

NETWORK LAYER
In the ISO OSI Reference Model, the logical network entity that services the Transport layer; responsible for ensuring that data passed to it from the Transport layer is routed and delivered through the network.

NETWORK MANAGEMENT
Administrative services performed in managing a network, such as network topology and software configuration, downloading of software, monitoring network performance, maintaining network operations, and diagnosing and troubleshooting problems.

NETWORK MANAGER
A network entity which determines station status, collects configuration information, and measures network performance, among other things.

NODE
A station; a physical device that allows for the transmission of data within a network.

OPEN SYSTEMS INTERCONNECTION
OSI. Referring to the International Organization for Standardization's OSI Reference Model, a logical structure for network operations standardized within the ISO; a seven-layer network architecture being used for the definition of network protocol standards.

PHYSICAL CONTROL FIELD
PCF. The physical control field (PCF) is a field of a frame which follows the starting delimiter. The PCF consists of two 8-bit fields, the Access Control (AC) field and the Frame Control (FC) field.

PHYSICAL DROP NUMBER
The physical drop number is a facilities-defined number used to assist in performing network management functions. The physical drop number is provided to individual stations by a Ring Parameter Server or Network Manager if present on the ring.

PHYSICAL LAYER
In the OSI Reference Model the lowest level of network processing, below the Data Link layer, that is concerned with the electrical, mechanical and handshaking procedures over the interface that connects a device to a transmission medium; referring to an electrical interface, such as RS-232-C.

PRESENTATION LAYER
In the OSI Reference Model, that layer of processing that provides services to the Application layer, allowing it to interpret the data exchanged, and allowing it to structure data messages to be transmitted in a specific display and control format.

PROTOCOL
Formal set of rules governing the format, timing, sequencing, and error control of exchanged messages on a data network; may also include facilities for managing a communications link and/or contention resolution. A protocol may be oriented toward data transfer over an interface, between two logical units directly connected, or on an end-to-end basis between two end users over a large and complex network. Both hardware protocols and software protocols can be defined.

PROTOCOL HANDLER
The TMS38020 Protocol Handler (PH) is a component of the Adapter which serializes and de-serializes the ring bit stream and implements the real-time elements of ring protocol, such as CRC generation and checking and address recognition.

REPEATER
For local area networks, a device which increases the signal cover of a single LAN segment by joining it to another, so that frames sent on one segment can be "repeated" (or copied) onto another, increasing the local environment.

RETRY
The process of resending the current block of data a prescribed number of times or until it is accepted.

RING
A network topology in which stations are connected to one another in a closed logical circle. In a token ring LAN, access to the ring passes sequentially from one station to the next by passing an access token from one station to another.

RING ERROR MONITOR
The Ring Error Monitor (REM) is a ring-resident function which maintains statistical records of error conditions on the ring operation.

RING INTERFACE
RI. The TMS38051 Ring Interface Transceiver and the TMS38052 Ring Interface Controller are bipolar components of the Adapter. The RI Transceiver converts a TTL-level signal from the TMS38020 Protocol Handler to the appropriate level for transmission on the ring. The RI Controller contains the voltage controlled oscillator for the phase locked loop.

RING INTERFACE MODULE
A module consisting of two bipolar integrated circuits, the TMS38051 and TMS38052 Ring Interface (RI) chips, transmit and receive transformers, and various passive components, which make up the Adapter's electrical interface to the ring twisted pair wires.

RING NETWORK
A network topology in which each node is logically connected to two adjacent nodes.

RING PARAMETER SERVER
The Ring Parameter Server (RPS) is a host-based function on a ring which manages operating parameters for the ring. This function is supported in the MAC protocol.

RING STATION
In this document, a ring station consists of an Adapter and attached product inserted on the ring.

RING STATION SPECIFIC ADDRESS
A ring station specific address is the address of a ring station which is the unique address known at the physical transmission level for a particular node.

RING STATUS REGISTER
The Ring Status Register is a 16-bit word which is used by the Adapter to report ring conditions to the attached system.

ROUTING
The process of selecting the correct circuit path for a message across rings or buses.

ROUTING INFORMATION FIELD
The Routing Information Field is an up to 18-byte field found immediately following the Source Address field, which is used to hold the necessary information for routing frames among multiple segments (rings, in the case of token ring) in the network.

SERIAL INTERFACE
An interface which requires serial transmission, or the transfer of information in which bits composing a character are sent sequentially. Implies a single transmission channel.

SERVER
A processor which provides a specific service to the network. Examples of servers are: routing server - connects nodes and networks of like architectures; gateway server - connects nodes and networks of different architectures by performing protocol conversions; terminal server, print server and file server - provides an interface between compatible peripheral devices on a LAN.

SESSION
A connection between two stations that allows them to communicate; the logical connection between two network addressable units.

SESSION LAYER
In the OSI Reference Model, the network-processing layer responsible for binding and unbinding logical links between end users and maintaining an orderly dialogue between them; also responsible for naming of logical entities.

SOURCE
Originator of data.

SOURCE ROUTING
Method by which stations are addressed across multiple rings.

STAND-BY MONITOR
A stand-by monitor is any Adapter on the ring which is not currently the Active Monitor. The stand-by monitor functions are defined in the MAC protocol.

STAR
A network topology consisting of one central node with point-to-point links to several other nodes. Control of the network is usually located in the central node or switch, with all routing of network message traffic performed by the central node.

STATION
A network node.

SUBVECTOR
A subvector is part of the MAC frame Major Vector. The subvectors are subfields within the Major Vector used to carry specific information used to process the MAC frame. The subvector is composed of length, type, and value fields.

SYSTEM COMMAND BLOCK
The System Command Block (SCB) is a six-byte buffer used to hold the command to be executed by the Adapter and a 24-bit address pointer to a parameter block for the command.

SYSTEM INTERFACE
The TMS38030 System Interface (SIF) is a VLSI component of the Adapter chip set which functions as the Adapter's interface to the attached system.

SYSTEM STATUS BLOCK
The System Status Block (SSB) is an eight-byte buffer used by the Adapter to relay status information to the attached system, such as return codes of completed Adapter commands.

THROUGHPUT
The total useful information processed or communicated during a specified time period. Expressed in bits per second or bytes per second.

TOKEN
A token consists of 24 bits made up of the Starting Delimiter (SDEL), Access Control (AC), and Ending Delimiter (EDEL) fields of a frame. The Token Indicator (TI) bit of the Access Control field is set to '0'.

TOKEN BUS
A token access procedure used with a broadcast topology or network. Defined by the IEEE 802.4 subcommittee.

TOKEN INDICATOR
A bit in the Access Control field used to indicate a free token or a frame.

TOKEN PASSING
A mechanism whereby each device receives and passes the right to use the channel. Tokens are special bit patterns that circulate from node to node. Possession of the token gives a node exclusive access to the network for transmitting its message, thus avoiding conflict with other nodes that wish to transmit. Stations wishing to gain access to the medium must wait for a token to arrive before transmitting data.

TOKEN RING
A local network access mechanism and topology which uses token passing protocol. In a token ring, the next logical station receiving the token is also the next physical station on the the ring.

TOPOLOGY
Topology can be physical or logical. Physical topology is the configuration of network nodes and links; a description of the physical geometric arrangement of the links and nodes. Logical topology is a description of the possible logical connections between network nodes indicating which pairs of nodes are able to communicate whether or not they have a direct physical connection.

TRANSCEIVER
A device required in baseband networks which takes the digital signal from a computer or terminal and imposes it on the baseband medium.

TRANSPORT LAYER
In the OSI Reference Model, the network processing entity responsible, in conjunction with the underlying Network, Data Link and Physical layers, for the end-to-end control of transmitted data and the optimized use of network resources.

WIRING CONCENTRATOR
A wiring concentrator serves as the electrical interface of the lobe circuit (connecting to the Adapter) to the ring circuit. It contains relays which provide for physical insertion to and de-insertion from the ring.

WORD
A word, as defined in this document, consists of two bytes (16 bits).

B.4.1 Glossary References

Data Communications Concepts, Fifth Edition, International Business Machines, Order # GC21-5169-4, September 1983, pp. G-1 - G-12.

Datapro Reports on Communications, Datapro Research Corporation, 1983.

Derfler,Jr., Frank and William Stallings, *A Manager's Guide to Local Area Networks,* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1983, pp. 125-138.

Glossary of Local Area Networking Terms, Ungermann-Bass, Inc., 1984.

Introduction to Local Area Networks, Digital Equipment Corporation, 1982.

Tanenbaum, Andrew S., *Computer Networks,* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice- Hall, Inc., 1981.

TI Worldwide Sales Offices

ALABAMA: Huntsville: 500 Wynn Drive, Suite 514, Huntsville, AL 35805, (205) 837-7530.

ARIZONA: Phoenix: 8825 N. 23rd Ave., Phoenix, AZ 85021, (602) 995-1007.

CALIFORNIA: Irvine: 17891 Cartwright Rd., Irvine, CA 92714, (714) 660-8187; **Sacramento:** 1900 Point West Way, Suite 171, Sacramento, CA 95815, (916) 929-1521; **San Diego:** 4333 View Ridge Ave., Suite B., San Diego, CA 92123, (619) 278-9601; **Santa Clara:** 5353 Betsy Ross Dr., Santa Clara, CA 95054, (408) 980-9000; **Torrance:** 690 Knox St., Torrance, CA 90502, (213) 217-7010; **Woodland Hills:** 21220 Erwin St., Woodland Hills, CA 91367, (818) 704-7759.

COLORADO: Aurora: 1400 S. Potomac Ave., Suite 101, Aurora, CO 80012, (303) 368-8000.

CONNECTICUT: Wallingford: 9 Barnes Industrial Park Rd., Barnes Industrial Park, Wallingford, CT 06492, (203) 269-0074.

FLORIDA: Ft. Lauderdale: 2765 N.W. 62nd St., Ft. Lauderdale, FL 33309, (305) 973-8502; **Maitland:** 2601 Maitland Center Parkway, Maitland, FL 32751, (305) 660-4600; **Tampa:** 5010 W. Kennedy Blvd., Suite 101, Tampa, FL 33609, (813) 870-6420.

GEORGIA: Norcross: 5515 Spalding Drive, Norcross, GA 30092, (404) 662-7900

ILLINOIS: Arlington Heights: 515 W. Algonquin, Arlington Heights, IL 60005, (312) 640-2925.

INDIANA: Ft. Wayne: 2020 Inwood Dr., Ft. Wayne, IN 46815, (219) 424-5174; **Indianapolis:** 2346 S. Lynhurst, Suite J-400, Indianapolis, IN 46241, (317) 248-8555.

IOWA: Cedar Rapids: 373 Collins Rd. NE, Suite 200, Cedar Rapids, IA 52402, (319) 395-9550.

MARYLAND: Baltimore: 1 Rutherford Pl., 7133 Rutherford Rd., Baltimore, MD 21207, (301) 944-8600.

MASSACHUSETTS: Waltham: 504 Totten Pond Rd., Waltham, MA 02154, (617) 895-9100.

MICHIGAN: Farmington Hills: 33737 W. 12 Mile Rd., Farmington Hills, MI 48018, (313) 553-1500.

MINNESOTA: Eden Prairie: 11000 W. 78th St., Eden Prairie, MN 55344 (612) 828-9300.

MISSOURI: Kansas City: 8080 Ward Pkwy., Kansas City, MO 64114, (816) 523-2500; **St. Louis:** 11861 Westline Industrial Drive, St. Louis, MO 63141, (314) 569-7600.

NEW JERSEY: Iselin: 485E U.S. Route 1 South, Parkway Towers, Iselin, NJ 08830 (201) 750-1050

NEW MEXICO: Albuquerque: 2820-D Broadbent Pkwy NE, Albuquerque, NM 87107, (505) 345-2555.

NEW YORK: East Syracuse: 6365 Collamer Dr., East Syracuse, NY 13057, (315) 463-9291; **Endicott:** 112 Nanticoke Ave., P.O. Box 618, Endicott, NY 13760, (607) 754-3900; **Melville:** 1 Huntington Quadrangle, Suite 3C10, P.O. Box 2936, Melville, NY 11747, (516) 454-6600; **Pittsford:** 2851 Clover St., Pittsford, NY 14534, (716) 385-6770; **Poughkeepsie:** 385 South Rd., Poughkeepsie, NY 12601, (914) 473-2900.

NORTH CAROLINA: Charlotte: 8 Woodlawn Green, Woodlawn Rd., Charlotte, NC 28210, (704) 527-0930; **Raleigh:** 2809 Highwoods Blvd., Suite 100, Raleigh, NC 27625, (919) 876-2725.

OHIO: Beachwood: 23408 Commerce Park Rd., Beachwood, OH 44122, (216) 464-6100; **Dayton:** Kingsley Bldg., 4124 Linden Ave., Dayton, OH 45432, (513) 258-3877.

OKLAHOMA: Tulsa: 7615 East 63rd Place, 3 Memorial Place, Tulsa, OK 74133, (918) 250-0633.

OREGON: Beaverton: 6700 SW 105th St., Suite 110, Beaverton, OR 97005, (503) 643-6758.

PENNSYLVANIA: Ft. Washington: 260 New York Dr., Ft. Washington, PA 19034, (215) 643-6450; **Coraopolis:** 420 Rouser Rd., 3 Airport Office Park, Coraopolis, PA 15108, (412) 771-8550.

PUERTO RICO: Hato Rey: Mercantil Plaza Bldg., Suite 505, Hato Rey, PR 00919, (809) 753-8700.

TEXAS: Austin: 12501 Research Blvd., P.O. Box 2909, Austin, TX 78723, (512) 250-7655; **Richardson:** 1001 E. Campbell Rd., Richardson, TX 75080, (214) 680-5082; **Houston:** 9100 Southwest Frwy., Suite 237, Houston, TX 77036, (713) 778-6592; **San Antonio:** 1000 Central Parkway South, San Antonio, TX 78232, (512) 496-1779.

UTAH: Murray: 5201 South Green SE, Suite 200, Murray, UT 84107, (801) 266-8972.

VIRGINIA: Fairfax: 3001 Prosperity, Fairfax, VA 22031, (703) 849-1400.

WASHINGTON: Redmond: 5010 148th NE, Bldg B, Suite 107, Redmond, WA 98052, (206) 881-3080.

WISCONSIN: Brookfield: 450 N. Sunny Slope, Suite 150, Brookfield, WI 53005, (414) 785-7140.

CANADA: Nepean: 301 Moodie Drive, Mallorn Center, Nepean, Ontario, Canada, K2H9C4, (613) 726-1970. **Richmond Hill:** 280 Centre St. E., Richmond Hill L4C1B1, Ontario, Canada (416) 884-9181; **St. Laurent:** Ville St. Laurent Quebec, 9460 Trans Canada Hwy., St. Laurent, Quebec, Canada H4S1R7, (514) 334-3635.

ARGENTINA: Texas Instruments Argentina S.A.I.C.F.: Esmeralda 130, 15th Floor, 1035 Buenos Aires, Argentina, 1+394-3008.

AUSTRALIA (& NEW ZEALAND): Texas Instruments Australia Ltd.: 6-10 Talavera Rd., North Ryde (Sydney), New South Wales, Australia 2113, 2 + 887-1122; 5th Floor, 418 St. Kilda Road, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia 3004, 3 + 267-4677; 171 Philip Highway, Elizabeth, South Australia 5112, 8 + 255-2066.

AUSTRIA: Texas Instruments Ges.m.b.H.: Industriestrabe B/16, A-2345 Brunn/Gebirge, 2236-846210.

BELGIUM: Texas Instruments N.V. Belgium S.A.: Mercure Centre, Raketstraat 100, Rue de la Fusee, 1130 Brussels, Belgium, 2/720.80.00.

BRAZIL: Texas Instruments Electronicos do Brasil Ltda.: Rua Paes Leme, 524-7 Andar Pinheiros, 05424 Sao Paulo, Brazil, 0815-6166.

DENMARK: Texas Instruments A/S, Mairelundvej 46E, DK-2730 Herlev, Denmark, 2 - 91 74 00.

FINLAND: Texas Instruments Finland OY: Teollisuuskatu 19D 00511 Helsinki 51, Finland, (90) 701-3133.

FRANCE: Texas Instruments France: Headquarters and Prod. Plant, BP 05, 06270 Villeneuve-Loubet, (93) 20-01-01; Paris Office, BP 67 8-10 Avenue Morane-Saulnier, 78141 Velizy-Villacoublay, (3) 946-97-12; Lyon Sales Office, L'Oree D'Ecully, Batiment B, Chemin de la Forestiere, 69130 Ecully, (7) 833-04-40; Strasbourg Sales Office, Le Sebastopol 3, Quai Kleber, 67055 Strasbourg Cedex, (88) 22-12-66; Rennes, 23-25 Rue du Puits Mauger, 35100 Rennes, (99) 31-54-86; Toulouse Sales Office, Le Peripole—2, Chemin du Pigeonnier de la Cepiere, 31100 Toulouse, (61) 44-18-19; Marseille Sales Office, Noilly Paradis—146 Rue Paradis, 13006 Marseille, (91) 37-25-30.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS

Creating useful products and services for you

GERMANY (Fed. Republic of Germany): Texas Instruments Deutschland GmbH: Haggertystrasse 1, D-8050 Freising, 8161+80-4591; Kurfuerstendamm 195/196, D-1000 Berlin 15, 30+882-7365; III, Hagen 43/Kibbelstrasse, .19, D-4300 Essen, 201-24250; Frankfurter Allee 6-8, D-6236 Eschborm 1, 06196+8070; Hamburgerstrasse 11, D-2000 Hamburg 76, 040+220-1154, Kirchhorsterstrasse 2, D-3000 Hannover 51, 511+648021; Maybachstrabe 11, D-7302 Ostfildern 2-Nelingen, 711+547001; Mixikoring 19, D-2000 Hamburg 60, 40+637+0061; Postfach 1309, Roonstrasse 16, D-5400 Koblenz, 261+35044.

HONG KONG (+ PEOPLES REPUBLIC OF CHINA): Texas Instruments Asia Ltd., 8th Floor, World Shipping Ctr., Harbour City, 7 Canton Rd., Kowloon, Hong Kong, 3 + 722-1223.

IRELAND: Texas Instruments (Ireland) Limited: Brewery Rd., Stillorgan, County Dublin, Eire, 1 831311.

ITALY: Texas Instruments Semiconduttori Italia Spa: Viale Delle Scienze, 1, 02015 Cittaducale (Rieti), Italy, 746 694.1; Via Salaria KM 24 (Palazzo Cosma), Monterotondo Scalo (Rome), Italy, 6+9003241; Viale Europa, 38-44, 20093 Cologno Monzese (Milano), 2 2532541; Corso Svizzera, 185, 10100 Torino, Italy, 11 774545; Via J. Barozzi 6, 40100 Bologna, Italy, 51 355851.

JAPAN: Texas Instruments Asia Ltd.: 4F Aoyama Fuji Bldg., 6-12, Kita Aoyama 3-Chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo, Japan 107, 3-498-2111; Osaka Branch, 5F, Nissho Iwai Bldg., 30 Imabashi 3- Chome, Higashi-ku, Osaka, Japan 541, 06-204-1881; Nagoya Branch, 7F Daini Toyota West Bldg., 10-27, Meieki 4-Chome, Nakamura-ku Nagoya, Japan 450, 52-583-8691.

KOREA: Texas Instruments Supply Co.: 3rd Floor, Samon Bldg., Yuksam-Dong, Gangnam-ku, 135 Seoul, Korea, 2+462-8001.

MEXICO: Texas Instruments de Mexico S.A.: Mexico City, AV Reforma No. 450 — 10th Floor, Mexico, D.F., 06600, 5+514-3003.

MIDDLE EAST: Texas Instruments: No. 13, 1st Floor Mannai Bldg., Diplomatic Area, P.O. Box 26335, Manama Bahrain, Arabian Gulf, 973+274681.

NETHERLANDS: Texas Instruments Holland B.V., P.O. Box 12995, (Bullewijk) 1100 CB Amsterdam, Zuid-Oost, Holland 20+5602911.

NORWAY: Texas Instruments Norway A/S: PB106, Refstad 131, Oslo 1, Norway, (2) 155090.

PHILIPPINES: Texas Instruments Asia Ltd.: 14th Floor, Ba- Lepanto Bldg., 8747 Paseo de Roxas, Makati, Metro Manila, Philippines, 2+8188987.

PORTUGAL: Texas Instruments Equipamento Electronico (Portugal), Lda.: Rua Eng. Frederico Ulrich, 2650 Moreira Da Maia, 4470 Maia, Portugal, 2-948-1003.

SINGAPORE (+ INDIA, INDONESIA, MALAYSIA, THAILAND): Texas Instruments Asia Ltd.: 12 Lorong Bakar Batu, Unit 01-02, Kolam Ayer Industrial Estate, Republic of Singapore, 747-2255.

SPAIN: Texas Instruments Espana, S.A.: C/Jose Lazaro Galdiano No. 6, Madrid 16, 1/458.14.58.

SWEDEN: Texas Instruments International Trade Corporation (Sverigefilialen): Box 39103, 10054 Stockholm, Sweden, 8 - 235480.

SWITZERLAND: Texas Instruments, Inc., Reidstrasse 6, CH-8953 Dietikon (Zuerich) Switzerland, 1-740 2220.

TAIWAN: Texas Instruments Supply Co.: Room 903, 205 Tun Hwan Rd., 71 Sung-Kiang Road, Taipei, Taiwan, Republic of China, 2 + 521-9321.

UNITED KINGDOM: Texas Instruments Limited: Manton Lane, Bedford, MK41 7PA, England, 0234 67466; St. James House, Wellington Road North, Stockport, SK4 2RT, England, 61 + 442-7162.

BL

TMS380 User's Guide

Please use this form to communicate your comments about this document, its organization and subject matter, for the purpose of improving technical documentation.

1) What do you feel are the best features of this document? _____

2) How does this document meet your Local Area Networking needs? _____

3) Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

4) What additions do you think would enhance the structure and subject matter?

5) What deletions could be made without affecting overall usefulness? _____

6) Is there any incorrect or misleading information? _____

7) How would you improve this document? _____

If you would like a reply, please give your name and address below.

Name _____
Company _____ Title _____
Address _____
City/State/Zip _____ Telephone _____

Thank you for your cooperation.

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 6189 HOUSTON, TEXAS

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

Texas Instruments Incorporated
M/S 640
P.O. Box 1443
Houston, Texas 77001